

**Lanfrank's "Science of chirurgie." / edited from the Bodleian Ashmole ms. 1396 (ab. 1390 A.D.) and the British Museum Additional ms. 12,056 (ab. 1420 A.D.) by Robert v. Fleischhacker, DR. PHIL. Part I.--Text.**

### **Contributors**

Lanfranco, of Milan, active 13th century.  
Fleischhacker, Robert von.

### **Publication/Creation**

London : Pub. for the Early English Text Society by K. Paul, Trench, Trübner & Co., 1894.

### **Persistent URL**

<https://wellcomecollection.org/works/uz3rjeuj>

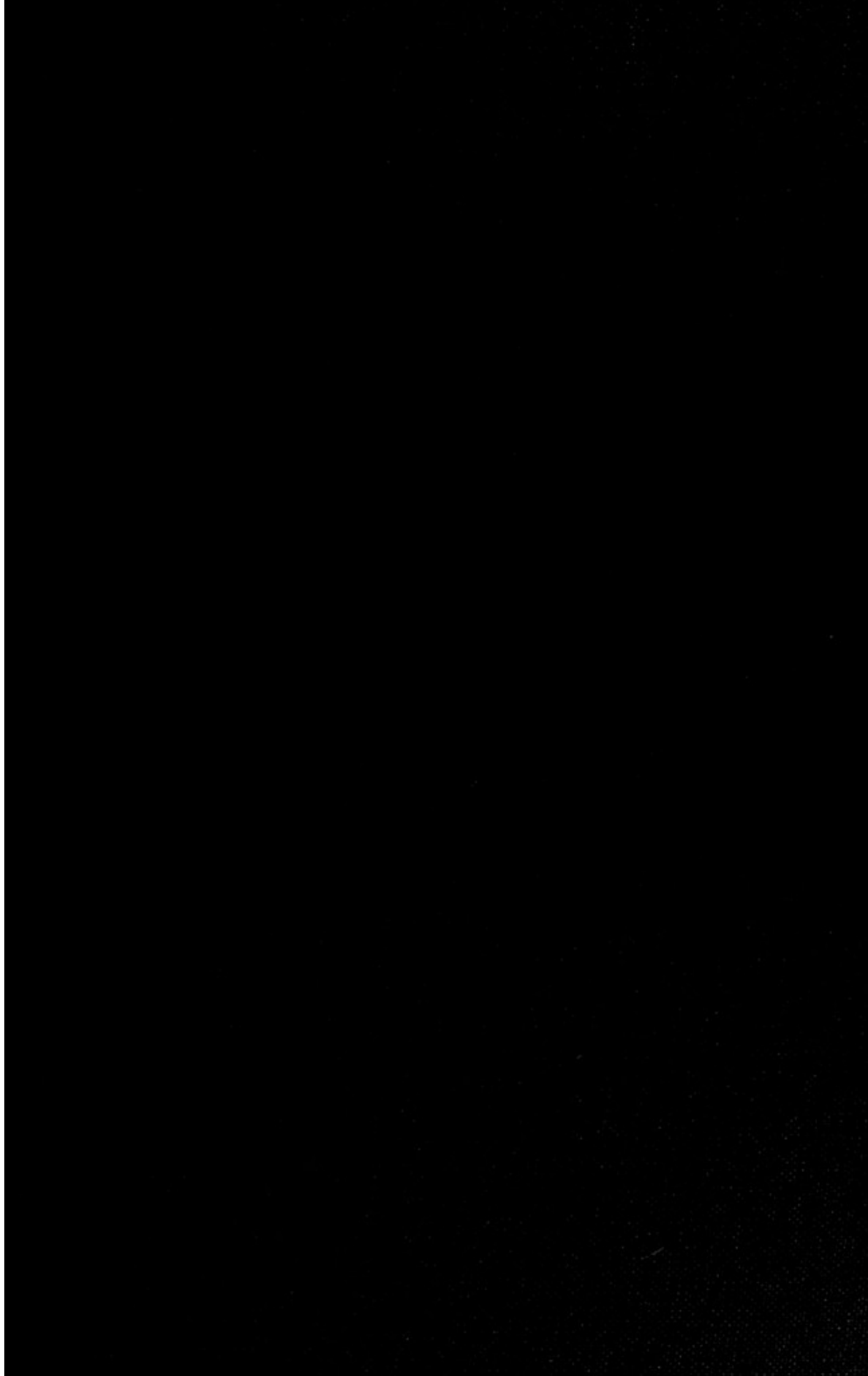
### **License and attribution**

This work has been identified as being free of known restrictions under copyright law, including all related and neighbouring rights and is being made available under the Creative Commons, Public Domain Mark.

You can copy, modify, distribute and perform the work, even for commercial purposes, without asking permission.



Wellcome Collection  
183 Euston Road  
London NW1 2BE UK  
T +44 (0)20 7611 8722  
E [library@wellcomecollection.org](mailto:library@wellcomecollection.org)  
<https://wellcomecollection.org>





V.C. AA 2.

X 56659



22500857132



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2017 with funding from  
Wellcome Library



Early English Text Society.

Original Series, 102.

---

Lanfrank's "Science of Chirurgie."

EDITED

FROM THE BODLEIAN ASHMOLE MS. 1396  
(ab. 1380 A.D.)

AND THE BRITISH MUSEUM ADDITIONAL MS. 12,056  
(ab. 1420 A.D.)

BY

ROBERT V. FLEISCHHACKER, DR. PHIL.

PART I.—TEXT.

LONDON:

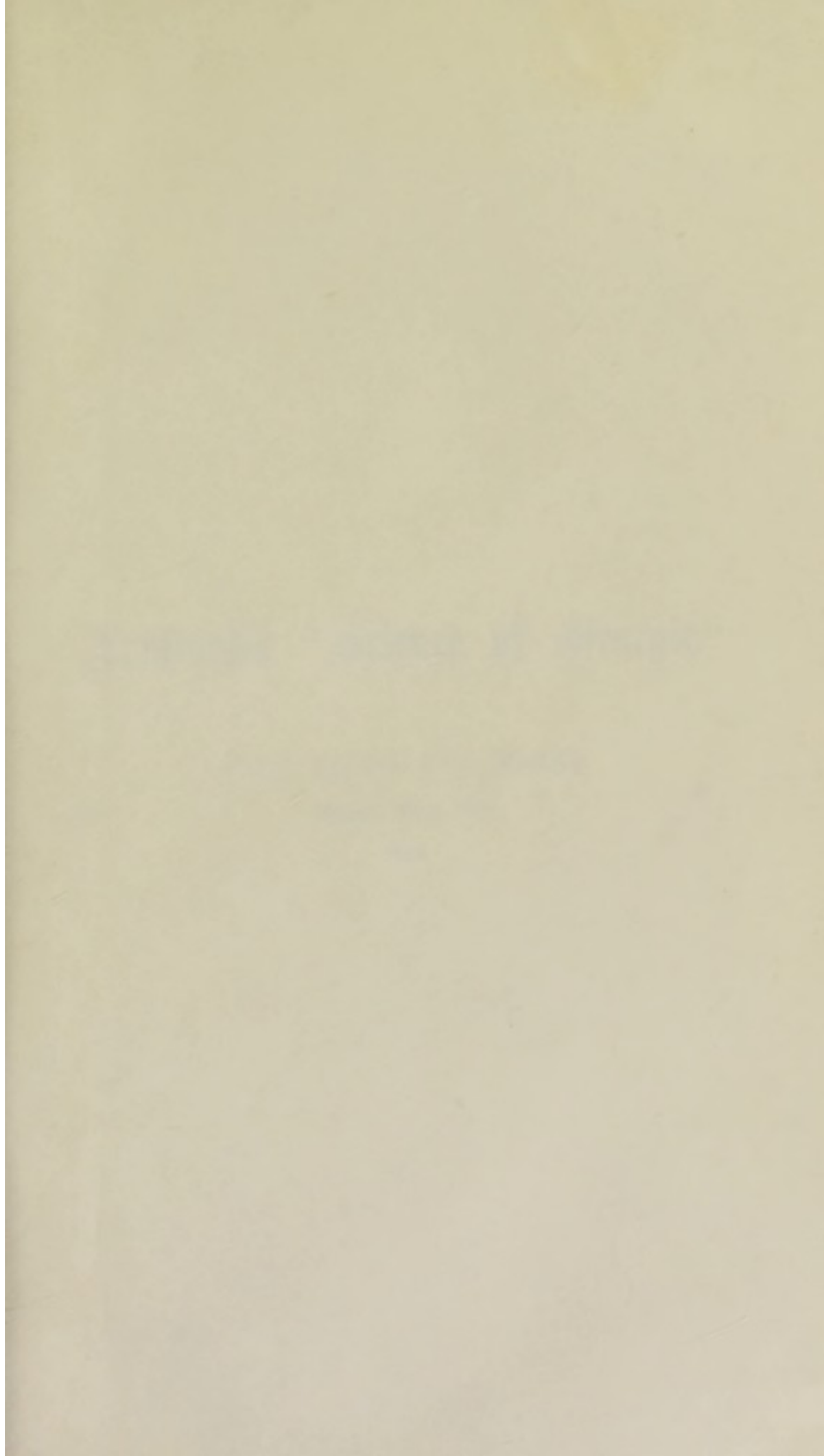
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY  
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.,  
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING-CROSS ROAD.

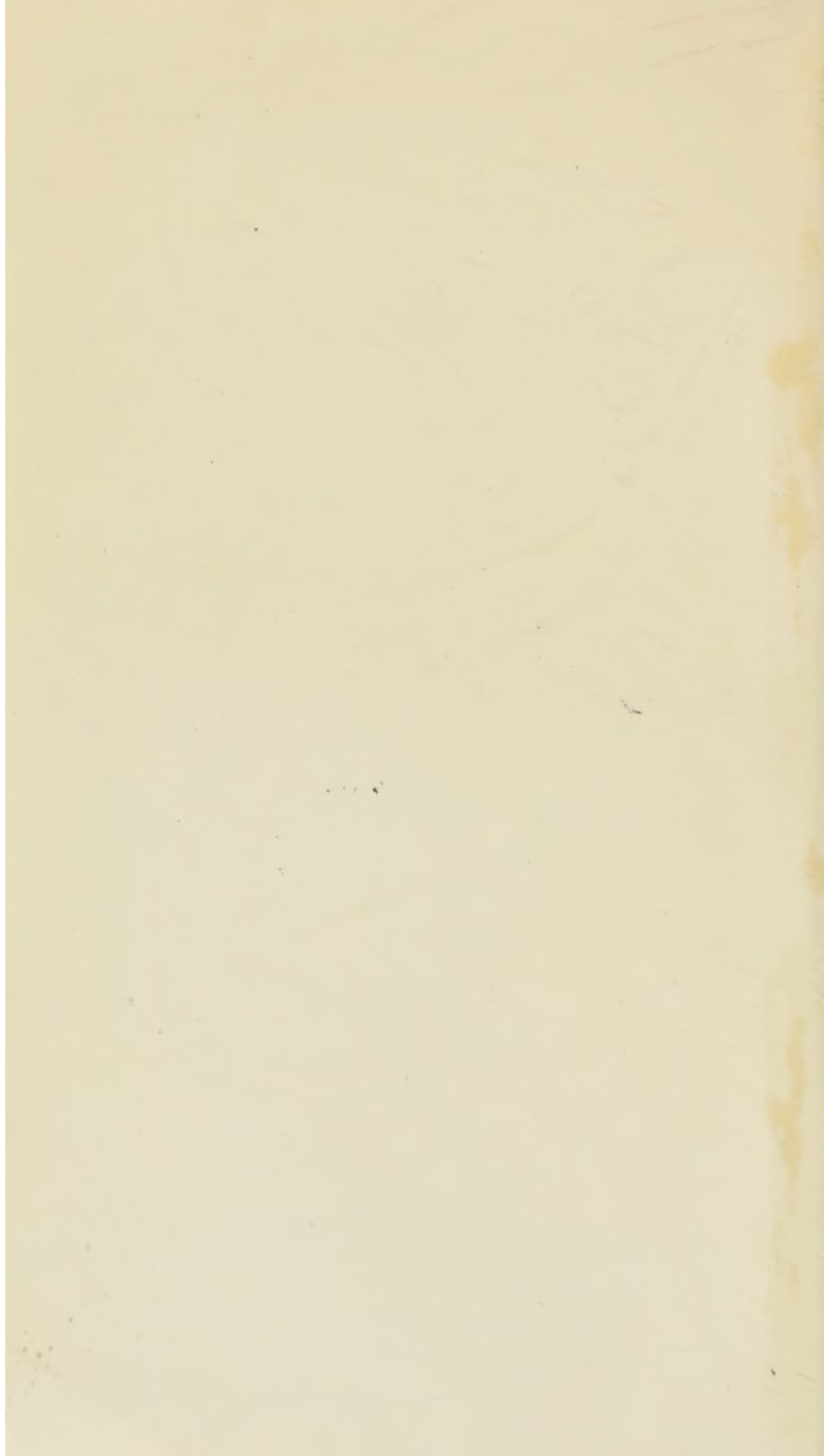
1894.

---

*Price Twenty Shillings.*







# Lanfrank's "Science of Chirurgie."

---

Early English Text Society.

Original Series, 102.

1894.



Survey, Text: Medial

J.C. AA2

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.

NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.

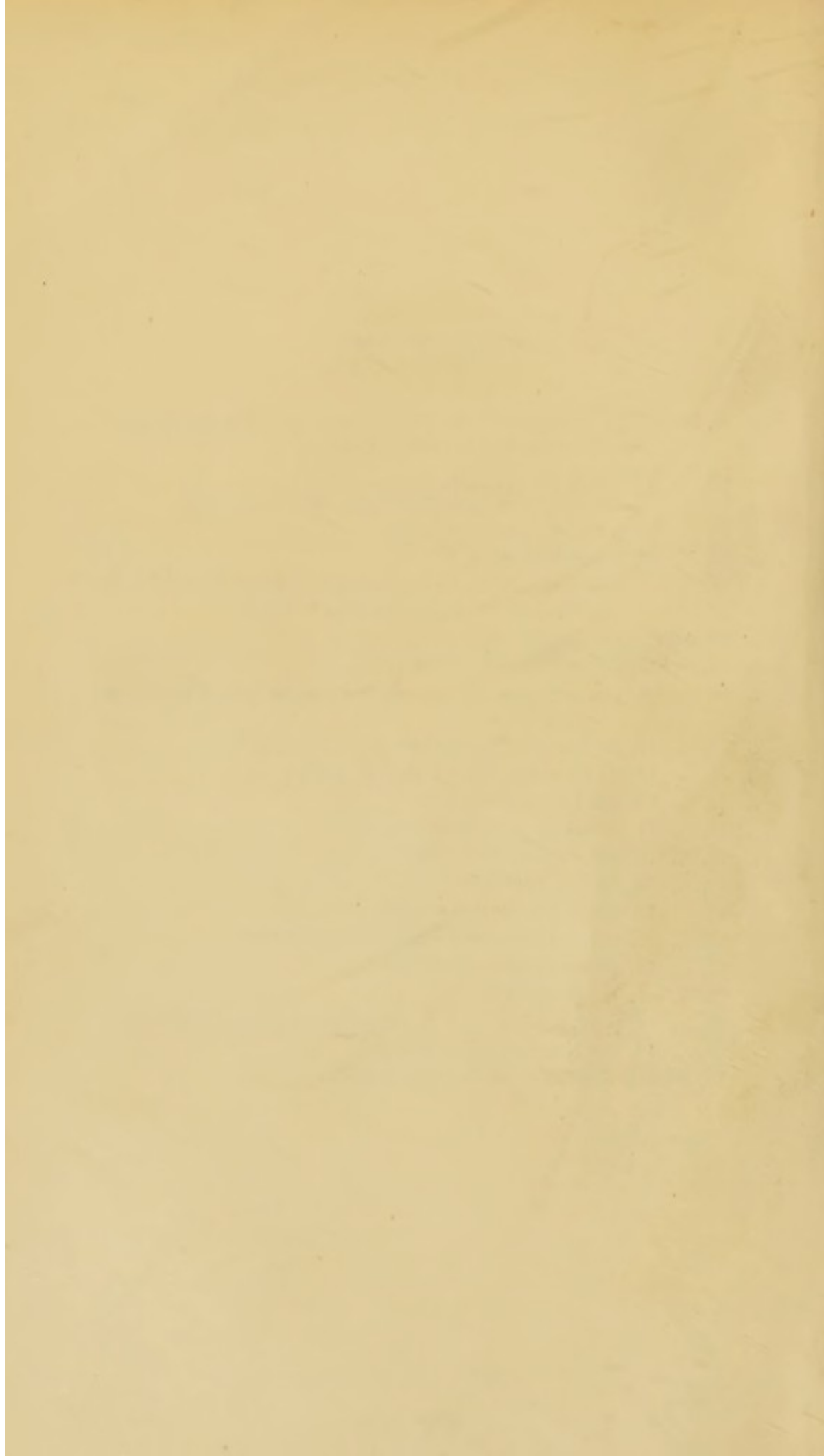
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.



## CORRECTIONS.

Page 18, line 17, *for vndir oon of þese iij entenciouns read vndir þese iij entenciouns* (note : both MSS. insert *oon of*)

- „ 19, „ 18, *for vp on read vpon*
- „ 25, „ 1, *for white oute read white* (note : MS. inserts *oute*)
- „ 25, „ 12, *put a semicolon after lungis*
- „ 27, „ 13, *cancel to þe maris*
- „ 29, „ 7, *cancel the comma between brayn and & þe nucha, and put a comma after þe nucha and after þe lymes*
- „ 30, note 3, *for fila read villi*
- „ 31, line 7, *for vunnus read vulnus*
- „ 34, „ 8, *put a full stop after seneve, and transfer note 2 to the preceding þat*
- „ 38, „ 10, *for humourer read humoures*
- „ 39, „ 14 and 33, *cancel the semicolon after lyme*
- „ 43, „ 10, *put a comma after dric*
- „ 46, „ 17, *cancel the inverted commas*
- „ 49, „ 6, *put a comma after myzt*
- „ 52, „ 16, *for eills read ellis*
- „ 55, „ 18, *cancel the inverted commas*
- „ 77, „ 1, *put an asterisk and ellipsis after condicioun*
- „ 77, „ 19, *put an asterisk after askyth*
- „ 83, „ 1, *cancel note 1*
- „ 89, „ 6, p. 90, l. 16, p. 99, l. 6, *for compouuned read compounned*
- „ 108, „ 19, *cancel the comma after clepid*
- „ 110, sidenote line 1, *for Tassillus read Passillus*



# CONTENTS.

*Ashmole MS. 1396.*

<sup>1</sup> **The firste tretis ofurgerie** halt wipinne him general ruelis & <sup>[1 leaf 1]</sup>  
 4 canones, & hap .iiij. techingis / þe firste techinge of þe firste tretis,  
 hap þre chapitlis. ¶ **Cap. j.** of þe first tretis of þe firste techynge <sup>page 7</sup>  
 is of definiciones & of parties þat ben sugettis tourgerie / **Cap. ij.** <sup>page 8</sup>  
 is of þe qualite, foorme & maners of a surgien / ¶ **Cap. iiij.** is of <sup>page 18</sup>  
 8 intencioun of a surgien / **The secunde** techynge of þe first tretis <sup>page 20</sup>  
 is on summe & oon chapitle of anotomie, & þat is to seie: þe  
 knouleche of þe foorme, & þe complexciouns, & þe helpingis of  
 alle þe senews, veines, grustlis, bawnis, guttis, bladdre, lyuere,  
 12 milte, & alle opere synguler lymes, & of þe engendringe of þe child  
 in þe modir wombe / **The first<sup>2</sup> techinge of þe first tretis hap** <sup>page 31</sup>  
**.xv. chapitlis /**

¶ **Cap. j.** of þe þridde techinge of þe .j.<sup>3</sup> tretis <sup>is of a comoun</sup> <sup>[4 leaf 1, bk.]</sup>  
 16 word of woundis, & olde woundis / p. 31

<sup>2</sup> first, mistake for þridde, as below.      <sup>3</sup> Chafed: not room for first.

---

*Addit. MS. Brit. Mus. 12,056.*

<sup>5</sup> **Assit Principio Sancta Maria meo**

<sup>[5 fol. 31 a]</sup>

þe ffirste tretys ofurgerie halt with inne hym generall Rulys  
 20 & Canons, & hath þre techynges. þe ffurste techynge of þe furste  
 tretys hap þre Chapyttles. **Cap. j.** of þe furste techynge of the firste  
 tretys of dyffiniciones & of partyes þat beþ suggettys to surgerye.  
**Cap. ij.** is of qualite, fforme & Maners of a Surgien.  
 24 ¶ **Cap. iiij.** ys of Intencioun of a Surgien. þe secunde techynge  
 of þe ffyrste tretys ys O summe & on ChapiteH of a notanye, þat is  
 to sugge þe knowlechyng of þe forme, & þe complexion, & þe  
 helpynges of alle þe synwes, veyne, grustlys, bawnys, guttys,  
 28 bleddre, lyuere, Mylte, & alle opere senglere lymes, & of þe engend-  
 rynge of þe child in þe modire wombe. The þridde techynge of þe  
 firste tretys hath xv. ChapyteHs. **Cap. j.** on of þe þridde techynge,  
 of þe þridde tretys, ys a comyn worde of woundes & olde woundes.

SURGERY.

B



Ashmole	¶ Cap. ij. of heelynge of a wounde I-maad in fleisch /	p. 33
1396.	¶ Cap. iij. of heelynge of a wounde maad in senewe /	p. 39
	¶ Cap. iiij. of a wounde in þe boon /	p. 47
	¶ Cap. v. of a wounde maad wiþ smytynge /	p. 50 4
	¶ Cap. vj. of a wounde bollid and out of kynde, to hoot or to coold /	p. 54
	¶ Cap. vij. of a wounde of a wode hound or of a uenymous beest /	p. 59 8
	¶ Cap. viij. of a wounde þat is out of ioynthe and to-broken /	p. 62
	¶ Cap. ix. of to miche flux of blood of a wounde /	p. 64
	¶ Cap. x. of dietynge of men þat ben woundid /	p. 72
	¶ Capitulum xi <sup>m</sup> of olde woundis /	p. 77 12
	¶ Capitulum xij <sup>m</sup> of a festre <sup>1</sup> /	p. 89
	¶ Cap. xiiij. of a canker I-woundid /	p. 92
	¶ Cap. xiiij. of causis þat letten helynge of woundis and of olde woundis /	p. 97 16
	¶ Cap. xv. of crampe þat comeþ in a wounde /	p. 99

**T**he secunde tretis is of particuler woundis of alle lymes of office from þe heed to the foot, techinge þe anotomie of alle lymes from þe heed to þe foot, þat happiþ to be woundid; & þou haddist 20 tofore þe anatomie <sup>2</sup>of veynes & senewis, & opere smale lymes.

[<sup>2</sup> leaf 2]

<sup>1</sup> After *festre* in a later hand is written *festula*.

Add. MS.	¶ Cap. ij. off helynge of a wounde y-makyde in flesch.	
12,056.	¶ Cap. iij. off helynge of a wonde y-makyde in þe synwe.	
	¶ Cap. iiij. of a wounde in þe bon.	24
	¶ Cap. v. of a wounde y-makyd with smytinge.	
	¶ Cap. vj. of a wounde to bolled & out of kynde, to hote opere to colde	
	¶ Cap. vij. of a wounde of a wod hound, opere a venymouse beste.	28
	¶ Cap. viij. of a wounde þat is out of Ioynte & to-broken.	
	¶ Cap. ix. of to myche flux of blod of wounde.	
	¶ Cap. x. of dyotyng of men þat beþ y-woundyde.	32
	¶ Cap. xj. of olde woundes	
	¶ Cap. xij. off a ffestre	
	¶ Cap. xiiij. of a cancre y-woundyd	
	¶ Cap. xiiij off causes þat lettyde helynge of woundes & olde woundes	36
	¶ Cap. xv. of crampe þat comyth to wounde	

¶ þe secunde tretis is of particulers woundes of alle lymes of office from þe hed to þe <sup>3</sup>ffot, & techyng þe Anotamye of alle lymes from þe hed to þe fote, þat happyde to be woundyde; & þou haddist 40

[<sup>3</sup> fol. 31 b]



And so whanne þis tretis is ful eendid, þou hast anotamie of alle lymes of þi bodi, & þis tretis vndir oon summe conteyneþ x. chapitlis. Ashmole 1396.

- 4 ¶ Cap. j. of þe secunde tretis is of woundis of þe heed and is anotamie / p. 106
- ¶ Cap. ij. is of woundis of þe face, and of anotamie of þe same face / p. 141
- 8 ¶ Cap. iij. is of anotamie of þe necke, and of woundis of þe same / p. 145
- ¶ Cap. iiij. of woundis of schuldris, armes and hondis, & anotamie of þe same / p. 155
- 12 ¶ Cap. v.<sup>1</sup> of woundis of þe brest, & lymes þat ben wipinne þe brest, & anotamie of þe same. p. 161
- ¶ Cap. vj. of woundis of þe rigboon & of whirlebones of þe rigge, & of anotamie of þe same / p. 166
- 16 ¶ Cap. vij. of woundis of þe wesounde þat goþ to þe stomak, & of þe stomak, and of þe guttis, and þe wombe anotamie / p. 167
- ¶ Cap. viij. of woundis of þe lyuere & splene. p. 171
- ¶ Cap. ix. of woundis of þe 3erde, þat is, in þi pintil, and
- 20 anotamie / p. 173

<sup>1</sup> v. above line.

---

to forþ þe Anotamye of veynes & synwes, & opere smale lymes, & so whanne þis tretys is fully endyde þou hast anotamye of alle lymes of thy body. And þis tretys under summe conteynde x. Add. MS. 12,056.

24 Chapyttles.

¶ Cap. j. of þe secunde tretys is of woundys of þe hed, and hys Anotamye.

¶ Cap. ij. is of woundes of þe face, & anotamye of þe same

28 vysage.

¶ Cap. iij. of Anotamie of þe nekke, and of þe woundes of þe same.

¶ Cap. iiij. of woundys of schuldre. Armys & hondys, &

32 Anotamie of þe same.

¶ Cap. v. of woundes of þe brest, and lymes þat beth wip ynne the brest, & Anotamye of þe same.

¶ Cap. vj. of woundes of þe ruggebone & of whirele bonys of

36 þe rugge, & Anotamye of þe same.

¶ Cap. vij. of woundes off the wesand þat goth to the stomak, & of þe stomak, & þe guttes, & þe wombe, & Anotamie of the same.

40 ¶ Cap. viij. of woundes of þe lyffere & the splene.

¶ Cap. ix. of woundes of þe 3erde, þat ys thyn pyntel, & Anotamie.



Ashmole 1396.	¶ Cap. x. of woundis of þe haunche, þies & feet, and anotamie of þe same /	p. 176
------------------	---	--------

sign. ij.

*The Ashmole MS. breaks off here.*

Add. MS. 12,056.	¶. Cap. x. of woundes of the hanche, thyres, ffet, and Anotamye.	4
---------------------	--	---

	¶ þe þridde tretis is of cures of opere seknesse, þat bep noȝt woundes þat mowen falle to dyuers lymes from þe hed to þe fote, þat comyn to be helyde off a surgien, & hap þre techynges :	
	þe furste techynge of þe þridde tretys hath viij Chapyttles :	8
	¶ Cap. j of the furste techynge of þe þridde tretys ys off Ornamentys of heer.	p. 178
	¶ Cap. ij ys of ffallynge off heer & of scabbe.	p. 180
	¶ Cap. iij of whelkys in þe vysage, & scalys and crustlys	p. 188 12
[ <sup>1</sup> fol. 32 a]	¶ Cap. iiij of Morfu, firakles, <sup>1</sup> Goute, rosed of þe vysage, & Cicatrices of woundes	p. 189
	¶ Cap. v of ȝycchyng & scabbe	p. 191
	¶ Cap. vi of drye scabbe & wete scabbe	p. 193 16
	¶ Cap. vii of lepre, & of knowlechyng of leprys Man	p. 196
	¶ Cap. viii of fastnyng a lene lyme, & to lenen a fat lyme	p. 199
	¶ þe secunde techynge of þe þridde tretys is of apostemes, & hath xviij Chapittles	20
	¶ Cap. j of þe secunde techynge of þe þridde techynge, of gener- aciones of humour & here lyknesse	p. 201
	¶ Cap. ij of vniuersel word of enpostemes	p. 204
	¶ Cap. iij of enposteme of the hed & watire congregated in children hedys.	24 p. 214
	¶ Cap. iiij of emposteme undire þe rote of þe ere.	p. 216
	¶ Cap. v of aposteme of þe nekke & þe prote.	p. 217
	¶ Cap. vj of Aposteme undire þe Arme hole.	p. 222 28
	¶ Cap. vii of Aposteme þat comeþ in the arme from þe schuldre to þe Elbowe.	p. 223
	¶ Cap. viij off Aposteme þat comyþ on þe sydes.	p. 224
	¶ [Cap.] ix of Aposteme þat comeþ aboute þe Mouth of þe stomak.	32 p. 226
	¶ Cap. x of apostem that comyþ in þe grynde	p. 226
	¶ Cap. xj of aposteme þat comyþ in þe hanche & þe thyres.	p. 227
	¶ Cap. xij of Aposteme off þe pyntel & þe ballokes	p. 228 36
	¶ Cap. xiii of scrofules & glandeles, þat buþ Curnellys þat comyþ in þe fflessch	p. 229
	¶ Cap. xiiij of Cancre þat is nouȝt to-broke, & is cure	p. 231
	¶ Cap. xv of bocche þat hongyþ as swynes babbe undire here nekkys	40 p. 232
	¶ Cap. xvj of Akþe of Ioyntes	p. 233



	¶ The þridde techynge of þe þridde tretys haþ xviij Chapittles	Add. MS.
	¶ Cap. I of seknesse of eyzen, & Anotamye of þe same	p. 240 12.056.
	¶ Cap. ij of seknesse of þe eren	p. 254
4	¶ Cap. iiij of seknesse of þe nose	p. 258
	¶ Cap. iiij of seknesse of þe mouth	p. 260
	¶ Cap. v of seknesse of a wommans tetys . to grete, to fatte, 1 opere to lene.	p. 265 [1 fol. 32 b]
8	¶ Cap. vi of eiphac þat is to-broke, opere that is to lose	p. 268
	¶ Cap. vij of brokyn ballok	p. 269
	¶ Cap. viij of stone in þe bleddre	p. 273
	¶ Cap. ix of hermofrodite, þat is to seye, þat hath þe schappe of	
12	Man & womman, & opere of wommen þat haþ scyne withynne here schape / þat sche ne may nouȝt conseiwe þe seed of man	
	¶ Cap. x of water of men þat beþ in þe dropsye	p. 281
	¶ Cap. xj of fycus, þat is, a waxynge up on þe hed of þe ȝerde	
16	cancre fleynge, bocche in þe pyntel & olde wounde.	p. 287
	¶ Cap. xij of emeroydes, festre & rogadyes, þat beþ slyttes in þe Erse	p. 289
	¶ [Cap.] xiiij of cancrefis & malo mortuo, þat buþ olde sores & 20 olde scabbys on þe schyne.	p. 293
	¶ Cap. xiiij of veynes þat buþ to grete in þe legges, & of þe leggys þat buþ to grete out off kynde of flesch	p. 295
	¶ Cap. xv of wryncles, & chynes of handes, & kybis on þe fiete,	
24	& wertys, & oper schyn lyke flessch	p. 296
	¶ Cap. xvj of helpynges þat buþ in blod letynge	p. 298
	¶ Cap. xvij of helpys þat buþ in brennyng with yren opere with gold	p. 305
28	¶ Cap. xvij of helpe þat is with brennyng of fyre, hote watyr & oyle	p. 312
	¶ þe iiij tretys is of wrenchyngis of lymes, & haþ tweye tech- ynges, opere tweye summes.	
32	¶ þe firste techynge of þe furþe tretys haþ vij Chapyttles	
	¶ Chap j of broken bonys an vniuersel word	[missing]
	¶ Cap. ij of bonys þat buþ broken of þe face	p. 313
	¶ Cap. iiij of bonys þat buþ broken of þe breste	p. 316
36	¶ Cap. iiij of bonys þat buþ brokyn of þe rybbes, & þe rugge bon.	p. 317
	¶ Cap. v of Armys þat buþ broken	p. 318
	¶ Cap. vi of bonys þat buþ hende withouten brekyng	p. 321
40	¶ þe 2 Secunde techynge off þe ffurþe Tretys haþ v Chapytells	[2 fol. 33 a]
	¶ þe firste chapyttle of þe secunde techynge a comyn word off wrenchynges out of Ioynte	[missing]
	¶ Cap. ij of dislocacioun of þe cheke bon.	p. 314
44	¶ Cap. iiij of dislocacioun of þe rugge bon.	p. 322
	¶ Cap. iiij of dislocacioun of þe schuldre & about þe schuldre	p. 323
	¶ Cap. v of dislocacioun of þe þyȝe bon & withynne	p. 326



Add. MS. 12,056.	¶ The ffyfe tretys is Antidotarie, & hath withynne hym vij chaitells	
	¶ Cap. j of castynge abache, & þe manere how þou schalt caste abacch	p. 328 4
	¶ Cap. ij of resolueres & manere of vndoyng & makynge nessche	p. 333
	¶ Cap. iij of Maturatiuis, þat buþ Ripers	p. 336
	¶ Cap. iiij of Mundificatiuis, þat beþ clanseres	p. 339 8
	¶ Cap. v of glutinatiuis & consolidatiuis, þat buþ closeres & consouderes, & þe difference of hem	p. 342
	¶ Cap. vj of hem þat maken nessche hardnesse	p. 353
	¶ Cap. vij of Cauterisinge, that is to sugge brennyng, & 12 opnyng þe extremities	p. 349

Ashmole MS. 1396.

## SCIENCE OF CIRURGIE.

<sup>1</sup>Now þese chapitles of þis book ben y-ordeyned, I wole fulfille [1 ff. 2, bk.]  
my purpos pursuyng ech chapitle bi ordre, & confermyng my  
wordis aftir þe auctorite of myn auctouris and wiþ experiment þat

4 I haue longe tyme vsed wiþ þe help of god. // // //

**A**l þing<sup>t</sup> þat we wolde knowe, bi oon of .iiij. maners þat<sup>t</sup> we <sup>Capm. jm</sup>  
moun knowe, eiþir bi his name, or by his worchinge, or bi  
his verri beyng schewyng propirte of him-silf / In þis  
8 þre maner we moun knoweurgerie bi expownyng of his name;  
for siurge cometh of siros, þat is a word of gru, & in englisch siros <sup>Surgery is</sup>  
is an hand, & gyros gru, þat is worching in englisch / For þe ende <sup>from Greek</sup>  
& þe profite of syurgie is\* [of hand-wyrchyng. Of þe Name of <sup>cheir a hand,</sup>  
12 a thyng Galyen seyth: he þat wyl knowe] soþfastnes of a þing,  
bisie him nouȝt to knowe þe name of a þing, but þe worching & þe  
effete of þe same þing / Therefore he þat wole knowe what siurgie is,  
he moot vndirstonde, þat it is a medicinal science, which techiþ us <sup>and ergon</sup>  
16 to worche wiþ handis in mannes bodi, wiþ kuttynge or openyng þe <sup>work.</sup>

It is a medi-  
cinal science:

Addit. MS. Brit. Mus. 12,056.

**N**OW the Chapitelles of þis bok buþ y-ordeyned, y wyl fulfille  
20 my purpos, pursuyng every chapyteH by ordere, & conferm-  
yng my wordys after þe Autorite of myn Autores, & wiþ experyment  
þat y haue longe tyme y-vsyde with help of god.

**A**L thyng þat we wolde knowe, by on of þre maneres we mowe  
24 knowe, opere by hys name ore by hys worchyng, opere by hys  
verrey beyng schewyng propirte of hym selff. In þis þre manere  
we mowe knoweurgerie by expownyng of hys name; ffor syrugie  
cometh of syros, þat ys a word of grewȝ, & in englyssche syros ys  
28 an hand, & gyros grewȝ, þat ys worchyng an Englyssche; for þe ende  
& þe prophete of surgerie ys\* of hand wyrchyng. Of þe Name  
of a thyng Galyen seyth: he þat wyl knowe\* soþfastnesse of a  
thyng, besye hym nouȝt to knowe þe name <sup>2</sup>of a thyng, bute þe <sup>[2 fol. 33 v]</sup>  
32 worchyng & þe Effecte of þe same thyng; where fore he þat wyl  
knoweurgerie ys, he mote vndirstonde, þat yt is a medycineal  
science, whyche techiþ vs to worche with handes in Mannes body, in



cutting, healing, and removing excrescences.

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 3]

parties þat ben hole & in helynge þo þat ben broken, or kutt, as þei were tofor<sup>n</sup>, <sup>1</sup>or ellis as ny; as a man may, & also in doynge away þat is to myche skyn: as wertis or wennys, or þe fleisch to hize //

¶ þe secunde chapitle of þe firste tretis is of þe 4 qualitees, maners, and kunnyng of a surgian //

¶ Cap<sup>m</sup> ijm

A surgeon must be a temperate and well made man. An ugly man can't have good manners.

He must know Philosophy, Logic, Grammar, and Rhetoric.

He must not be a glutton or a niggard, but pleasant with his patients,

sign. iij.  
[<sup>4</sup> lf. 3, bk.]

**N**Edeful it is þat a surgian be of a complexcioun weel proporciound, and þat his complexcioun be temperat / Races seiþ, who-so is nouzt<sup>t</sup> semelich, is ympossible to haue good maners \* [& Aui- 8 cenne: euyle maners] but folowen þe lijknys of an yuele complexioun / A surgian muste haue handis weel schape, longe smale fyngris, and his body not quakyng, & al must ben of sutil witt, for al þing<sup>t</sup> þat longiþ to siurgie may not wiþ lettris ben writen. He muste studie 12 in alle þe parties of philofie & in logik, þat he mowe vndirstonde scripturis; in gramer, þat he speke congruliche; in<sup>2</sup> arte, þat techiþ him to proue his proporciouns wiþ good resoun; in retorik þat techiþ him to speke semelich. Be he no glotoun, ne noon enuyous, ne a 16 negard; be he trewe, vnbeliche,<sup>3</sup> & plesyngliche bere he him-silf to hise pacientis; speke he noon ribawdrie in þe sike mannys<sup>4</sup> hous /

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: quod docet dialectica

<sup>3</sup> *humbilly* in margin, in smaller hand.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

kuttyng ore opnyng þo partyes þat ben hol, & in helynge þo that ben tobroken opere kutte, as þey were to fore, opere ellys as ny; as 20 a Man may, and al so in doynge awaye þat ys to myche above þe schyn: as wertys, opere wennys, oper flesch to hy;h.

¶ The secunde ChapiteH of þe ffurste Tretys is of þe 24 qualites, maners and cunnyng of a surgien.

Nedfful ys þat a surgien be of a Complexioun wel proporcyonede, & þat is complexioun be temperat. **Rasys** seiþ, whose face ys nouzt semlye, ys inpossible to hauen gode maners; \* & **Auicenne**: euyle maners\* beþ folwyng þe lyknesse of an yuele complexioun. 28 A surgien moste han handys wel schape, longe smale ffyngres, and hys body nought quakyng, & alle hys lymes able to fulfyllen gode werkynge of hys soule. He most ben of sotyl wytt, ffor alle þyng þat longyth to surgerye may nought wiþ lettres ben wryten. He 32 moste stodyen in alle þe partyes of natureH ffylosophye & in logyk, þat he mowe vndirstonde scriptures; in gramere, þat he speke congrulyche; in art, þat techyth hym to preven ys proposiciones with gode resoun; in retoryk, þat techyth hym to speke semlyche; be he 36 non glotoun, non spowsbrekere, ne Envyous, ne no nygarde; be he trewe, vmbelyche<sup>5</sup> & plesyngliche bere he hym-self to hys pacientis; speke he non Rybaudye in þe seke mannys house, ne in þe seke

[<sup>5</sup> fol. 34. a]



- zeue he no counseil, but<sup>t</sup> if<sup>t</sup> he be axid ; ne speke he wip no womman  
 in folie in þe sik mannes hous ; ne chide not wip þe sike man ne  
 wip noon of<sup>t</sup> hise meyne, but curteisli speke to þe sijk man, and in  
 4 almaner sijknes bihote him heele, þou<sup>3</sup> þou be of<sup>t</sup> him dispeirid ;  
 but neuer þe lattere seie to hise freendis þe caas as it stant / Loue  
 he noon harde curis, & entermete he nou<sup>3</sup>t of<sup>t</sup> þo þat ben in dispeir.  
 Pore men helpe he bi his my<sup>3</sup>t<sup>t</sup>, and of<sup>t</sup> þe riche men axe he good  
 8 reward / Preise he nou<sup>3</sup>t him-silf wip his owne mouþ, ne blame he  
 nou<sup>3</sup>t scharpliche opere lechis ; loue he alle lechis & clerkis, & bi  
 his my<sup>3</sup>t<sup>1</sup> make he no leche his enemye. So cloþe he him wip  
 vertues, þat<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> him mai arise good fame & name ; & þis techiþ etik.  
 12 So lerne he fisik, þat he mowe wip good rulis his surgerie defende  
 & þat techiþ fisik / Neþeles it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe alle  
 þe parties and ech sengle partie of<sup>t</sup> a medicyn. For if<sup>t</sup> a surgian ne  
 knewe nou<sup>3</sup>t þe science of elementis, whiche þat ben firstmoost force  
 16 of natural þingis & of dyuers lymes, he mai not<sup>2</sup> knowe science of<sup>t</sup>  
 coniunctions, þat<sup>t</sup> is to seie, medlyngis & complexiouns þat<sup>t</sup> ben  
 nessessarie to his craft / A surgian muste knowe þat alle bodies þat<sup>t</sup>  
 ben medlid vndir þe sercle of<sup>t</sup> þe moone, ben engendrid of<sup>t</sup> foure

and must in  
desperate  
cases even  
promise  
recovery,  
but tell the  
truth to the  
patient's  
friends.

He should  
make the rich  
pay for the  
poor.

He shall not  
praise himself  
or blame  
other  
physicians.

He must  
know  
Physics,  
Medicine,

[<sup>2</sup> leaf 3\*]  
and the  
science of  
mixtures.

<sup>1</sup> my<sup>3</sup>t in margin.

- 20 Mannes house gif non counseyle bote he be y-askyde, ne speke he with non womman in no<sup>3</sup> folye in þe seke Mannes howse, ne chyde nought with þe seke Man ne with none of hys meyne ; but curteslye speke to þe syke man, & in alle manere syknesse behote hym hele, þow<sup>3</sup>  
 24 þou be of hym dyspeyred ; but neuere þe lattere seye to hys frendys, þe cas as yt stant. Loue he non harde curys, & entyremete he nought of þo þat beþ in dyspeyre. Pore men helpe he be hys myght, & of ryche men aske he gode rewarde. Preyse he nought hymself  
 28 with hys owne mouth, ne blame he nought scharplye opere lechys ; loue he alle lechys & Clerkys, & by hys myght make he non leche hys enmye. So cloþe he hym with vertues, þat of hym mowe a-rysen gode fame & name, & þis techyth Etyk. So lerne he ffysik,  
 32 þat he mowe with gode rulys hys Surgerie deffende, & þat techith ffysik. Napeles yt ys necessarye a surgien to knowe alle þe partyes in eche sengle partye of a medycine, ffor 3if a surgien knowe no<sup>3</sup>t þe sciens of Elementis, whiche þat buþ furst Meverys of naturel  
 36 þynges & of dyuerse lymes, he may no<sup>3</sup>t knowe sciense of coniunctiounes, þat ys to seye, medlynges & complexiouns þat beþ necessarye to hys crafte. A surgien most knowe þat alle bodyes þat ben medlyde, þat ben vndire þe cerele of þe Mone, ben engen-

Add. MS.  
12,056.

<sup>3</sup> no above the line.



There are  
four ele-  
ments: fire,  
water, earth,  
and air.

By mixture  
of their  
qualities new  
forms arise  
capable of  
being en-  
dowed with  
life.

The noblest  
of all these is  
the human  
spirit.

sign. iiij.  
[2 lf. 3\*, bk.]

There are 4  
qualities and  
complexions,

symple bodies, her lijknes ech in opere medlynge; þat<sup>t</sup> is to seie :  
fier & watir, erþe & eir : þese<sup>1</sup> elementis for þe vttermeste eende, &  
þe vttermeste contrariouste of<sup>t</sup> here qualitees were fer drawn from  
bodilich lijf<sup>t</sup>; but<sup>t</sup> whanne her qualitees, þat<sup>t</sup> is to seie, maner of<sup>t</sup> 4  
beynge, comen into medlynge, so þat<sup>t</sup> þe leeste partie of<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> oon  
entre into þe leeste partie of<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> oper partie, medlynge brekiþ her  
contrariouste; & þerof comen a newe foorme, & a newe complex-  
cioun of<sup>t</sup> þe medlynge of<sup>t</sup> her substaunce / Also þe medlynge of<sup>t</sup> 8  
qualitees & þe quantitees is fer drawn from þe contrariouste of<sup>t</sup> þe  
same elementis, & so complexioun is ny; brougt<sup>t</sup> to a mele; & so  
þat<sup>t</sup> þat is medlid is more able to resceiue þe noble foorme of lijf,  
þe which nobilite aboue alle bodies I-medlid is founden in mannes 12  
spirit<sup>t</sup>. But for þat<sup>t</sup> þe qualitees þat wiþ þo bodies of elementis  
comen into medlynge, & it is vnpossible to departe þo qualitees  
from bodies þat<sup>t</sup> ben foure: hoot, coold, moist & drie, & complex-  
iouns ben bi hem, it is nessessarie to fynde in bodies þat<sup>t</sup> ben 16  
medlid foure complexiouns / Complexioun is no þing<sup>t</sup> ellis but  
a maner qualite medlid in worchinge & suffrynge of<sup>t</sup> contrarious  
qualitees þat<sup>t</sup> ben founden in elementis, so þat<sup>t</sup> þe leeste partie of<sup>t</sup>  
ech element entre into þe leeste partie of<sup>t</sup> þe opere. & for þat ilke 20

<sup>1</sup> *ben* above line.

Add. MS.  
12 056.

[3 fol. 34 v]

dryd of foure symple bodyes, here lyknesse eche in opere medlyng;  
þat ys to sugge, fyr & eyre, erþe & water. þese elementys, ffor þe  
outemast ende & outemast contraryousite of here qualites, weren fer  
drawen from bodily lyffe; but whanne here<sup>3</sup>qualytes, þat is to 24  
sugge manere of beyinge, comyn in to medlynge, so þat þe leste  
partye of þat on entre in to þe leste partye of þat opere partye,  
medlynge brekyth here contrariosite, & þere of comme a newe forme  
& a newe complexioun of þe medlynge of here substaunce. Al so 28  
þe medlynge of þe qualitees & þe quantites ys fer drawyn from þe  
contraryousite of þe same elementes, & so complexioun is nyth  
brought to a mene, & so þat þat ys medlyde ys more able to resseyuen  
þe noble forme of lyff, þe whiche noblete aboffe alle bodyes y-medlyde 32  
ys y-founden in Mannys spiryt. But for þat þe qualites, þat with þo  
bodyes of Elementes comyth in to Medlynge—& yt ys vnpossible to  
departe þo qualites from bodyes—ben foure: hot, colde, moyst, &  
drye, & complexiouns ben by ham, yt ys necessarie to fynden in 36  
bodyes þat ben medlyde, foure complexiouns; Complexioun ys  
noþyng<sup>t</sup> ellys but a manere qualite medlyde in worchyng<sup>t</sup>, &  
suffryng<sup>t</sup> of contrariouse qualites þat buþ founden in Elementis, so  
þat þe leste partye of eche elemente entre in to þe leste partye of þe 40  
opere partye. And for þat þilke foure complexiouns: hot, colde,



- .iiij. complexiouns, hoot, moist, coold & drie, sumtyme ben y-componed, þat is to seie, medlid, þer comen in hem .viiij. as : hoot & drie, hoot & moist, & coold & drie, and coold & moist / Foure of þese ben symple, and foure componed ; & for þilke .viiij. sumtyme ben wiþ mater, & sumtyme wiþoute mater / þer ben .xvj. ; & for þilke .xvj. aftir sum consideracioun moun be naturel to summan, & summan vnnaturel / þer moun be .xxxij. Neuereþelatter among alle þe complexiouns þat man mai fynde, þat is componed of dyuers qualitees, þere ne is noon so temperat, as is mannes complexioun ; & hauynge reward to mannes complexioun, alle opere þingis \*[ys] I-clepid, hoot, coold, moist, <sup>1</sup> eiþer drie. / Whanne <sup>2</sup> þat a mete or a medicyn haþ suffrid kyndely heete þat is in man, þat heetiþ him nouȝt, ne drieþ him nouȝt, ne moistiþ hym nouȝt, so þat mannes complexioun may not conseyue wheþer it coldiþ him, heetiþ or drieþ or moistiþ him : it is clepid temperat / & þilke þing þat we seie is hoot in þe firste degree, þat is I-heet of kyndely heete þat is in oure bodies, & heetiþ oure bodies wiþouten greuauncis / & þilke we seien to be hoot in þe secunde degree, which þat is het of oure kyndely heete, so heetiþ oure bodi þat he ne myȝte heete us no more wiþoute greuaunce /

hot, moist, cold, and dry. By mixing them we get 8;

and as these may be either with or without matter, 16;

and as they are either natural or unnatural in some men, 32.

Compared with men's complexion, [1 leaf 4]

other things are hot, cold, moist, or dry.

A medicine which does not affect a man's complexion is called temperate.

A hot meat or medicine may be hot,

in 1 gradu,

in 2 gradu,

<sup>2</sup> A mistranslation from the Latin : *Illam namque rem . . . dicimus esse temperatam, quæ cum passa fuerit a calore naturali, qui est in nobis, non calefit, etc.*

- 20 moiste & drye, sumtyme ben y-componyd, þat ys to sugge medlyde, þere comen of hem VIII, as hote & drye, hote & moist, colde & drye, colde & moiste ; ffoure of þese ben symple, & foure ben componyd. And for þilke VIII sumtyme ben with mater, sumtyme withoute mater, þere ben XVI ; & for þilke XVI, after sum consideracioun mowe ben natureh to sum Man, <sup>3</sup> & to sum man vn natureh, þere mowe ben XXXII. Nevere þe lattere amonge alle þe complexiouns þat man may fynden, þat is componyd of dyuerse qualites, þere nys non so temperat as ys mannes complexioun ; havynge rewarde to mannes complexioun, alle opere þynge ys\* clepyde colde, hote, moyste, opere drye. Whanne þat a mete, opere a medycine, hath y-suffryde kendlye hete þat ys in Man, & hetyth hym noȝt & colyth hym nauȝt, ne dryeþ hym noȝt, ne moysted hym noȝt, so þat mannes complexioun may noȝt conseyven wheþer yt colde hym, ore hete, dryȝe, opere moyste, yt is clepyde temperat ; & þilke thyng we sigge is hot in þe firste degree, þat ys y-hatte of kendlye hete, þat ys in oure bodyes & hetyth oure bodyes withouten grevaunce, & þilke we siggen be hote in þe secunde degree, whiche þat ys y-hette of oure kendlye hete, so hetyth oure body, þat he ne myȝte hete vs namore withouten greuaunce ; hot in þe þridde degree :

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fol. 35 a]



in <sup>3</sup> gradu, pilke we seie to be hoot in þe þridde degree, which þat is het of  
 in <sup>4</sup> gradu. <sup>1</sup>kyndely heete bryngiþ to oure bodi sensible greuauunce. & pilke  
 is in þe fourþe degree, þat is hot of <sup>2</sup>vnkyndely heete, distroieþ þe  
 bodi openliche / & in þis same maner 3e moun knowe degrees þat 4  
 ben colde / I mai preue in þis maner, þat it is nessessarie a surgian  
 to knowe complexiouns of bodies, lymes, & of medicyns. Take .ij.  
 men þat ben of oon age, & lete hem ben I-woundid wiþ a swerd or  
 a knyf<sup>3</sup> þwert ouer þe arm in oon hour & in oon place; oon of 8  
 [4 lf. 4, bk.] þe men is of an <sup>4</sup>hoot complexioun & a moist, þat oper of a cold  
 complexioun & a drie. þe comoun seiynge of lewid men is þat þei  
 schulden boþe ben helid on o maner; but resonableurgerie I-preued  
 techiþ us, þat þei ne schulde not boþe be helid aftir oon maner / For 12  
 he þat haþ an hoot complexioun, & a moist, may liztly haue an hoot  
 enpostym—þat is an hoot swellynge—& þat may be cause of an  
 hoot feuere. What schalt þou þanne do? þou must loke, wheþer he  
 haþ bled myche blood at his wounde, and þanne it is weel; ellis 16  
 lete him blood of þe contrarious arme, or ellis\*—of þe oon same side,  
 if strenkþe & age acorde; or ventose<sup>5</sup> him on þe two buttokkis, if  
 þat he be feble. & if he may not schite<sup>6</sup> oones a day, helpe him

<sup>1</sup> *vn* above line.<sup>2</sup> *vn* in different hand.<sup>3</sup> *ouer* above line.<sup>5</sup> Lat. ventosare. Kersey, *Dict.* Ventose, a Cupping Glass.<sup>6</sup> Lat. ascellare. Add. MS. translates accurately: *go to sege*. See below.

Add. MS. 12,056. pilke we sigge to be hot in þe þridde degre, whiche þat ys y-hatte of 20  
 kendlye hete, bryngeþ to oure bodye sencyble greuauunce; **hot in þe  
 fourþe degre**: and pilke in þe fourþe gre þat is y-hat of kendly hete,  
 dystroyeþ þe body opynlyche; & in þis same manere 3e may knowe  
 degrees þat ben colde, & y may preue in þis manere þat yt is 24  
 necessarye a surgyne to knowe complexiouns of bodyes, lymes, & of  
 medycynes. ¶ Take two men þat ben off one age, & lete hem ben  
 y-woundyde with a swerd opere a knyffe twarte offere þe arme, in  
 [7 fol. 35 v] one oure & in <sup>7</sup>one place. One of þo men ys of an hote complexioun 28  
 & a moyste, þe opere of a colde & a drye; þe comyne siggyng of  
 lewyde men ys, þat þey scholde boþe by helyde aftere o manere.  
 But resonable surgye wel y-proved, techith vs þat þey ne schulle  
 nozt boþe ben y-helyde aftere on manere; for he þat haþ an hot 32  
 complexioun & a moyst, may lyztliche haue an hote enposteme, þat  
 ys an hote swellynge, & þat may be cause of an<sup>8</sup> hote ffeyvre. What  
 schaltou þanne do? þou moste loke wheþer he haue y-bled myche  
 blod at hys wounde, & þenne it ys wel, ellys lete hym blod of þe 36  
 contraryose arme, opere ellys\* on þe fot on þe same syde; 3if strengþe  
 & age acorde, opere ventuse hym on þe tweye buttokkis; gif þat he  
 be feble, 3if he may nozt go to sege onys a day, helpe hym þereto

<sup>8</sup> *an* above the line.

People of  
 different  
 complexions  
 must be  
 treated  
 differently.  
 1. For a  
 patient of a  
 hot and moist  
 complexion,  
 use blood-  
 letting, cup-  
 ping and  
 purging.



- perto, or with clisterie, or wip suppositorie. & brynge þou þe parties of þe wounde togidere þoru; sowynge, or wip plumaciols—þat ben smale pelewis—or wip byndynge, if þat sewynge be nouȝt nesses-  
 4 sarie, & þanne worche aboute þe wounde, as it is told aftir in þe book. But aboute þe wounde leie a medicyn defensif, of bole armonyac<sup>1</sup>, oile of rosis, & a litil vynegre; so þat <sup>2</sup>þe medicyn touche þe brynkis of þe wounde, þat humouris moun not haue her cours  
 8 to renne to þe wounde; & we forbeden him wiyn, mylk & eiren & fisch þat engendriþ myche blood / But he schal ete for his mete growel maad of otemele, eiþir of barli mele wip almaundis; & generaliche he schal vse a streit dietynge, til þat he be sikir þat he  
 12 schal haue noon hote enpostym. & if þat we kunne fende him fro a feuere & apostym, þe science of his complexioun techiþ us, þat he may of his sijknes soone be hool / þe opere of þe cold complexioun schal not be leten blood ne ventusid, for blood schulde be kept in  
 16 him, as for tresour / Forbede hem neiþir wiyn ne fleisch, for þe stomak þat is so feble ne myȝte nouȝt engendre nessessarie mater of blood þat longiþ to þe wounde / Ne we drede nouȝt in him þe feuere, for his complexioun is nouȝt able to resceyue þe feuere / We moun

Close his wound with compresses or with bandages,

and apply an vnguentum defensivum.

[<sup>2</sup> leaf 5]

He must keep a strict diet. *dieta.*

2. Keep the blood in a patient of cold complexion; give him wine and meat.

Compare: *a Sege of a Privay*; gumfus. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 328. Compare the French: aller à la selle.

<sup>1</sup> *Bole Armoniack.* See N. E. Dict.

- 20 opere wit clysterie, opere with suppositorie; & brynge þou þe parties of þe wounde to-gedire, opere with sowynge, opere wip plumaciolus—þat bep smale pelewys—opere with byndynge, ȝif þat sowynge be noȝt necessarie. And þenne worche aboute þe wounde,  
 24 as it ys tolde aftere in þe boke; but aboue þe wounde leye a Medycine defensiuē, of bol Armonyac, oyle of rosys, & a litel vynegre, so þat þe medycine touche þe sydes of þe woundes, þat humours mowe noȝt hauen here cours to renne to þe wounde. And  
 28 we forbyde hym wyn, Milke, & eyren, & fysch, þat engendrith myche blod; but he schal ete for his Mete grueh y-made of ote Mele, opere barly mele with Almaundes, & generaliche he schal vsen a streyt<sup>3</sup> doynge, tyl þou be sykere þat he schal haue non enposteme.  
 32 And ȝif þat we kunne dyffenden hym from a ffevyre & aposteme, þe science of hys complexioun techyth vs þat he may of hys seknesse sone be hol. ¶ þe opere of þe colde complexioun ne schal noȝt be leten blod ne ventusyde, ffor blod scholde be kepte in hem as for  
 36 tresoure; forbyde hym neiþere wyn ne flesch; for þe stomak þat ys so feble, ne myȝte nouȝt engendre necessarie mater of blod þat longyth to þe wounde; ne we dredyth noȝt in hym þe ffevyre, for his complexioun ys noȝt able to resceyuen þe ffevyre. We mowe

Add. MS. 12,056.

[<sup>3</sup> fol. 36 a]



vitriol  
has a differ-  
ent effect on  
different com-  
plexions.

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 5, bk.]

Galien

Limbs of  
different  
complexions  
must be  
treated  
differently.

fynde a medicyn maad in oon maner þat worchip dyuers effectis, & he be I-leid to dyuers complexiouns / Grene vitriol, & he be do to a man of a drie complexioun engendrith fleisch<sup>1</sup>; & if þou leie<sup>2</sup> him on moist compleccioun, he greueþ nouzt oonliche, but corrodith it; and neþeles vitriol haþ but oon maner worchinge, þouþ þat he worche dyuersliche in dyuers complexiouns / Riȝt as þe worchinge of þe sunne is dyuers, nouzt for þe sunne, but for þe worchinge of dyuers bodies into whom he worchip / Vitriol drieþ wondirfulliche myche: in drie bodies he defendiþ<sup>3</sup> þe smale lymes myȝt<sup>4</sup> to azenstonde his miȝt, wherfore he may nouzt but drie þe superfluytees þat he fyndiþ in þe wounde; & whanne þo ben y-dried, kynde engendriþ fleisch. In moiste bodies, for þat þe smale lymes ben feble<sup>5</sup> & moun not wiþstonde þe strenkþe of þe vitriol, þe fleisch meltiþ vndir it, & so bi vitriol þe fleisch rotiþ. & þat is seid of dyuers complexiouns, is y-seid of dyuers lymes / Galicun seiþ: If þat tweye woundis ben euene I-quytturid, & þe oon be a drie lyme, & 16 þe oþer a moist lyme, þat þat is þe drie lyme nedip þe moister medicyn / And if þat .ij. lymes leue<sup>5</sup> ben I-woundid þat ben lich

<sup>1</sup> *fleisch* in margin.

<sup>3</sup> *defendiþ*, mistake for *fyndiþ*; see below.

<sup>4</sup> *myȝt* for *myȝty*; see below.

<sup>5</sup> *leue* for *leche*?

Add. MS. 12,056. fynden a Medycine made in o manere þat wirchith dyuerse effectis, & he be y-leyde to dyuerse complexiouns. Grene vytreole, & he be 20 done to a Man of dryȝe complexioun, engendrith flessch; & ȝif þou leggen hym on a moyste complexioun, he greuyth noȝt onlyche, but coroduþ yt. And napeles vitreole haþ but one manere wyrchinge, þouþ he wirche dyuerslyche in dyuerse complexiouns, ryȝte as þe 24 wirchyng of þe sonne ys dyuerse—noȝt for þe sonne, but for þe wyrchyng of dyuerse bodyes in whom he wyrchyth. Vitreole dryeþ wonderlyche muche, & in dryȝe bodyes he fyndeþ þe smale lymes myghty to ageyne stonden hys strengþe. Wherefore he may 28 nought but drye þe superfluites þat he fynte in þe<sup>6</sup> wounde; & whenne þo ben y-dreyede, kynde engendryth flessch. In moyste bodyes, ffor þat þe smale lymes beþ feble, & mowe noȝt withstande þe strengthe off þe vytreole, þe flessch meltiþ vndire yt, & so be þe 32 vitreole þe flessch rotyth; & þat þat ys seyde of dyuerse complexiouns, ys y-seyde of dyverse lymes. **Galyen**: ȝif þat tweye woundes<sup>7</sup> ben evyne i quyter, & þe on be in a dryȝe lyme, & þe 36 oþere in a moyste lyme, þat þat is in þe dryore lyme nedip þe dryore medycine. And ȝif þat two lymes ben y-wounded þat ben lyche in

[7 fol. 36 v]

<sup>6</sup> *wound*, cancelled because blotted after *in þe* and re-written.



in complexioun, & þe oon haþ myche quytture & þe toþer litil, he þat haþ þe myche quytture, nedip to han þe drier medicyn /

- <sup>1</sup> **I**ohannes damascenus seiþ, Medicyns & enplastris schulden ben [<sup>1</sup> lf. 6]  
 4 **I**acordynge to þe lymes þat þei ben leid on / **Galienus**: a kyndly **Galienus**  
 þing<sup>1</sup> schal be kept wiþ a þing<sup>1</sup> þat is kyndly þerto / And þat is aȝen  
 kynde schal be doon awei with þing<sup>1</sup> þat is contrarie þerto / If þat  
 a surgian knew not complexiouns of lymes & of bodies, he schal  
 8 nouȝt conne to schewynge hise medicyns aftir þat kynde askip. **A** **nota**  
 surgian must knowe generacioun of humouris, if he wolde knowe A Surgeon  
must know  
the genera-  
tion of the  
Humours,  
and the  
different  
offices of the  
Limbs.  
 þe science & þe helynge of apostymes, as it schal be declarid in þe  
 tretis of apostymes. He muste knowe þe dyuersitees & þe profitis  
 12 & þe officis of lymes, þat he mowe knowe, what lymes han a greet  
 worching in mannes body, & whiche ben of greet felynge, & whiche  
 moun bere a strong<sup>1</sup> medicyn / & þe vertues of lymes þou must  
 knowe, þat he se, whanne þe worching of ony vartu failip in ony  
 16 lyme, þat he mowe helpe þe vertu & þe same lyme failynge. & if  
 he haue þe science of knowynge of vertues, þe science of spiritis  
 schal nouȝt be hid fro him. Alle þese þingis bifore seid ben but  
 natureles, & þei <sup>2</sup>ben but techinge of medicyns speculatif / [<sup>2</sup> lf. 6, bk.]  
 20 Also he muste haue knoueleching of þingis þat ben not naturels,  
 þat he kunne chese good eir to him þat is woundid or ellis haþ He must also  
know the  
things which  
are not

complexioun, & þat on haþ myche quyter and þe opere lyte, he þat Add. MS.  
12,056.  
 haþ myche quyter nedyth to haven þe dryere medycine. **Iohannes**

- damacenus**: Medycines & enplastres scholde ben acordynge to þe  
 24 lymes þat þey ben y-leyde on. **Galienus**: a kendlye thyng schal  
 be kepte with þynge þat ys kendlye þere to; and þat þat is aȝeyne  
 kynde schal be done away with þynge þat is contrarye þere to. ȝif  
 28 þat a surgien knowith noȝt complexiouns of lymes & of bodyes, he  
 schal noȝt kunne to chaungen hys medycines aftere þat kynde  
 askeþ. A surgien moste knowe generacioun of humours, ȝif he  
 wolde knowen þe sciense & þe helynge of Apostemys, as yt schal ben  
 32 declared in þe tretys of apostemes; he moste knowyn þe dyuersite,  
 & þe profytes, & þe offices of lymes, þat he mowe knowen what  
 lymes han grete wyrchyng in mannys body, & whiche ben of grete  
 felynge, & whiche mowe bere a stronge Medycine; & þe vertues of  
 36 lymes he moste knowe, þat he se whanne þat þe worchyng of enye  
 vertue fayleþ in enye lyme, þat he mowe helpe þe vertue in þe same  
 lyme faylinge. And ȝif he haue þe science of knowynge of vertues,  
 þe sciense of spiritus ne schuþ noȝt ben y-hud from hym. Alle þese  
 40 þynges before seyde beþ natureles, & þey beþ techynge of medycine  
 speculatyff. Also he moste han knowynge of thynges þat beþ noȝt  
 natureles, þat he kunne chesen gode eyre to hym þat is y-woundyde,



natural, as  
the effect of  
the air on a  
wound.

nota

He must  
know how to  
prescribe  
moving or  
rest.

[<sup>5</sup> ff. 7]

Nota

He must  
regulate the  
patient's  
sleep,

a boch<sup>1</sup> / Woundis moun not be<sup>2</sup> dried in a moist eir & a vapouris,  
but þei þat ben woundid musten ben chaungid fro þat moist eir to a  
swete cleer eyr & a drie / In wyntir he muste kepe him fro cold;  
for no þing<sup>3</sup> greueþ so myche boones & senewis as cold<sup>3</sup> þat ben 4  
I-woundid / & in somer he muste haue temperable eir. It is  
nessessarie þat he kunne dietyn his pacient, as I schal telle in þe  
same chapitle of dietinge / also he muste ordeyne meuyng & reste,<sup>4</sup>  
as it nedip to þe same sijk man / for if þat he be woundid in þe 8  
heed eiper haue ony puncture of ony senewe, it is nessessarie þat he  
reste & dwelle in stillenes & haue an esy bed & a soft; lest he suffre  
ony traueile of his lymes / But if þat olde woundis wipout akyng  
weren in his armes, it were good to him, þat is sijk, to walke on his 12  
feet, & lete his arme be bounde to his necke; & if þat þe wounde  
be in hise schynes & in hise feet, it were good þat he lay &  
traueilide wip hise hondis / Also a <sup>5</sup>surgian, in al þat he myzte, he  
muste tempere a sijk mannes slepinge; for to myche slepinge 16  
engenderip superfluyte & febliþ his vertewes, & coldip & lesip al his  
bodi / To myche wakinge dissolueþ & confoormeþ<sup>6</sup> hise spiritis &

<sup>1</sup> *boch*, Latin *apostema*; M. E. *botch*. See N. E. Dict.

<sup>2</sup> *heelid* cancelled.

<sup>3</sup> *as cold* misplaced; see below.

<sup>4</sup> *to* cancelled after *reste*.

<sup>6</sup> *confoormeþ*, erroneously for *consumeþ*, as below. Lat. Orig.: *dissolvunt et consumunt*.

Add. MS. 12,056. 7moyste eyre & a vaporose, but þey þat ben y-woundyde most bene 20  
[7 fol. 37 a] y-chaungyde from þat moyste eyre to a swote cler eyre & a dryze.  
In wyntere he moste kepe hym from colde, ffor nopinge grevyth so  
myche bonys & synwes þat buþ y-woundyde as colde. And in  
somere he moste han a temperable eyre; hit ys necessarye þat he 24  
kunne dyoten hys pacient, as y schal tellen in þe same ChapyteH of  
dyotyng. Also he moste ordeyne moffyng & reste, as yt nedep to  
þe same syke man; ffor 3if þat he be woundyde in þe hed, opere  
haue eny puncture off enye synwe, it ys necessarye þat he reste: 28  
dwelle he in styllenesse, & haue an euene bed & a softe, leste he  
suffren enye trauaylle of hys lemys; but 3if þat olde woundes,  
wipouten akyng, weren in hys Armes, hit were gode to hym þat ys  
seke to walken on hys fete, & bere hys arme y-bounden to hys 32  
nekke; & 3if þat þe wounde be in hys schynys & in hys ffete, hit  
were gode þat he leyze & trauelyde with hys handes. Also a  
surgien, in alle þat he myghte, he moste atempre a syke Mannes  
slepyng, ffor to myche slepyng engendreþ superfluyte, & feblyth 36  
his vertues, & coldyth & losyth alle hys bodye; to myche wakyng  
dyssolip & consumeþ hys spirites, & makyth scharpe hys humores,



makip scharpe hise humouris ; it bryngip vnkindly drowpe to woundis, & is cause of akyng / Also he muste kunne evacuener him free the patient from evil humours pat is ful of yuel humouris & fulfille him pat is waastid, pat he  
 4 brynge sike men to good temperaunce ; ellis a wounde mai not be heelid / Entempre he pe herte of him pat is sijk, for to greet wrappe. and take care that the heart is temperate.  
 makip pe spiritis renne to myche to pe wounde & pat is caus of swellynge ; to greet drede, oupir vttereste<sup>1</sup> of heelp of his wounde,  
 8 holdip pe spiritis wipinne his bodi, pat mater mai not come to heele his wounde / þese .vj. þingis ben clepid vnnaturel,<sup>2</sup> which techip a man speculatijf of leche craft.

He muste knowe pe sijknes : as olde wounde, festre, cankre &  
 12 alle opere soris, pat he traueile not in veyn & brynge pe sike man to his deef / For ech dyuers soor nedip dyuers helpingis. He muste knowe pe cause of pe wounde / ffor a wounde, pat is <sup>3</sup>maad wip a swerd eiper a knyf, must operwise be heelid, þan he pat is  
 16 maad wip stoon eiper fallinge / And a wounde pat is biten wip an hound schal operwise be heelid, þan he pat is biten with a wood hound ; as þou schalt fynde soone told in pe book hereafter / & he muste knowe pe accidentis pat ben aboute a wounde / for pe wounde  
 20 schal neuere heele, til pe accidentis be remeued away / accidentis is and the accidentes which befall a wound.

<sup>1</sup> *uttereste*, only known as an adj. : *extremus*, erroneously for *untruste*. See below.

<sup>2</sup> Lat. *quæ sunt secundum membrum theoricæ medicinæ*.

& hit bryngeþ vnkyndly drowpe to woundes, & ys cause of akyng ; Add. MS. also he moste kunne evacuen hym pat ys ful of euele humores, & 12,056.  
 fulfille hym pat ys wastyde, pat he brynge seke men to gode  
 24 temperaunce ; ellys a wounde may nozt ben helyd ; entempre he pe hert of hym pat ys seke, ffor to gret wratthe makyþ pe spirites renne to myche to pe wounde, & pat ys cause of swellynge ; <sup>4</sup>to grete drede, [<sup>4</sup> fol. 37 b]  
 opere vntryst of helpe of hys wounde holdip spyrites withynne hys  
 28 body, pat mater may nouzt come to hele pe wounde. þese sixe thynges ben y-clepyde vnnaturell, whiche techith a Man speculatyff of leche craft. He mot knowen pe seknesse, as olde wounde, festre, cancre, & alle opere sores, pat he traveylle nozt in deveyne, & brynge  
 32 pe seke man to hys deþ : ffor eche dyverse sore nedith dyverse helpynges. He mote knowe pe cause of pe wounde ; ffor a wounde pat is mad with a swerd opere a knyff mote opere weys ben helyde þen he pat is y-makyde with ston, opere with fallynge, & a wounde  
 36 pat is byten with an hounde schal opere weys ben helyde þen he pat ys y-byten with a wod hound, as þou schalt fynde tolde in pe boke hereafter. And he mot knowe pe Accidentes pat buþ aboute a wounde, ffor the wounde schal neuere hele tyl pe Accidentes ben  
 40 remevyde away. Accidentis ys a þynge pat fallip to pe wounde out



He must  
know how  
to prescribe  
appropriate  
diet.

.Galien.

a þing<sup>1</sup> þat falliþ to a wounde out of kynde as hoot, cold, drie, eiper to myche moistnes, crampe & opere þinges azens kynde / A surgian muste ordeyne dietyng in dyuers maner, as it is told in þe chapitle of dietyng; & whanne it is nedeful, he muste ȝeue dyuers drinkis / 4  
Galien: Laxatiues & vometis ben nedeful to hem, þat han olde rotid woundis & stynkyng / For whanne þe bodi is purgid fro wickide humouris, þe wickidnes of þe mater renneþ fro þe wounde & so þe wounde is sunner helid / He þat biholdiþ alle þe parties of 8 a medicyn, he may weel se þat it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe phisik, & oper dyuers science, as I haue told tofore in þe book.

¶ Þe .iiij. c<sup>o</sup> of þe firste techinge is of intencioun of a surgian / 12

[<sup>1</sup> 1f. 8]  
¶ Cap<sup>m</sup> 3<sup>m</sup>  
¶ .1.  
¶ .2.  
¶ .3.

<sup>1</sup> A l þe entencioun of a surgian, how diuers þat it be, it is on\* [of] þre maners / þe first is vndoynge of þat, þat is hool / þe secunde to hele þat, þat is broke / þe .iiij. is remeuyng of þat, þat is to myche; so þat it be don with hand craft / ffor al entencioun of 16 a surgian is vndir oon of þese .iiij. entenciouns, or ellis vnder oon of hem. A surgian vndoiþ þat þat is hool, whanne he letiþ blood, eiper garsiþ,<sup>2</sup> eiper brenneþ, eiper settiþ on watirlechis, for þis is a  
<sup>2</sup> garsiþ] Lat. scarificat; Fr. gerçer; med. Lat. gersa, garsa. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 150.

A surgeon  
1. either  
undoes what  
is whole,

Add. MS. 12,056. of kynde, as hete, colde, drowþe opere to gret moistnesse, crampe, & 20 opere þynges azeyne kynde. A surgien mot ordeyne dyetyng in dyverse manere, as it is tolde in þe ChapiteH of dyetyng. Whenne þat it is nedful, he mote ȝyve dyverse drynkes. Galien: laxativis & vomytes buþ necessarie to hem þat han olde, rotyde, stynkynde 24 woundes; ffor whanne þat þe body is purgyde from evyle humours, þe wykkednesse of þe matere renneþ from þe wounde, & so þe wounde is sonnere y-helyde. He þat byholdeþ alle þe partyes of a medicine, he may wel se <sup>3</sup>that it is necessarie a surgyne to knowen 28 ffysyk and opere dyverse science, as hit is tolde tofore in þis boke.

[<sup>3</sup> fol. 38 a]

¶ The pridde Chapitele of þe furste techyng is of Intencioun off a Surgyne.

Alle þe entencioun of surgerye, how dyverse þat it be, yt is on 32 \*of þre maneres: þe ffurste ys undoyng þat þat is hol; secunde ys helpyng of þat þat is tobroke; þe pridde ys remevyng of þat þat is to myche, so þat it be do with hande crafte; ffor alle þe entencioun of a surgien ys vndire one of þis þre entensiouns, opere ellys 36 vndire one of hem. A surgyne vndoiþ þat þat ys hol, whanne he letyth blod ore garsyth opere brenneþ, opere setteþ on waterlechys,



- surgiens craft; þouȝ we for oure pride haue left it to barbouris & to wymmen / for Galion & Rasis didn it with her hondis, as her bookis tellen. And we vndoon þat, þat is hool, whanne þat we  
 4 kutten þe veynes, þat ben in þe templis & þe forheed & maken cauterizaciouns for þe sijknes of þe yȝen / And whanne þat we maken cauteries in þe heed & in dyuers placis of þe bodi, as I schal telle in þe chapitle of cauterisyng / þe secunde entencioun is to  
 8 hele þat, þat is broken as woundis, olde woundis, festriss, cankris & in bringyng to her placis ioyntis þat ben oute & in helynge boones þat ben to broken / þe .iij. entencioun is to remeue þat, þat is to myche, as <sup>1</sup>scrofulus of þe heed & þe necke & opere parties of þe  
 12 bodie / cataractis<sup>2</sup>—is a watir þat cometh bitwene þe white of þe iȝen & þe appil; sebel—þat ben veynes þat ben in þe whiȝt of þe iȝen & beþ ful of blood / vngula—is a þing, þat bigynneþ bi þe nose & goiþ ouer þe iȝe til he keuere al þe iȝe—& knottis, þat ben in þe  
 16 iȝe & opere siknes of þe iȝe; & in doynge away polippis, þat is fleisch þat growiþ wipiȝne þe nose; wertis & wennys; ficus, þat is superfluyte þat growen vp on þe skyn of þe pintils hede wipoute, emeraudis<sup>3</sup> & a skyn þat enclosiþ a wommans priuy membre, þe

Nota.  
G. R.

as when he bleeds, scarifies or cauterizes;

or 2. he heals wounds, &c.,

or 3. he removes excrescences, sign. 2j  
[<sup>1</sup> li. 8, bk.]  
as cataracts,

polypuses, and wens.

<sup>2</sup> cataract, sebel and ungula. See Notes.

<sup>3</sup> The Latin text has: superfluitatem hermaphroditis.

- 20 ffor þis ys a surgyns craft, þawȝ we for oure pride have y-lefte yt to laborers & to wommen, for Galien & Rasys dyden it wip here handes as here bokys tellyþ. And we vndoþ þat þat is hol, whenne þat we kutteþ þe veynes þat ben in þe templys & þe forhed, &  
 24 makyth cauterisaciones from þe seknesse of þe eyȝen, & whenne þat we maken Cauteries in þe hed & in dyverse places of þe body as y schal telle in þe chapiteH of Cauterysyng. þe secunde entencioun ys to hele þat þat is to broke as: woundes, olde woundes, ffestres,  
 28 Caneres, and in bringynge to here place Ioyntes þat bene oute, & in helynge bonys þat ben to broken. þe þridde entencioun is to remevyn þat þat ys to myche as scurfyls of þe hed & þe nekke, & opere partyes of þe body, & Cataractis þat ys a water þat comyth  
 32 bytwene þe whyte of þe eyȝe & þe Appul. Sebel þat beþ veynes þat buþ in þe whyte of þe eyȝe, & beþ ful of blod. Vngula, <sup>4</sup>þat ys a thyng þat bygynneþ by þe nese & goth ouere þe eyȝe, tyl he keffere alle þe eyȝe & knottes þat ben in þe eyȝe, & opere seknesse  
 36 of þe eyȝe, & in doynge away polippes þat is flesch þat growiþ with yune þe nese, wertys & wennys, ficus þat is a superfluyte þat growiþ vp on þe skyn off þe pyntellys hed withouten, emeraudes & a schyn

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 38 v]



sixte fingre of þe hond & manye superfluytees þat beþ nouȝt semelich to a mannys body

¶ þe firste chapitle of þe secunde tretis is an vniuersal word of smale lymes & her helpingis, & of gener- 4  
acioun of embrioun, þat is þe child, in þe modir wombe // / /<sup>1</sup>

de anotho-  
[m]ia.

A Surgeon  
must know  
Anatomy.

Auicē.

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 9]

†The Embryo

.G†

is engendered  
of the seed of  
man and  
woman.†

**G** Alienus seiþ, þat it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe anotamie ;  
ne leue we nouȝt þat ech brood ligament is a skyn, & ech 8  
round ligament to be a senewe, so bi his opinyoun he myȝte falle  
into errour / þerfore I þenke to ordeyne a chapitle of þe kynde &  
of the <sup>2</sup>foorme & helpinge of alle smale lymes / Auicē seiþ /  
knoulechinge of a þing, þat haþ cause, mai nouȝt be knowen, but 12  
bi his cause. þerfore we moten knowe þe cause, *membrorum*  
*consimilium*, þat is to seiē, smale lymes. & I wole telle þe genera-  
cioun of embrioun : þat is to seiē, how a child is I-gete in þe modir  
wombe / Galien & auicē tellen, þat of boþe þe spermes of man & 16  
of womman, worchingē & suffrynge togideris, so þat ech of hem  
worche in opir & suffre in opir, embrioun is bigete / But the  
worchingē of mannes kynde is more myȝtiere, & wommans kynde

<sup>1</sup> See *Vicary*, ed. Furnivall, p. 78.

Add. MS. 12,056. þat enclosyth a wommans priue membre, þe sixte fynger of þe hand, 20  
and manye superfluytes þat beþ nought semlye to mannys body.

¶ The ffurste ChapiteH of þe secunde tretys ys an  
universel word off smale lymes, & here helpynges  
of generacioun of enbrion þat is child in þe moder 24  
wombe.

**G** Alien seiþ þat it ys necessarie a Surgien to knowe Anotomye,  
ne leffe henoȝt þat iche brode ligament þat ys a schyn, & iche  
rounde ligament to ben a synwe, & so be hys opynioun he myȝte 28  
fallen in erreure. þerefore i þynke to ordeyne a ChapiteH of þe  
kynde & of þe fforme & þe helpynge of alle smale lymes. Avycene  
seiþ, knowlechynge of a þynge þat haþ cause may noȝt be knowe  
but by hys cause, þerefore we mote knowe þe cause *membrorum* 32  
*consimilium* : þat ys to sigge smale lymes. Y wyl telle þe generacioun  
of embrion, þat ys to sigge, how a childe ys bygete in þe modire  
wombe. Galien and Avycene tellen þat of boþe þe spermes of Man  
& womman—wirchyngē & sofferynge togedires, so þat iche of hem 36  
wirche in opere & suffren in opere—embrion ys bygete. But þe  
worchyngē of Mannes kynde is more myȝtyere, & wommans <sup>3</sup>kynde

[<sup>3</sup> fol. 39 a]



more febler / For riȝt as þe roundeles<sup>1</sup> of chese haþ bi him-silf wei  
of worchinge & þe mylk bi wey of suffrynge, so to þe generacioun  
of embrion mannes sperme haþ him<sup>2</sup> bi wei of worchinge & wommans

- 4 sperme bi wey of suffrynge / & riȝt<sup>t</sup> as þe rundelis<sup>1</sup> & þe mylk  
maken a chese, so boþe þe spermes of man & womman maken  
generacioun of embrioun. þowȝ þat alle þe smale lymes of a child  
ben I-geeten of boþe two spermes, neþeles, to cloþe hem with fleisch  
8 & wiþ fatnes, comeþ to hem menstrie<sup>3</sup> blood / þe maris<sup>4</sup> of womman  
haþ an able complexioun to conseiuen; & of hir kynde he castiþ  
þe spermes to þe depest place of hir; & of hir nature he closiþ hir  
mouþ, þat þer myȝte not entre the poynt of a nedle / & þanne þe  
12 foormal vertu which almyȝty god haþ ȝeue to þe maris ordeyneþ &  
diuidid euery partie of þese spermes in her kynde, til þat þe child  
be born / Vndirstonde þat þe fleisch & þe fatnes is mad of menstrie  
blood, þe boones & gristlis, ligamentis & senewis, cordis, arteries,  
16 veynes, panniclis—þat ben smale cloþis—& þe skyn beþ engendrid  
of boþe þe spermes, as auicen & oþere auctouris tellen / If þat ony of  
þe lymes þat ben engendrid of þe spermes ben doon away \*[he] moun  
neuere veriliche be restorid, for þe mater of hem is þe sperme of þe

†And as ren-  
net curdles  
milk and the  
two make  
cheese,  
so does the  
seed of man  
and woman  
make the  
Embryo.†

sign. 2ij  
[3 lf. 9, bk.]

The flesh  
and the fat  
are formed  
from the  
menstrual  
blood.

The Matrix  
closes itself  
after having  
conceived.

The whole  
body is  
developed in  
the Matrix  
(except the  
flesh and fat)  
from the seed  
of the man  
and woman.

Auicen

<sup>1</sup> roundeles, rundelis. Add. MS. rendelys, coagulum. See Prompt.  
Parv., p. 429, renlys, or rendlys. Comp. O. Du. rinsel, runsel.

<sup>2</sup> mannes sperme haþ him, Lat. ita sperma viri se habet. <sup>4</sup> maris, matrix.

- 20 ys more feblere. Ffor ryȝt as þe rendelys of chese haþ hym by weye of worchyng, & þe Mylk be weye off suffrynge, so to þe  
generacioun of embrion, Mannes sperme<sup>6</sup> hathi hym be weye of  
worchyng, & wommans sperme<sup>6</sup> be weye of suffrynge, & ryȝt as þe  
24 rendles & þe mylk makyth a<sup>5</sup> chese, so boþe þe spermes<sup>6</sup> of man &  
womman makyþ þe generacioun of embrion. þowȝ þat alle þe smale  
lymes of a childe be y-geeten of boþe two spermes,<sup>6</sup> naþeles to cloþe  
hem with flesch & with fatnesse comeþ to hem menstrewed blod. þe  
28 marys of a womman haþ an able complexioun to conseiuen, & of  
here kynde sche castyth þe spermes to þe depeste place off here,  
and of here nature sche closyth hire mouth þat þere myȝte nouȝt  
entre þe poynt of an nedle. And þenne þe foormal virtue whiche  
32 þat almyghty god haþ ȝeuen to the marys, ordeyneþ & deff[e]ndeþ  
every party of þese spermes in here kynde, tyl þat þe childe ben  
yborne. Understande þat þe flesch & þe fatnesse ys y-mad of men-  
strewed blod, the bonys & þe gristlis, ligamentes, synwes, cordes,  
36 Arteries, veynes, pannicles, þat buþ smale cloþes & þe schyn buþ  
engendred of boþe þe spermes, as Avicene & oþere Autores tellyn.  
ȝif þat enye of þe lymes þat buþ engendrede off the spermes be don  
away, \*he may neuere verrellyche ben restoride, ffor þe matere of

Add. MS.  
12,056.

<sup>5</sup> Above line.

<sup>6</sup> MS. spernes.



fadir & of þe modir; but þe fleisch the which mater is blood, þat is  
 aldai engendrid in us, may weel & verriliche be restorid / þese smale  
 lymes han dyuers foormes, complexciouns & helpingis aftir þe  
 dyuersitees of þe proporciouns of þe mater, which þat þei ben maad 4  
 of / for þou3 þat alle þe lymes ben maad of oon mater, I-medlid,  
 [1 ff. 10] neþeles in ech of þe smale ly<sup>1</sup>mes þer is a dyuers proporcioun of  
 mater, for þe which mater þei taken dyuers foormes & dyuers  
 helpingis. Almy3ti god 3eueþ to ech þing<sup>4</sup> of his foorme after þat 8  
 his mater is\* proporciound disserueþ /

consimile  
 membrs.\*\*

1st Member

The Bone.

Its functions:

to move  
 limbs,

protect them,

support the  
 body,

and fill the  
 hollows of  
 joints.

þe boon is þe first of þe consimile membrs—þat is oon of þe  
 smale lymes; þe which ben<sup>2</sup> cold & drie & he haþ dyuers foormes  
 in mannes bodi: for he helpiþ dyuerslich / þe cause whi þer ben 12  
 manye dyuers boones in mannes bodi is, for sumtyme it<sup>3</sup> is nede to  
 meeu e oon lyme withouten anopir & þat were impossible, if þat al  
 þe bodi were but oon boon / Anoper cause whi þer ben manye  
 boones: for summe defenden þe principal lymes from harm, as þe 16  
 brayn scolle from<sup>3</sup> þe brayn of þe heed / summe ben fundamentis,  
 as þe boones of þe rigge & of þe schenes & of þe armes / summe  
 ben as additamentis þat ben in þe side of þe rigge boon, & summe  
 to fulfille the holownes of summe ioyntis, as þe handis & þe feet; 20

<sup>2</sup> ben for is, see below.

<sup>3</sup> from, erroneously inserted.

Add. MS.  
 12,056.

[4 fol. 39 b]

hym ys þe sperme of þe fadire & þe modere. But þe flesch whose  
 matere ys blod þat is al day engendred in vs may wel & verrelliche  
 be restoryde. þese smale lymes han dyverse formes, complexioun,  
 & helpynges after the dyversite of þe proportiouns of þe mater 24  
 whiche þat þey ben<sup>4</sup> mad of; ffor þow3 þat alle the lymes be mad of  
 on matere y-medlyde, napeles in eche of þe smale lymes þere is a  
 dyverse proposicioun<sup>5</sup> of matere, for the whiche matere þey taken  
 dyverse forme & dyverse helpe. Almyghty god gevyth to effrye 28  
 þynge of hys forme after þat hys matere\* proporcioned deservyt.

þe bon is furst of consimile membrs þat is on off smale  
 lymes, þe whiche ys colde & drye, & he haþ dyverse formes in  
 mannes bodye, for he helpiþ dyversliche; þe cause why þere ben 32  
 many dyverse bonys in mannys body is,<sup>6</sup> ffor sum tyme it ys nede  
 to meffyn o lyme without an opere, & þat were impossible, 3if in alle  
 þe body were but on hol bon. An opere cause is why þere ys many  
 bonys; for sum diffenden þe principal lymes from harme, as þe 36  
 brayn scolle þe brayn of þe hed; somme ben ffundamentys, as þe  
 bonys of þe rugge, & of þe schynes, & of þe Armes. Some ben as  
 armure, as additamentys, þat ben in þe syde of þe rugge bon, &  
 somme fulfille þe holwenesse of somme Iunttes, as þe handys & þe 40

<sup>5</sup> read "proporcioun."

<sup>6</sup> is above line.



& summe þer ben þat þe roundnes of þe boon myȝte entre into þe holownes of þat oper boon / & non les schulde not lacke his meuyng as þe schuldre boones & þe hiþe boones. þou maist fynde sign. 2ij  
 4 how manye boones þer ben in þe .ij. tretis, <sup>1</sup>where schal be told [1 lf. 10, bk.]  
 pleyulier þe anotamie of consimile membrs of al þe bodi from þe heed to þe foot.

A gristil is cold & drie, & is neischere þan a boon, & hardere þan 2nd Member, The Gristle; the six uses of Gristle.  
 8 þe fleisch, and in þe fleisch he haþ sixe helpingis / þe firste, þat þat  
 schulde be a meene bitwene þe vtter ende of þe hard boon & þe .1.  
 neische fleisch / þe .ij. þat þe harde schulde not hirte þe neische, .2.  
 nameli in þe tyme of compressioun, & in þe tyme of smytinge / þe  
 12 .iiij. þat þe eende of þe boones whiche þat ben in þe ioyntis schulden .3.  
 haue a softere confutacioun<sup>2</sup> in her ioyntis / þe fourþe, þat he schulde .4.  
 fulfille þe office of þe boon to susteyne a brawne, meuyng a membre  
 þat haþ noon boon, as þe ouer lid of þe iȝe / þe fifþe: for it is .5.  
 16 nessessarie a gristil to ben in place, þat is nouȝt ful hard as þe þrote  
 bolle; for þe eende of þe þrote bolle is gristeli / þe .vj.: for it is .6.  
 nessessarie summe lymes to han a sustentacioun, and applicacioun,<sup>3</sup>  
 þat is foldyng, to be streyned & drawen abrod as þe noseþrillis &  
 20 þe gristile of þe eere.

<sup>2</sup> confutacioun, erroneously for *confricacioun*. See below.

<sup>3</sup> applicacioun. Read a *plicacioun*.

fete, & somme þere ben þat þe roundnesse of on bon myȝte entre in Add. MS. 12,056.  
 to þe holwenesse of þe opere bon & napeles scholde noȝt lakken hys  
 meffynge, as þe schulder bonys, & the heþe bonys. þou maiste fynde  
 24 hou many bonys þere ben in þe secunde tretys where schal be tolde  
 plenerliche—þe Anotamye of consimile membrys of alle <sup>4</sup>þe body, [4 fol. 40 a]  
 from þe hed to þe fot. A grustyȝ ys cold & drye, & is nesschere  
 þenne a bon, & hardere þanne þe flesch, & in þe flesch hath vi  
 28 helpynges. ¶ Helpyng þe grustel. The ffurste þat þere scholde be  
 a Mene, bytwene þe vtter ende of þe hard bon, & þe nessch flesch.  
 ¶ þe secunde, þat þe harde scholde noȝt hurt þe nessche, namlyche,  
 in þe tyme of comprission, & in þe tyme of smytinge. ¶ The  
 32 þridde, þat þe ende of þe bonys, whiche þat ben in þe Iunttes  
 scholde han a softere *confricacioun* in here Iunttes. ¶ þe iiij, þat  
 he scholde fulfille þe office of þe bon, to susteyne a brawne meffynge,  
 a membre þat haþ non bon, as þe overe lyd of þe eyȝe. ¶ þe  
 36 v. for his necessarie a grustyȝ to be<sup>5</sup> in a place þat ys noȝt ful  
 hard, as þe þrote bolle; ffor þe ende of þe þrote bolle ys grustlye.  
 ¶ þe vi. for it is necessarie some lymes to han a sustentacioun &  
 a plicacioun, þat is a foldyng, to be streyned & drawen abrod, as þe  
 40 ueste þrylles & þe grustle of þe ere.

<sup>5</sup> noȝt above line.



3rd Member,  
ligamentis.

[1 lf. 11]

The four uses  
of Ligament.

.1.  
It binds the  
bones to-  
gether,

.2.  
It joins with  
Sinews to  
make *Cordes*,  
i.e. Tendons  
and Muscles,

.3.  
It is a resting-  
place for  
Sinews,

.4.  
It sustains  
the parts  
within the  
body.

4th Member,  
Sinews  
(Nerves).  
They start  
from the  
brain or  
Spinal Cord.  
sign. <sup>2</sup>iiij  
[+ lf. 11, bk.]

Lygament is cold & drie, and goþ out of þe boones & haþ þe foorme of a senewe. & he may be bowid, but he felip nouzt; & he <sup>1</sup>haþ foure helpingis / þe firste is, þat he knyttip oon boon wiþ anoþer / it is nessessarie, þat oon boon be knytt wiþ anoþer, þat 4 many boonys myzte make oon bodi as oon boon, & neuereþelatter ech membre myzte meue bi him-silf, & þerfore þe ligament is as bowable & incensibile / for if þat it hadde be censible, þei myzten nouzt han I-susteyned þe traueile & þe meuyng of þe ioyntis / & 8 if þat he hadde be inflexible as a boon, of whom he comeþ of, oon lyme myzte not han meued wiþouten anoþer / þe secunde help is, þat he is ioyned wiþ senewis to make cordis & brawnes / þe þridde help is þat he schulde be a restyng place to summe senewis / þe 12 fourþe þat bi him þe membris, þat ben wiþinne þe bodies, schulden ben y-teied, þe whiche þat neden hangyng.

A corde<sup>2</sup> is cold & drie, & he comeþ from þe brayne, eiper from þe mucha<sup>3</sup>; þat is þe marie of þe rigge boones // From þe brayn 16 comen .vij. peire cordes. & þei ben clepid sensible senewis / ffrom þe nucha þer comen xxx peire cordis & oon bi him silf & þei ben mouable / And alle þe cordis þat comen of þe <sup>4</sup>brayn & nucha, haþ

<sup>2</sup> There is a constant confusion in all the mediæval medical books between nerves and sinews. See further Notes.

<sup>3</sup> *mucha*, an error for *nucha*; med. Lat. *nucha*. Dufr.: postera pars colli. Fr. nuque. Littré gives references from the 14th cent. for the signification, marrow. See Notes.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

Ligamente is colde & drye, & goþ out of þe bonys, & haþ þe 20 forme of a zenewe, & he may be bowyde, but he felip nozt, & he haþ iiij helpynges. þe fyrste ys þat he knytte on bon with an opere. It is necessarie þat o bon be knytte with an opere, þat manye bonys myzte make on body as on bon, & neuere þe later eche 24 membre myzte meffyn by hym-selfe, & þere fore þe ligamente was bowable & insensible; for 3if þat yt had y-be sensible, þey myzte nouzt have susteynde the travaylle & þe meffynge of þe Iunttys; and 3if þat he hadde be inflexible as a bon, of whom þat he comyþ 28 of, <sup>5</sup>on lyme myzte nozt han meffyde withouten an opere. þe secunde help ys, þat he ys joynede with zenewys to make cordys & brawne. þe þridde helpyng ys, þat he scholde ben a restyng place to summe senewys. þe fourþe, þat be hym þe membris þat ben withynne þe 32 body scholde ben tyede, whiche þat nedyþ hongyng.

A corde ys colde & drye, & he comyþ from þe brayn opere fro þe nuca, þat ys þe marie of þe rugge bonys. ¶ From þe brayn comeþ vij peire cordys, & þey buþ y-clepyde sensible zenewys, from þe nuca 36 þere comyþ xxx peire cordys, and on by hym selfien & þey buþ mevable; & alle þe cordys þat comyþ of þe brayn, & þe nuca

[5 fol. 40 v]



boþe felynge & meuynge. & þe cordis ben white oute, bowable, strong<sup>t</sup> & tow<sup>3</sup>. & of her kynde þei bryngen meuynge & felynge to lymes. & for þat it is long<sup>t</sup> & dyuydiþ<sup>1</sup> alle þe parties of þe senewis  
 4 \* [in þe secunde tretys y schal ordeyne Anotamye of 3enewes & here place] as þei ligge; in þe whiche placis þou must be war whanne þou schalt kutte eiþer brenne / whanne þat we schulen ordeyne anotamie of official membris & of her woundis / Official membris  
 8 is to seie: a fyngir, a ioynt<sup>t</sup>, an hand, eiþer a foot \*[ore] opere lymes of office /

Nerves of Feeling spring from the Brain: those of Motion from the Spinal Cord.

Official membris.

Arteries ben hoot nouȝt of her owne kynde, but for þe hoot blood & lijf þat goiþ in hem from þe herte. Of her kynde þei ben  
 12 colde & drie & þei han two cloþis, outcept oon þat goiþ to þe lungis þe ynnere corde is stronger & grettere, þat he mowe wiþholde a meuable mater & an hoot. & her bigynnynge is in þe lift side of þe herte. & þere bigynnen two arteries; oon goiþ to þe lunge & hap  
 16 but oon coote and sprat in þe same lunge, & þere endiþ & bringiþ blood to þe lunge, bi whom he is norischid, & spirit of lijf, and þat he myȝte brynge from þe lunge eir to þe herte for to entempre þe fumosite of hete of þe herte. & þis arterie<sup>2</sup> is <sup>3</sup>y-clepid venales. & it

5th Member, Arteries spring from the heart, and have two coats,

[<sup>3</sup> ff. 12]

<sup>1</sup> & dyuydiþ] a mistake for *to dyvyde*. Latin: De divisione vero membrorum multum longa est doctrina.

<sup>2</sup> *Arteria venalis*, Pulmonary vein. It was taken to be an artery, as it carries arterial blood. See *Vicary's Anatomie*, ed. Furnivall, p. 58, note 1.

20 habbeþ boþe felynge & meffynge. & þe cordys ben whyte, bowable, stronge, & tow<sup>3</sup>; & of here kynde þey brynge meffynge & felynge to lymes. & for þat hit is longe to devydeþ alle þe partyes of 3enewes; \*in þe secunde tretys y schal ordeyne Anotamye of  
 24 3enewes & here place,\* as þey ligge; in þe whiche place þou moste be ware, whenne þou schalt kutte opere brenne, whenne þat we schulle ordeyne Anotamye of official membris & of here woundes. Official membre ys to sigge: a ffynger, a ioynt, an hand, opere a  
 28 fote \*ore opire lymes of ofyce.

Add. MS. 12,056.

Arteries beþ hote, nouȝt for here owne kynde, but for þe hote blod & lyf þat goþ in ham from þe herte. Of here kynde þey ben colde & drye, & þey han tweye cloþes, outsepte on þat goth to þe  
 32 longes. þe innore cote <sup>4</sup>is grettere & strengere, þat he mowe withholde a Mevable matere & an hote. & here bygynnynge is of þe lyfte syde of þe herte. & þere bygynneþ tweye Arteries, on goþ to þe longe & hap bot on cote & sprat in þe same longe, & þere endyth  
 36 & bryngeþ blod to þe longe, by whom he ys y-norysschyde, & spirit of lyf, & þat he myȝte brynge from þe longe eire<sup>5</sup> to þe herte, for to entempren þe fumose hete of þe same herte. & þis Arterie ys clepyde

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 41 a]

<sup>5</sup> MS. *eiþere*.



save *Arteria venalis*, and that has but one.

The uses of Arteries:

1. to bring cold air to the heart;

2. to cast out the fumosity;

3. to carry life to the whole body.

is a maner veyne, for as myche as he ne haþ but oon coote, and þerfore he is þe more obedient to be drawe abroad þoru; out alle þe lungis; & also þat þe blood þat norischip þe lungis myzte listly swete out of þis arterie / þe toþer arterie þat comeþ out of þe lift- 4 side of þe herte haþ two cootis, bi cause þat oon myzt not azenstonde þe strenkþe of þe spiritis; & also þat, þat is wiþinne þe arterie, is ful derworþe & nedip greet kepinge / þer ben þre helpingis of þe arteries: oon is þat cold eir myzte bi hem be drawe & I-brouzt to 8 þe herte whanne þe arterie is drawe abroad. þe secunde is, þat þe fumosite myzte be cast out whanne he is constreyned / þe þridde is, þat þe spirit of lijf myzte be brouzt bi hem to al þe bodi / þese arteries ben deuydid many weies; whos dyuysious man mai nouzt 12 conseyue bi his witt, ne þei ben nouzt dredful to<sup>1</sup> surgiens craft, but whanne þou schalt drede þe arteries I schal telle þee in her placis /

6th Member, veynes.

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 12, bk.]

Veins spring from the liver.

Veynes bi cause of her bodies ben deemed cold & drie; for þe 16 blood þat is withynne hem þei ben deemed hoot; & alle þe veynes han her bi<sup>2</sup>gynnyng at þe lyuere, in þe which lyuere .ij. veynes han pryncipal bigynnyng / oon veyne bigynneþ of þe holow; side of þe lyuere. & is clepid porta<sup>3</sup>—þat is a zate / & her office is to drawe \*[Chilum] 20

<sup>1</sup> a erased.

<sup>3</sup> *Vena Porta*. See *Vicary*, p. 22, note 1.

Add. MS. 12,056.

*venalis*, & yt is a manere veyne, ffor as myche as he may haue but o cote, & þerfore he is þe more obedient to be drawen abroad þorwe out alle þe longes & also þat þe blod þat norysschitþi þe longe myzte listlokere swete out of þis arterie. þe opere Artery, þat 24 comyth out of þe lefte syde of þe herte, haþ two cotys, because þat on myzt nozt ageyne stonde þe strengþe of þe spirites, and also þat þat is wiþinne þe Arterye is ful derwarde & nedip gret kepyng. þere ben þre helpynges of þe Arteries: on is þat colde eyre by hem 28 myzte be drawe & y-brouzt to þe herte, whenne þe arterye is drawe abroad; þe secunde ys þat þe fumosite myzt be caste out, whenne sche is constreynyde; þe þridde ys þat þe spirite of lyf myzte be brozt by hem to alle þe body. þese Arteries beþ devydyde many 32 weyes, whose divisiones Man may nozt conseyve by hys wyt, ne þey ne beþ nozt dredful to surgiens crafte; but whenne þou schalt drede þe arterye i schal tellen þe in here places.

Veynes by cause of here bodies beþ y-demyde colde & drye; but 36 for þe blod þat is withynne hem þey beþ y-demyde hote, & alle þe veynes han here <sup>4</sup>bygynnyng of þe lyffere, in þe whiche lyffere two veynes han pryncipal begynnyng. On veyne bygynneþ of þe holwe syde of þe lyvere, & ys y-clepyde **Porta**, þat ys a zatte, & here ofyce 40 is to drawe *chilum* from þe stomake & þe guttes by mene of þe

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 41 b]



fro þe stomak & þe guttis bi mene of þe veynes miseraices<sup>1</sup>; & þilke The Mesaraic veins bring

chilum spredip þoru; al þe lyuere bi mene of veynes capillares /

Chilum<sup>2</sup> is þe licour of þe mete, whanne it goiþ out of þe stomak & Chilum to the Portal Vein.

4 þe guttes / Veynis miserak<sup>1</sup> ben smale veynes þat comen out of þe veyne þat is clepid porta & cleueþ on þe stomak & þe guttis / Venes capillares, þat ben veynes as it were heers of a mannes heed /

After hem comeþ panniclis—þat is to seie smal clooþ, þat is maad 7th Member, panikkelles. the fleshy membrane. The uses of the Pannicle.

8 of sutil þedis of senewis, veynes & arteries / wherfore þei ben colde

& drie & censible / & þei han þre helpingis / þe firste is: þat þei

moun bynde manye þingis in oon foorme, as þe panicle of þe heed .1.

byndip seuene boones / þe secunde Iunament is: þat þei hangen & .2.

12 bynden summe membrs wiþ opere as þe reynes to þe rigge & þe

maris to þe maris<sup>3</sup> to þe rigge / þe þridde helpinge is: þat þe mem- .3.

bris þat ben incensibile bi her kynde, bi þe panniclis þat wrieþ hem [4 ff. 13]

velen bi accident: as þe lungis, þe lyuere, & þe splene, & þe reynes.

16 þes lymes bi her kynde han no felynge, but what þei felen it is bi accidens of þe pannicle þat wrieþ hem.

þe<sup>5</sup> fleisch is not hoot, but it is moist & haþ þre maner lijknis: 8th Member Flesh.

oon is a symple fleisch, & his helpinge is to fulfille þe voyde placis 3 Maner of fleisch.\*\*

<sup>1</sup> *Veynis miserak.* See *Vicary*, p. 66, note 7.

<sup>2</sup> *Chilum.* See *Vicary*, p. 68, note 2.

<sup>3</sup> MS. þe maris to þe maris to þe rigge. The second *maris* is cancelled.

<sup>5</sup> Latin: *Caro vero calida est et humida.*

20 veynes miscraykus; þilke chylum spredeþ þorwe al þe lyffere by Add. MS. 12,056.

mene of veynes Capillares. Chilum ys þe licoure of mete & of þe drynke, whanne yt goþ out of þe stomake & þe guttes. Veynes miserayke beþ smale veynes, þat comyþ out of þe veyne þat is

24 y-clepyde porta, & clevyþ on þe stomake & þe gottys. Veynes capillarys þat beþ veynes, as yt were herys of a Mannes hed.

¶ After hem comyþ pannyceles, þat ys to sigge, a smal cloth, þat ys mad of sotyþ predys of synwis veynes & arteries, where

28 fore þey ben colde & dryþe & sensible, & þey han þre helpynges.

þe firste is þat they mowe bynden manye þynges in on forme, as þe pannicle of þe hed bynde vii bonys; þe secunde Iuvament is þat

þey hongen & bynden somme membrys with opere, as þe reyns to þe

32 rugge & þe marys to þe rugge bon; þe þrydde helpynge ys þat some membrys þat beþ insensible by here kynde, by þe pannycles þat

wreyþ hem feliþ by accydent, as þe longes, þe lyffere, & þe splene, & þe reynes; þese lymes by here kynde haþ non felynge, but what

36 þat þey felyn it ys by Accident of þe pannycle þat wreyþ hem.

þe flesch is noȝt hot, but yt is moist, & haþ þre manere lyknesse; on ys symple flesch, & hys helpynge ys to fulfille þe voyde placys



1.  
Simple flesh  
fills up hol-  
lows.

2.  
Glandulous  
flesh turns

blood into  
milk,  
and makes  
sperm into  
spittle.

3.  
Brawny or  
muscular  
flesh.

of smale lymes to brynge hem to a good schap, & þat ech hard lyme schulde nouȝt hirte oþer wiþ confucacioun<sup>1</sup> togidere / An oþer maner fleisch þer is þat is glandelose, þat is as it were accornis,<sup>2</sup> & his Iuuament is þat he turne<sup>3</sup> humedites, þat is to seie moistnes to her heete; as þe glandelose fleisch of wommans brestis þe which þat turneþ þe blood þat is drawen from þe maris into mylk; & þe glandelose fleisch of þe ballockis, þat turneþ þe blood into sperme / & þe glandelose fleisch of þe chekis þat engendriþ spotil / þe þridde maner fleisch is a fleisch þat is in brawnys, þat is clepid a brawn fleisch, for he is medlid wiþ sutil þedis of cordis, as I schal telle after þe whiche helpingis schal be told in þe <sup>4</sup>anotanie of þe brawn.

[<sup>4</sup> If. 13, bk.]

9th Member,  
Skin.  
It is temper-  
ate.

At þe laste is þe skyn þat is temperat in al her qualitees; & it is maad of smale þedis of veynes, senewis, & arteries, þat makip him censible, & ȝeueþ him lif & worchinge, þat ben gouernouris of al þe bodi. & þe skyn is maad temperat, for he schulde knowe hoot, coold, moist, & drie, soft, hard, scharp, & smoþe / & if þat þe skyn were as sencible as a senewe, þanne a man myȝte not dwelle in erþe ne in hoot eir; ne þe skyn of þe fyngris endis þe whiche þat is more temperat þan ony oþir skyn of þe bodi ne schulde nouȝt be a

<sup>1</sup> *confucacioun*. Addit. *confricacioun*. See page 23, note 2.

<sup>2</sup> *accornis*, glandes.

<sup>3</sup> Latin: eius iuvamentum est, ut convertat humiditates ad eius colorem. The English translator read: calorem.

Add. MS. 12,056. of smale lymes, to bryngen hem to a gode schappe, & þat iche harde lyme <sup>5</sup>ne scholde nouȝt hurten opere with *confricacioun* togedire.

[<sup>5</sup> fol. 42 a]

An opere manere flesch ys þat is glandelose, þat ys as hyt were achcharnes, & hys Iuvamente is þat he turnyþ vmydites to here hete: as þe glandelose flesch of wommans brestys, whyche þat turnyþ þe blod þat ys drawe from þe marys into þe mylk, þe glandelose flesch of þe ballokes, þat turnyþ þe blod into sperme, & þe glandelose flesch off the chekys þat engendreþ spotel. þe þridde manere of flesch ys a flesch þat is in brawnys, þat ys y-clepede a brawny flesch, for he ys medlyde wiþ sotyl þedys of cordys, as y schal tellyn aftere, whose helpynge schal be tolde in þe Anotamye of þe brawne.

At þe laste is þe schyn, þat is temperat in al here qualite, & is y-mad of smale þedys of veynes, synwes, & Arteries, þat makeþ hym sensible, and geveþ hym lyf and norisschyng, þat he be governoure of alle þe body. & þe skyn ys y-mad temperat, for he scholde knowe hot, colde, moyste & drye, soft & hard, scharpe & smeþe; & ȝif þe skyn were as sensible as a ȝenewe, a man myȝte noȝt dwellen in colde eyre, ne in hote eyre; ne þe skyn of þe fyngres endys, whiche þat ys more temperat þenne eny oþere skyn of þe lody, ne scholde



good demere in knowynge hoot, cold, hard, scharp, soft, eiper neische.

Brawnes þouȝ þat þei be maad of mater medlid, neþeles þei ben <sup>9th Member, Muscles are instruments of moving. Cords are made from Sinews and Ligaments,</sup>  
 4 rekened among<sup>t</sup> membris consimiles, for þei comen to þe making<sup>t</sup> of membris officials / Brawn is maad of fleisch, senewe, & ligamentis, & þei ben instrument voluntarie meuyng. þe senewe þat comeþ fro þe brayn, & þe nucha & goiþ forþ to meue þe lymes is medlid  
 8 wiþ a ligament / & whanne þe senewe & þe ligament<sup>t</sup> ben medlid togidere, it<sup>t</sup> is clepid a corda / & þe corde is maad for þre skilis. <sup>[2 ff. 14]</sup>  
 þe firste<sup>1</sup> for a symple sinewe is to cen<sup>2</sup>sible; þe senewe bi him-silf <sup>the Sinew alone being too sensible,</sup>  
 myȝt not suffre gret<sup>t</sup> traueile & meuyng, but þe felowschipe of þe  
 12 ligament þat is incensibile lettib þe felynge of þe senewe, & bringib him to a profitable temperaunce / þe senewe haþ .ij. opere defaultis : neischenesse and liȝtnesse. But þo .ij. defaultis þe medlynge of þe ligament<sup>t</sup> fulfillib<sup>3</sup>; for þe neischenes is temperid & strenkþid, & þe <sup>too soft,</sup>  
 16 litilnes is maad more. þe neischnes comeþ of þe brayn for it is myche, & þe litilnes comeþ of þe nucha, for it is litil. þat þat is <sup>and too small.</sup>  
 maad of þis nerf & þis ligament is clepid a corde; þe which þat <sup>cordis.</sup>  
 meueþ þe lymes to þe wille of þe soule, whanne þat<sup>t</sup> it is schortid

<sup>1</sup> þe firste in margin.

<sup>3</sup> fulfillib, supplet. See *Cath. Angl.*, p. 145, to *Fulfylle*, supplere vicem Alterius.

20 noȝt ben a gode demere in knowynge hot, cold, hard opere scharpe, <sup>Add. MS. 12,056.</sup>  
 softe opere nessche.

¶ Brawnys þowȝ þey ben mad of matere y-medlyde, nevere þe latere þey beþ y-reknyde amonge membrys consimiles, for þey comen  
 24 to þe makynge off Membrys-officiales. Brawne ys y-mad of flesch, 4<sup>3</sup>senewe, & ligamente, & þey ben Instrument off voluntarie mevyng. <sup>[4 fol. 42 b]</sup>  
 þe 3enewe þat comyþ from þe brayn & þe nuca, & goþ forþ to meue the lymes, ys y-medlyde with a ligamente, & whenne þe 3enewe & þe  
 28 ligamente beþ medlyde togedyre, yt ys clepyde a corde, & the corde ys y-made for þre skylles: þe ffurste for a symple senewe ys to sensible, & þe 3enewe by hym-self<sup>t</sup> ne myȝte noȝt suffren to grete  
 travaylle & mevyng, but þe felawschipe of þe ligamente, þat ys  
 32 insensibile, lutlib þe felynge of þe synwe, and bryngeþ hym to a profitable temperaunce. þe 3enewe hadde tweyne opere defautes : nesschenesse & litylnesse, but þo tweyne defautes, þe medlynge of þe ligament ffulfilleþ; for the neschenesse ys entempred & y-strength-  
 36 yde, and þe lytelnesse ys y-made more. The nesschenesse comyþ of þe brayn, for it ys nessche; and þe lytelnesse comeþ of þe Nuca, for it ys lytel. þat þat is mad of þis nerff & þis ligamente ys clepyde a corde, whiche þat meviþ þe lymes to wyl of þe soule,



Muscles are  
made from  
cords and  
flesh.

.1.

.2.

.3.

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 14, bk.]

When the  
Cords enter  
the Muscles,  
they are  
divided into  
many  
threads.

ouper drawn after þat þe lyme bouwip. To þis<sup>1</sup> corde, þer is asocied  
a symple \*[flesch] for to make a brawn for þre profitis / þe firste  
profit þat is in drawyng & wipdrawyng of þe corde, þe fleisch  
schulde be as a pelewe vpon þe which he myȝt reste / þe secunde, 4  
þat þe fleisch þat is neische & moist schulde kepe þe corde, þat he  
drie nouȝt in her meuyng / þe þridde, þat þe makynge of lymes  
were þe more schaploker. / þe brawn is maad bowyng as a bowe  
þat is bent; & for þe kynde wolde kepe þis complexioun, he cloþide 8  
þe brawn wip a pannicle / þe corde whanne he entriþ into þe brawn  
is departid into many smale þredis, & þei ben clepid villes<sup>3</sup>—þat is  
to seie wrappingis. & þese villes ben of .iiij. maner: in lenkþe bi  
þe which vertu, þat drawip haþ myȝt, in brede, bi þe which vertu 12  
þat castide out haþ myȝt / in þwert ouer bi þe which vertu \*[þat] with  
halt haþ myȝt / & at þe eendis of þe brawn þilke þredis ben gaderid  
togidere to make a corde, aftir þat it is nessessarie / many cordis  
eiper brawnes to ben engendrid. & official membrs ben maad of 16  
þese consimile membrs, þe whiche þat ben instrumentes to resonable  
soule. And in þe ij. tretis I wole telle þe anotamie of lymes  
of office.

<sup>1</sup> Lat. : Huic autem chordæ—associatur caro simplex. Comp. Add. MS.

<sup>3</sup> villes. Lat. fila.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 43 a]

whenne þat it is schortid opere y-drawe, aftere þat þe lyme bowyth 20  
to þis corde. ffor þere ys Asosyed a symple \*flesch forto maken a  
brawne for þre proffytes: þe furste profyt, þat boþe in drawyng &  
wipdrawyng of þe corde, the flesch scholde be as a pylwe, vp on  
whom he myȝte reste; þe secunde cause, þat þe flesch þat is nessche 24  
& moyst schulde kepen þe corde, þat <sup>4</sup>sche dreyȝede noȝt in here  
mevyng; þe þridde, þat þe makynge of lymes were þe more schap-  
lokore. þe brawne is made bowyng, as a bowe þat ys y-bent; &  
for þat kynde wolde kepe þys compositioun, he clothyde þe brawne 28  
wip a pannycle. þe corde whenne he entriþ in to þat brawne, ys  
departyde in to many smale þredys, & þey ben clepyde vylls, þat  
ys to sugge, wrabbynges. & þese villes bene of þre maners, in  
lengþe—by whom vertue þat draweþ haþ myȝt, in brede—by whom 32  
vertu þat castyþ out haþ myȝt, in twart ofere—by whom vertu  
\*þat wiphalt haþ myȝt; & at þe ende of þe brawne þilke þredys beþ  
gadride to gedre to maken a corde, after þat it is necessarie, many  
cordys opere brawnys to ben engendride. & official membrys ben 36  
y-mad of þese consimile membrys, whiche þat beþ instrument to  
resonable soule. And in þe secunde tretys y wyl tellen þe anotamye  
of lymes of office.



## The firste chapitle //

¶ Capm. jm

¶ Þe .iiij. techinge is of difference of woundis & of general *de vulneribus*  
*curis* / We schulen undrestonde þat wounde, & old wounde, festre  
 4 & cankre woundid, & boon out of ioynte, & a boon to-broken, &  
 apostyme, alle þese ben clepid vndoyng of þat þat is hool. & alle  
 þese sicknessis, & many oon opir as weel, moun falle to *consimile*  
*membris* as to official *membris* / *vunnus* is a newe wounde / *vlcus* is  
 8 an old rotid wounde. <sup>[1 leaf 15]</sup> I schal tellen in her placis þe difference of  
 festre & cankre & apostyme; plage comounly is taken for an oold  
 wounde, & ofte tymes we fynde þat an old wounde is clepid *vulunus*,  
 as *ypocras seip* / *vulnera annua necesse est in eis os taliefieri*<sup>2</sup> & *cica- ypocras*  
 12 *trices concavas fieri*: þat is to seie, it is nedful<sup>3</sup> þat þe boon in an  
 oold wounde to be rotid & þe *cicatrices* to be holow<sup>3</sup> / *Cicatrice* is þe  
 place of þe schynboon<sup>4</sup> þe wounde, whanne þat it is hool / Summe  
 woundis ben symple, & summe compound / in two maner he is  
 16 clepid a symple wounde / oon maner, for he haþ not lost of fleisch / <sup>Wounds are either woundis sempell</sup>  
 anoper maner for he haþ noon opir sickness wip him, ne is nouzt  
 distemperid / A wounde compound is clepid contrarie to him þat is <sup>or compound,</sup>  
 symple / but boþe symple & compoundis sumtyme is in þe fleisch or

<sup>2</sup> Read *tabefieri*.<sup>3</sup> it is nedful in margin.<sup>4</sup> *schynboon*, read *schyn* above. See below.

20 The ffurste Chapitle of þe þridde techynge is of differ- <sup>Add. MS.</sup>  
 ence of woundes & olde woundes & off generall <sup>12,056.</sup>  
 cures.

¶ We schulle vndirstonde þat wounde, olde wounde, ffestre, cancre  
 24 y-wondyde, a bon out of loynt, a bon tobroken, Aposteme, alle þese  
 ben y-clepyde vndoyng of þat þat ys hol, & alle þese seknesse &  
 manye opere as wel mowe fallen to *consimile* membrys. as to oficial  
*membris*. *Vulunus* is a newe wounde. *Vlcus* ys an olde rotyde  
 28 wounde. I schall <sup>[5 fol. 43 b]</sup> tellen in here place þe dyfference of festre &  
 cancre & apostemys. Plage comynliche ys y-taken of an olde wonde;  
 and ofte tyme we fynden, þat an olde wounde ys y-clepyde *Vulunus*,  
 as *Ipcres seip*: *Vulnera Annua necesse est in eis os tabefieri* &  
 32 *cicatrices concavas fieri*. ¶ That is to sugge, it ys ned, þat þe bon  
 in an olde wounde to be rotyd, & þe *Cicatrices* to be holwe. *Cica-*  
*trice* ys þe place of þe skyn above the wounde, whenne þat yt is  
 hol. Some wounde buþ symple & some ben componyde. In tweye  
 36 manere he ys clepyde a symple wounde. On manere, for he haþ  
 nozt leste of flesch; an opere maner, for he haþ non opere seknesse  
 with hym, ne is nozt distempride. A wounde componed ys y-clepyde  
 contrarye to hym þat is symple. But boþe symple & also com-



and have  
different  
causes, both  
internal

[1 lf. 15, bk.]

and external.

The object of  
healing is to  
close a  
wound, and  
to restore  
what has  
been lost.

**Nota**

Bones, liga-  
ments, and  
similar parts  
cannot be  
restored;

in þe senewe, or in þe boon, or in þe veynes, or in þe arterie / also þese woundis han dyuers cause. Summe comen fro wiþinne of þe malice, eiþer of<sup>1</sup> to greet multitude of humouris. \*[forto gret multitude of humores] opirwhile tobrekiþ þe membre & wiþholdiþ & woundiþ 4 him / Cold matere streyneþ, drie mater kuttiþ, moisture wiþoute mater mak iþ no wounde, but selden with<sup>1</sup> mater, but he drawe þe lyme to brode. & also þe cause wiþoute<sup>2</sup> mai be dyuers opirwhile wiþ a swerd eiþir wiþ a þingi þat kuttiþ alongi, oþerwhile wiþ a knyf 8 or wiþ a spere or an arowe þat prickiþ, & summe ben maad wiþ a staf or wiþ a stoon eiþir wiþ fallynge, & summe ben maad wiþ bitynge of an hound ouþir a wood hound; & alle þese ben diuers aftir þe dyuersite of her causis; & also þe maner of helynge is dyuers / Al þe intencioun 12 of helynge of woundis is for to sowden or to helen & to restoren þat, þat is departid, þe which þat mai not oueral be doon / for if þat membris of office ben kutt of, þei moun neuere be restorid, ne noon of þe consimile membris mai be restorid, if he be doon away: 16 as boonis, pelliculis, gristlis, ligamentis & skyn / For þe cause of her generacioun is þe sperme of þe fadir & of þe modir, as I tolde tofore / but in place of þingi þat is I-lore, kynde restoriþ þat, þat is moost conuenient to þe place; but fleisch mai be restorid bi cause 20

<sup>2</sup> The cause wiþoute, causa exterior.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[3 fol. 44 a]

ponyd some tyme is in þe flesch opere in þe synwe oper in bon, opere in veyne, opere in arterie. Also þese wondes han dyverse causes. Some comen from wiþynne of þe malice, opere of to gret multytude of humores; \*forto gret multitude of humores opere while 24 tobrekyth þe membre, þat wiþholdiþ & woundiþ hym cold matere streyneþ, drye matere kutteþ, moistnesse withouten matere makeþ no wounde, but selden with matere, but he drawiþ þe lyme to brode. And also þe cause wiþout may be dyverse, oþerwhyle with a swerd, 28 ore with a þynge þat kutteþ alonge, oþerwhile with a knyff, opere a spere, opere an arwe þat<sup>3</sup> prykeþ, & somme ben made wiþ a stafe, opere with a ston, opere with fallynge, & somme ben mad with bytynge of an hound, opere of a wod hounde; & alle þese ben dyverse, 32 after þe dyverste of here cause; & also þe manere of helynge ys dyverse. Alle þe entensioun of helynge of woundes, ys forto sowdyn & to helyn, & to restoren þat þat is departyde, whiche þat may nozt overe al be don. Ffor 3if þat membres of offyce ben kutte of, þey 36 mowe neuere ben restoryd; ne non of þe consimile membres may be restoryde, & he be don away: as bonys, pellicules, grustles, ligamentis & schyn. Ffor þe cause of here generacioun is þe sperme of þe ffadire & þe modere, as y tolde tofore; but in place of thyng 40 þat is lore, kynde restoryth þat þat is most convenient to þat place; but the flesch may be restoryd, by cause þat þe blod ys engendred



þat þe blood is engendrid al day in us, & þe blood is þe mater of þe flesh, veins, and arteries can be.  
 fleisch / & summe seien þat veynes, arteries, & senewis myȝt not be  
 restorid as þei weren tofore; but þei moun <sup>1</sup>be restorid as boonys [1 leaf 16]

- 4 ben / But Galien and Auicen & I þat am expert here seiynge,<sup>2</sup> G. A.  
 we<sup>3</sup> seie þat þei moun be restorid wiþ veri consolidacioun, whanne  
 þat her kuttinge is lital, & whanne þat þe senewis þat ben newe  
 kutt &<sup>4</sup> soude aȝen; but þei moun not be consoudid, whanne þat  
 8 her kuttinge is myche & greet; & resoun grauntiþ it / Senewis bi  
 kynde ben neische & viscouse; & þerfore þei moun<sup>5</sup> ben consoudid,  
 & þe veynes & þe arteries moun be consoudid bi resoun of þe blood vaynes & arteres may be consouded but not senewis.  
 þat is in hem. I þenke to ordeyne ech chapitle bi him-silf after  
 12 þe dyuersite of lymes & of placis, þe whiche þat þei ben maad  
 ynne / & I wole bigynne at a symple wounde maad in fleisch /

þe secunde chapitle of þe pridde techinge /

ij<sup>o</sup>. co.

- 16 **N**OW we wolen trete of a wounde maad in fleisch. We wolen Of wounde maad in fleisch.  
 bigynne at a symple wounde maad wiþ knyff or wiþ  
 swerd, or spere or arowe, or wiþ ony oþir þing semblable to hem.

<sup>2</sup> *I þat am expert here seiynge.* Lat.: ego qui sum expertus eorum dicta.

<sup>3</sup> *we*, added above line.

<sup>4</sup> *ȝ*, mistake for *ben*.

<sup>5</sup> *not*, erroneously added above line.

- al day in vs, & þe blod ys þe matere of flesch; & somme suggen þat Add. MS. 12,056.  
 veynes, synwes, & arteries myȝte nouȝt be restoryde as þey were  
 20 tofore; but þey mowe be restoryd as bonys buþ. But Galien &  
 Avycene, & I þat am expert here suggynge, suggen þat þey mowe be  
 restoryde with verrey consolidacioun, whanne þat here kuttinge ys  
 lyteȝ, & whenne þat þe synwys þat buþ newe kutte beþ so wyde  
 24 aȝeyne; but þey mowe nouȝt be consouded, whanne þat here kutt-  
 ynge ys gret & myche; & resoun grauntyth yt. Synwys by kynde  
 buþ nessche and viscose; & þerfore þey mowe ben consouded. þe  
 veynes & þe arteries mowe be consouded by resoun of þe blod þat ys  
 28 in hem. I þynke to ordeynen eche Chapitell <sup>6</sup>be hym selven, aftere [6 fol. 44 b]  
 þe dyversite of lymes & of placys, whyche þat þey buþ y-made yn;  
 & y wyl begynne at a symple wounde y-mad in flesch.

- ¶ þe secunde Chapitell off þe thridde techynge off the  
 32 ffurst tretis is of cure of a wounde y-mad in  
 fflesch.

- Now we willen treten of a wounde y-makyd in fflesch. We  
 wylle begynne at a symple wounde, y-mad wiþ knyff oþere wiþ  
 36 swerd ore spere, oþere with arwe, oþere with enye oþere thyng  
 SURGERY.



Simple  
wounds, if  
painless, will  
close if only  
bandaged,



Bynde togideris pilke wounde with a boond þat closiþ þe wounde togideris, & kepe pilke wounde from swellynge wiþ þe whizt of an ey leid aboue þe wounde, & lete þe wounde be in reste; & þer nedip noon  
[1 lf. 16, bk.] oþer cure, namely, <sup>1</sup> whanne þe wounde is wiþoute akyng; but, & þer 4  
be in þe wounde greet akyng, þanne it is a tokene, þat þer is a senewe prickid vndir þe wounde, eiper a pannicle þat is bitwene þe fleisch and þe boon; & þanne þer is anoþer cure, as I schal telle in þe chapitle  
Naracio. of puncture of a senewe þat I haue heelid a man þat<sup>2</sup> was \*[sefenty 8  
3ere olde þat was] smyte wiþ a spere þoruþ þe fleisch of þe buttoke, bi þe lenkþe of a fote, \* [& more] but pilke wounde touchide no  
Ego curaui  
homo.  
as has been  
shown in the  
case of an old  
man. senewe, & þat I wiste sikirliche, for he hadde noon akyng / I heeld  
þe wounde open aldai wiþ a litil smal tent & a schort, þat I myzte 12  
wite, if þat he schulde aken on þe morowe, & I comaundide him to reste / & on þe morowe I foond noon inflacioun ne akyng; & þanne I took away þe tent & lete þe wounde closen, & so comaundide I him to reste þe secunde dai / In þe þridde day he was hool. & if a 16  
wounde were maad wiþ a swerd or wiþ ony þing þat bitip in lenkþe, anoon þou must loke if þe wounde be so litil þat he nede no sow-  
Treat slight  
wounds with  
pulis conso-  
lidatus yng, & þanne brynge þe parties of þe wounde togideris, þat it may be weel ioyned, & leie aboue þe wounde a poundir maad oon partie 20

<sup>2</sup> þat, scribal insertion.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

semblable to hem. Bynde togedyre pilke wounde with a band þat close þe wounde to gedire, & kepe þe wounde from swellynge, with þe whyte of an eyze y-leyde aboue þe wounde, & lete þat wounde ben in reste, & þere nedyth none oþere cure, namlye, whanne þe wounde 24  
ys withouten akyng; but and þere be in wounde gret akyng, þanne þere is a tokne þat þere ys a synwe prikyde vndire þe wounde, oþere a pannicle þat ys betwene þe flesch & þe bon, & þanne þere ys al an oþere cure, as y schal telle in þe chapiteþ of the puncture of a synwe. 28  
And y haue helyd a man þat was \*sefenty 3ere olde, þat was y-smyten wiþ a spere þorwe þe flesch of þe buttoke by þe lengþe of a fote \* & more, but pilke wonde touchide non synwe; & þat y wiste sykerliche, for he had non akyng; y helde the wounde opyn al a day, 32  
with a lyte smal tente & a schert þat y myzte wyte, 3if þat he scholde ake on þe morwe & I comaundyde hym to reste, and on þe morwe y fonde non inflacion ne akyng, & þenne y caste aweye þe tente & lete þe wounde closen, & so y comaundide hym to reste, & wiþynne 36  
þe þridde day he was al hol. And 3if þat a wounde were mad wiþ  
[3 fol. 45 a] a swerd, oþere wiþ eny þynge þat <sup>3</sup>kutteþ in lengþe, a man most loke 3if þe wounde be so litel þat he nede non sowynge, & þenne brynge þe parties of þe wounde togedyre, þat it may wel ben y-joynede, & 40  
leye above þe wounde a poudere y-mad of on partye of ffranke-En-



of frankencense, & of two parties<sup>1</sup> of sandragoun,<sup>2</sup> & of þre parties of quyk lym, & lete nouzt þe poudre entre bitwene in þe wounde but<sup>t</sup> aboue, for þer schal no þing<sup>t</sup> entre in þe wounde, & kepe þe parties of þe wounde þat ben brouzt togidere wiþ a plumaciol<sup>3</sup> .iiij. cornered maad of herdis or of towe in þis maner:  oon bi þe sidis of þe wounde, so þat boþe þilke plumaciols holde þe wounde þus iclosed<sup>4</sup>:  & ioyned togidere as it<sup>t</sup> was ioyned arst, or it were kutt / & bynde þe wounde togidere aboue þe plumaciols wiþ a rolle þat goiþ ouerþwert aftir þis lettre .X. & take a lynnyn cloop & wete him in two parties of þe white of an ey, in oon partie of oile of rosis, þei ben togidere medlid, undir þe plumaciols, leid aboue þe wounde þat is brouzt togidere, for to kepe þe<sup>5</sup> poudre; & do nouzt<sup>t</sup> away þi medicyn til .iiij. daies ben goon, but<sup>t</sup> if þat þe wounde ake or be to-swollen. & þanne bynde þe wounde as it was biforn wiþ þe white of an ey; oile, poudre, & plumaciols. But if þe wounde were so myche, þat byndynge wolde nouzt suffice, or were kutt ouerþwert<sup>t</sup> ouer þe lyme, so þat þe parties of þe lyme myzt nouzt wel be<sup>6</sup> brouzt togideris, þanne sowe þe wounde on þis maner / Ioynne þe lippis of þe wounde, & be war þat noon oile \*[ne dust] ne no þing<sup>t</sup> ellis, þat lettif consolidacioun, falle bitwene þe lippis of þe

[leaf 17]

Way of dressing a wound with compresses.

Nota



Large wounds and those which run athwart the limb are to be stitched

[6 ff. 17, bk.]

<sup>2</sup> Sandragoun. Sanguis draconis: the gum of the Dragon-tree. Kersey. 1706. See Notes. <sup>3</sup> Plumaceoli: Bolsters used by Surgeons. Kersey. 1706.

<sup>4</sup> iclosed, inserted in margin.

<sup>5</sup> MS. wounde, cancelled.

sence, & of two partyes of sandragoun & of þre parties of quyke-lyme, & lete nozt þe poudre entre wiþynne þe wounde but above, for þere schal noþynge entre withynne þe wounde, & kepe þe parties of þe wounde þat buþ brouzt togedire with a plumacyole þre corneled y-made of hurdes opere towz in þis manere  on be þe sydes of þe wounde, so þat boþe þilke plumacioles holde þe wounde þus y-closyde  & joynde togedire, as yt was joyned ere þenne yt was ykutte; & bynde þe wounde togedire abouen þe plumacioles, with a rolle þat goth twartoffere after þis lettere XX, & take a lynnyn cloth & wete hym in two parties of whyte of an eyze, & in on partie of oyle of roses i-bete togedire, vndire þe plumacioles aboue þe wounde, þat ys y-browzt togedyre, forto kepe þe poudre, & do nozt away þe medycine tyl foure dayes ben ago, but 3if þat þe wounde ake, opere ellys be to-swollyn; & þenne bynde þe wonde as yt was toforne, with þe whyte of þe eyze, oyle, poudre, & plumacioles. But 3if þe wounde were so myche, þat þe byndynge wolde nozt suffice, opere were kutte twart offere þe lyme, so þat þe partyes of þe lyme myzt nozt wel be browzt togedire, þanne sowe þe wounde on þis manere: joyne þe lippes of þe wounde togedire, & ware þat non oyle \*ne dust, ne noþynge ellys þat lattyd consolidacioun, falle bytwene

Add. MS. 12,056.



with an  
acus trian-  
gulum.

Way of stitch-  
ing a wound.

Number of  
the stitches  
and their  
distance from  
each other.

The stitches  
must be deep  
enough

[<sup>1</sup> leaf 18]

wounde, & haue a nedle þre cornerid, whos iȝe schal be holid on  
boþe sidis, so þat þe þred þat is in þe nedle may lie in þe holow<sup>3</sup>  
place, & þilke þred schal be twyned, & wiþoute knotte, & I-wexid,  
& þe lippis of þe wounde schal be sowid togideris; & þe þred schal 4  
be knytt wiþ two knottis in þe firste place, & in þe secunde place  
wiþ oon knotte; & so make as manye poyntis, as it is nessessarie,  
& ech poynt schal be from oþir bi þe brede of a litil fyngir, &  
streyne þe wounde with knottyng & þe sewynge of þe lippis of þe 8  
wounde togidere þat he ake sumwhat, but nouȝt to myche. & if þat  
þer nede mo poyntis to be þere þan two, euermore þer schal be odde  
poyntis. as .iiij. v. or .viij. & þe oon poynt schal be first from þe oon  
eende of þe wounde, bi þe space of a litil fyngir, & þe toþir poynt 12  
schal be at þe oþir ende of þe wounde, & þe þridde poynt schal be  
in þe myddil of þe wounde / & if it be nede to haue mo poyntis,  
þanne schalt þou <sup>1</sup>bigynne at þe myddil poynt, & make as manye  
poyntis on boþe sidis as it is nede, til þou come to boþe eendis / For 16  
bi þis maner of sowynge neiþir partie schal be crokid, & so þe place  
mai faire be restorid, & euermore take kepe þat \*<sup>3</sup>[if] þe wounde be  
not depe, þi sowynge schal be nouȝt deep / & if þi wounde be deep,  
þi sowynge schal be deep, þat alle þe parties of þe wounde moun 20

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[<sup>2</sup> fol. 45 b]

þe lippes of þe wounde, & haue an nedle <sup>2</sup>þre kornerde, whose eyȝe  
scholde be holyde on boþe sydes, so þat þe <sup>3</sup>þrede þat is in þe nedle  
may ligge in þe holwe place, & þilke schal be twynede, & withoute  
knotte & ywaxide, & þe lippes of þe wounde schulle ben sowyde 24  
togedyre, & þe þrede schal be knette with two knottes in þe firste  
place; in þe secunde place with on knotte, & so make as manye  
punctis as yt is necessarie, & eche puncte schal be from oþere by þe  
brede of a lytel ffyngere, & streyne þe wounde wiþ knettyng, & þe 28  
sowynge of þe lippes of þe wounde togedire þat he ake sumwhat,  
but noȝt to myche, & ȝif þat þere nede mo punctis to be þere þen  
two, efire more þere schal be odde punctys, as þre, fyfe, oþere seuene;  
& þe on puncte schal be fyrst from þe on ende of þe wonde by þe 32  
<sup>4</sup>brede of a litel fyngire, & þe oþere puncte schal be at þe oþere ende  
of þe wounde, & þe þridde puncte schal be in þe myddil of þe  
wounde; & ȝif it be nede to haue mo punctis, þou schalt begynnen  
at þe myddel puncte, & make as manye punctes on boþe þe sydes, as 36  
yt ys nede, tyl þou come to boþe endys; ffor by þis manere of  
sowynge neiþere partye schal be crokyde, & so þe place may fairere  
ben restoryde. And euere more take hede, \*ȝif þe wounde be noȝt  
depe, þy sowynge schal be nouȝt depe. And ȝif þy wounde be depe 40  
þy sowynge schal be depe, þat alle þe parties of þe wounde mowe

<sup>3</sup> þridde cancelled before þrede.

<sup>4</sup> sp. cancelled before brede.



be ioyned / For if þe wounde were deep, & þi sowynge not<sup>t</sup> deep, nede þer muste be in þe deppe of þe wounde a greet<sup>t</sup> holownes, to þe which holownes blood & quyttere schulde be cast<sup>t</sup>; & þilke  
 4 quyttere & blood schulde lette þe helynge of þe wounde. & þe poudre þat<sup>t</sup> is seid in þe same chapitle, schal be leid aboue on þe same wounde; & þou schalt<sup>t</sup> kepe þe sewynge & þe parties of þe wounde þat<sup>t</sup> I brouȝte togidere wiþ plumaciols þre cornerid, & wiþ  
 8 alle þe opere þingis þat<sup>t</sup> ben in þis chapitle tofore seid / And if þat a wounde hap be to longe in þe eir open, which þat is þe cause of quyttere þat<sup>t</sup> lettif consolidacioun, þanne we musten clense þe wounde wiþ þis mundificatif<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> is maad of flour of wheete & hony & water  
 12 & mel roset, <sup>1</sup>I-colat, þat is to seie, clensid from þe rosis, and of barly mele / Of þese mundificatyues þou schalt<sup>t</sup> haue a ful techinge in þe laste tretis /

to leave no hollows in the wound.

To wounds exposed to the air apply a cleansing ointment.

a mundificatif.

[<sup>1</sup> lf. 18, bk.]

But if þe wounde be compound, a leche muste haue as manye  
 16 intenciouns as þer ben accidentis to þe wounde / I sette an ensauple. **Nota**  
 I suppose þat a wounde be compound wiþ holownes & lesynge of fleisch & of skyn, & þere be myche quytter, & also þat þer be apostyme, & þer be a greet akyng; al þis is clepid a wounde com-  
 20 pound / þanne schulen we nouȝt onliche take hede to consolidacioun of þat<sup>t</sup> wounde: þat is to seie, helynge; but first<sup>t</sup> we schulen aswage

If pus and pain come on,

be joyned togedire. Ffor ȝif þe wounde were depe, & þy sowynge were noȝt depe, nedys þere moste ben in þe deppe of þe wounde a  
 24 gret holwenesse, to þe whiche holwenesse blod & quyter scholde be cast; & þilke quyter & blod scholde lette þe <sup>2</sup>helynge of þe wounde. And þe poudre þat ys seyde in þe same chapytell schal be leyde aboue þe same sowynge, & þou schalt kepen þe sowynge & þe parties  
 28 of þe wounde, þat buȝ brouȝt togedyre, with plumacioles þre cornelyd & with alle opere þynges þat bep in þis chapytel forseide. And ȝif þat a wounde haue be to longe in þe eyre opyne, whiche þat ys cause of quyter þat latteþ consolidacioun, þenne we moste clense þe  
 32 wounde with<sup>3</sup> þis mundificatyff, þat is mad of floure, of whete & hony & watyre opere mel rosate, & colat þat ys y-clansed from þe roses, & of barly mele. Of þese mundyficatyfes þou schalt han a ful techynge in þe laste tretys. But ȝif þe wounde be y-componed, a leche  
 36 moste han as manye intensionas as þere ben accidentys to þe wonde. Y sette ensauple: y suppose þat a wounde be componed with holwenesse & lesynge of flesch & of skyn, & þere be myche quyter & al so þere be a posteme & þere be grete akyng, al this ys clepyde a  
 40 wounde componyde. þanne we schulle noȝt only take hede to consolidacioun of þilke wounde, þat is to sigge helynge, but firste we

Add. MS. 12,056.

[<sup>2</sup> fol. 46 a]

<sup>3</sup> MS. þat.



deal with the  
symptoms  
separately,

and first  
relieve pain.  
nota.

Auicen

[<sup>2</sup> leaf 19]

G. & A.

A purulent  
wound must  
be cleansed,  
before closing  
it or putting  
on a "rege-  
neratif."

akþe & apostymes, as it schal be teld in þe chapitle of an enpostyme  
& of akyngē / Aftirward we schulē clense þe quytture, & aftir þat  
regenere fleisch, & at þe laste bryngē ouer cicatrice. In alle þe worch-  
ingis of medicyns, where þat akþe is, first we schulē aswage akþe, 4  
for aboue al opir þing<sup>t</sup> strong<sup>t</sup> akyngē ouercomeþ myzt of vertu &  
strenkþe / & also resoun telliþ; membris<sup>1</sup> þat han akþe, þilke akþe is  
cause of drawyngē from þe opere placis to þe membre þat akiþ þe  
worste <sup>2</sup>þing<sup>t</sup> of þe humouris / Auicen seiþ: humouris ben drawn 8  
to lymes þat aken for .ij. causis: o cause, for kynde \* [& Spiritus  
and humourer rennyth þedyre; þe secunde cause, for akþe feblyth þe  
lyme, & humours] & spiritis rennen to þe feble lyme / þe swellyngē  
schal eer be heelid þan þe wounde / Galien & Auicen tellen: þat al 12  
þing<sup>t</sup> þat consowdiþ þe wounde greueþ þe wounde, if þat þer be  
apostyme wiþ þe wounde / & þe quytture schal be clensid or þou leie  
ony regeneratijf to holow; woundis. Auicen telliþ þe cause, whi  
þat yuel fleisch growiþ in a wounde / If þat a leche wolde bisie him 16  
wiþ a medicyn regeneratijf to regendre fleisch in a wounde, & er þan  
þe quytture were clensid / & whanne þat þe wounde is clensid, þanne  
we schulē fulfille þilke holownes wiþ fleisch or þat þe wounde be

<sup>1</sup> Lat., Membra quoque dolorem habentia, dolor ipse est causa attra-  
hendi aliunde humorum pessimitatem.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 46 b]

schul aswagen akþe & aposteme, as yt schal be tolde in þe chapitle 20  
of aposteme & of akyngē; aftirwarde we schullen clanse þe quyter,  
& aftere þat regenere flesch, & at þe laste bryngē ouere a Cicatrice.  
In alle þe werkynges of medicine, where þat akþe ys, firste we  
schulle aswagen akyngē; ffor abouen alle opere þynge stronge 24  
akyngē, ouere comeþ myzte of vertu & strengþe, & also resoun  
tellyth; membrys þat han akþe, þilke akþe ys cause of drawyngē  
from opere places to þe membre þat akeþ <sup>3</sup> þe worste þynge of þe  
humoures. Avicene seyth humours bep drawn to <sup>4</sup>lymes þat aken 28  
for two causes: On cause, for kynde \* & Spiritus and humoures  
rennyth þedyre; þe secunde cause, for akþe feblyth þe lyme, &  
humours \* & spiritis renne to þe feble lymme. þe swellyngē schal  
ere ben y-helyde þen þe wounde. Galien & Avycene tellen þat alle 32  
þynge þat consoudeþ þe wounde, grefyþ þe wounde, 3if þat þere be  
aposteme with þe wounde, & þe quyter schal ben y-clansyde, ere þenne  
þou legge enye generatyff to holwe woundys. Avicenne tellyth a  
cause, why þat yuele flesch growith in a wounde, 3if þat a leche 36  
wolde besy hym with a medycin regeneratyff to engendre flesch in  
a wounde, ere þanne þe quytere were clansede. And whenne þat þe  
wounde ys clensyde, þenne we schulle fulfyllen þilke holwnesse with

<sup>3</sup> MS. akþe.



heelid, lest *peraventure*<sup>1</sup> *pat* *per* dwelle an holownesse vndir *pe*  
 wounde, whanne *pat* he is helid, in whom *pat* quytture schulde be  
 engendrid, *perwith*<sup>2</sup> ech dai schulde augmente *pilke* holownesse, &  
 4 so we moten be constreyned to opene an<sup>o</sup>pir tyme *pat*, *pat* was  
 heelid tofore / *pou* maist fynde in *pe* chapitle of woundis of senewis,  
 how *pou* schalt aswage *akpe*, & in *pe* .vj. chapitle of *pis* techinge [3 lf. 19, bk.]  
*pou* schalt fynde *pe* cure <sup>3</sup> of a wounde *pat* hap a swellynge, & is in *pe* co. of  
olde woundis  
in *pe* ante-  
dotarie.  
 8 out of kynde distemperid; & *pou* schalt haue in *pe* chapitle of olde  
 woundis, how *pou* schalt clense quytture & regendre fleisch /

The bridde techinge of *pe* firste tretis is of heelynge ¶ 3o. co  
De vulnere  
incarne.  
 of a wounde maad in senewe /

12 Almy<sup>3</sup>ti god hath *3eue* to senewe greet felyng<sup>t</sup>, & if *pat* he be  
 hirt<sup>t</sup>, he suffri<sup>p</sup> greet akyng / Galien sei<sup>p</sup>: a senewe *pat* is more Galien  
 felynge *pan* an<sup>o</sup>per \**[lyme]*; it is nessessarie *pat* he haue grettere  
*akpe* / Vndirstonde *pat* a wounde *pat* is maad in a senewe, mai not be  
 16 wi<sup>p</sup>oute akyng. Ne<sup>4</sup> woundis *pat* ben maad in senewis, ou<sup>p</sup>er *pat*  
 ben in lenk<sup>p</sup>e or in brede / *pe* woundis *pat* ben maad in lenk<sup>p</sup>e of A wound cut-  
ting the nerve  
lengthwise,  
a *fissura*, is  
less danger-  
ous than one  
crossing it,  
a *sisura*.  
*pe*<sup>2</sup> senewe, ben lesse perillous *pan*<sup>5</sup> *po* *pat* ben maad in brede of *pe*

<sup>1</sup> *peraventure*. See N. E. Dict., adventure, l. b.

<sup>2</sup> *perwip*, scribal error for *pe* which.

<sup>4</sup> *no*, scribal error for *pe*.

<sup>5</sup> *pan* erroneously inserted.

flesch, ere *panne* *pat* wounde ben y-helyde; leste *pat* *pere* dwellen an Add. MS.  
12,056.  
 20 holwnesse vndire *pe* wounde whenne *pat* he ys helyde, in whom *pat*  
 quytter scholde be engendryde, *pe* whiche eche day scholde augmente  
*pilke* holwnesse, & so we moste ben constreynede to opyne an *opere*  
 tyme *pat*, *pat* was helyde tofore. *pou* mayste fynden aftere in *pe*  
 24 chapyteH of woundys of synwes how *pou* schalt aswagen *akpe*, and  
 in the sixte ChapiteH of *pis* techyng *pou* schalt fynde *pe* cure of a  
 wounde, *pat* hath a swellynge, and ys out of kynde dystempryde,  
 and *pou* schalt haue in *pe* chapitle of olde woundys; how thou schalt  
 28 clense, quyttyre, and regendre flessch //

<sup>6</sup>Cap. iii. of the bridde techyng of the ffurst tretis is [6 fol. 47 a]  
 of helyng of a wounde y-makyde in synwe.

Almi<sup>3</sup>tie god hath *3ife* to synwe gret felyng, & *3if* *pat* he be  
 32 hurt he suffrede grete akyng. Galien: a synwe that is more  
 felyng *pen* an<sup>o</sup>pere \**lyme*; yt is nessessarie *pat* he haue gretter  
 akyng. Vndirstonde *pat* a wounde *pat* is y-makyde in a synwe,  
 may nou<sup>3</sup>t ben wi<sup>p</sup>outen akyng. The woundes *pat* be<sup>p</sup> y-makyde  
 36 in synwe, o<sup>p</sup>er *pey* ben in lengthe o<sup>p</sup>er *pey* be<sup>p</sup> in brede. *po*  
 woundes *pat* be<sup>p</sup> y-mad in lengthe of *pe* synwe be<sup>p</sup> lasse perylous,



If the nerve is cut through, the limb becomes insensible;

if the nerve is pricked by a punctura, then there is danger of cramp. Spasmos. [1 leaf 20]

Loss of feeling and cramp happen when a sinew or muscle is cut or pricked.

Senewe, corde & Brawne.

When the nerve is pricked, but the skin whole,

senewe ben moost perilous / Oþerwhile a senewe is kutt<sup>t</sup> al atwo / & þanne þilke lyme, to whom þat senewe serueþ, lesiþ his meuyng & þe felynge, þat þilke senewe brouzte to him from þe brain. & þilke senewe oþirwhile is not<sup>t</sup> kutt<sup>t</sup> al atwo, but he is I-preickid, & þanne 4 it<sup>t</sup> is perilous lest þe crampe come for to greet<sup>t</sup> akþe / For akþe entriþ into þe part of þe senewe þat is kutt<sup>t</sup> or prickid; & bi þe <sup>1</sup>partie of þe senewe þat is hool, akþe is brouzt to þe brayn. & so þe crampe mai come to þe wounde bi oon of þre weies: þat is to greet<sup>t</sup> 8 akþe, cold, or rotynge. Of þese þre or of oon bi him-silf<sup>t</sup> mai come a drawinge togidere of a senewe þat is cause of a crampe / & þat þat is seid of a wounde of a symple senewe may fallen ofte-tymes in a wounde of a corde & a brawn, & nameliche of a corde þat is in 12 bigynnyng of a brawn. þo woundis þat ben in þese þre consimile membris, þat is \*[to] seie senewe, corde, & brawn han o. drede in cours of þe crampe, & also o. drede of felynge, lesyng & meuyng / & <sup>2</sup>þefore be-war in þe cure of a wounde maad in senewe, wheþer 16 þat it<sup>t</sup> be a prickynge or þat it be kutt ouerþwert<sup>t</sup>, or ellis be kutt<sup>t</sup> oonly bi his lenkþe. If oonly he be prickid þe wounde of þe skyn is hool, & þanne it is clepid a blynde puncture; eiþer þe wounde is open, & it<sup>t</sup> is clepid an open puncture / In a blind puncture it<sup>t</sup> is 20

<sup>2</sup> &, above line.

Add. MS. 12,056.

& þo þat beþ in brede of þe synwe beþ more perilous. Oþere whyle a synwe ys y-kut al atwo, & þenne þilke lyme to whom þilke synwe serfede, lesiþ þe menyng & þe felynge þat þilke synwe brouzt to hym from þe brayn. Oþere while þilke synwe is nouzt y- 24 kut a two, but he is y prikyde, and þenne it is perel lest þe crampe come for to gret akþe. For akþe entriþ in to þe part of þe synwe þat is y-kut oþer priked, & by þe party of þe synwe þat is hol akþe is brouzt to þe brayn, & so crampe may comen to þe wounde 28 by on of þre weyes, þat is to gret akþe colde oþer rotyng. Of þese þre oþere ellys of on by hym self, may come a drawyng togedre of a synwe þat is a cause of a crampe; & þat þat is seyde of wounde of a symple synwe, oft-tymes may fallyn in a wounde of a 32 corde & a brawn, & namlyche of a corde þat is in þe bygynnyng of a brawn. þe woundes þat ben in þese þre consimel membris, þat is \*to sigge, synwe, corde, & brawn, habben on drede in course of þe crampe, & also on drede of lesyng, felyng, & menyng, & þerfor 36 be war in þe cure of a wounde i-makyde in synwe, wheþer þat þere be a prikyng, oþere þat þe synwe be y-kut twartofere, oþer ellys be y-kut only by his lengthe. 3if only he be y-prikyde þe wonde of þe skyn is hol, & þenne it is clepyde a blynde puncture, oþer þe 40 wounde is opene & it is clepide au opene prikyng. In a blynde



- nessessarie to opene þe skyn, & aftirward heelde into þe hoole as  
 hoot as he mai suffre, hoot<sup>t</sup> oile of rosis swete smellynge, þat is  
 maad of<sup>t</sup> oile de oliue þat is nouzt ripe, til al þe wounde be ful. &  
 4 aboue þe wounde leie whi<sup>3</sup>t tere<sup>1</sup>bentine<sup>2</sup> I-drawe abroad bitwene  
 two clowtis, & anoynte alle þe membris aboute þe wounde wiþ hoot  
 oile of rosis maad picke with bool armoniak. & aftir þat leie a  
 lynnene cloof I-het<sup>t</sup> aboue, & aftir þat a good quantite of<sup>t</sup> tow I-tosid,  
 8 & bynde þe lyme softliche wiþoute streynynge; & if þe akþe wiþ  
 þis medicyn wole not ceessen, remeue & chaunge þis medicyn ofte  
 tymes in þe dai & in þe nyzt / & if þe prickynge be in þe foot,  
 anoynte þe grynde<sup>3</sup> wiþ hoot<sup>t</sup> comoun oile; & vndir þe arme holis  
 12 & in þe necke pitt<sup>t</sup>, if þat þe prickynge be in þe hand, for þis  
 enoynture rarefies & eueneþ þe placis bi whom akþe goiþ to þe  
 brain, & it lettis drawynge togidere of þe senewe / & þou þat þou  
 seest<sup>t</sup> nouzt<sup>t</sup> þe akþe ceesse in summen as hastiliche as þou woldist,  
 16 neuer-þe-lattere chaunge not<sup>t</sup> þi medicyn, for þer may be no bettere  
 medicyn. But if þat akþe dure ouer longe, it is not yuel to putte a  
 litil opium to þe oile of þe rosis & þe bole armoniak, þat þou leidist<sup>t</sup>  
 aboute þe wounde. þe sike man muste reste & bi no wey he

open the skin  
and apply  
hot oil.

R  
and dress the  
wound.

[1 ff. 20, bk.]

N

If the pain  
endures re-  
new the  
dressing  
frequently,

N

and add  
opium to the  
ointment.

N

R

<sup>2</sup> *terebentine*, from *Pistacia Terebinthus*, L. The *Alah* of the Old Testament, and the *τέριον* of Theophrast.: now almost obsolete.

<sup>3</sup> *þe grynde*, inguina. *W. Wr.*, p. 589. 39, 15th cent.: inguen, the grynde.

- 20 prikyne hit is necessarie to opyn þe skyn, & afterwarde held in to  
 þe hole, as <sup>4</sup>hot as he may suffren, oyle of roses swote smyllynge,  
 þat is y-made of oyle de olyffe, þat is nouzt rype tyl þe wounde be  
 al ful. & aboue þe wounde leye whyte terbentyne y-drawe abrod  
 24 betwene tweye cloutes, & anoynt al þe membris about þe wounde  
 wiþ hote oyle of rosys, y-made pikke wiþ bol Armonyak, & after þat  
 leye a lynne cloth y-hat aboue, & after þat a gode quantyte of tow  
 y-tosyd, & bynde þe lyme<sup>5</sup> softliche wiþout streynynge; & 3if þe  
 28 akþe wiþ þis medycine wolde nouzt cese, remeffe & chaunge þis  
 same medycine oft tymes in þe day & in þe nyzt, & 3if þe prikyng  
 be in þe fot, anoynte þe grynde wiþ hote comyn oyle, & vndire þe  
 Arme holys & in þe nekputte, 3if þat þe prikyng be in þe hande.  
 32 For þys vneture rarefies & efenyþ þo placys bi whom akþe goth to  
 þe brayn, & it lattis drawynge togedre of þe synwe, & þow þat  
 þou sest nouzt akþe, sese in some men, as hastily as þou woldyst,  
 nevere þe later chaunge nouzt þy medycine, for þere may be no  
 36 bettere medycine. But 3if þat akþe dure ouere longe yt is nouzt  
 efel to putte a lutyl opin to þe oyle of rosys and þe bol armoniak,  
 þat þou leydest aboute þe wounde. þe seke man most reste, & by

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[4 fol. 47 b]

<sup>5</sup> MS. lynne.



schulde nouzt be wroþ; his bed muste be maad soft, euene, &  
 [1 lf. 21] smoþe, & þat he <sup>1</sup>myzte haue reste / Whanne þat þe akþe aswagip  
 & þe wounde 3eueþ sum quytture, þanne þe sike man is saaf<sup>1</sup> from al  
 Ypocras. maner perel, but<sup>1</sup> if he do ony newe errour / Of þis wounde Ypocras 4  
 It is a bad spekiþ: *in vulneribus malis & fortibus sanie non apparante*—þat  
 sign if no is to seie: *in yuel woundis and strong<sup>1</sup> woundis*, if<sup>1</sup> no quytture  
 pus is dis- appere it<sup>1</sup> is yuel / *Strong<sup>1</sup> woundis ben clepid woundis* þat sore  
 charged. aken / *Yuel woundis ben þo*, to whom scharpe humouris rennen 8  
 N & ben nouzt obedient<sup>1</sup> to kyndeli heete, to be turned into quit-  
 Ypocras. ture / And þerfore Ypocras seide: þat whanne akyng & quytture  
 appereþ it<sup>1</sup> is a tokene of heele / þe þridde signe a man muste  
 Laymen fre- knowe in þis place, þat lewde men, seyinge akyng & swellynge 12  
 quently ap- in a lyme þat is woundid, leie þerto a potage in maner maad of  
 ply a wrong eerbis & swynes greece & water & wheete flour, corruptyn þe  
 ointment, lyme, & þilke corrupcioun is cause of þe crampe / For Galien seiþ:  
 which causes the injured limb in hot water, þat a senewe is maad of moist<sup>1</sup> mater & a cold, & þerfore he 16  
 Galien. rotip of heete and moistnes / Also summen, for to aswage akþe as<sup>2</sup>  
 nota. a senewe þat is prickid, puttip þe lyme in hoot watir \*[oper ellys  
 [4 lf. 21, bk.] caste it on þe lyme] þe which mater<sup>3</sup> is þe moost greunaunce <sup>4</sup>to  
 Galien. þe senewe / Galien seiþ / Hoot watir, þou3 it<sup>1</sup> aswage akþe to þe 20  
<sup>2</sup> as, error for of; see below. <sup>3</sup> mater, error for watir.

Add. MS. no weye he scholde nouzt be wroþ, hys bed most be made softe  
 12,056. euene & smeþe þat he myzte haue rest. Whanne þat þe akþe  
 aswagyth & þe wounde gyueþ sum qyter, þan þe syke man ys saf  
 from al manere peryle, but 3if he do enye newe error. Of þis 24  
 wounde ypocras spekiþ: *In vulneribus malis & fortibus sanie non*  
*aparente malum*, þat is to seye: in evyle woundys & stronge  
 woundes, 3if no quyter apere, hit is yuele. Stronge woundes ben  
 y-clepyde woundys þat sore aken. Iuel woundes beþ þo, to whom 28  
 scharpe humores rennyth & beþ nouzt obedyent to kyndlie hete to  
 ben turnyde into quyter & þerfore ypocras seyde, þat whanne þat  
 akyng sesyth & quyter aperith, yt is a tokne of heele. þe þridde  
 [3 fol. 48 a] signe a man moste <sup>5</sup>knowe in þis place, þat lewyde men seyne 32  
 akyng & swellynge in a lyme y-woundyde, leggen þereto a maner  
 potage y-mad of erbys & swynes grese, water, & floure of whete,  
 corupyn þe lyme, & þilke corrupcioun is cause of þe crampe; for  
 Galyen seiþ þat a synwe is mad of a moiste matere & a cold, & he 36  
 rotyth of hete & moistnesse. Also sum men forto aswage þe akþe  
 of a synwe þat is y-prikyde, putteþ þe lyme in to hote water,\* oper  
 ellys caste it on þe lyme hot water,<sup>6</sup> þe whiche water is most grefes  
 to þe synwe. Galyen: hote water þow3 it aswage akþe, to the 40

<sup>6</sup> hot water, insertion.



prickyng of a senewe is most greuance / Cold also greueþ sore þe  
 senewe as wel in somer as in wyntir / And Ypocras seiþ in þe .v. *Ypocras.*  
 part of his auforismus: cold is bitynge & greuous to senewis &  
 4 woundis, & also in þe chapitle next folowyng, but it be in a *and the heat  
 is as danger-  
 ous as great  
 cold.*  
 crampe wipoute wounde / Galion seiþ in þe eende of his coment: *Galion.*  
 coold is moost greuous to a senewy lyme þat is woundid & is sore  
 swollen; namely, & he haue þe crampe. It schewiþ<sup>1</sup> þanne þat an  
 8 hoot medycyne & a drie is moost acordynge to senewis þat ben  
 woundid; but nouȝt to hoot a medycyn, lest perauntre þat he make  
 þe lyme to swelle; & if it be drie nouȝt wip stipticte, an auntre if  
 þat he closiþ þe poris of þe skyn / Galion seiþ: þat it is yuele to *Galion<sup>1</sup>*  
 12 close þe poris of a lyme þat is prickid. þe medycyn þanne muste *N.*  
 be hoot & drie with subtiliate as terebentine to moiste bodies; & to *The pores of  
 a wounded  
 limb must be  
 kept open.*  
 drie bodies he muste be medlid wip a litil enforbium, azafetida<sup>2</sup> is  
 best medycyn if þou make of him enplastre, serapinum,<sup>3</sup> & þe fecis<sup>4</sup> *R*  
 16 of a litil wex, & þe filþe of þe vessels of been, alle þei ben gode to  
 a senewe þat is prickid, þouȝ þat þou putt ech of hem bi him-silf *[ 11. 22 ]*  
 or ellis compound / & þow schalt fynde a ful techinge of þese  
 medicyns in þe antidotarie of þis book / þou schalt nouȝt close a

<sup>1</sup> *schewiþ* for *sewiþ*; see below.

<sup>2</sup> *Asa fetida*, a sort of gum pressed out of a certain plant, which grows in Persia.

<sup>3</sup> *Serapinum* = *Sagapenum* . . . A gum resin obtained from the *Ferula Persica*. See *Notes*.

<sup>4</sup> *fecis*, Lat. *fæces*, dregs.

20 prikyng of a synwe ys most greuest; colde also gefyth sore þe *Add. MS.  
 12,056.*  
 synwes as wel in somere as in wyntere. Ypocras in þe ferthe  
 partye of his Amphorismes: colde is bytinge and grefes to woundys;  
 and also in þe chaptell nexte folwyng, bot it be in a crampe wip  
 24 out wounde. Galyen seiþ in þe ende of his comente: colde is most  
 grefest, to a synwe lyme þat is y-woundyde & ys toswolle, namly,  
 & he haue þe crampe. Hit sewiþ þenne þat an hote medycine & a  
 drye is most accordynge to synwes þat beþ y-woundyde; bot nouȝt  
 28 to hot a medycine, leste þat he make þe lyme toswellyn; & drye  
 nouȝt wip stipticite, lest he close þe pores of þe schyn. Galyen seiþ:  
 it is yuel to close þe pores of a lyme þat is y-prikyde. þe medycine  
 þenne most ben hote & drye, wip subtilite as terbentyne to moiste  
 32 bodyes; & to drye bodyes, he most be medlyde wip a lytel euffor-  
 bium. *Asa fetida* is best medycine, ȝif þou make of hym enplaster,  
 serapinum, & þe feces of wax, & þe fylthes of vesselis of been, alle  
 þey ben gode to a synwe, þat is prikyde, wheþer þou put iche be  
 36 hymself oþer opyn hem; & þou schalt fynden a ful techynge of þese  
 medicynes in þe Antidotarie of þis boke. þou schalt nouȝt closen



The nerve must be cleansed and healed before the wound is closed.

*Galion.*

relates, how a physician, by not so doing, caused the death of his patient.

wounde where þat þe prickynge of a senewe is, til þat þe senewe be perfytly clensid & heeled, & til þat þou be sikir þat þe place schal not swelle / Galien telliþ of a man þat was prickid with a poyntel in þe pawme of þe hand, to whom came oon of tisiilies<sup>1</sup> 4 clerkis þe which took hede to heele alle woundis generaliche; & he leide to þilke prickynge a consowdyng oynement þat was more acordynge to a wounde maad in fleisch; & he leide þerto a plastre maturatijf, wherfore al þe hand rotide & he fel into a crampe, & 8 so he diede, or þat þe .vij. daies weren passid / & if þat ilke leche hadde maad þat wounde broddere, & þanne þat he hadde helt into þe wounde hoot oile of rosis, & þanne þat he hadde do<sup>2</sup> comen out quytture wiþ hote medicyns sotil & drynge, & nouzt wiþ moist<sup>12</sup> medicyns, þat man schulde not haue be deed /

If þat a senewe hadde ben I-kutt ouerþwert ouer al atwo þanne, þou3 þat Tedericus<sup>3</sup> & summe opere seien þe contrarie, it is good þat þow<sup>4</sup> sowe togidere þe eendis of þe senewis þat ben kutt wiþ þe 16 sowinge of þe skyn. & aboue þilke maner of sowinge, þe firste dai leie oile of rosis, in þe which oile, maddockis<sup>5</sup>—þat ben wormes

*Tederik.*

[<sup>4</sup> If. 22, bk.]

The ends of the nerve ought to be sewn at the same time as the skin, and a medicine applied,

<sup>1</sup> Lat., unus de secta Thessali. Thessalus lived in Rome at the time of Nero, and enjoys the reputation of being the first great quack.

<sup>2</sup> Lat., Si . . . saniem . . . subtiliter desiccantibus expectasset. Add. MS. translates literally, abyde. The use of *do* (= faire) is further illustrated by Mätzner. See *don* .6.

<sup>3</sup> Theodoricus, an Italian (?) monk of the 13th century, was the author of a *Surgery*.

<sup>5</sup> maddock, O.E. mašek, Dan. maddik. See Skeat, *Etym. Dict.*, under maggot and mawkish.

Add. MS. a wounde, where þat þe prikyng of a synwe is, ere þan þe synwe be perfitye clansyde & helyd, & ere þou be sykere þat þe place 20 schal nouzt swelle. Galyen tellyth of a man wiþ a poyntel in þe

[<sup>6</sup> fol. 48 b.]

pawme of þe hand, to whom come one of <sup>6</sup>Tesilies clerkys, þe whiche toke hede to helyn alle woundis generaliche, & he leyde to þilke prikyng a consoudynge oygnement þat was more acordynge 24 to a wounde y-makede in flesch, & he leyde þereto a maturatyf plastre, where fore al þe hand rotyd, & he fel into a crampe, & so he dyede ere þe vii dayes were passyde; & 3if þat þilke leche hadde y-made þilke wounde braddere, & þenne & hadde y-helde in þe 28 wounde hote oyle of rosys, and þenne hadde abyde quyter wiþ hote medycines sotyl & dreyng, & nozt wiþ moiste medycines, þilke man ne scholde nouzt haue ben ded. 3if þat a synwe hadde ben kut thwart ouer al atwo þenne, þaw3 þat tedericus & summe opere sigge 32 þe contrarye, hit is good þat þou sewe togedre þe hedys of þe synwys þat beþ y-kutte, wiþ þe sowinge of þe skyn & abouen þilke maner of sewynge, þe first day leye oyle of roses, in þe whiche oyle



of þe erþe—han be boild, & caste aboute þe wounde þe poudre þat  
 kepþ þe sowynge .o. day or two aftirward, & kepe þe sowynge wiþ  
 plumaciols .iiij. cornerid, & wiþ byndynge, & kepe þe lyme from  
 4 swellynge, for bi sich a maner sowynge of a senewe þou maist con-  
 sowde þe senewe aȝen; for þe lyme schulde han be lost in partie or  
 in al, þe meuyng þat was brouȝt vnto him fro þe braun, for bi þat then the limb  
 senewe þe lyme mai rekeuere his felynge, & so þe restoringe of þe may regain  
 8 braun may be fastere & schapliker. þou schalt nouȝt drede of þe its motor  
 akyng þat schulde be maad of prickynge<sup>1</sup> of þe senewe, for þe powers.  
 akþe schal be doon awei wiþ oo leiyng to eiþer tweyne of þilke  
 oile / Ne sich maner akþe may nouȝt make þe crampe, for þe senewe  
 12 is al kutt atwo ne no man \*[make an] obieccioun wiþ Galion. *Galion.*  
 wordis, þat we schulden be war in ioynynge parties of a wounde  
 togidere \*[þat non here ne oyle ne scholde noȝt entre wiþynne þe  
 lippes of a wounde, þat betþ y-brought togedre] To þilke abiec-  
 16 cioun we answeren: þat þe stipticite<sup>2</sup> of þe rosis & þe oile þat was  
 nouȝt ripe, & þe glutinosite of þe wormes of þe erþe remeuen þe akþe  
 of þe senewis & al þe harm þat schulde come of þe ilke sowynge. [2 ff. 23]

If þat a senewe were woundid in lenkþe, he mai wel & lyȝtliche

<sup>1</sup> *prickynge of þe senewe.* The Latin, *acus punctura*, is correctly translated in Add. MS. See below.

20 Maddokkys, þat beþ wormys of þe erthe, haue ben boyllde; and Add. MS.  
 caste aboute þe wounde þe poudre þat kepyth þe sowynge a day 12,056.  
 oþer two afterward, & kepe þe sowynge wiþ plumacioles þre kernel-  
 lyde & wiþ<sup>3</sup> byndynge, & kepe þe lyme from swellynge, ffor by  
 24 swyche a manere sowynge of þe synwe þou maiste consoude þe  
 synwe ageyn, for þe lym scholde haue lost in party oþer in al the  
 meuyng, þat was y-browȝt to hym from þe brayn, for by þilke  
 synwe þat lyme may rekeueren hys felynge, & so þe restoryng of  
 28 þe brayn may be more schaplokere & fastere. Ne þou ne schalt  
 noȝt drede of þe akyng þat scholde be made of þe prekyng of þe  
 nelde, for þe akþe schal be don away by one leggyng to oþere  
 tweyne of þilke oyle; ne swyche manere akþe may noȝt make þe  
 32 crampe, for þe synwe ys al kutte atwo. Ne no man \*make an  
 obieccioun wiþ galyens wordys, þat we scholde be ware in ioynynge  
 þe parties of a wounde togedre, \*þat non here ne oyle ne scholde  
 noȝt entre wiþynne þe lippes<sup>4</sup> of a wounde, þat beþ y-brouȝt to- [4 fol. 49 a]  
 36 gedre.\* To þilke obieccioun we answeren, þat þe stipticite of þe  
 roses & þe oyle þat was nouȝt ripe, & þe glutinosyte of þe wormys  
 of þe erthe remywen þe akþe of þe synwes, & al þe harme þat  
 scholde comen of þilke sewynge. Ȝif þat a synwe were woundede  
 40 in lengþe he may be wel & lyȝtliche y-soudyde togedire, wiþ

<sup>3</sup> *wiþ above line.*



The wounded limb must be kept from swelling.

Nota.

If there is swelling, and if the wound is purulent, apply a mundificative, and keep the wound tented.

[4 lf. 23, bk.]

a mundificatif medicyne

be sowdid togidere wiþ ioynynge of lippis, & wiþ þe sowynge & wiþ þe kepyng of þe lyme þat he swelle nouȝt / Vndirstonde here in þis place: þat þer is no þing more worschipful to a leche ne more profitable to a sijk man þan to kepe a lyme woundid fro swellynge, 4 & neþeles it is hard to kepe senewis þat ben woundid from swellynge / Neþeles a leche here schal take heed aftir þe techinge þat schal be ȝeue him in þe chapitle of þe cure of a wounde, whanne þat þer is wiþ him a swellynge. If þat a wounde were chaungid 8 of þe eyr and made quytture, þat þe sowynge were to-broke and þe puncture were vndir,<sup>1</sup> þanne make a medicyne mundificatif & leie him abrood on a linnen cloof & leie it aboue þe wounde, & putte a litil smal tent in þe eende of þe wounde þat is moost lynyng,<sup>2</sup> & 12 pilke tent schal touche no senewe ne make noon akþe vndir<sup>3</sup> þat, þat ilke wounde be 4weel dried. A mundificatif medicyn of senewis woundid is maad in þis maner: Take mel roset colat ȝ .iiij. smal flour of barly & medle hem togidere & boile hem slili þat þei 16 brenne nouȝt, & remeue hem fro þe fier & bete hem "longe" togidere wiþ a spatire;<sup>5</sup> & þanne putte þerto ȝ j. of whit terebentyne; & if þou mowe finde noon whijt terebentyne, þanne waische oþere

<sup>1</sup> undir, mistake for undo. See below. <sup>2</sup> lynyng, for declynyng.

<sup>3</sup> undir þat, donec. <sup>5</sup> spatir, spatula.

Add. MS. 12,056. ioynynge of þe lippys & wiþ sowynge & wiþ kepyng of þe lym, þat 20 he scholde<sup>6</sup> nouȝt. Understande here in þis place, þat þere is no þynge more worschipful to a leche ne more profytable to a seke man, þenne to kepe a lyme y-woundyde from swellynge, & naþeles it is hard to kepe synwys þat beþ woundyde from swellynge. 24 Naþeles a leche here schal take hede aftere þe techynge þat schal be geuen to hym in hys chapyteff of þe cure of a wounde, whanne þat þere ys wiþ hym a swellynge. ȝif a wounde were chaungyd of þe eyre and mad quyter, þat þe sowynge were tobroke, & þe 28 punctis weren vndo, þenne make a medycine mundyficatyff, & leye hym abrod on a lynne cloth, & leye it aboue þe wounde, & put a lytel smal tent in þe one ende of þe wounde þat is most declynyng; & pilke tent schal touche non synwe, ne make non 32 akþe, vndire þat þat pilke wounde be wel dryede. A mundificatyff medycine of synwes y-woundyde ys y-made in þis manere: R. mel rosat colat ȝ iii smal floure of barly ȝ, & medle hem togedre & boyle hem slyȝly þat þey brenne nouȝt, & remywe hem from þe 36 fyre & bete hem togedre longe wiþ a spator, & þenne put þere to ȝ. of whyte terbentyne, & ȝif þou maiste fynde no whyte terbentyne

<sup>6</sup> scholde, error for snelle, or it belongs to: scalle, scalde, scalled, scab. See W. Wright, and *Cathol. Angl.*



terebentyne with cold watir til it be whizt, & whane þat be þis  
 medicyn þis wounde is almoost drie, þanne putte in þe same medi-  
 cyn a litil poudre of frankencense mastik & saundragoun, medle  
 4 hem togidere & leie aboue þe wounde til it be hool / & whanne þat  
 it is hool manye daies aftir, leie flex in good strong wiyn het hoot  
 til it be perfiztli al hool, & if þat þer leue ony hardnes in meuyng, Any remain-  
 after þat it is hool, þanne þou schalt vse þe techinge þat schal be ing stiffness  
 8 3ouen to þee in þe laste tretis þat schal be antidotarie in þe chapitle of the limb  
 of medicyns mollificatyues; þere þou schalt fynde þe maner how þou may be re-  
 schalt helpe best lymes þat ben heeled and moun not rízt weel meuen / moved by a  
 mollificative  
 medicine.

þe firste<sup>1</sup> techinge of þe firste tretis is of heelynge of  
 12 a wounde maad in boon / Cm. 4m.  
Off woundes  
made yn the  
bonis

Whanne þat woundis ben so depe þat<sup>2</sup> only fleisch is not [<sup>2</sup> 1f. 24]  
 woundid but þe boon þat is vndir þe fleisch & þe senewe / þanne a  
 man muste biholde, wher þat þe boon be kutt al atwo, as ofte-tyme  
 16 it may happe in þe boon of þe thie & schene boonys & þe boonys  
 of þe armes. And þanne þilke wounde is ful perilous; & nameli if  
 þe boonys of þe thie ouþir þe boon of þe arme from þe schuldre to  
 þe elbowe be kutt al atwo, so þat þe marie go out. But ofte-tymes It is danger-  
ous if the  
thigh bone or  
the bone of  
the upper arm  
has been cut  
in two.

<sup>1</sup> firste, mistake for furþe.

20 wassche it wyth colde watyre, tyl it be whyt; & whenne þat by þis  
 medycine þe wounde is almost drye, þenne put in þe same medycine Add. MS.  
12,056.  
 a lite smal poudre of franke ensence, mastike, & sank dragoun, &  
 medle hem to gedre, & leye aboue þe wounde tyl it be al hol; &  
 24 whanne þat it is hol manye dayes aftere, leye flax in gode stronge  
 hot wyn, tyl yt be al hol perfitlyche. & 3if þat þere leue enye  
 hardnesse<sup>3</sup> in mevyng, aftere þat it is hol, þenne þou schalt vse [<sup>3</sup> fol. 49 b]  
 the techyng þat schal be geuen to þe in þe laste tretys, þat schal  
 28 be antidotarye in þe chapitle of medycine, molyficatyffes; þere þou  
 schalt fynde þe manere how þou schalt helpyn beste lymes, þat beþ  
 y-helyde & mowe nozt ryzt wel meffen.

The furþe techyng of þe firste tretys is of helyng of  
 32 a wounde y-makyde in bon.

Whenne þat woundes beþ so depe þat only þe flesch is nouzt  
 y-woundyde, but þe bon þat is vndire þe flesch & þe synwe, þenne a  
 man most byholde wheþere þat þe bon be kut al atwo, as ofte tymes  
 36 yt may happen in þe bon of þe thyz & þe schynebonys, & þe bonys  
 of þe Arme, & þenne þylke wounde is ful perylouse; and namlye,  
 3if þe bon of þe thyz ore þe bon of þe arme, from þe schuldre to þe  
 elbowe, be y-kutte al atwo, so þat þe marie gon out. But ofte tymes



The wound ought not to be closed before the bone has been repaired.

*Nota*

In the place of the missing bone, there grows either a hard substance

[4 lf. 24, bk.]

poris sarcoides.

or a soft one:

caro poroides.

oon boon of þe schene or o. boon of þe armes is kutt<sup>t</sup> al atwo ouertwert<sup>t</sup> ouer & neþeles afterward may be restorid; ouþer a boon is not kutt<sup>t</sup> al atwo but<sup>t</sup> sum of his substaunce is don away, & þilke substaunce, ouþer he is doon away or ellis he hangiþ togidere / A 4 general rule is in cure of woundis in whom boonys ben woundid: þat neuere bi a leche fleisch schal ben I-sowdid aboue þe boon, but<sup>t</sup> first<sup>t</sup> pleynerliche bi repeire<sup>1</sup>; for þe boon may neuere be<sup>2</sup> wiþ verri consolidacion be consowdid, for his mater was þe sperme of þe fadir 8 & of þe modir; but<sup>t</sup> in summe children, for þe age<sup>3</sup> is toward ofte tyme þat þei were sperme / but þer schal be maad a maner of restorynge in place of þe boon þat was broken eiþer lost, þat men clepen <sup>4</sup>poris sarcoides or ellis caro poroydes, & a<sup>5</sup> maner þing<sup>t</sup> þat is 12 restorid is hardere þan þe fleisch & neischere þan þe boon / & if<sup>t</sup> þat ilk mater þat<sup>t</sup> is restorid be nyȝ as hard as is þe boon, it<sup>t</sup> is clepid porus sarcoides / & if<sup>t</sup> þat ilke mater be not hard but sumwhat porus sarcoides / & if<sup>t</sup> þat ilke mater be not hard but sumwhat neische, it is clepid caro poroydes / & if<sup>t</sup> þat a neische fleisch were 16 & a moist nouȝt<sup>t</sup> regenerated vpon boonys þat ben sett togidere, a man schulde not<sup>t</sup> haue his purpos to heele & consowde þe wounde. Loke þanne wheþer þe boon be kutt<sup>t</sup> atwo altogidere ouerþwert<sup>t</sup> ouer, þat

<sup>1</sup> *repeire*, erroneously for *repeired*.

<sup>2</sup> *be* has to be cancelled.

<sup>3</sup> *for þe age is toward ofte tyme*, for, *for þe nyȝte of tyme*. See below.

<sup>5</sup> *a*, above line.

Add. MS. on bon of þe schyne, oþere in bon of þe Arme, ys ykutt al atwo 20  
12,056. twartofere, & naþeles afterward may be restoryde; oþer a bon ys nouȝt ykut al atwo, but sum of his substaunce ys done awaye, and þilke substaunce oþere he ys don al awaye, oþere he hongyth to gedre. A general rule ys in cure of woundes in whom bonys ben 24 woundyde, þat neuere by a leche flesch schal be y-sowdyd aboue þe bon, but first þe bon plenerlyche be repeyrede; ffor þe bon may neuere with verrey consolidacyoun ben consouded, for his matere was þe sperne of þe fadire & þe modire, but in somme children for 28 þe nyȝte of tyme þat þey were sperme (*sic*); but þere schal be mad a manere restorynge in plas of þe bon þat was broken oþere lost. þat men clepen porrus sarcoides oþere ellys caro poroydes, & þat manere thyng þat is restoryd is hardere þe flesch & nesschere þen 32 þe bon; & ȝif þat þilke mater þat is restoryde by neye<sup>6</sup> as hard as yt were a bon, yt is clept porus sarcoides; & ȝif þat þilke mater be nouȝt harde, but sum<sup>7</sup>what nessche, yt is clepyde caro poroydes; ȝif þat a nesch flesch & a moist were noȝt regenerated vpon bonys 36 þat ben set togedre, a man scholde noȝt han his purpos to helyn & to consoude þe wounde. Loke þenne wheþere þe bon be kutte a-

[7 fol. 50 a]

<sup>6</sup> MS. neþe.



- pou bryngist togidere & bindist þe parties of þe wounde, as it schal be told in þe .viij. chapitle folowyng, where þou schalt haue how a wounde schal be heelid þat is out of ioynthe I-kutt atwo & 4 to-broken / & if a wounde<sup>1</sup> be not kutt atwo al togidere ouerþwert ouer, loke if ony pece of þe boon dwelle sadliche with þe opere A portion of the bone can either be re-fastened, partie of þe hool boon / & þanne if þou myȝt brynge þilke pece to þe place þat he was yn tofore wiþ þristyngedoun þilke pece wiþ 8 sum instrument acordyng þerto, & sowde þilke pece wiþ þe hool boon wiþ þe poudre þat I shal telle aftirward; for so the <sup>2</sup>schap of [2 lf. 25] þe lyme mai dwelle<sup>3</sup> faire & strengere / & if þat ilke pece haue no or it must be removed, fastnes to þe hool boon, do þat pece away & regenerere in þe place of 12 þe boon þat þat<sup>4</sup> was lost a repeirement / For þouȝ þat ypocras & Galion tellen þat it is nessessarie after quantite of þe boon þat is lost, an holowȝ cicatrise to be alwey, neþeles wiþ þis poudre þe generacioun of þese poris may be mendid, not a litil, but riȝt 16 myche / þis is þe poudre: take frank-encense, mastik, mirre, dragagantum, gumme arabik, ana. ȝ. ij. flour of fenegrek, .ȝ. s' caste þis poudre vpon þe defaute of þe boon þat is lost, til þat þou holde a pleynere repeirement \*[& a restauracioun. þenne & noȝt ere 20 brynge ouere flesch ouere þe repeyrmēt wiþ] regeneratiuis, mun-
- <sup>1</sup> wounde, erroneously for boon.      <sup>3</sup> hool, cancelled after dwelle.  
<sup>4</sup> The second þat has to be cancelled.      <sup>5</sup> incarnatyff in a later hand.

two al togedre twartofere, þat þou brynge togedre, & bynde the parties of þe wounde as yt schal be tolde in þe eyȝte chapyteH Add. MS. 12,056.  
 folwyng, where þou schalt han hou a wonde schal ben helyde þat is out of joynt, y-kutte atwo & tobroke. & ȝif þat a bon be noȝt kutte atwo al togedre twartofere, loke ȝif enye pece of þe bon dwelle sadlyche to þe on partye of þe hole bon, & þenne ȝif þou myȝte brynge þilke pece to þe place þat he was yn tofore with 24 þrustyngedon þilke pece with sum Instrumentis acordyng þereto, & sowde þilke pece wiþ þe hole bon with þe poudre, þat y schal tellyn afterwarde; for so þe schap of the lyme may dwelle fairere & strengere. & ȝif þat þilke pece haue no fastnesse to þe hole bon, 28 do þat pece away, & þenne regenerere in þe place of þe bon þat was lost a repairment. For þowȝ þat ypocras & Galyen tellyn þat it ys necessarie aftere þe quantite of a bon þat is lost, an holwe cicatrice to be alwey, napeles wiþ þis poudre þe generacioun of þese 32 pores may be mendyde noȝt a lytel, but ryȝt myche. þis is þe poudre: Take frank ensence, Mastike, Mirre, dragagantum gu. arabyke ana. ȝ. ij., flour of flenngreke, ȝ. f, cast þis poudre a gode quantite vpon þe defaute of the bon þat was lost, tyl þat þou haue 36 a plenere repeyrmēt \*& a restauracioun. þenne & noȝt ere brynge ouere flesch ouere þe repeyrmēt with \*generatyffes, mun-

SURGERY. E



dificatiuis & consolidatiuis aftir þe techinge þat þou haddist biforn /  
Undirstonde þat al þing<sup>i</sup> þat is seid of boonys in þis chapitle is of  
alle þe boonis of þe bodi saf<sup>i</sup> þe heed / I schal make a chapitle by  
hym-silf<sup>i</sup> //

4

¶ Cap<sup>m</sup> v<sup>m</sup>  
Wondis  
made with  
conteschoun  
l. h.

**T**He fifþe chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste  
tretis of woundis þat ben maad wip smytynge of  
staf or stoon, or fallynge or smytynge of an hors,  
or wip ony oþir þing semblable.

8

[1 lf. 25, bk.]

must be at-  
tended to in a  
different  
manner to  
incised  
wounds.

All the soft  
parts are  
bruised

with or  
without the  
skin being  
divided.

To hem happen greet difference <sup>1</sup>fro woundis þat ben maad wip  
kuttinge, as wip swerd, knyf, eipir arowe prickynge; & in oþere  
maner þei schulen ben I-heclid / For þow3 þat verry consolidacioun  
be þe firste & principal entencioun of heelynge of a wounde, to þis 12  
chapitle it<sup>i</sup> acordip nou3t<sup>i</sup>, for in smytynge, þe fleisch & þe veynes,  
& senewis, & arteries ben brusid, for in þe ynnere part<sup>i</sup> of þe lyme  
þe boon azenstondip, & on þe ouer part<sup>i</sup> <sup>2</sup>of þe þing<sup>i</sup> þat is smyten  
knyttip nou3t<sup>i</sup> / Wherefore it<sup>i</sup> is nessessarie, if þer schulde be a 16  
wounde, þat alle þe smale lymes þat ben bitwene þe boon & þe þing<sup>i</sup>

<sup>2</sup> The passage is corrupt; the correct version is given by Add. MS.: þe  
þynge þat smyter & kutteþ nou3t.

Add. MS. 12,056. dificatyses, & consolidatyses, aftere þe techynge that þou haddyst  
toform. Undirstonde þat alle þynge þat ys seyde of bonys in þis  
chapitle, ys of alle þe bonys of þe body saff<sup>i</sup> þe hed; & of þe 20  
bonys off<sup>i</sup> the hed y schal make a chapitle by hym-selff.

þe ffye Chapitle of þe þridde techynge of þe furst  
tretis is of woundis <sup>3</sup>that beth y-mad with  
smytinge.

[3 fol. 50 b]

24

The woundys þat bep mad wip brosynge, as wip smytynge of a  
staf, oþere ston, oþer fallynge, oþere wip smytynge of an hors, oþer  
wip enye thyng semblable to hem, habbit<sup>i</sup> gret differens from  
woundis þat bep y-made wip kuttynge: as wip swerde, knyf, ore 2.  
arwe prikyng, & in oþere manere þey schulle ben helyde. For  
þow3 þat verreye consolidacioun be þe first & þe princypal Intencioun  
of helynge of a wounde, to þis chapitle it acordyþ nou3t, ffor in  
smytinge, þe flesch & þe veynes, synwes & arteries ben y-brusyde; 32  
for in þe ynnere part of þe lyme þe bon azeine stonde, & on þe vtter  
part þe þynge þat smyteth & kutteþ nou3t, wherefore it is necessarie,  
if þat þere scholde ben a wounde, þat alle þe smale lymes þat bep  
bytvene þe bon & þe þynge þat smyteth, scholde be brusyde; & 36



þat smytþ, schulde be brusid, & oþerwhile þe fleisch & þe oþere consimile membris ben brusid wiþoute wounde / Wherefore þe curis of boþe I wole ordeyne in þis chapitle. If þat a leche wolde enforce

Such wounds, when joined too soon, will slough.

4 him to ioynen togidere wiþ consolidatioun þe wounde þat is maad wiþ smytynge, nedis quytture & corrupcioun bi þilke consolidatif muste

be vnder þe wounde; þe which quytture schulde corrupte þilke lyme & brynge him to putrefaccioun, but if þat kynde were so myȝty,

8 þat he myȝte eftsoone opene þilke wounde, þat was consowdid bi a sori leche<sup>1</sup>; or wiþ<sup>2</sup> a good leche come & knowe þilke dispo<sup>3</sup>sicioun

[<sup>3</sup> It. 26]

& knowe helpe, wiþ propre eir<sup>4</sup> to rectifien þe corrupcioun of þilke lyme / What schalt þou þanne do? þou muste loke wheþer þat þe

12 bodi be ful of wickide humouris, eiþer be clene; if þat he be ful late him blood, if alle particuler þingis acorden, as vertu, age, con-

If the patient is plethoric use blood-letting;

plexioun & consuetude; & þese þingis moten alwey<sup>5</sup> taken in mynde, þouȝ alwey þei be not I-nempned & namely vertu; & he be

if he is feeble, cupping and purging.

16 not strong<sup>6</sup> & alle oþere þingis acorden, þou schalt not lete blood, but þou maist ventosen, if þat it be nessessarie, or ellis [lose] \* þe wombe

Nota

if þat he be costif<sup>6</sup>; & if þat he be feble, & þe brosure were in þe ouer parti of þe bodi, voide þe fecis of his wombe bi clisterie. &

Clisterie

<sup>1</sup> bi a sori leche, a malo medico. See Halliwell, *Diet.*, sorry Laten.

<sup>2</sup> wiþ, mistake for þat.

<sup>4</sup> eir, read cur.

<sup>5</sup> be wanted after alwey.

<sup>6</sup> costif, costive, subject to be bound in body.—Kersey.

20 oþerwhyle þe flesch & þe oþere consimile membris bep brusyde witout wounde, wherefore þe cures of boþe y wyl ordeyne in this chapitle. Ȝif þat a leche wolde enforce hym to Iune to gedire

Add. MS. 12,056.

with consolidatyfes þe wounde þat is maad wiþ smytynge, nedys<sup>7</sup>

24 quytter & corrupcioun bi þilke consolidatyff, most be vndire þe wounde; þe whiche quytter scholde corruppe þilke lyme & brynge

hym to putrefaccioun, but Ȝif þe kynde were so myȝtye, þat he myȝte eftesonys opyne þilke wounde, þat was consowdid bi a sori leche,

28 oþere þat a gode leche come & knewe þilke dispocisioun, & coupe helpe wiþ propre cure to rettifien þe corrupcioun off þilke lyme. What schaltou þanne do? þou most loke wheþere that þe body be

ful of yueþ humores, oþer be clene; Ȝif þat he be ful, lete hym

32 blod, Ȝif alle partikelere þynges acorden: as vertu, Age, complexioun & consuetude; & þese þynges þou most alweye taken in þy mynde,

þowȝ alweye þey ben nouȝt y-nempnyde, & namlye vertue; & he be nouȝt stronge & alle oþere þynges acorden, þou schalt nouȝt leten

36 blod, bot þou<sup>8</sup> maiste ventosen, Ȝif þat it be nessessarie, oþer ellis lose \* þe wombe Ȝif þat he be costyff; & Ȝif þat he be feble, & the brosure were in þe ouere party of þe body, voyde þe feces of hys

[<sup>8</sup> fol. 11 a]

<sup>7</sup> MS. nedyth.



concussio  
membri ner-  
uosi cura  
l. h.  
oile Roses

[1 lf. 26, bk.]

An antiseptic  
powder.

Treatment  
of a contu-  
sion, if the  
wound is  
open.

if þou wolt lete blood, þou schalt lete blood on þe contrarie partie  
of þe veyne, bryngyng<sup>t</sup> norischinge to þe lyme þat<sup>t</sup> was hirt<sup>t</sup>; & þilke  
veyne þou schalt knowe, if þat þou knowist pleynerliche anotamie,  
þat I haue tauzt<sup>t</sup> þee in þis same book / & whanne þat þe bodi is 4  
clensid, if þat<sup>t</sup> þe brosur be wiþoute þe wounde, anoynte þe membre  
þat is brosid, which bigynneþ to haue an enpostym, with hoot oile  
of rosis, & caste aboue a poudre maad of þe seed of mirtilles, &  
bynde it softly; <sup>1</sup>for ofte-tymes it nedip noon oþer eir<sup>2</sup> / For þis 8  
medicyn fastneþ þe place, & defendip him fro putrefaccioun. &  
þou3 þat<sup>t</sup> þis medicyn mowe not letten al þe mater from rotynge,  
neþeles it defendip myche of þe same mater fro rotynge / & if al þe  
mater mai not be defendid from putrifaccioun, but sum partie þerof<sup>t</sup> 12  
putrifieþ, opene þe place & exclude þe quytture, & clense al þe place.  
& his cure schal be seid in þe chapitle of apostymes<sup>3</sup> & of exitours /  
But if<sup>4</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> a brusour were wiþ a wounde, anoynte aboute þe  
wounde or eills þe place þat is brusid wiþ þe forseid oile of rosis, & 16  
caste aboue þe forseid poudre of mirtilles, for it fastneþ þe place,  
ne it lettip nouzt<sup>t</sup> þe corrupcioun to spreden eiþer to be drawen  
abrood; & it castip to þe wounde þe corrupt mater þat is in þe

<sup>2</sup> eir, read cur.

<sup>3</sup> Latin, *de apostematibus exituris*, apostems which discharge pus.

<sup>4</sup> if, above line.

Add. MS. wombe by clisterye. & 3if þou wilt lete blod, þou shalt lete blod 20  
12,056. on þe contrarye party of þe veyne, bryngyng<sup>e</sup> norysschyng<sup>e</sup> to þe  
lyme þat was hurt; & þilke veyne þou schalt y-knowe, 3if þat þou  
knowist plenerlyche Anotamye, þat y haue tauzte þe in þis same  
boke. & whenne þat þe body ys y-clansyde, 3if þat þe brosure be 24  
wiþout þe wounde, anoynt þe membre þat is y-brusyde, whiche þat  
begynneþ to han a postum, wiþ hote oyle of roses, & cast aboue a  
poudre y-mad of þe sed of mirtylles & bynde it softlye, for ofte  
tymes it nedyth non oþer cure. For þis medycyne fastnyth þe 28  
place, & defendyth hym from putrefacioun, & þow3 þis medycine  
mowe nozt letten alle þe mater from rotynge, napeles yt deffendyth  
myche of þe same matere fro rotynge; & 3if þat al þe matere may  
nouzt be defendyde fro putrefacioun, but sum partye þereof 32  
putrefieþ, opene þe place & exclude þe quyter, & clanse al þe place.  
& his cure schal be seyde in þe tretys of apostomes & of exitures.  
But 3if þat þe brosure were wiþ a wounde, anoynte about þe wonde  
oþere ellys þe place þat is y-brusyde, wiþ þe forseyd oyle of roses, 36  
& caste aboue þe forseyd poudre of mirtillyes, for þis medycine  
fastnyth þe place, ne yt ne letteþ nozt corrupcioun to spredyn, oþere  
to be drawe abrod, & it castith to þe wounde þe corrupt mater, þat



- place þat is brusid / Wipinne þe wounde leie þe 3elke of an ey, wip  
oile of<sup>1</sup> rosis, with stupis, or ellis wip lint.<sup>1</sup> Leid<sup>2</sup> aboue þe N  
wounde a potage maad of<sup>1</sup> .iiij parties of<sup>1</sup> watir & oon partie of  
4 oile de olyue, & flour of wheete þat sufficiþ to þe medicyn, & leie R  
þis medicyn to þe wounde, til þat þe akþe be aswagid, & til þat þe  
quytture be engendrid; aftirward clense <sup>3</sup>þe wounde, aftir þe [<sup>3</sup> lf. 27]  
clensynge regenerer, & at þe laste cicatrice. & þou schalt<sup>1</sup> haue a  
8 ful techinge in þe antidotarie of<sup>1</sup> mundificatiuis & cicatrizatiuis /  
But if þe membre þat<sup>1</sup> was brusid be ful of<sup>1</sup> senewis, as þe hand Treatment of  
a contusion,  
if the injured  
limb is full of  
nerves, e. g.  
hand or foot.  
ouþer þe foot, þou schalt<sup>1</sup> not<sup>1</sup> chaunge þi cure if þat<sup>1</sup> þer be no  
wounde; but þou þer be a brusour in senewy membre I-woundid,  
12 leie not<sup>1</sup> þere þe potage tofore seid, but oonly hoot oile of<sup>1</sup> rosis, &  
aboue þe oile poudre of<sup>1</sup> mirtillis, & aboue þe wounde leie terebentine  
I-waischen & drawen abrood bitwene two lynnē cloþis. & make  
a plastre of<sup>1</sup> pich & hony & bene flour, & leie aboute þe lyme þat<sup>1</sup> N plaster  
16 is ful of<sup>1</sup> senewis, as þe hand, þe foot, & speciali whanne þe flux of  
humouris ceessen not<sup>1</sup> / & þou þat<sup>1</sup> þi cure be drawe along<sup>1</sup>, ne go  
not<sup>1</sup> awei from þis cure / & whanne þat<sup>1</sup> al þe akþe is ceessid and þe  
swellynge is aswagid, for to clense þe wounde, vse þe medicyn of<sup>1</sup>  
20 mel roset<sup>1</sup> colath with barly mele, seid in þe wounde of<sup>1</sup> senewis / R

<sup>1</sup> lint. *Prompt. Parv.*, schauynge of lynnē clothe.<sup>2</sup> leid, mistake for leie.

- is in þe place þat is brusyde. Wipynne þe wounde leye þe 3olke of Add. MS.  
12,056.  
an eye with oyle of roses, with stupes oþere ellys wip lynte; & leye  
aboue þe wounde a potage y-made off<sup>1</sup> foure partyes of water & o  
24 partye of oyle d'Olyve & floure off<sup>1</sup> Whete þat suffyseþ to þe  
medycine, & leye þis medycine to þe wounde, tyl þat þe akþe be  
aswagyde & tyl þat þe quyter be engendryde; afterwarde clanse þe  
wounde, aftere þe clensynge regenerer, & at þe laste cicatryce, & þou  
28 schalt haue a ful techynge in þe Antiodarie of mundificatyfes,  
maturatyfes, & 3icatrifatifes. <sup>4</sup>But 3if þat þe membre þat was [<sup>4</sup> fol. 51 b]  
y-brusyde ys ful of synwes, as þe honde oþer þe fot, þou schalt nozt  
chaunge þy cure 3if þat þere be no wounde; but þaw 3 þat þere be a  
32 brusure in a synwy membre y-woundyde, ne leye nozt þere þe  
potage forseyd, but only hote oyle of roses, & aboue þe oyle poudre  
of mirtilles, & aboue þe wounde leye terbentyne iwassche & drawe  
abrod betwene tweye cloþes lynnē. & make enplastre of pych,  
36 hony & bene flour, & leye aboute a lym ful of synwes: as þe fot  
oþere þe hand, & specialyche whenne þat þe flux of humours seseþ.  
& þaw 3 þat þi cure be drawe along, ne go nozt away fro þis cure;  
& whenne þat al þe akþe ys y-sesyde, & alle þe swellynge ys aswagyde,  
40 forto clanse þe wounde, vse þe medycine of mel rosat colat with



*Galion* his cure is apreued bi *galion*, & I haue preued þis medicyn ofte tymes /

¶ Pe sixte chapitle of þe þridde techinge is of woundis  
þat han enpostymes & be distempered // 4

[<sup>1</sup> lf. 27, bk.]

Off woundes Impostemedede.

¶ Capm vjm  
If the wound  
is tumorous  
or distem-  
pered,  
the tumour  
and the  
"dyscrasia"  
must be re-  
moved first.

<sup>1</sup> A Wounde þat<sup>t</sup> haþ enpostym or an yuel discrasiam—þat<sup>t</sup> is to  
seie out<sup>t</sup> of kynde distemperid, eiper to cold eiper to hoot<sup>t</sup>—  
he mai not be heelid, ne he schal not ben heelid, but<sup>t</sup> first<sup>t</sup> he<sup>2</sup> be 8  
aswagid in þe yuel discurciour be amendid / & as I haue seid in  
anoþer place, it<sup>t</sup> is profitable to þe sijk man, & worschipe to þe leche,  
if þat<sup>t</sup> he mowe defende þe lymes þat<sup>t</sup> ben woundid from enpostyme  
& from an yuel discrasie. For þanne a leche schal kepe þe canoun 12  
o<sup>3</sup> *galion*, þat<sup>t</sup> is oon of þe .iiij. canouns; oon is to kepe lymes in  
her owne kyndely complexioun. For woundis moun not<sup>t</sup> ellis be  
heelid, but<sup>t</sup> if<sup>t</sup> þei be brouzt first<sup>t</sup> into her owne kynde / & a wounde  
mai be kept<sup>t</sup> from apostyme & an yuel discrasie if<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> þe leche be 16  
kunynge & do his deuer, & þe sike man be obedient<sup>t</sup> to þe leche /  
þe leche muste loke if<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> þer go blood y-now<sup>3</sup> out<sup>t</sup> at<sup>t</sup> þe wounde;  
& if<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> þe wounde haue not<sup>t</sup> bled blood y-now<sup>3</sup>, þe pacient<sup>t</sup> muste

If necessary

<sup>2</sup> The correct version is given by Add. MS.

<sup>3</sup> *a*, mistake for *of*.

Add. MS. barly mele, y-sayd in the wounde of synwes. þis cure ys aprefyde 20  
12,056. by *galyen*, & y haue preffyde þis medycine ofte tymes.

¶ The sixte Chapitle of þe þridde techynge is of  
Woundes þat han enpostemes, & beþ dystempryde.

A wounde þat<sup>t</sup> hath aposteme oþer an yuel discrasie—þat<sup>t</sup> is to 24  
sigge, out of kynde distempride, oþere to hote oþere to cold, he may  
nozt ben helyd, ne schal nouzt ben heled, but first þe posteme be  
aswagyde, & þe yuele discrasie be amendide. & as y haue seyde, in  
an oþere place, yt is profitable to þe syke man, & worschipful to þe 28  
leche, 3if þat he mowe dyffende þe lymes þat beþ woundyde fro eny  
postemys, & fro an euyh discrasie. For þenne a leche schal kepe  
þe canon of *galyen*, þat is on of foure canones; on is to kepyn  
lymes in here owne kendlye complexioun. For woundys mowe 32  
nozt ellys ben y-helyd, but 3if þey ben brouzt first to here owne  
kynde, & þe wounde may be kepte from aposteme & an yueh  
discrasie, 3if þat þe leche be kunynge & do hys deffere, & þe syke  
man be obedyent to þe leche. þe leche mot loke <sup>4</sup>3if þat þere haue 36  
go blod ynow<sup>3</sup> out of þe wounde; & 3if þat the wounde haue nozt  
bled blod ynow<sup>3</sup>, þe pacyent most ben lete blod, oþere ellys ben

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 52 a]



- be lete blood or ellis ventusid, takynge reward to alle particuler  
 pingis tofore seid / & ordeyne him a couenable dietyngge, as schal be  
 told in þe chapitle of dietyngge; & leie a defensif aboute þe wounde,  
 4 3 j. of bole armoniak distemperid wip oile of <sup>1</sup>rosis, & a litil vinegre : use blood-  
letting or  
cupping,  
prescribe a  
proper diet  
and a  
deffensium.  
 as picke as hony tempere it / & if þat þe tyme of þe 3eer were [1 lf. 28]  
 hoot, putte to þis medicyn þe ius of sum cold erbe: as morel,<sup>2</sup>  
 penywort,<sup>3</sup> virge pastoris. Late not þe lyme hange; but if it be Put the  
injured limb  
in a proper  
position.  
 8 the arm, hange it aboute þe necke / & if it be þe foot eiper þe  
 schene, lete him ligge / & if þat þe lyme ake, aswage þe akþe wip  
 an oynement of hoot oile of rosis / For as Galion seip: þer is no Galion.  
 þing more noious to a wounde þan is akþe & declinacioun of a  
 12 lyme, for þese .ij. maken soone an hoot swellynge, þe which is to þe  
 feuere as a welle, & to þe bodi as an ouene / þe woundid man  
 muste absteine him after þe chapitle of dietyngge techip, & boþe þe The patient  
and the  
physician  
must live  
chastely.  
 16 hem fro fleischly knowynge of a womman, [ne a womman] \*in tyme  
 of menstrue,<sup>4</sup> ne loke not on þe sike man / & oonys in þe dai þe sike  
 man schal go to priuy;<sup>5</sup> & if he mai not schite "oonys" kyndeli in Regulate  
the patient's  
stool.

<sup>2</sup> *morel*, Lat. Solathrum. See Notes.

<sup>3</sup> *penywort*, Lat. umbilicus Veneris.

<sup>4</sup> See Notes.

<sup>5</sup> *privy*. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 414, Pryvy or gonge (or Kocay), Latrina, cloaca, ypodromium; p. 202, Goo to pryvy, or to shytyng, Acello. *Pryvy* still used in Yorkshire.

- ventusyde, takynge rewarde to alle partikelere þynges tofore seyde, Add. MS.  
12,056.  
 20 & ordeyne hym a couenable dyotyngge, as schal be tolde in þe  
 ChapiteH of dyotyngge; & leye a defens aboute þe wounde: 3 j of  
 bol Armonyake, distemperid wip oyle of rosys & a lytel vynegre, to  
 þe þiknesse of hony; & 3if þat þe tyme of þe 3ere were hot, put to  
 24 þis medycine þe jus of sum colde erbe: as morel, ny3tschode, peny-  
 wort, virge pastoris, oþere sum oþer colde erbe; & bynde no3t þe  
 lyme to harde, ne lete no3t þe lyme hongyn; but 3if it be þe arme,  
 honge him aboute þe nekke; & 3if it be þe fot oþer þe schyne, lete  
 28 hym ligge; & 3if þat þe lyme akþe, aswage þe akþe wip anoyntyngge  
 of hote oyle of roses. Efor as Galyen seyth: þere is noþynge more  
 grefes, þan ys akynge & declynacioun of a lyme, for þese two makip  
 sone an hote swellynge, the whiche is to þe ffeyre as a welle, & to  
 32 þe body as an Ovyn. þe woundyde man most absteinen hym,  
 aftere þat þe chapiteH of dyetyngge techith; & boþe þe syke man &  
 þe leche, & alle þat ben aboute þe syke, mote absteinen hem from  
 fleschlye knowlache of a womman, ne a womman \*in tyme of  
 36 menstrewe, ne loke no3t on þe syke man; & onys in þe day þe syke  
 man schal schyte, & 3if he may no3t schyte kendly onys in þe day,



a clisterie þe dai after þe quantite of mete þat he takiþ, make him a clisterie  
 If a tumour develops, ouper a suppositorie oonys ech day. & if þou myzt<sup>1</sup> not wiþ alle  
 þese þingis defende þe lyme from apostyme, it is an yuel signe, for  
 [1 lf. 28, bk.] þe lyme is <sup>1</sup>feble, & þe humouris arn wickide; þanne bigynnen<sup>2</sup> to 4  
 use a maturatif, materen þe swellynge wiþ potage maad of flour, oile & watir, or  
 R ellis wiþ þis maturatif / Take malowe leues & leues of violet, & þe  
 rote of holihocke; seþe hem weel in water, & staumpe hem, & take  
 a pound of water, þat þei ben soden ynne, & comoun oile; 3 .iiij.; of 8  
 wheete flour 3 .iiij.; of flour of lynseed 3 j.; of flour of fenegrek  
 dj.<sup>3</sup> 3.; of erbis I-staumpid half a pound. & boile alle þese togidere  
 in a panne ouer þe fier, & stire it weel wiþ a spatire; & þis  
 maturatif leie on a linnen clooþ, & leie it on þe postyme til þat it 12  
 and remove the pus. be maturid / & whanne þat þe postyme is maturid, make þe quytture,  
 if þou maist, be cast to þe wounde; & if it mai not be cast to þe  
 wounde, opene þe place þat is moost lowist þere, as þe quytture mai  
 best goon out; & þanne hele þe wounde, as I schal telle in þe 16  
 þridde chapitle of apostymes / Take hede alwey to þis techinge;  
 If the tumour is caused by the pricking of a nerve use an ointment. & if þe postyme were for þe prickynge of a senewe, ne leie not  
 þerto þis potage maturatif, but wiþ þe oynement of oile of rosis, &  
 of opere þingis, as it is seid in þe woundis of senewis / 20

<sup>2</sup> bigynnen, mistake for bigynne.

<sup>3</sup> dimidium.

Add. MS. 12,056. after þe quantyte of mete þat he haþ takyn, make hym a clistry, oper  
 a suppositorie onys iche day. & 3if þou maiste nozt with alle þese  
 þynges defendyn þe lyme from aposteme, yt is an yuele signe, for þe  
 lyme ys feble, & þe humores ben wykkede; þen begynne to maturen 24  
 þe swellynge, with potage y-made off flour, oyle & water, oper ellys  
 maturatyff with þis maturatyff: R malwe leuys, leflys of vyolett, & þe rote  
 [4 fol. 52 b] of holy hokke; seþe hem <sup>4</sup>wel in water, & þanne stampe hem, &  
 take a pounce off þe water þat þey be sodyn yn, & of comyn oyle 28  
 3 .iiij, of whete flour 3 .iiij, of flour of lynsed .3. j, of flore vynegreke  
 3 f, of erbys i-stamped lb.<sup>5</sup> f; & boille alle þese togedire, in a pan  
 ouere þe fyre, & stire yt wel wiþ a spator; & þis maturatyff leye  
 on a lynne cloth, & leye on þe posteme, tyl þat yt be maturyd; & 32  
 whanne þat þe posteme is matured, make þe quyter, 3if þou maist,  
 ben y-cast to þe wounde; & 3if it may nozt ben y-cast to þe wounde,  
 opyne þe place þat ys most lowest þere, as þe quyter may best gone  
 out; & þan helyn þe wounde, as y schal tellyn, in þe þridde 36  
 chapyteH of Apostemys. Take hede alweye to þis techynge, þat  
 3if a posteme were for þe prikyng of a synwe, ne leye nozt þerto  
 þis potage maturatyff, but wyt þe vncture of oyle of roses & of  
 opere þynge, as yt is seyde in þe woundys of synwys. þou schalt 40

<sup>5</sup> MS. lj



pou schalt knowe þe yuel discrasie of a wounde, <sup>1</sup>if þat þou seest þe skyn þat is aboute þe wounde to reed & to hoot in felynge, þanne þe wounde is discrasie in hete; namely, if þat þer come out of þe wounde <sup>2</sup>a sotil quytture, reed; þilke discrasie pou schalt helpe wiþ coldyng þe lyme aboute þe wounde with oile of rosis & vnguentum album, Rasis of ceruse, which pou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie, & with þe ius of þe opere eerbis colde.

<sup>1</sup> If. 29]  
<sup>2</sup> A hot dyscrasia,

Nota

8 & pou schalt knowe a cold discrasie bi þe whiztnes eiper þe wannesse of þe place / & whanne þe place is cold in towching, & whanne þat þe quytture is picke; þe which discrasie pou schalt remeue bi þe enoynture of hote oiles, as oile of coste, <sup>3</sup>oile of laurine, oile of enforbium, & so opere hoote oilis /

<sup>2</sup> a cold dyscrasia, discrasies l. h.

A moist discracie pou schalt knowe bi þe neischenes of þe place, & bi aboundaunce of whizt liquide rotenes, þe which pou schalt helpe wiþ desiccatiuis: as wiþ waisching of wynn & hony togidere, in þe whiche ben soden balaustie, <sup>4</sup>gallis & þe ryndis of some garnadis, or alle or summe bi hem-silf /

<sup>3</sup> a moist dyscrasia,

R

þe drie discrasie pou schalt knowe bi þe smalnes of þe lyme, & þe smalnes of þe lippis of þe wounde, & litil quytture, if þat þe quytture be pinne; þe which discrasie pou schalt <sup>5</sup>helpe: with

<sup>4</sup> a dry dyscrasia.

<sup>5</sup> If. 29, bk.]

<sup>2</sup> MS. erroneously inserts *quytture* after *wounde*.

<sup>3</sup> *oile of coste*, Lat. cum oleo de castoreo.

<sup>4</sup> *balaustie*. Balaustium, the floure of the wylde Pomgranate. Halle, *Table*, p. 16.—1565. Turner, *Herbal*, II., fol. 49 b., calls it Balaustrum.

y-knowe þe euyH dyscrasie of a wounde, 3if þat þou sest the schyn þat is aboute þe wounde to reed, & to hot in felynge, þenne þe wounde is discrasyede in hete, namly 3if þat þere come out of þe wounde a sotyH qyter & a red; & þilke discrasye pou schalt helpen with coldyng þe lyme aboute þe wounde, with oyle of roses, & with vnguentum album—rasis of ceruse—whyche pou schalt fynde in þe Antodarie, & wiþ ius of opere colde erbys. & pou schalt knowe a colde discrasye by þe whitnesse oper þe wannesse of þe place, & whanne þe place ys colde in touchyng, & whanne þat þe qyter is thykke; the whiche discrasye pou schalt remeffen, by þe vnture of hote oyles, as oyle of cost, oyle lauryne, oyle of enforbium, & so opere hote oyles. A moiste discrasie pou schalt knowe by þe nesschenesse of þe place, & by þe Aboundaunce of whit lyquyde rotnesse, þe whiche pou schalt helpyn with defficatyffes: as with wasschyng of wynn & honye togedres, in <sup>6</sup>þe whiche buþ y-sode balaustye, gallys, & þe ryndes off poume garnettys, opere alle opere some by hem-selffen. þe drye dyscrasye pou schalt knowe by þe smalnesse of þe lyme, & þe smalnesse of þe lippes of þe woundes & litel qyter, 3if þat the qyter be þenne; þe whiche discrasye pou

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[<sup>6</sup> fol. 53 a]



As soon as  
the dyscrasia  
is removed,

try to heal  
the wound  
itself.

Auicenne

castynge on of hoot water til þat þe lyme wexe reed, & wip an  
oynement þou muste<sup>1</sup> grece, as hennes, goos, & dokis, þe marie boon  
of a calf, & wip plenteuousnes of good mete þat norischip: as þe  
broþis of fleisch, & temperate wiyn, & rere eyren, & smale fischis, 4  
& wip reste, & softnes of al þe bodi, & of þe lyme þat is hirt; &  
alwey to þis techinge take hede þat as soone as a membre is brouȝt  
to his kyndeli disposicioun, anon azenstondip<sup>2</sup> wip contrarious  
medieyns, & turne azen to þe principal cure of þe wounde. But 8  
þenke nouȝt to heele þe wounde as longe as it is enpostemed, or  
ellis haue an yuel discrasie; but first remeue þilke discrasie, or þat  
þou heele þe wounde / For whanne two þingis þat schulden ben  
heelid ben togidere, & þe oon of hem mowe not be helid wipoute 12  
helynge of þat opere, first we schulen heelen him, þat mai nouȝt  
be heelid wipoute þat oper helyng, as þe apostyme eiper þe dis-  
crasie / þus Auicenne techip in þe laste chapitle of þe firste book.  
Neuer-þe-lattere forȝete nouȝt þe principal cure, þat whanne þe 16  
accidentis ben asesid turne azen to þe principal cure //

<sup>1</sup> þou muste, mistake for of moiste.

<sup>2</sup> azenstondip, mistake for azenstonde.

Add. MS. schalt helpen wip castynge on of hote water, tyl þat þe lyme wexe  
12,056. rede, & with an oyntyng of moiste greys, as hennys, gosys &  
dokys, & þe marye bon of a Calff, & with plentefoste of gode mete, 20  
þat noryschyth, as þe brothys of flesch, & temperat wyn, & rere  
eyren, & smale fyssches, & opere gode þynges, & with reste and with  
softnesse of alle þe body & of þe lyme þat is y-hurte; & alwey to  
þis techynge take hede, þat as sone as a membre ys y-broȝt to his  
kendlye dysposicioun, anon azeyne stonde with contraryouse medy- 24  
cine, & turne azeyne to þe pryncipal cure of þe wounde. But þynke  
noȝt to helyn þe wounde, as longe as þe wounde ys apostomyde,  
opere ellys haþ an yuele discrasye, but first remywe þilke discrasye  
ere þan þou hele þe wounde. For whenne þat tweye þynges þat 28  
scholde ben y-helyde, buþ togedres, & þe on of hem mowe noȝt ben  
y-helyde withouten helynge of þe oper, first we schulle helyn hym,  
þat may noȝt be helyde withouten helynge of þe opere, as þe  
posteme oper þe dyscrasye; & þus Avycene techith in þe last 32  
chapiteH of þe first bokys. Ne nevere þe latere ne forȝete noȝt þy  
pryncipal cure, þat whanne the accidentes ben asesyde, turne azeyne  
to þe princypale cure.



¶ Pe .vij. chapitle of pe .iiij. techinge is a wounde maad  
with a wood hound, eiper of ony oper venemous  
beest /

- 4<sup>1</sup> **B**Vt whanne an hound hap biten a man, loke first if þat þe  
hound be wood; & if þat þe hound be not wood, heele þe  
wounde as þou doist opere comoun woundis; & if þat þe hound  
were wood, þou schalt knowe it bi certeyn cause & disposiciouns /
- 8 For a wood hound fleep mete & water; & he rennep hidirward &  
pidirward as a drunken man, wiþ open mouþ & his tail bitwene hise  
leggis; his tunge hangip out, but he wolde biten alle men; ne he  
knowip not þo men þat ben in houshold. He berkip not / & if
- 12 þat he opirwhile berke, his vois is ful hors, & opere houndis fleen  
fro him & berken vpon him. Also þou schalt knowe bi disposicioun  
of þe same wounde. For if þat þou wetist a crumme of breed in
- 16 þe blood of þe wounde, & zeuest it to anoper hound to ete, he  
wole not ete it; & if þat he ete it, he wole die / Or ellis take an  
ote, & staumpe it, & leie it on þe wounde al nyȝt, & on þe morowe  
zeue it to an hen; & þe hen wole not ete it / & if þe hen ete it, þe  
hen schal die /

[<sup>1</sup> If. 30]<sup>2</sup>¶ Cap<sup>m</sup> vij<sup>m</sup>

Bite of a dog.

Ascertain  
whether the  
dog was  
rabid.Food satu-  
rated with  
blood of the  
wound  
kills other  
animals.

<sup>2</sup> Heading to leaf 30, in a later hand, *Off woundes betten with doges.*

- 20 ¶ The vij Chapitelle of þe pridde techynge is off a  
wounde y-made of a wod hounde, opere of eny  
opere venymouse bestys.

- Whenne þat an hounde hath byten a man, ffirste loke ȝif þat þe  
24 hounde be wod; & ȝif þat þe hounde be noȝt wood, hele þe wounde  
as þou dost opere comyn woundys; & ȝif þat þe hounde were wood,  
þou schalt y-knowe yt by certeyne causes, & by dispo<sup>3</sup>siciouns. Ffor
- 28 whenne þat he seþ water; & he rennyth hydirwarde & þedirwarde,  
as a dronken man, wiþ opyn mouþ & hys taylle bytwene his leggis,  
hys tunge hongyth out, he wolde byte alle men, ne he ne knowyth  
nouȝt þo men þat ben his housholde, he berkyth noȝt; & ȝif þat
- 32 he operewhyle berke, hys voys ys ful hors, & opere houndys flen  
from hym & berkyn vpon hym. Also þou schalt y-knowe by  
dysposicioun of þe same wounde, for ȝif þat þou wetyst a crumme  
bred in þe blod of þe wounde & geuyste yt to an oper hounde to
- 36 etyn, he wyl noȝt etyn yt, & ȝif þe hounde etyþ yt he wyȝ deyen;  
opere ellys take a note & stampe yt, & leye on þe wounde al nyȝt,  
& on þe morwe ȝif yt to an henne, sche wyl noȝt etyn hyt; & ȝif  
sche etyth yt sche wyl deyen. & anone as þou wost þe hounde ys

Add. MS.  
12,056.[<sup>3</sup> fol. 53 b.]



If the dog  
was rabid,  
withdraw the  
blood from  
the wound by  
cupping,  
cauterization,  
[<sup>1</sup> If. 30, bk.]  
and attrahent  
remedies.

Simple  
remedies.  
Haue it (?)

Compound  
remedies.

Another  
treatment:

And anon as þou woost<sup>t</sup> þat þe hound was wood, sette a greet  
ventuse aboue vpon þe wounde, & drawe out<sup>t</sup> þe myche blood out<sup>t</sup>  
of<sup>t</sup> þe wounde, & aftirward drawe abroad þe wounde; & aboue al  
oþere þing<sup>t</sup>, brennyng of<sup>t</sup> hoot<sup>t</sup> yren to þe ground <sup>1</sup>of<sup>t</sup> þe wounde is 4  
moost<sup>t</sup> profitable. & leie aboue þe wounde atractiveis, to drawe out<sup>t</sup>  
þe venym / Summe of þese atractiveis ben symple, & summe com-  
pound / Symple beþ: þe lyuere of þe same wood hound þat<sup>t</sup> boot<sup>t</sup>  
þe man, garlik stampid, salt<sup>t</sup> fisch, aischis of<sup>t</sup> wiyn lies, appoponak 8  
þat<sup>t</sup> is wondirful, þe leeuës of<sup>t</sup> a gourde,<sup>2</sup> & þe rote of fenegrek, þe  
gile<sup>3</sup> of<sup>t</sup> fisch, & amptyn I-stampid / þese medicyns ben compound:  
vreyne of<sup>t</sup> a 3ong<sup>t</sup> man wiþ nitre; ouþer mintis stampid<sup>4</sup> wiþ salt, &  
distemperid wiþ vynegre, & maad an enplaster. An oþer medicyn 12  
compound: take floris eris & salt<sup>t</sup>, of<sup>t</sup> ech .x. parties, & þe fatte of<sup>t</sup>  
a calf<sup>t</sup>, & of<sup>t</sup> a wolf<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> sufficiþ, & make a plastre / An oþer: take  
schepis talow & buttere, & make a plaster / þis wounde schal be  
holden open at þe leeste fourty daies, & þis schal be do aboute þe 16  
place. In an oþer maner regimen / Vndirstonde þat<sup>t</sup> þe man þat<sup>t</sup> is  
biten, schal not<sup>t</sup> be lete blood in þe bigynnyng, lest<sup>t</sup> þe venym be  
drawe abroad bi oþere lymes; ne þou schalt<sup>t</sup> 3eue him no laxatif,  
lest<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> drawe þe venym to þe entrailis wiþinne; but<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> sette 20

<sup>2</sup> gourde, cucumer. See *Prompt. Parv.*, 203, *Goord*, Cucumer, cucurbita, colloquintida.

<sup>3</sup> gile, ne. gill. See Mätzner, *Dict.*, p. 268. The Latin has, *gluten*, glue.

<sup>4</sup> stampid, in margin.

Add. MS. 12,056. wod, sette a gret ventuse aboue þe wounde & drawe out myche blod  
out of þe wounde, & afterwarde drawe abrod þe wounde; & abouen  
alle oþere thyng brennyng of hote eyren to þe depþe of þe wounde  
ys most proffitable, & aftere leye aboue þe wounde attractyfes, to 24  
drawe out þe venym. Some of þese attractifes beþ symple, & some  
beþ compond. Symple beu: þe lyffere of þe same wod hounde  
þat bote þe man, garlyke y-stampyde, salt fyssch, asschys of vyne,  
Opopanac ys wondirful, þe leuys of a Gourde, & þe rote of ffyne- 28  
greke, þe gele of fyssches, & amptes y-stampyde. þese medycynes  
ben compond: vryne of a 3onge man, with nytre oþer myntes,  
i-stampyde with salt & distempred with vynegre, & y-mad in em-  
plastre. An oþer medicyne compond: R floris eris & salt ana 32  
ten parties, & þe fat of a calff twelf parties, & make a plastre.  
An oþer: take schepys talwz & buttre, & make emplastre. þis  
wounde schal ben y-holde opyne at þe leste fourty dayes; al þis  
[<sup>5</sup> fol. 54 a] schal be do about þe place. <sup>5</sup>In an oþer manere regimen vndir- 36  
stande, þat þe man þat is y-bete ne schal nouzt be lete blod in the  
bygynnyng, lest þe venym be drawe abrod by oþere lymes. Ne  
þou ne schalt 3if hym non laxatyff, lest yt drawe þe venym to þe  
entraylles withynne; but þou schalt setten on þe place a stronge 40



- vpon þe place a strong<sup>t</sup> ventuse, as it<sup>t</sup> is seid tofore, <sup>1</sup>þat it<sup>t</sup> mowe drawe miche of þe blood. And whanne þat<sup>t</sup> .iiij. daies ben passid, it<sup>t</sup> is not<sup>t</sup> yuele to lete blood & to purge with a litil purgacioun, þat<sup>t</sup> 4 purgiþ þe malencolie, as with decoccioun epithimum,<sup>2</sup> wiþ gotis whey; & norischþ him with dieting<sup>t</sup>, þat<sup>t</sup> fattip & makip him glad & bliþe; & waische his heed with decoccioun of water, þat<sup>t</sup> þe feet<sup>t</sup> & þe heed of a weþer were soden ynne. Ne late him not<sup>t</sup> þirsten 8 ne hungren, suffren, ne traueilen; & so if<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> god wole, þou maist<sup>t</sup> him kepe from perile / & ech dai to a monþis eende he schal take opere symple medicyns or compounned / \* — — Take þe ayschis of crabbis I-brent in an ouene .iiij. parties, of frankencense vij. 12 parties, & make hem into a poudre / þe pacient<sup>t</sup> schal take ech dai of þis poudre .ij. 3. / Anoper medicyn: take þe poudre of crabbis brent<sup>t</sup> vj. parties, gencian .iiij. parties, terre sigillate oon partie, make poudre / If<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> þou were not<sup>t</sup> at<sup>t</sup> þe bigynnyng, & it<sup>t</sup> bigynne 16 to haue yuel accidentis: as yuel þouztis, soruful metynge in his sleep, & þat he be wroþ & grucche, & woot<sup>t</sup> not<sup>t</sup> whi; & if<sup>t</sup> men aske him ony þing<sup>t</sup>, & 3eueþ no good answer þerto, & fley lith,<sup>3</sup> & he hap alle opere signes of malencolie, <sup>4</sup>þanne 3eue to him a

use first  
cupping,  
[<sup>1</sup> lf. 31]

then blood-  
letting and a  
purgative.

Keep the  
patient in  
good spirits.

During a  
month he  
must take  
every day  
a simple or  
a compound  
medicine.

If the patient  
seems melan-  
choly,

[<sup>4</sup> lf. 31, bk.]

<sup>2</sup> *Epithemum*. See Notes.

<sup>3</sup> *fley lith*, altered to *fleyntlith* with different ink. Read: *fleyth lizt*.

- 20 ventuse, as yt is seyde tofore, þat he mowe drawe myche of þe blode. & whenne þat þre dayes ben passyde, yt is nouzt yuele to leten blod, & to purge with a lyzt purgacioun, þat purgith þe malyncolye, as with decoccioun of Epytemum, with gotys whey; & norissche 24 hym with dyetyng, þat fattyth hym & make glad & bliþe; & wassche hys hed with decoccioun of water, þat þe fet & þe hed of a weþire ben y-sodyn yn. Ne lete hym nouzt þrustyn, ne suffren hungryre ne traueH, & so 3if þat god wyl, þou maiste kepen hym 28 from peryle. & euery day to a moneþ ende, he schal taken opere symple medycynes, oper componed. \*Symple buþ: Asa ffetida. Asa dulsis, poſm,<sup>5</sup> terra sigillata, Wermot, KockuH,<sup>6</sup> mirre & gencyane. Medycynes componed gode: \*R þe assches of crabbys 32 y-brent in an Offyn .iiij. partyes, of frankensens vij. partyes, make a poudre; þe pacient schal take iche day of þis poudre 5 .ij. wiþ wyn. An oper: R þe poudre of crabbys y-brende vj. partyes, of gencyane .iiij. parties, terre sigillate one partie, make poudre. 3if þat þou 36 were nozt at þe bygynnyng, & he bygynneth to haue yuele Acci- dentes, as yuele þouztis, schrewyde metynge in his slepe, & þat he be wroth & grucche & wot nozt why, & 3if men aske hym enye þynge he 3euyth no gode answer þere to, & fleyþ lyzt, & he hath 40 alle opere signes of malencolye, þanne 3if to hym a medycine y-made

Add. MS.  
12,056.

<sup>5</sup> *polium*, Paley. <sup>6</sup> *Kockull*, Nigella. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 86.



give him  
troches com-  
posed of  
cantharides  
and spices,

R  
N

until he  
micturates  
blood.

Treat bites  
from venom-  
ous beasts  
similarly.

medicyn *maad* of cantarides / Take old grete cantarides, & do  
awei þe heed & þe wyngis, .ij. dragmis; lentis<sup>1</sup> I-clensid, .ḡ j.;  
safron, spikenard, clowis, canel, .ana .ḡ s'.; bete hem weel, & make  
of hem smale ballis, þat ech bal weiȝe a dragme. & ȝeue o. bal at 4  
þre tymes, at ech tyme þe weiȝte of þre cornys of wheete, til þat  
he pisse blood; þanne he schal be saaf / For whanne þou art sikir,  
hee le þe woundis after þat fourti daies ben passid, in þe same  
maner. If þat þe wounde were *maad* of bitinge of an eddre or of 8  
ony oþer venemous beest, þe leche schal take heede to drawe abrod  
þe wounde, & sette aboue a uentuse, & drawe out miche blood; &  
it is miche worþ to enuyroune þe place aboute þat is biten wip  
brome I-stampid / For if þat þe prickynge be in þe foot or in þe 12  
hand, if þou enuyroune þe arme with brome, it lettif þe venym to  
go vpward; & ȝeue him þe medicyns writen aboue, & also lete þe  
wounde be open, til þe venym be excludid /

¶ Capm viijm **T**He .viij. chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste 16  
tretis of a wounde *maad* in a ioynt, & is dislocate /

Whanne þat a wounde is in a lyme, & þe boon of þe same lyme  
[<sup>2</sup> ff. 32]<sup>3</sup> is to-broke atwo & dislocate—þat is to seie out of ioynthe, þanne

<sup>1</sup> *docsnet* above *lentis*; meaning?

<sup>3</sup> Heading to leaf 32 in a later hand: *Off woundes in Jintes.*

Add. MS. 12,056. of cantarydes. Take *olde* grete kantarydes & do aweye þe hed & 20  
þe wynges ȝ. ij., lentys I-clansed ȝ. j., saferen, spikenard, clowys,  
caneſt ana ȝ. ſs.—in oþere bokys—ipone hem wel & make of hem  
smale ballis þat weyȝen j. penye wyȝt; & ȝif a baſt at þre tymes,  
at iche tyme þe wyȝt of vij cornys of whete, tyl þat he pyſſe blod, 24  
for þenne he schal be saff. Ffor whenne þou art sykere, hele þe  
[<sup>4</sup> fol. 54 b] <sup>4</sup>wounde after þat fourty dayes ben passyde, in þe same maner.  
ȝif þat a wounde were mad of þe bytinge of an eddre, oþere of eny  
oþere venymouse beste, þe leche schal take hede to drawe abrode þe 28  
wounde & setten abouen a ventuse & drawe out myche blod, & yt  
is myche worþ to enviroun þe place abouten þat is y-betyn wip  
brome y-stampyde. Ffor ȝif þat þe prikyng be in þe fot oþere in  
þe hande, ȝif þou enviroun þe arme oþere þe legge with brome, yt 32  
latteþ þe venym to gone vpwarde; & ȝif hym þe medycines y-wryten  
aboue, & also tryacle, & lete þe wounde be opyne, tyl al þe venym  
be escludyde.

The viij. Chapytelle of þe þridde techynge of the ffirſte 36  
tretys is of a wounde y-made in a joynt & is dislocat.

defensiffe

Whenne þat a wounde is in a lyme & þe bon of þe same lyme  
ys tobroken atwo & is dislocat—þat is to sigge, out of joynt,



- it<sup>t</sup> is good þat þou putte in þe wounde whanne þe blood is staunchid, & also aboute þe wounde þe 3olke of an ey wip oile of rosis, & anointe al þe lyme aboute þe wounde with two parties of oile of rosis, & half<sup>t</sup> oon partie of vynegre maad þicke wip bole armoniak, til þe quytture be engendrid, & þat þou be sikir þat no postyme schal come. Ne take noon hede to brynge togidere þe parties of þe boon þat is to-broken or dislocate, til viij. daies ben goon in þe wyntir, & v. in þe somer; for þanne it schal make quytture, and be sikir from swellynge; & þanne brynge togidere þe brynkis eiþer þe disiuncture after þe techynge þat schal be seid in þe chapitle of algebra. & if þat þe prickynge eiþer þe dislocacioun nedip splentis, make þat þe splentis & byndynge faile aboute þe wounde. þat þou may do if þat þou kutte þe splentis & þe bindynge aboute þe wounde with a knyft or a rasour, & in drawynge abroad þe hoole of þe wounde<sup>1</sup> aboute þe wounde wip a nedle, so þat þou maist bi þat hole ech day chaunge þi medicyn of þe wounde wipoute choudynge<sup>2</sup> of þe boond þat þou madist first<sup>t</sup> aboute þe boonys þat weren broken ouþer dislocate; þe which boond þou schalt nouzt remeuen til tyme schal be teld in his place, but þou schalt bynde aboute pilke

If the wound is accompanied by fracture or dislocation of a bone,

R  
dress the wound,

and do not join the bone before some time elapsed.

Cut a hole in the splints or bandages,

through which the wound can be dressed.

[<sup>3</sup> ff. 32, bk.]

<sup>1</sup> wounde, error for bonde.

<sup>2</sup> choudynge, error for chongynge.

- þanne it is gode þat þou putte in þe wounde, whanne þe blod is y-staunchyde, & also aboute þe wounde, þe 3olke of an eyze, with oyle of roses, & anoynt alle þe lyme aboute þe wounde, wip two parties of oyle of rosys, & wip half on party of vynegre, y-made þikke with bol Armonyake, tyl þat þe quytture be engendered,<sup>4</sup> & þou be sykere þat none Aposteme schalt come. Ne take none hede to brynge togidere þe parties of þe bon þat is tobroken opere dislocat, tyl viij daies ben go in þe wyntire, & fyff<sup>t</sup> in the somere; for þenne yt schal make quytere, & be sykere from swellynge; & þenne brynge togidere þe brekyngge opere þe dysynnecture aftere þe techynge þat schal be seyde in þe Chapytell of **Algebra**. & 3if þat þe brekyngge opere þe dyslocacioun nedyþ splyntes, make þat þe splyntes & þe byndynge faylen aboute þe wounde; & þat þou maiste do, 3if þat þou kyttest þe splyntes & þe byndinge aboute þe wounde with a knyft opere a rasoure, & in drawynge abrod þe hole of þe bonde aboute þe wounde<sup>5</sup> wip a nedle, so þat þou maiste by pilke hole euery day chaungen þe medycine of þe wounde withouten chaungynge of þe bonde, þat þou madest firste aboute þe bonys þat were broke opere dislocat. þe whiche bonde þou schalt nouzt remeffen, tyl þe tyme þat schal be tolde in hys place; bote you schalt bynde aboute pilke

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[<sup>5</sup> fol. 55 a]

<sup>4</sup> MS. engenderes.



boon a newe boond, which þou schalt remeue as ofte as þou chaungist þi wounde. & whanne þat þou art sikir fro þe empostemyng, & whanne þat þou hast sett togidere þe boonys þat were sett togidere & dissolate, þanne leie vpon þe wounde bi þe hole 4  
 R þat þou madist in þe boond, a mundificatif of mel roset colat, & of barli mele til þe wounde be clensid; & leie on þat a<sup>1</sup> mundificatif, þedis of oolde whizt lynnyn cloþ, til þat þe wounde be ful clensid; aftirward regendre fleisch, & aftirward consowde with 8 regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis, whiche þat schulen be seid in þe ende of þe book /

\* Cap<sup>m</sup> ix<sup>m</sup>

**T**He nynþe chapitle of þe .iiij. techinge of þe firste tretis is of fluxblood of a wounde / 12

Hæmorrhage arises from an injury, corrosion, or weakness of the veins and arteries—

þer ben ij. maner of causis þat makip blood to blede out of a mannys body; þe oon cause is clepid—cause coniuñcte; & þe toþer—cause antecedent / þe enchesoun of cause coniuñcte is compounned of þe moupis of þe veynes and arteries, or ellis whanne 16 þat þe veynes ben kut atwo, or ellis corrosion of þe bodies of þe 2 same veynes & arteries, or ellis to greet febilnes or to greet losenes / And þer ben manie enchesouns of cause antecedentis: as to

<sup>1</sup> a, erroneously inserted.

<sup>3</sup> Heading to leaf 33, *Off flux off blode in woundes.*

Add. MS. 12,056. bonde a newe bonde, þe whyche þou schalt remeffe, as often as þou 20 chaungiste thy wounde. & whanne þou art sykere from empostomyng & þou haue sette togedire þe bonys þat were sette togedire & dislocat, þenne leye vpon þe wonde by þe hole þat þou madyst in þe band a mundifycatyff of mel rosat colat, & of barlye mele, tyl 24 þe wonde be clansyde; & leye on þilke mundyficatyff þredys of olde clene whyte lynne cloþ, tyl þat þe wounde be ful clansyde; afterward regenere flesch, & aftereward consoude wiþ regeneratyfes & consolidatyfes, whiche þat schullen ben seyde in þe ende of 28 þe boke.

The ix Chapitle of þe þridde techyng is of fflux blod off a wounde.

þere beþ two manere causes þat makyth blod to bleden out of 32 mannes body; þat on cause is clepyde cause coniuñcte, & þat oþer cause antecedent. þe encheson of cause coniuñcte ys openyng of þe moupes of þe veynes & þe Arteries, oþer ellys whanne þat the veynes beþ kut atwo, oþer ellys corosion of þe bodyes of þe same 36 veynes & arteries, oþer ellys to gret feblenesse, oþere to gret losnesse. & þere beþ manye enchesouns & causes antecedente: as to myche



myche frelenes<sup>1</sup> of blood, or ellis to myche acute of blood, & also  
 manye opere causis per ben þat ben clepid cause of<sup>2</sup> primitif: as  
 smytynge þat woundith, to greet lepyng; wraþe, chidyng,  
 4 & so manye opere; & ech of þese causis tofore seid haþ his maner  
 heelyng by him-silf in fisik medicinal. But it is not þe enten-  
 cioun of þis booke to tretten<sup>3</sup> of blood þat bledip of wounde, þat is  
 maad with wounde, þe which may be restreyned with craft of  
 8 ciurgie. In flux of blood þat comep of a wounde, þe leche muste  
 loke þe disposicioun, þe abitude, age, vertu, & complexioun of him  
 þat is woundid; if þat þese acorden, & he be myzty in vertu, he  
 schal blede myche blood at þe wounde, þou3 þat þe leche be clepid  
 12 at þe bigynnyng, but if it be so þat he be<sup>4</sup> feble ouer greetliche.  
 & if þat nede constreyne þe leche to staunche blood, he muste loke  
 if þat þe blood go out at þe veynes capillares, þat ben smale veynes  
 as heeris of a mannys heed / & þanne oonly þe whizt<sup>5</sup> of an ey leid  
 16 aboue with tow3e of flex suffisip / whanne þat þe parties of þe  
 wounde ben brouzt togidere; & if þou caste aboue poudre of lym  
 aforeseid in þe chapitle of sowynge of woundes, it schal be þe  
 bettere; for þat poudre wipstreyneþ þe blood & consoudip þerparties

from fullness  
 of blood—  
 cause ante-  
 cedentes;  
 from an acci-  
 dent—cause  
 primitiva.

If the patient  
 is strong, let  
 him bleed  
 freely;  
 if he is weak  
 use a mild  
 styptic when  
 the blood is  
 lost from the  
 capillaries;  
 [5 lf. 33, bk.]

<sup>1</sup> *frelenes*, mistake for *fulnesse*. <sup>2</sup> *of*, erroneous insertion. See below.  
<sup>3</sup> *but*, omitted. Latin: Non est huius libri intentio tractare nisi de  
 fluxu sanguinis. . . <sup>4</sup> *be*, added in margin in same hand.

20 fulnesse of blod, oper ellys to myche Acuyte of blod & also manye  
 opere causes; and þere beþ opere causes þat beþ clepyd causes  
 prymtyff; as smytyng þat wondip, to gret lepyng, cryng,  
 wraþe, chydng, & so many<sup>6</sup> opere & iche of þese causes tofore  
 24 seyde haþ hys manere helyng by hym-selfen in fesyke medecynal.  
 Bot it ys nozt þe entencyoun of þis boke, to tretyn but of blod, þat  
 bledip of wounde, þat is y-mad wip wounde, the<sup>7</sup> whiche may be  
 restreyned by crafte of surgerye. In flux of blod, that comyth of  
 28 a wounde, þe leche most loke þe disposicioun, þe Abytude, Age,  
 vertu & complexioun of hym þat is y-woundyde; & 3if þat þese  
 acorden, & he be myztye in vertue, he schal blede myche blod at  
 hys wounde, þow3 þat þe leche be clepyde at þe bygynnyng, bot 3if  
 32 it so be þat he feble ouere gretlyche. & 3if nede constreyne þe leche  
 to staunche þe blode, he most loke 3if þat þe blod go out of þe  
 Veynes capyllares, þat beþ smale veynes as herys of mannys hed;  
 & þanne only þe whyte of an eyze, y-leyde aboue wip tow3 of flex  
 36 suffiseþ, whenne þat þe parties of þe wounde beþ brouzt togedire;  
 & 3if þou cast aboue þe poudre of lyme, tofore seyde in the chapy-  
 teH of sowynge of woundes, yt schal be þe betyre; for þe poudre  
 wipstreyneþ þe blod & consoudeþ þe partyes of þe wounde, togedire.

Add. MS.  
 12,056.

[7 fol. 55 b]

<sup>6</sup> MS. may.



when it is  
lost from a  
larger vein  
use a stronger  
styptic;

when it is  
lost from an  
artery press  
the artery  
until a clot is  
formed,

and apply a  
styptic

R

[<sup>2</sup> ff. 34]

Renew the  
remedy care-  
fully.

of þe wounde togidere. & if þe blood come fro grete veynes he  
mai nouȝt so sumtyme be constreyned, but it nedip a stronger  
medicyn & also a more cautele / & if þat þe blood go out of  
arterie, þou schalt knowe it bi construccion & dilatacion of þe 4  
same arterie—þat is to seie, þat þe blood go out wip lepinge &  
oþerwhile wip wipdrawinge<sup>1</sup>; & þanne sette þi fyngir vpon þe mouþ  
of þe grete veyne or ellis on þe arterie, & holde þi fyngir þeron bi  
a greet hour; for þanne by grace sum greet drope of blood may be 8  
congelid togidere & þere-bi vertu may be myche comfortid; aftir-  
ward leie plenteuousliche of þis medicyn vpon þe veyne eþer þe  
arterie þat is kutt atwo / Take frankencense, whiȝt gummis, &  
fatt .ij. 3., aloes .3. j., make poudre & distempere with þe white of 12  
an ey as picke as hony / after take heeris of an hare smal kutt,  
<sup>2</sup>medle alle þese togidere, & þer is no medicyn so good as þis medi-  
cyn is in streynynge of blood & consowdyng of þe veyne / But  
whanne þat þou comest to chaunge þat medicyn of þe wounde, do 16  
nouȝt þe medicyn away wip strenkþe, but leie aboue of þe same  
medicyn<sup>3</sup> moist, to neische þe firste medicyn, þat it myȝte  
falle away bi him-silf / Neþeles it is possible þat a medicyn  
caustik, þat is to seie, a medicyn þat brenneþ, sunner staunchiþ 20

<sup>1</sup> Lat. : quod sanguis exit cum saltu secundum constrictionem et dilata-  
tionem ipsius arteriæ.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *medicyn*, repeated.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

& ȝif þe blod come from gret Veynes, he may noȝt so sumtyme be  
constreynde, but it nedip a strengere medycyne & also a more  
cautele; & ȝif þat þe blod go out of an arterye, þou schalt y-knowe yt  
be construction & dilatacioun, of þe same arterye—þat is to sigge, 24  
þat þe blod goþ out with lepyng, & oþer whyle with wipdrawyng,  
& þenne sette þy fyngere vpon þe mouþ of þe gret veyne, oþere ellys  
þe Artarye, & holde þy fyngere þere on by a grete oure; for þenne  
by hap sum grete drope of blod may be congelyde togedre, & þereby 28  
vertu may be myche y-comfortyde. Afterwarde leye plentyfullyche  
of þis medycine vpon þe <sup>4</sup>Veyne oþere þe arterye þat is kut atwo.  
R ffrancencens, whyȝt gommous & fat 3. ii., Aloes 3. i., make  
poudre & distempre with þe whyȝt of an eyȝe as þykke as hony; 32  
after take herys of an hare smale & kutte, medle al þis þynge to-  
gedire, & þere ys no medycine so gode as þis medycine is, in streyn-  
inge of blod & consoudyng þe Veyne. Bot whanne þat þou comyst  
to chaunge þe medycine of þy wonde, do noȝt away þe medycine 36  
wip strengþe, but <sup>5</sup>leye aboue of þe same medycine moist, to nessche  
þe firste medycine, þat yt myȝte fallyne away by yt-selff. Naþeles  
yt is possible, þat a medycine caustyke, þat ys to sigge a medycine

[<sup>2</sup> fol. 56 a]

<sup>4</sup> wounde, cancelled before veyne.



blood þan þis medicyn of frank encense ; & þou schalt haue greet<sup>1</sup> The styptic  
 plente of medycyne caustik in þe antidotarie, but we ben nouȝt is a surer  
 sikir þat þe blood of þe veyne eiper arterie anopir tyme wole goon remedy than  
 4 out, whanne þat þe schorf of þilke caustik Medicine<sup>1</sup> is remeued a caustic.  
 away / but þis medicyn of encense with þe heeris of an hare not  
 oonliche staunchip þe blood, but also sowdiþ<sup>2</sup> þe veyne & þe  
 arterie, as I haue preued it ofte tymes / And for to ȝeue autorite I *Nota bene*  
 8 sette a saumple þat come sumtyme to myn hondis : A child of þre *1st Example.*  
 ȝeer old hadde a litil knyf in his hond, & he fel on þat knyf in þe A child hav-  
 former partie of þe þrote persched þe veyne organise ; þer cowde no ing cut its  
 man it staunche, & þanne I was clepid, & I cam to þe child in throat with  
 12 <sup>3</sup> greet haaste, & he hadde almost lost his siȝt ; for hise ȝen in his *[3 lf. 34, bk.]*  
 heed weren turned vp so down ;<sup>4</sup> & þe blood come out at þe wounde the loss of  
 whiȝt as whey, vnneþe he hadde no pouste<sup>5</sup> / & þanne I leide my blood caused  
 fyngir on þe heed of þe veyne, & I heeld it faste þat þer myȝte nō collapse.  
 16 þing go out ; & so I heeld þe veyne a greet hour, & þanne vertu of The vein was  
 his bodi þat was almost lost quykenede aȝen, & þe pouse bigan to pressed,  
 appere febiliche as it were a smal þred / þanne I sente to þe spiceris

<sup>1</sup> medicine, added in margin.<sup>2</sup> MS. *sowdyng*.<sup>4</sup> *up so down.* See Mätzner, *Dict.*, s. v. "down." Latin: oculos habebat in capite revolutos.<sup>5</sup> *unneþe he hadde no pouste.* This passage is corrupt ; for the correct version see below.

þat brennyth, sennore staunchyth blod, þenne þis medicine of encense ; Add. MS.  
 20 & þou schalt haue gret plente of medycine caustyke in þe antito- 12,056.  
 darye, but we beþ nouȝt sykere þat þe blod of þe Veyne, oþere þe  
 arterye an oþer tyme wyl gon out, whanne þat þe serche of þylke  
 caustyke medycine ys remywed away. But þy medycine of ensence,  
 24 with þe herys of an hare, nouȝt only staunchip þe blod, but also *con-*  
 soudeþ þe Veyne, & þe Arterye, as y haue preuyde yt ofte tymes.  
 And forto ȝif Autorite, I sette an saumple, þat come sum tyme to  
 myn handys : A childe of þre ȝere olde, hadde a lyte knyf in hys  
 28 hande, & he fel on þat knyf, & þe poynt of þe knyf, in þe fore  
 partye of þe þrote, persyde þe Veyne organys ; ne þere ne coupe no  
 man yt staunche, & þanne y was y-clepyde & y come to þe child in  
 gret haste, & he hadde almoste loste hys syȝt ; for hys eyȝen in  
 32 hys hed were turnyde vp so down, & þe blode come out of þe  
 wounde, whyte as wheyȝe, ne he ne hadde no pous, & þenne y  
 leyde my fyngere on þe hed of þe veyne, & y helde faste þat  
 nopynge myȝte go out, & so y helde þe veyne by a grete houre, &  
 36 þe vertue of hys body þat was almost lost quyknede aȝeyne, & þe  
 pous bygan to apere ffeblyche as yt were a smal þreed. þanne y



schoppe þat<sup>t</sup> was a greet<sup>t</sup> weye fro me / ne I remeuede not<sup>t</sup> away my  
fyingir fro þe place, til þat<sup>t</sup> þe messenger cam azen, and þe child  
bigan þanne to opene hise izen; & þanne I ordeynede þis medicyn  
to be maad, & plenteuousliche I leide it aboue þe wounde, & I 4  
boond þe wounde wiþ plumaciols & with stupis<sup>1</sup> I-leid in whit<sup>t</sup> of  
an ey, & with a boond I boonde it<sup>t</sup> streitly, and comaundide hem to  
zeue him crummys of<sup>t</sup> breed leid in water; & on þe morowe I come  
azen, & þanne I foond þe child comfortid / & neuere þe lattere I 8  
nolde nouȝt vndo þe medicyn / þe fader preiede me wiþ greet<sup>t</sup> in-  
staunce to vndo þe medicyn, <sup>2</sup> but I wolde not<sup>t</sup>; & so I lete it<sup>t</sup> lie  
stille, til .iiij. daies weren passid withouten remeuyng<sup>e</sup> / & neþeles  
I visitide him ech day; & þe .iiij. day I vndide þe wounde, & þe 12  
medicyn was drie aboue þe wounde, so þat<sup>t</sup> I myȝte not<sup>t</sup> han re-  
meued it<sup>t</sup> wiþoute greet<sup>t</sup> violence. & þanne I leide aboue þe whizt<sup>t</sup>  
of<sup>t</sup> an ey wiþ a litil oile of rosis, & so I lefte it lie oon day til on þe  
morowe I turnede azen; & þanne I remeuede away þe medicyn 16  
wiþouten violence, & I foond þanne þe wounde & þe veyne al hool.  
& of<sup>t</sup> þis heelyng<sup>t</sup> his fadir & alle hise neiȝeboris hadden greet<sup>t</sup>  
wondir / And if<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> wiþ þis medicyn þou maist<sup>t</sup> not<sup>t</sup> sowde þe  
arterie ne þe veyne, ne þow maist<sup>t</sup> not<sup>t</sup> constreyne þe blood for sum 20

a styptic ap-  
plied, the

wound band-  
aged

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 35]  
and left un-  
disturbed for  
four days.

The child re-  
covered on  
the fifth day.

If necessary

<sup>1</sup> "Stupes (in Surgery), Pledgets of Tow, Cotton, etc., dipt in scalding hot Liquors and apply'd to the diseased Part."—Phillips.

Add. MS. 12,056. sente to þe spysers schoppe, þat was a grete weye from me, ne y ne  
remywede noȝt away my fyingere from þe place tyl þat þe messagere  
come azeyne, & þe childe þenne bygan to opene hys eyzen; and  
þanne y ordeynede þilke medycine to be mad, & plentyffuliche y 24  
leyde it abouen þe wounde, and y bonde þe wounde with plumaceoles  
& with stupes y-leyde in whyȝt of an eyȝe, & with a bande y bonde  
yt streytlye, & y comaundede hem to gyuen hym crommys of brede,  
y-leyde in water; and on þe morwene y come azeyne, & þenne y 28  
fonde þe childe y-cunffortede & neuere þe latere y wolde nouȝt vndo  
þe medycine; þe ffadire <sup>3</sup>preyde me wiþ grete instaunce to se þe  
wounde, but y wolde nouȝt; & so y lete yt be, tyl foure dayes were  
passyd, withouten remeffyng<sup>e</sup> & napeles y vysitede hym every day; 32  
in þe fourþe day y vndyde þe bande, & þe medycine was drye aboue  
þe wounde, so þat y myȝte noȝt haue remywede hyt withouten grete  
Vyolence. & þenne y leyde aboue þe whyte of an eyȝe, with a lytel  
oyle of roses, & so y lafte yt by on day. On þe morwen y turnyde 36  
azeyne, & þenne y remeffyde away þe medycine withouten Vyolence,  
& þenne y fonde þe wounde & þe Veyne al hol. And of þis helyng<sup>e</sup>  
þe fadire & alle his neyȝhboures hadden gret wondire. And ȝif þat  
with þis medycyne þou maiste noȝt soude þe Arterye, ne þe Veyne, ne 40  
þou ne maiste noȝt constreyne þe blod for sum opere Impedement,

[<sup>3</sup> fol. 56 b]



- oper impediment: þanne þou must ouþer bynde þe veyne, or drawe  
 hir out of hir place, & bynde þe heed of þe veyne or arterie, ouþer  
 þou must brenne hir wiþ hoot iren, & make on hir heed a greet  
 4 cruste & a depe. ¶ Anoper ensauple: þer was a child of .xv.  
 3eer oold þat smoot him-silf with a smal knyff, & þilke knyff per-  
 side o. senewe of þe arm & prickide a ueyne þat lay vnder þilke  
 senewe. & for þe prickynge of þat senewe <sup>1</sup> he hadde greet  
 8 akyng, & blood drewe doun to þe wounde & nouzt azenstood <sup>2</sup> for  
 alle þe staunchis of medicyns þat me myzte do þerto, it wolde not  
 staunche, þe blood ran out at þe wounde. & colde medicyns ben  
 greuous to senewis þat is prickid, for þei stoppen þat lyme, & þat  
 12 is contrarious azens senewis; & þanne I demede nessessarie to  
 drawe out al þe veyne out of her place & to bynde hir & to helpe  
 þilke senewis wiþ oile of rosis / But þe modir of þat child sente for  
 a lewde leche which þat repreuede foule my doom, & he bihiȝte to  
 16 heele safly þe child. He dwellide on þe cure, & I wente my wey /  
 þe which leche took hede to him .x. daies, þat neiþir þe akyng  
 ceesside ne þe blood was not staunchid, & so þe sijk man was nyȝ  
 deed / & at þe laste I was clepid, & I wolde not come to þe pacient /  
 20 þanne a fisician þat was frend to þe freendis of þe pacient blamede  
 þe modir & hir freendis þat þei hadden left counseil for þilke idiotis  
<sup>2</sup> azenstood, for azenstondyng.

use a ligature  
or torsion or  
cauterization  
of the bleed-  
ing artery or  
vein.

## Nota

## 2nd Example

Case of a  
child which  
had pricked  
a nerve and a  
vein in its  
arm.

[1 ff. 35, bk.]

Lanfranc  
suggested ty-  
ing the vein  
and applying  
oil of roses to  
the nerve.

A lay phy-  
sician at-  
tempted an-  
other treat-  
ment,

but for ten  
days the child  
suffered acute  
agony and  
bleeding;

- þan þou moste opere bynde þe Veyne, opere drawyne here out of  
 here place, & wynde þe hed of þe Veyne oper Arterye, oper þou most  
 24 brenne here wiþ hote yren, & maken on here hed a grete croste & a  
 depe. An opere example: þere was a childe of xv 3ere olde, þat  
 smot hym-self with a smal knyff, & þilke knyff persyde on Veyn of  
 þe Arme, & prikyde a Veyne þat lay vndire þilke synwe. & for þe  
 28 prikyng of þilke synwe he hadde grete akyng, & blod ran to þe  
 wounde & noȝt azeynestondyng medycines þe blod ran out at þe  
 wounde. Kolde medycines weren profitable to bledyng of wounde,  
 and colde medycines beȝ greffes to prikyng of synwes; for þey  
 32 stoppyn þat lyme & þat ys contrarius azeyns þe synwys; and  
 þenne y demyde necessarye to drawe out alle þe Veyne out of here  
 place & to bynde here & to helpen þilke synwe with oyle of roses.  
 But þe modire of þilke childe sende for a lewyde leche, whyche þat  
 36 reprevyde foulliche my doom, & he behyȝte to helyn saflyche þe  
 childe. He dwellyde on þe cure, & y went my weye. þe whyche  
 leche toke hede to hym be ten dayes, þat neiþere þe akyng sesyde  
 ne þe blod was noȝt y-staunchyde, & so þe syke man was <sup>3</sup>nyȝh ded. [3 fol. 57 a]  
 40 And at þe laste y was clepyde & y wolde noȝt come to þe pacient.  
 But þenne a ffysisyen þat was frende to þe man of þe pacyent,  
 blamyde þe modire & here frendys, þat þey hadde lefte my consaylle

Add. MS.  
12,056.



biheeste; & þilke fisician purposide, after þat he hadde herd my counseil, þat þer was noon oþer wey þat myzte saue þe sike man from deef, & he axide of þe sirurgian wheþer he coude do as I hadde seid bifore. & <sup>1</sup> he seide, þat he coude so doon, & so he dide / He kutte þe skyn aboue þe veyne & twynede þe veyne in hise handis, & boond þe eende of þe veyne with a þred; & after he helde on þe senewe hoot oile of rosis, & so bi þis counseil he was restorid aȝen to heelpen / But who so wolde aske how þat he myzte so manye daies be kept from þe crampe for þat he suffride so greet akþe / I answeere & seie: þat þe cause was, for þat he bledde at þe wounde ech day, so þat þe senewe <sup>2</sup> miȝt not be to myche replete eiper ful of blood / Alle þese þingis I haue told, þat he þat rediþ hem mai þe visiloker in semblable causis worchen. & if bi þis medicyn he myzte nouȝt sikirliche be restorid or restreyned þat falliþ riȝt seelde whane <sup>3</sup> / þanne we moten brenne þe heed of þe veyne eiper of senewe <sup>4</sup> wiþ hoot iren, & þilke hoot iren myzte make au hard cruste. & be war þat þou touche not þe lippis of þe wounde ne þe senewe, ne noon oþer þing but oonly þe veyne wiþ hoot iren. & if al þis craft wole not helpen, we musten drawe

[1 lf. 36]  
finally a surgeon tied the vein and saved the child.

**Nota**  
The bleeding of the wound prevented cramp.

When styptics fail, use cauterization;

**Nota**

<sup>2</sup> *senewe*, error for *wounde*. Add MS. has the same mistake.

<sup>3</sup> *riȝt seelde whane*. *Polychron*, i. 133, wel silde whanne. *Stratm.*, seldhwonne.

<sup>4</sup> *senewe*, error for *arterie*. The same mistake in Add. MS.

Add. MS. 12,056. for þe byhestys of þylke ydyote; & þilke ffysisyens proposyde, 20  
aftere þat he had herde my counseyle, þat þere was non oþere wey þat myzte saue þe syke man from þe deef, & þenne he askyde a surgyne, wheþere he couþe don as y hadde seyde byfore; & he seyde þat he couþe so don, & so he dyde. He kutte þe skyn aboue þe Veyne, & twynede þe veyne in his handys, & bonde þe ende of þe Veyne wiþ a þrede, & afterwarde he hylde on þe synwe hote oyle of rosys, & so by þis counseyle he was restoryde aȝeyne to hele. But ho so þat wolde aske how þat he myzte so manye dayes be kepyde from þe crampe, for þat he suffryde so grete akþe, I answeere & sigge: þat þe cause was, for he bledde at þe wounde eche day, so þat þe synwe ne myzte noȝt be to myche replet oþere fulfyllde of blode. Alle þese thynges y haue tolde, þat he þat redyȝh hem may þe wyslocor in semblable causes wyrchen. And ȝif be þis medycyne he myzte noȝt sykerliche be restreynede, þat fallyȝh ryȝte selden, þenne me moste brenne þe hed of þe Veyne oþere of þe synwe wiþ hote yren, þat þilke hote yren myzte maken an harde croste. And be war þat þou touche noȝt þe lippes of þe wounde, ne þe synwe, ne non oþere thyng, bot only þe veyn with hote yren. And ȝif al þis crafte wolde noȝt helpyn me, men most drawn out þe Veyne, &



out<sup>t</sup> þe veyne & fle þe fleisch aboue here, & wynde þe veyne sadliche & bynde hir heed wiþ þin han<sup>1</sup>dis.—Bi<sup>2</sup> my witt<sup>3</sup> I<sup>3</sup> trowe amene þat<sup>t</sup> a bodi schulde make þeron a knotte I-knytt<sup>t</sup> of him-silf<sup>t</sup> or ellis  
 4 knytt<sup>t</sup> wiþ a þred. I woot<sup>t</sup> neuere wheþer he menep<sup>t</sup>; for he seiþ in  
 anoper place tofore þat<sup>t</sup> I schulde knytte it<sup>t</sup> wiþ a þred, & þerfore I  
 suppose bi my witt<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> I schulde make a knotte þeron of his owne  
 silf<sup>t</sup> bi my witt<sup>t</sup>.—& sumtyme it<sup>t</sup> happiþ þat<sup>t</sup> an arterie is broken  
 8 ouper kutt<sup>t</sup> & þe fleisch þat<sup>t</sup> is aboue is hool & nouzt<sup>t</sup> to-broke neiþir  
 I-kutt<sup>t</sup>, or ellis þe fleisch þat<sup>t</sup> is aboue þe arterie is helid tofore & not<sup>t</sup>  
 þe arterie; & vndir þe fleisch þer is a swellynge of blood þat<sup>t</sup> is  
 clepid aperisma<sup>4</sup> ouper mater sanguinis, & þerof<sup>t</sup> þe pacient hap  
 12 greet drede, lest<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> þe skyn to-breke & þe blood go out<sup>t</sup>, þe which  
 blood is hard to restreyne / for of þis maner sijknes spekiþ galion  
 & seiþ þat<sup>t</sup> a seruaunt of sich a disposicioun was helid of a lewde  
 man þat<sup>t</sup> tauzte him þat<sup>t</sup> he schulde leie snow on his siknes. Wher-  
 16 fore a man may vndirstonde þat<sup>t</sup> to siche enpostymes colde medicyns  
 & drie ben nessessarie. // // // // // //

and if this  
 fails, torsion  
 and a liga-  
 ture.

[<sup>1</sup> If. 36, bk.]

In the case of  
 rupture of an  
 artery an  
 aporisma is  
 formed.

.Galien.

<sup>2</sup> An insertion of the scribe.

<sup>3</sup> *I trowe a mene*, "I believe to mean."

<sup>4</sup> *aperisma*, Lat. *ophorisma seu mater sanguinis*. Dufr. Gloss. med. Lat.:  
*Aporisma—collectio sanguinis in aliquo membro extra venas non putrefacti  
 maxime sanguinis arterialis.*

flene þe flesch aboue here & wynde þe Veyne sadlyche & bynde here  
 hed with þyn handys. And sum tyme yt happyth, þat an Arterye  
 20 is y-broke opere y-kutte, & þe flesch þat is abouen ys hol & nozt to-  
 broke ne y-kutte, opere ellys þe flessch þat is aboue þe Arterye ys  
 y-helyde & nozt þe Arterye, & vndire þilke flessch þere is a swellynge  
 of blode<sup>5</sup> that is y-clepyde **Aporisma** opere matere **Sanguis** &  
 24 þere of þe pacient hath grete drede, lest þat þe skyn tobreke & þe  
 blod gone out, þe whiche blod is hard to restreyne. Of þis manere  
 seknesse spekyth **Galyen**, & seiþ þat a seruaunt of swyche a dys-  
 posicioun was y-helyde of a lewyde man, þat tauzte hym þat he  
 28 scholde legge snow vpon þat seknesse, wherfore a man may vndir-  
 stande, þat to swyche empostemys colde medicynes & drye beth  
 necessarye.

Add. MS.  
 12,056.

[<sup>5</sup> fol. 57 b]



¶ Cap<sup>m</sup> x<sup>m</sup>[<sup>2</sup> lf. 37]

off dietyng  
for woundes.  
Some phy-  
sicians give  
nourishing  
food and  
wine,

pretending  
that water is  
harmful;

others allow  
only bread  
and water  
and sodden  
apples.

Both are  
dogmatic.

The .x. chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis<sup>1</sup> is of gouernaunce & diete<sup>1</sup> of men þat ben woun<sup>2</sup>did /

þer ben manye men þat<sup>t</sup> discorden of<sup>t</sup> dietyng of<sup>t</sup> men þat<sup>t</sup> ben 4  
woundid, for sum men zeuen to alle men þat<sup>t</sup> ben woundid, wheþir  
þat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> be in þe heed or in any opere place, good wiyn & strong<sup>t</sup>  
fleisch of<sup>t</sup> capouns & of<sup>t</sup> hennes; & þei affermen þat<sup>t</sup> bi sich a  
maner wey sike woundid men ben sunnere heelid / for þei seien þat<sup>t</sup> 8  
water putrifieth lymes þat<sup>t</sup> ben woundid & engendriþ enpostymes &  
corrumpiþ & febliþ complexiouns & makip manye harmys / &  
summe opere men gouernen alle maner of<sup>t</sup> sike men þat<sup>t</sup> ben woun-  
did wiþ breed & watir & applis soden til ten daies ben goon / And 12  
if<sup>t</sup> god wole eende þis book, it<sup>t</sup> schal be remeuyngge errouris & de-  
claryngge & openyngge doutis / I seie þat<sup>t</sup> þese boþe sectis erren in  
her opynyouns, for þei taken hede oonly to her experimentis not<sup>t</sup>  
consideryngge resoun of<sup>t</sup> complexioun of<sup>t</sup> him þat<sup>t</sup> is woundid / þe firste 16  
secte of<sup>t</sup> þese two \* [seyth] þat<sup>t</sup> summen oonly eten breed & watir in  
so myche þei ben feblid þat<sup>t</sup> blood & mater in her bodies may nouȝt  
be restorid; þe<sup>3</sup> which were sufficient<sup>t</sup> to hele with her woundis,

<sup>1-1</sup> added in margin.

<sup>3</sup> þe cancelled in MS.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

¶ The x Chapitle of þe þridde techyng of þe firste 20  
tretys is of men that beth y-woundyde.

Many men discorden of dietyng of men þat ben woundyde, for  
sum men zeuen to alle men þat ben woundyde, wheþer þat it be in  
þe hed oper in enye opere place, gode wyn & stronge flesch of 24  
capouns & of hennys; and þey affermen þat by swyche a manere  
weye seke woundyde men sonnere ben y-helyde, ffor þey siggen þat  
watyre putrefyeth lymes, þat beþ woundyde, & engendriþ Apostemys  
& corumpyth & feblyth complexiouns, & makyth many harmys. 28  
Sum opere men gouernen alle manere of syke men þat beþ woundyde  
with brede & water & Applys y-sodyn, tyl x dayes ben passyde, &  
ȝif þat god wyl ende þis bok, yt schal be remeffyngge away Errores,  
& declaryngge & opnyngge Downtous. Y sigge, þat boþe þese sectes 32  
erryn in here opyniouns, ffor þey taken hede onlyche to here expe-  
rymentys, nouȝt consideryngge resoun of þe complexioun of hym þat  
is y-woundyde. The firste secte of þese \*seyth þat some men, onlye  
etyngge bred & watere, in so myche ben y-feblyde, þat blode & 36  
mater in here bodies may nouȝt be restoryde; þe whiche were suffi-



- but<sup>t</sup> þei ben so feble þat<sup>t</sup> þei <sup>1</sup>dien, or ellis þei languren <sup>2</sup>longe [<sup>1</sup> lf. 37, bk.]  
 tyme; ne þe lymes may not<sup>t</sup> receyue resonable vertu as þei schulde;  
 & þese maner men ben of<sup>t</sup> cold complexioun & drie & her bodies  
 4 weren feble or þei weren woundid, & her stomak & her entrailis  
 wipinne weren feble / þe secunde secte seiþ: þat<sup>t</sup> summe þat<sup>t</sup>  
 drinken wiyn & eten fleisch hadde in þe membre þat<sup>t</sup> was woundid  
 a greet enpostyme & a febre—& þo ben 3onge men þat<sup>t</sup> ben of<sup>t</sup> an  
 8 hoot<sup>t</sup> complexioun & a moist<sup>t</sup>—wherfore þei comaundide to alle  
 maner opere of<sup>t</sup> complexioun þat<sup>t</sup> þei schulden drynke no wiyn ne  
 ete no fleisch / 3e schulen vndirstonde þat<sup>t</sup> boþe þese sectis ben  
 nouȝt<sup>t</sup>; & þerfore I folowyng þe doctryne of<sup>t</sup> rasis, auicen, & galien  
 12 & of<sup>t</sup> opere doctouris, & also experimentis þat<sup>t</sup> I haue longe preued,  
 I seiþ þat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> is nedeful þat<sup>t</sup> a woundid man in þe bigynnyng ab-  
 steyne him fro wiyn, & namely if<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> þe wounde be in þe heed  
 eipir in ony partie of<sup>t</sup> a senewe. for þer is no þing<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> so soone  
 16 smytiþ greuaunce in þe heed or þe senewis as wiyn; for he is soone  
 conuertid of<sup>t</sup> kyndely heete & for he is so sotil, he persiþ swiþe into  
 þe senewis, & he assendiþ soone into þe heed, bryngyng wip him  
 humouris & spiritis. It<sup>t</sup> <sup>3</sup>troubliþ a mannys witt<sup>t</sup>, & wiyn greueþ  
 20 alle men þat<sup>t</sup> han a feble heed / & þerfore in alle maner woundis of<sup>t</sup>

The patient  
ought, ac-  
cording to

Rasis. & A.  
Galien.

to abstain  
from wine at  
the begin-  
ning.

Nota

if he is  
wounded in  
his head or  
in a nerve,

[<sup>3</sup> lf. 38]

<sup>2</sup> languren, languent. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 286, *Languryn yn sekenesse* langueo. And *ibid.* note 5.

- saunt to hele with here woundys, bot þey ben so feble þat þey dyȝen, Add. MS.  
 opere ellys þey langoren longe tyme; ne þe lyme may noȝt resseyuen 12,056.  
 resonable vertue, as he scholde; & þese manere of men ben of a  
 24 colde complexioun & a drye, & here bodies weryn feble.—\*The  
 secunde secte seyth þat some þat dronken <sup>4</sup>wyn & etyn flesch hadde [<sup>4</sup> fol. 58 a]  
 in þe membre þat was y-woundyde a gret enposteme & a fleuyre—  
 and þo beþ 3onge men þat beþ of an hot complexioun & a moyst—  
 28 wherfore þey comaundyde to alle opere manere complexiouns, þat  
 þey scholde noȝt drynken no wyn, ne eten non flesch. þe vnder-  
 standyng of boþe þese sectes nys noȝt comendable and þerfore y  
 folwyng þe doctryne of rasis, Avence, galien, & of oper doctoris,  
 32 & also experymentis, þat y haue longe y-preuyde, sigge þat it is  
 nedeful in þe bygynnyng þat a woundyde man Absteyne hym  
 from wyn & namlye ȝif þat þe wounde be in þe hed, opere in eny  
 partye of a synwe. For þere nys noþyng þat so sone smyteþ with  
 36 greuaunce þe hed opere þe synwe as wyn; for he ys sone conuertyde  
 of<sup>t</sup> kendlye hete, and for he ys so sotyþ, he persyþ swiþe into þe  
 synwes & he assendyþ sone into þe hed, bryngyng with hym  
 humores and spiritis. Yt trublyth a mannys wyt, & wyn greuyff  
 40 alle men that haþ a feble hed; & þere fore in alle manere woundys



if his complexion is hot and moist;

if he has a cold complexion he may have a little wine, but in general a specially prepared beverage.

þe heed & of senewis he schal be forbode in þe bigynnyng namely to þo þingis<sup>1</sup> þat han hoot complexiouns & moist into þe tyme þat þe cure be ful endid / & to þo þat ben of a cold complexioun, whanne .iiij. daies ben passid, þou maist ȝeue to drynke smal temperat wiyn, & afterward a litil strengere, aftir þat þou art sikir þat þer schal nouȝt come to þe membre noon enpostyme. But þis<sup>2</sup> drinke schal be watir of barlich, eȝer water of crummes of breed bene soden in whit<sup>3</sup> wyn,<sup>4</sup> or ellis lete þe breed lie in cold watir 8 rapere þan þou faile þat he schal drynke / but he may tende weel to heete it, & nameliche in somer / & to þat ben woundid<sup>5</sup> to drynke watir, or ellis with þe x. partie of wiyn of pome garnates or ellis with þe sixte partie of wiyn agrestis þat is smal bruske<sup>6</sup> 12 wiyn, or ellis þis is a perfiȝt drynke to woundis of þe heed & to senewis: / Take a potel of water & of barly clensid .iiij. ȝ., juiube,<sup>7</sup> sebesten<sup>8</sup> ana. ȝ. ȝ., of drie prunis of damascenes ȝ. j., sugre of rosis ȝ. ij., seȝe hem<sup>9</sup> to .iiij. parties ben consumed, & þanne lete him 16 [11 ff. 38, bk.] drynke. To asaye it softly<sup>10</sup> / 11 þis drynke is alteratijf: þat is to seie, chaunginge, ne it swellip not, & it lettip fumosite to arise

<sup>1</sup> þingis, inserted.      <sup>2</sup> þis, error for *his*.      <sup>3</sup> whit, error for *with*.

<sup>4</sup> wyn, inserted.      <sup>5</sup> woundid, error for *wonid*. Lat. homini assueto.

<sup>6</sup> bruske, Roman brusco (Lat. rusticus?), harsh. See later reference in *N. E. Dict.*

<sup>7</sup> Jujube, a kind of prune growing in Italy. Kersey—1721.

<sup>8</sup> Sebesten, Arab. sebesten. Name for *Cordia mysa* vel *sebastena*.

<sup>9</sup> Corrupt passage. Lat.: donec consumetur tertia pars.

<sup>10</sup> softly, error for *soply*.

Add. MS. of þe hed & off synwes, he schal be forebode in þe bygynnyng, & 12,056. namlye to þo þat han hot complexiouns & moiste, into þe tyme þat þe cure be ful endyde; & to þo þat bep of colde complexioun, whenne þre dayes ben passyde, þou maiste ȝeuen to drynke a smal temperat wyn, & afterwarde a lyte strengore; aftere þat þou art sykere, þat þere schal nouȝt comen to þe membre non Aposteme. But 24 his drynke schal be watyre of barlyche opere watire þat crommes of brede ben sodyn yn, wiȝ opere colde watyr & namlye in sommere, & to þo þat bep woundyde drynke watyre, opere ellys wiȝ tenþe partye of wyn of pome garnettys, opere ellys wyth sixte partye of 28 wyn agreste þat is smal broske wyn, opere ellys þis is a perfyte drynke to wondys of þe hed & of synwys: Take a potell of watyr & of barlyche y-meynde ȝ. iiij, juiube, sebesten, ana. ȝ. ȝ., of drye prunes of damacynes ȝ. j., sucre of rosis ȝ. ij, sethe hem to þre 32 partyes ben consumed, & þenne lete hym drynken yt. Sothlye þis drynke ys alteratyff: þat ys to sigge chaungyng, ne hyt ne swellip lyth nouȝt. & yt latteȝ fumosites to aysen to þe brayn. 12 Of mete

[12 fol. 58 b]



- to þe brayn. Of mete I seie: to him þat is of a moist complexioun & hoot / bi no maner wey schulde not be ȝouen fleisch, fisch, mylk, eiren, ne no comfortable mete, but if þei weren ouer-
- 4 comen wiþ to greet febilnes; but he muste holde him content wiþ ius of barli or ellis of ootis wiþ almaunde mylk; outake<sup>1</sup> wounde of þe heed, were<sup>2</sup> I ne apreue nouȝt almaundis ne noon oper vaperous fruyt: as notis eiþir walnotis eiþer avellanes; for þei han
- 8 a maner fumose properte greuyng þe heed / he may eten amidoun, betis, letuse, & breed I-waische wiþ sugre if þat he were feble. & if þat he myȝte not absteine him fro fleisch, ȝeue him fleisch of smale chickenes & of smale briddis & kidis & lambis & calues
- 12 I-sauered with agresta eiþer wiþ wiyn of pome garnatis; & þilke dietynge he schal vse til he be sikir fro swellynge & þat þou schalt knowe whanne þat akyng swellynge & extencioun of þe lyme ben ceessid & þe wounde almoost consowdid. If þat it was a wounde
- 16 <sup>3</sup> þat was sowid eiþer brouȝt togidere with byndinge, in whom quytture was nouȝt engendrid, & if þat it was a wounde maad wiþ smytynge or ellis chaungid wiþ þe eyr, in whom it is nedeful engendrynge of quytture, þanne it is siker þat it schal not enpos-

A patient of a hot and moist complexion should eat vegetables only;

Nota

if he cannot abstain from meat, chickens or veal may be given him.

[<sup>3</sup> l. 39]

<sup>1</sup> outake, except. See *Catholicon Angl.*, p. 264, Oute take, note.

<sup>2</sup> were, error for where.

- 20 y sigge: þat to hym þat is of an hot & moiste complexioun, be non manere weye ne scholde noȝt be ȝeffen flesch, ffysch, Mylke, eyren, ne no manere conuertyble mete, bot ȝif þey weryn ouere come with to gret febylnesse; but he moste holde hym content with Iuse
- 24 of barlyche, opere ellys of otys wiþ almaunde mylke; out take wounde of þe hed, where y ne Apreue noȝt Almaundys, ne non opere vaporose frutys, as notys oper walnottys oper Avelanes, for þey hauen a manere fumose proprete greuyng þe hed; he may etyn
- 28 Amidun, betes, letuse & bred y-wassche wiþ succe, ȝif þat he were feble. And ȝif þat myȝte noȝt Abstynen hym from flesch, ȝif hym flesch of smale chyknes, & of smale briddys: as larkys & opere sengle briddys, & kyddes & lambres, & kalffes I-saveryde with
- 32 agresta, opere with wyn of pom garnett; & þis dyetyng he schalt vse, tyl he be sykere from swellynge, & þat þou schalt y-knowe, whenne þat Akyng, swellynge & extencioun of þe lyme ben secyde & þe wounde is almost consouded. ȝif þat it was a wounde þat
- 36 was sowyde opere brouȝt togedyre with byndynge, in whom quyter was noȝt engendryde, and ȝif þat it was a wounde y-mad wyth smytynge—opere ellys y-chaungyde with þe eyre, in whom yt is nedful engendrynge of quyter, þenne yt is sykere þat yt schal nouȝt

Add. MS.  
12,056.



Improve this  
diet when he  
gets better.

If he has a  
cold and dry  
complexion,

he should  
take meat  
from the  
beginning.

tyme, whanne þat he makip quytture plenteuousliche; & whanne þat þe lyme is weel disposid & not to swolle ne drawe abroad & is wipoute akyng; þanne chaunge a litil & a litil his dietyng til þat þou come to his dietyng þat he was wont to vse tofore / & if þat 4 þe pacient were of a cold complexioun & a drie & þat he hadde bi nature eiper bi custum a feble stomak, þanne it were nessessarie to zeue him at þe bigynnyng fleisch a litil sauerid with swete spicerie: as canel, gynger & opere semblable to hem, & to zeue him in þe 8 bigynnyng Julep<sup>1</sup>—þat is a sirup maad oonly of water & of sugre—and aftir iij. daies ben passid, wyn, & boþe in þe oon complexioun & in þe opere complexioun. If þat a boon were broke wip a wounde or wipoute a wounde aboute þe eende of þe cure, þat is to 12 seye, whanne þou art siker from apostyme & swellinge, it is good to zeue norischaunt metis þat it<sup>2</sup> myȝte make a good & a strong re- peirement of þe boon þat was to-broke: as furmente soden in,<sup>3</sup> potage of flour weel soden & wip þe extremytees of beestis feet & 16 swyne groynes & oxen wombe weel soden & bi siche opere þingis bi whom a good ligament & a strong may weel be engendrid / Wherefore it is nessessarie to a surgian to knowe his dietyng, vertues of coplexciouns, agis, regiouns, consuetudes & þe tymes of þe 3eer þat 20

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 39, bk.]

Nota

If a bone has  
been broken,  
prescribe food  
which will  
repair the  
bones and  
ligaments.

<sup>1</sup> Julep, med. Lat. julapium, Fr. julep, Pers. goulāb. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*

<sup>3</sup> in, erroneously inserted.

Add. MS. 12,056. enposteme, whenne þat he makyp quyter plentyuouslyche; & whenne þat þe lyme ys wel dysposyde & noȝt toswolle, ne y-drawen abroad. & ys wipouten akyng, & þanne chaunge a lytel & a lytel hys dyetyng, tyl þat þou come to hys dyetyng, þat he was wont 24 to vse tofore. And ȝif þat þe pacient were of a colde complexioun & a drye & þat he hadde by nature opere by costeme a feble stomak, & þanne yt were necessarye to zeuen hym at þe bygynnyng flesch a lytel y-saueryde with swote spysorye: as kaneȝ gyngeffre & opere 28 semblable to hem & to zeuen hym in þe bygynnyng Julep—þat is a syripe y-mad only of watyre & of sucre—and aftere þre dayes ben passyde, wyn, and boþe in þe on complexioun & in þe opere complexioun. ȝif þat a bon were y-broke, wip a wounde ore wipouten 32 a wounde, aboute þe ende of þe cure, þat is to sigge, whenne þou art sykere from a posteme & swellynge, yt is gode to ȝif norysschande mete, þat it myȝte make a gode & a stronge repayrment of þe bone þat was to-broke: as with ffurmente y-sode, & potage of floure wel 36 y-sode, & with þe extremetes of bestys, as fette & swynes groynes & oxe wombys wel y-soden, & with swiche opere þynges by whom a gode ligamente & a stronge may wel be engendrede. Where fore yt is necessarye to a surgyne to knowe in hys dyetyng, vertues of 40 complexiouns, Ages, regeouns consuetudes & þe tymes of þe 3ere, þat

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 59 a]



he mowe chaunge his dietynge aftir þat dyuerse condicioun. Ne  
he schal not aftir o maner of counseil procede in his dietynge.

¶ The .xj. chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste ¶ Capm. xjm.  
4 tretis.

is of olde woundis þat ben maad of kuttinge or of open- off olde vere-  
ynges of a postyme, or ellis of a wounde þat is not heelid in lent woundes  
his tyme, or ellis of sum maner fleinge, or of brennynges, or Various  
8 of to greet heete, or of to greet drouthe, or of to greet cold causes of  
constreynynges, or of to greet aboundaunce of mater corruppinge / ulcers.  
For euery olde wounde hauynge rotnes or wire<sup>1</sup> þat is þinne  
venymous quyttir or ony oþir þing þan good quytture is not clepid  
12 a wounde, but it is clepid vlcus / Rowland & Rogerine & þe Roulond &  
moste <sup>2</sup>partie of men þat ben now, clepen it a festre<sup>3</sup> or a cankre, Rogeryn  
but it is neiþir festre ne cankre, but festre & cankre han difference [2 lf. 40]  
fro þis / þis vlcus as a propre þing haþ difference from a þing þat  
16 is comoun / for ech festre & ech cankre þat is woundid, is clepid  
vlcus, but it ne schewiþ not þat ech vlcus is clepid cankre or festre  
Ulcer is a  
more general  
term than  
fistula or  
cancer.

<sup>1</sup> wire, Lat. virus.

<sup>3</sup> festre, fester in Mätzner Dict.; O.Fr. flestre, festre; Lat. fistula.  
Comp. N. E. fester vb.

he mowe chaungen his dyetynges, aftere þat dyverse condycioun Add. MS.  
askyth. Ne he ne schal noȝt aftere on manere of counseylle proceden 12,056.  
20 in hys dyetynges.

¶ The xi. Chapitle of þe þridde techynges of þe firste  
tretys is of olde woundes.

¶ Olde woundes ben maad of kuttinge oþer of openynges of a  
24 postyme, oþere ellys of a wounde þat is noȝt helyde in his tyme, oþer  
ellys of sum manere fleynge oþer of brennynges, oþer of to grete hete,  
oþer of to grete drowþe, oþer to gret colde constreynynges, oþere of to  
grete Aboundaunce of moist mater corruppynges. For euery olde  
28 wounde, hauynge rotnesse oþere virus þat is þenne venemy quytter,  
oþer eny oþer þynge þenne gode quytter nys noȝt y-clepyde wounde,  
but is y-clepyde vlcus þat is an olde wounde. And of þis Vlcus,  
Roulond & Rogerine, & þe most partye of men þat ben now, clepyde  
32 it festre, oþer cancre. But it is neiþere festre ne cancre, but festre &  
cankre habbe dyfference from þis. <sup>4</sup> Vlcus, as a propre þynge hath [4 fol. 59 b]  
dyfference, from a þynge, þat is comyn; for euerye festre & euerye  
cankere, þat is y-woundyde, ys y-clepyde Vlcus, but yt ne syweth  
36 noȝt þat euerye Vlcus, ys clepyde cankre oþere festre, as y schal



Auicen  
distinguishes  
six kinds of  
ulcers.

as I schal telle openliche in ech chapitle bi him-silf / Auicen seiþ,  
*pat* *per* ben .vj. maner of þis *vlcus* : summe *pat* ben venemous,  
 summe hore, summe depe, summe cauernose eieþer hid, summe  
 corosif, summe rotin, summe ambulatif *pat* is spredynge abroad, & 4  
 summe harde to consowde / Of þese maners tofore seid, summe<sup>1</sup>  
 han acordynge with festris in tokenes & in foormes as venemous &  
 holow<sup>3</sup> & summe han acordynge with cankris as spredynge abroad  
 & fretynge him-silf & nepeles þei han difference, as it is conteyned 8  
 in þe chapitle of cankris I-woundid & of festre. & alle þese tofore  
 seid han difference fro wounde / for in a wounde *per* is whizt  
 quytture & euene in alle hise parties & hole and nouzt departid &  
 wipoute stenze. þis maner of quytture is engendrid of goodnes 12  
 [2. II. 40, bk.] & kyndely heete, & is perfiztly defied / But venym rotynes<sup>2</sup> & a  
 cruste, & al opere superfluyte of olde woundis ben engendrid of a  
 strong vnkyndly heete.

*vlcus viru-  
lentum*

A uenym *vlcus* is in whom aboundip venym sutil & liquid. If 16  
*pat* it be reed or zelu, or oon partie redisch and scharp bitynge þe  
 lyme, it signifief lordschipe of a strong heete.

*vlcus  
sordidum*

An hori elde wounde *pat* haþ summe greete crustis, or ellis a  
 wroting, sum gret proud fleisch to hize.<sup>3</sup> 20

<sup>1</sup> MS. *summen*.

<sup>3</sup> *proud fleisch to hize*. Lat.: *carnem superfluam grossam*. Proud flesh,  
 Fungosity. Duglison.

Add. MS. tellen opynlyche in euerye chapytell be hym-self. Auesene seyth  
 12,056. *pat* þere ben sixe manere of þese *Vlcus*, for sum ben Venemy, sum  
 hory, some depe, some cauernouse opere y-hud, sum corosyff, sum  
 rotyne, some Ambulatyff—*pat* is spredynge abroad, & some hard 24  
 to consouden. Of þese manerys tofore seyde, some hath acordynge  
 with festres in toknes & in fourmes: as Venemy & holwy, & sum  
 han acordynge with cancre: as spredynge abroad & fretynge hym  
 self. And napeles þey habbe difference as yt is conteynede in þe 28  
 chapytelles of cancre y-woundyde & of festre. & alle þese tofore  
 seyde habbit difference from a wounde, for in a wounde þere ys  
 whyte quyter & euene in al his partyes & hol & nozt departyde,  
 —& withouten stynke. þis manere of quyter is engendrede, of 32  
 godnesse of kendlye hete & is perfitlye deffiede. But vemyn,  
 rottenesse, & croste, & alle opere superfluyte of olde woundes ben  
 engendred of a straunge vnkendlye hete. A venemy *Vlcus* is, in  
 whom habundeþ venym sotyl & liquydy. 3if *pat* yt be red opere 36  
 3olwe, opere a partye redyssche, & scharpe bytynge þe lyme, hit  
 synifieþ lordschipe of straunge hete. An hory olde wounde ys  
 y-clepyd, *pat* haþ sum grete crostes, opere ellys sum grete awrotynge



A deep vlcus is þat, þat hap a greet depnes & an holow; & *vlcus profundum*  
 peraunture crokinge.

A wroting vlcus is þat of his malice fretiþ bi cause þat þe *vlcus corrosium Galien.*  
 4 blood is sent to him so scharpe / Galien seiþ: þat scharp blood not  
 oonli corrodip [nozt]\*—fleisch in woundis, but also hool fleisch /

A rotid vlcus is stynkyng, hauynge a strong heete in his *vlcus putridum*  
 ground, & out of him passiþ a stynkyng smel, eiþer smoke, as  
 8 doiþ out of fleisch þat is rotid / pilke<sup>1</sup> word 'stynk' I vndirstonde  
 it bi my maner witt: sich breeþ þat comeþ out of a bodies ende,  
 whanne a bodi breeþ wiþ þe mouþ in frosty wedir, þat men taken  
 a saumple, bifor to sle her lac dre / þanne whanne þou myzt se þe  
 12 breeþ of þin owne ende comynge out at þi mouþ in þe eir.

A walkynge / vlcus is þat walkiþ hidirward & þidirward, & *vlcus ambulativum*  
 neþeles he profoundip nouzt depe<sup>2</sup> into þe ground.

An vlcus þat is hard to helin is he þat for his yuel propirte þat *ulcus difficilis.*  
 16 is sent to him fro þe bodi lettip him to heele.

& for to heelen ech maner of þese vlcus, þer ben manye dyuers *Cura vlcis*  
 rulis / þe firste rule is þat þei moun not be heelid, but þe super- .1.  
 fluytees þat ben in hem ben I-dried / þe secunde rule / but if þat .2.  
 20 bodi ouþer þe membre be oute of his naturel complexioun, or þan  
 þou þenke to heele pilke vlcus þou muste brynge azen to his diete

<sup>1</sup> This curious explanation of the word *stynk* is an insertion of the scribe.  
 Read: *ste her laddre*. One letter half erased in *laddre*. *Ste*, see *Stratm. Dict.*, O.E. *stigan*.

proud flesch to hyze. A depe Vlcus is þat þat hap a gret depnesse Add. MS.  
 & an holwe, & peraunter crokyng. A wrotyng vlcus is þat of 12,056.  
 24 hys malyce wroteþ, bycause þat þe blod þat is sent to hym, is to  
 scharpe. **Galien**: scharpe blod nozt onlyche cordyth nozt \*flesch in  
 woundes, but also hol flesch. A rotyde vlcus is stynkyng, hab-  
 bynge a straunge hete in his grounde, & out of hym passith out a  
 28 stynkyng smel opere smoke, as þere dop<sup>3</sup> out of flesch þat is [3 fol. 60 a]  
 y-rotyde. A walkynge Vlcus is þat walkeþ hyderwarde & þedir-  
 warde & napeles he profoundeþ nozt depe into þe grounde. An  
 Vlcus þat is hard to helyn, is he þat for his yuele proprete, þat is  
 32 sende to hym fro al þe body, latteþ hym to hele. & forto helyn  
 euery manere of þese hulkes, þere ben manye dyverse rulys. þe  
 firste rule ys þat þey mowe nozt ben helyde, but þe superfluytes  
 þat ben in hem ben dried. þe secunde rule ys þat 3if þat þe body  
 36 opere membre be out of hys naturell complexioun, ere þan þou  
 þynke to hele pilke Vlcus, þou moste bryngen azeyne to hys due



- .3. complexioun distemprid þilke bodi ouþir membre. þe þridde rule is : þat if þe lyuere eipir þe splene ben I-greued, as it happiþ ofte tymes in olde woundis, þou muste rectifien hem / þe .iiij rule is : þat þe qualitees & þe quantitees of humouris schulden be temperid 4 wip blood-letynge & purgaciouns & with good gouernaile / & if þat þe eir be yuel, þe sike man schal be chaungid into good eyr / & whanne þat þe leche haþ tofore seen alle þese þingis, þanne he may go to his cure / 8

If the ulcer is virulent, wash the wound with a waschinge,

Nota<sup>1</sup>  
[<sup>3</sup> lf. 41, bk.]

and apply an vnguentum

& if þe vlcus be virulent, þat is to seie venemi, loke if þat þe venym þat goiþ out be redisch or zelowisch, & if þat þe lyme haue ony maner heete; þanne waische it wip water of rosis & barlich. alim<sup>2</sup> & balaustia & lentiles with hony<sup>3</sup> symple eiper compouned 12 ben soden yn, & lete þis watir peersen to þe depþe of þe wounde; & if þe virus be wipoute heete & þe membre haue noon heete, waische it wip watir or with wijn þat mirre wormode,<sup>4</sup> horhone,<sup>5</sup> sauge,<sup>6</sup> pimperlle<sup>7</sup> hony symple or compouned ben soden yn / Clense þe 16 wounde perfiztliche & engendre fleisch & afterward consowde it wip þis propre oynement þat þi<sup>8</sup> olde foule venym woundis, eiper

<sup>1</sup> MS. *Nona*.

<sup>2</sup> *alim*, Latin: *aluminis*.

<sup>4</sup> *wormode*, *absinthium*. O.E. *wormôd*, M.E. *wormwood*.

<sup>5</sup> *horhone*, *Marrubium vulgare*. See Britten, *Dict*.

<sup>6</sup> *sauge*, *salvia*.

<sup>7</sup> *pimperlle*, *Pimpinella*.

<sup>8</sup> *þi*, error for *in*.

Add. MS. 12,056. complexioun distempride<sup>9</sup> þilke body oþer membre. þe þridde rule ys, þat 3if þat þe lyfere oþere splene ben y-greuyde, as yt happyth 20 ofte tymes in olde woundes, þou most retyfien hem. The fourth rule ys: þat þe qualites & quantytes of humours scholde be temperid with blodletynge, & purgatiouns & with gode governaylle; and 3if þat þe eyre be yuel, þe syke man schal be chaungyde into gode 24 eire. And whanne þat þe leche haþ tofore seye alle þese þynges, þenne he may go to hys cure. & 3if þat þe Vlcus be Virulente, þat is to sigge Venemy, loke 3if þat þe Venym þat goþ out be redyssch oþere 3olwe, & 3if þat the lyme haue enye manere hete; & þenne 28 wassche it wip water þat rosys & barlyche Alum & balaustia & lentilis with honye symple oþere componed ben sodyn In. And lete þis watere percen to þe depthe of þe wounde. And 3if þe Virus be withouten hete & þe membre haue non hete, wassche it with water 32 oþere wyþ wyn, þat Mirre, wermot, horhowne, sauge, pypirnel, honye symple oþer componed ben sodyn In. Clanse þe wounde perfitlye & engendre flesch & afterwarde consoud it with þis propre oynement, þat in olde foule venemy woundys oþer Vlcus engend- 36

<sup>9</sup> At the margin.



- vlcus, engendriþ fleisch, clensiþ & heeliþ as auicen & rasis witnessen / Auicen & Rasis  
 recipe litargium<sup>1</sup> as myche as þou wolt & stampe it in a morter<sup>2</sup> &  
 putte wiþ him good oile of rosis & vynegre now on & now þe opere,  
 4 alwey stiryng, til it be perfiztly an oynement & come into þe foorme  
 of an oynement. & þis oynement is clepid litargirum nutritum, litargirum nutritum  
 þat is to sai litarge nurschid, þat is profitable in manye causis /  
 afterward take of þilke litarge norischid .vij. parties & of alim,  
 8 & of balaustie or ellis in þe stide of balaustie wormes of þe erþe  
 brent, bras brent, leed, gallis, sandragoun chathinie<sup>3</sup> argenti .ana.  
 as myche as is xij parties of al þe oynement; medle alle togidere [4 lf. 42]  
 and make an oynement / þis oynement schal be leid wiþinne þe vnguentum nutritum.  
 12 wounde & al aboue þe wounde; for it drieþ þe wounde & engendriþ  
 good fleisch & consowdiþ / Take hede to þis rule, þat in heelynge Nota.  
 of alle olde woundis after þat þei ben clensyd, aboue þe oynement  
 it is good to leie a linnen cloþ, to distende abroad on of þe Put a "mundificatif" on a linen cloth upon the wound,  
 16 mundificatiuis of ony which þat schal be told in þe antidotarie, &  
 leie aboue aboute þilke vlcus specialy from þe ouer partie fro whens and add a T<sup>5</sup>  
 humouris fleen, a defensif of bole armonyak & terra sigillata; þat deffensif dressing.

<sup>1</sup> "Lithangyros, Litharge or Silver-glet, the frothy Dross, or Scum that arises in the purifying of Silver with Lead."—Phillips.

<sup>2</sup> MS. & putte it in a morter, scribal insertion.

<sup>3</sup> "Cathima est minera de qua elicetur aurum vel argentum."—Sinonoma Barth. p. 14. Cathimia: argenti spuma, Cartelli Diet. <sup>5</sup> a sign like Nota.

- reth flesch, clansyth & helyth as **Auecene & Rases** wytnessith, Add. MS.  
 20 **litargium nutritum.** & litarge as myche as þou wylt & stampe it 12,056.  
 & put it in a mortere & putte wiþ hym gode oyle of roses &  
 vynegre, now þe on now þe opere, alweye sterynge, tyl it be perfit- [6 fol. 60 b]  
 lyche augmentyd & come to þe fourme of an oynement. & þis  
 24 oynement—litargirum nutritum—þat is to sigge litarge y-noryssched,  
 þat is profitable in many casis. Afterwarde take of þilke litarge  
 viij partyes, & of alym, & of balaustie opere ellys, in þe stede of  
 balaustye, wormys of þe erþe y-brend, brend bras, brent led, gallys,  
 28 sanke dragoun, cathimie, Argenti ana as mychel as ys .xij partyes  
 of alle þe oynement, and medle al togedre, & make an Oygne-  
 ment. þis oynement schal be leyde withynne þe woundes & aboue  
 þe wounde, for yt dryeth þe wounde, & engendrith gode flesch &  
 32 consoud. Take hede to þis rule, þat in helynge of alle olde  
 woundes, aftere þat þey ben clansyde, aboue þe oynement yt is  
 gode of one a linnen cloþ, forto dystende abroad on of þe mundyfi-  
 catyfes of hony whiche þat schulle be tolde in þe antitodarye. And  
 36 leye aboue aboute þilke vlcus, & specialiche from þe ouere partye,  
 fro whom humores flotyn, a<sup>7</sup> defensif of bol Armonyake & terra

<sup>7</sup> MS. &.



τ  
R

Nota.

In a (2) sordid  
ulcer remove  
the scurf.

[1 lf. 42, bk.]

In a (3) deep  
ulcer cleanse  
the wound,

and make the  
pus discharge  
itself freely.

is maad on þis maner / take bole armoniak .ḡ j. terra sigillata. 3 ḡ  
oile of rosis & vynegre þat suffisiþ, I-now3 do in þe oon now in þe  
oper til þe oynement be ful maad & liquide I-nou3 / so þat of þe  
oile of rosis be double as myche as of vynegre / þis defensip a 4  
membre fro corrupcioun & also vleus þat he sprede nou3t abroad /

An hory wounde shal be heelid, in remeuyng away þe crust  
eipere filþe þat is in him wiþ poudre of affodill, þat schal be said in  
þe eende of þis book, ouþer wiþ sum oper mundificatiuis; aftir 8  
consowde it wiþ consolidaciouns /

A deep wounde is heelid <sup>1</sup>wiþ castyng into þe deppe of þe  
wounde with an instrument maad to þe lijknese of a clisterie, ony  
of þe waischingis þat ben seid in þe venemy wounde aboue, aftir 12  
þat þe disposicioun of þe membre askip of heete or of cold. &  
aftir þat, he is clensid in castyng in watre ouþir wiyn þat mastik  
or frank encense is soden ynne & in leggyng wiþouten oon of þe  
mundificatiuis of hony þat schal be seid aftir. & also it is good to 16  
ordeyne þe lyme so þat þe mouþ of þe wounde hange dounward, &  
streyn þi ligature at þe ground of þi wounde, & bynde it losely at  
þe mouþ of þe wounde; also it were good, if þat it my3te be, þat  
þer were maad a newe wounde in þe place þat is moost hangyng, 20  
þat þe rotynes & þe quytture my3te þe bettere goon out; for so  
þilke vleus my3te þe sunnere be heelid /

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[2 fol. 61 a]

sigillata þat is mad on þys manere: R bol armoneake 3 j terre  
sigillate 3 ḡ., oyle of rosis & vynegre, þat suffyseþ, now do in þe on, 24  
now þe oper, tyl þe oynement be ful mad & lyquyde ynow3; so  
þat of þe oyle of roses be duble as myche as of þe vynegre. þis  
diffensiff defendip a membre fro corrupcioun, & also Vleus þat he  
sprede no3t abroad. An hory wonde ys y-helyde, in remeffyng 28  
away þe croste opere þe fylthe þat is in hym with poudre of affodylles  
shal be sayde in þe ende, opere with sum opere mundificatyfes;  
afterwarde consoude yt with consolydatyfes. A depe wounde ys  
y-helyde in castyng in to þe <sup>2</sup>deppe of þe wounde with an instrument 32  
y-mad to þe lyknesse of a clisteyre, any of þe wasschynges þat beþ  
seyde in þe Venemy wounde aboue, after þat þe disposisioun of þe  
membre askeþ of hete oper of cold. And aftere þat he is y-clansyde,  
in castyng in water opere in wyn þat mastyke opere frankensence 36  
ys y-soden yn, & in leggyng without, on of þe mundificatyfes of  
hony, þat schal be sayde aftere. & also it is gode to ordeyne þe  
lyme, so þat þe mouth of þe wounde honge dunwarde, & streyn þi  
ligature at þe grounde of þy wounde & bynde it looslye at þe mouþ 40  
of þe wounde. And also yt were gode, 3if þat it my3te be, þat þere  
were made a newe wounde in þe place þat is most hongyng þat þe



A wroting<sup>1</sup> vlcus is heelid in leggyng specialiche aboute him (4) In a corroding ulcer, use an obtundens, an appropriate diet, purging,  
 colde þingis whiche þat<sup>2</sup> ben<sup>2</sup> obtunden or casten bach þe scharpnes  
 of þe same vlcus; & also with amendinge, as with metis & drynkis,  
 4 þe scharpnes of þe same blood, & in purgyng þe reed colere; &  
 wip anoyntyng wip colde oynementis & consolidatiuis. & þerto  
<sup>3</sup> is miche worþ vnguentum album rasis þat schal be told in þe and the vnguentum album rasis  
 antidotarie / [<sup>3</sup> lf. 43]

8 A stynkyng wounde is heelid in remeuynge away þe stinche & (5) In a stinking ulcer use a lotion of ydromel, and a mundificatif.  
 þe rotenes; & þerto is myche worþ a waischinge of ydromel: þat is  
 hony & watir soden togidere wip mirre, & a mundificatif maad wip  
 ius of wormod & barly mele & hony & mirre, þat is maad on þis  
 12 maner / take ius of wormod. ʒ iiij. of hony. ʒ iiij. barli mele ʒ ij.  
 of mirre ana. ʒ j. & compounne hem togidere & fille þe wounde  
 wipinneforþ with lynnet of lynnyn clop. & if þat wormes ben  
 engendrid in þe wounde, sle hem wip þe ius of calamynthe ouþer wip  
 16 þe ius of þe leues of pechis, or ellis persicarie,<sup>3</sup> eiþer wip decoccioun  
 of elebre. & whanne þat a perfiȝt mundificatif is maad, engendre  
 fleisch & consowde as it is seid tofore / Nota bene

A walkyng vlcus is heelid wip fleebotomie & formacie<sup>4</sup> þat is (6) In a walking ulcer use phlebotomy and purging,

<sup>1</sup> wrotyng, error for fretyng.

<sup>2</sup> ben, erroneously inserted. <sup>3</sup> persicarie glossed colorag. See Notes.

<sup>4</sup> O.Fr. farmacie = purgation. See Littré, *Dict.*

20 rotnesse & þe quytere myȝte þe betyre gone out, for so þilke Vlcus Add. MS. 12,056.  
 myȝte sunnere be helyde. A ffreyng vlcus ys y-helyde, in leggyng  
 specialiche aboute hym colde þynges, whiche þat obtunden oper  
 castyn bach þe scharpnesse of þe same Vlcus, & also in amendinge  
 24 with metys & with drynkes the scharpnesse of þe same blod, & in  
 purgyng þe rede colore & with anoyntyng wip colde oynementes  
 & consolidatifes, & þereto is myche worþ vnguentum album Rasis,  
 þat schal be told in þe antidotarie. A stynkyng wounde ys  
 28 y-helyde in remevyng away þe stenche & þe rottenesse, & þerto ys  
 myche worth a wasschyng of ydromel þat is hony & water y-sode  
 togidre wip mirre, & a mudyficatiff y-mad with Ius of wermot &  
 barly mele & hony & mirre, þat is made on þis manere: take jus of  
 32 wermot .ʒ. iiij, of hony ʒ iiij, of barly mele .ʒ. ij, off mirre ʒ .j.,  
 compone hem togedire, & fulle þe wounde, wipynne forth wip  
 lynete of lynnyn clop. & ȝif þat wormys ben engendride in þe  
 wounde, sle hem wip jus of calamynthe, opere with þe juse of þe leuys  
 36 of pechys, opere ellys persicarie, opere with decoccion <sup>5</sup> of ellebre. [<sup>5</sup> fol. 61 b]  
 And whanne þat a perfyte mudyficioun is mad engendre flesch  
 & consoude, as yt is seyde tofore. A walkyng Vlcus ys y-helyde  
 with flebotomye & ffarmasye þat is laxatyfes purgyng þe colere &



laxatiuis purgyngē þe colere & brent<sup>t</sup> humouris, & in leggyngē aboute a defensif<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> bole & terra sigillata þat<sup>t</sup> is seid tofore in þis chapitle; & with oon of<sup>t</sup> þe cold mundificatiuis, & sumtyme þou muste cauterise þe vlcus aboute with an instrument<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> gold. For þilke maner of<sup>t</sup> 4  
if necessary  
cauterization.

[1 lf. 43, bk.]

(7) In a malignant ulcer remove any special cause of the ulcer.

The healing is delayed if

Nota.  
the patient suffers from dropsy, the liver,

the spleen,

the blood,

or the glands,

or an inappropriate diet or medicine,

þe cause whi þat<sup>t</sup> summe vlcus<sup>1</sup> is hard to consowde is, for an yuel disposicioun þat<sup>t</sup> is hid in þe bodi, & þerfore it nedip to rectifien þe membre & þe bodi as I haue seid tofore. & if þe cause be vpon,<sup>2</sup> 8  
oon oþer manye, do awei þilke cause or ellis þe manye causis, or þat<sup>t</sup> þou go to þis principal cure / þese ben þe causis þat<sup>t</sup> letten consowdyngē of<sup>t</sup> olde woundis: an yuel disposicioun of<sup>t</sup> al þe bodi as ydropisie; or ellis an yuel disposicioun of<sup>t</sup> þe lyuere as if þat<sup>t</sup> he be 12  
to feble, as to hoot<sup>t</sup> or to cold, to moist<sup>t</sup> or to drie, wiþ mater or wiþoute mater, as wiþ to greet<sup>t</sup> hardenes; or ellis þe splene is to feble to purge þe malancolient<sup>t</sup> blood; or ellis to myche blood or ellis to litil blood; or ellis þe veynes ben to fulle of<sup>t</sup> blood þat<sup>t</sup> goon 16  
doun to þe vlcus; or elles þat<sup>t</sup> glandeles þat<sup>t</sup> ben kirknelis þat<sup>t</sup> ben in þe ground<sup>3</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> senden doun mater to the vlcus þat<sup>t</sup> is in þe þies & in þe leggis; or ellis þe lippis of<sup>t</sup> þe vlcus ben to grete; or ellis myche fleisch; or ellis mys-ordynaunce of<sup>t</sup> dietyngē or ellis an 20

<sup>2</sup> vpon, error for opsn.

<sup>3</sup> ground. See grynd, page 41, note 3.

Add. MS. brende humoures, & in leggyngē aboute a defensif<sup>t</sup> of bol & terra sigillata þat is seide tofore in þe same Chapytte, & with on of þe colde mundyficatyfes & sum tyme men most cauterise þe Vlcus aboute with an instrument of gold. for þilke manere of brennyngē 24  
rectefieþ wel þe membre. þe cause why þat sum Vlcus is hard to consoude is, for an yuel disposicion ys y-hydde in þe bodye, & þerfore it nedyth to retyfien þe membre & þe body as y haue seide tofore. And 3if þe cause be opene, on oþere manye, do aweye þilke 28  
causes oþer ellys þo manye causes, ere þanne þou go to þe pryncipal cure. þese ben þe causes þat lettyn consoudyngē of olde woundes, an yuele disposisioun of alle þe body: as dropsye, oþer ellys an iuele disposisioun of þe lyuere: as 3if þat he be to feble, as to hot oþere 32  
to colde, to moiste oþere to drye, with mater ore withouten matere, as wiþ to grete hardnesse; oþere ellys þe spleen is to feble to purge þe malancolyent blod; oþere ellys to myche blod, oþere ellys to acute blod; oþere ellys þe veynes beþ to ful of blod, þat goþ doun 36  
to þe Vlcus; oþer ellys curnellys þat glandeles, þat beþ kurnellys þat beþ in þe grynde, þat sendip doun matere to þe Vlcus þat is in þe thyȝes & þe legges, oþer ellys þe lippes of þe Vlcus beþ to grete & hard, oþere ellys to myche flesch, oþer ellys mysordeyninge of 40



- inconuenient<sup>t</sup> medicyn to þat<sup>t</sup> membre or ellis þe lyme þat<sup>t</sup> is hirt  
 hap an yuel discrasie; or ellis þilke vlcus is in an yuel place as in  
 þe eende of þe <sup>1</sup>elbowze; or ellis þe vlcus is al round; or ellis þe [1 lf. 44]
- 4 boon þat<sup>t</sup> is vndir þe vlcus is corrupt / Alle þase tofore seid letten  
 vlcus to be heelid / wherfore it<sup>t</sup> nedip þe, to take kepe to alle þese  
 þingis tofore seid, to amende al þe bodi & namely þo lymes þat<sup>t</sup> han  
 principalte in mannes body, & kepen alle þe lymes þat<sup>t</sup> ben in her  
 8 naturel disposicioun with þingis þat<sup>t</sup> ben acordinge to her naturel  
 disposicioun, þo / & if þei ben discrasid, remeue þilke discrasie wiþ  
 þat<sup>t</sup>, þat<sup>t</sup> is contrarie to þe discrasie / also tempre þe qualite & þe  
 quantite of þe blood & streyne þe veyne if þat<sup>t</sup> þou brynge þidir  
 12 blood, or ellis if þat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> be possible latt<sup>t</sup> þe blood away; vndo þe  
 glandeles þat<sup>t</sup> ben kirkels þat<sup>t</sup> sendin þider mater, & remeue deed  
 fleesch, smale þe lippis of woundis þat<sup>t</sup> ben greete & kutte hem  
 away if þat<sup>t</sup> þou myzt<sup>t</sup> do noon oþirwise; amende his dietynge; &  
 16 brynge azen þe rondnes of þilke vlcus, into a long forme aftir þe  
 lenkþe of þe membre with a knyft<sup>t</sup> hoot<sup>t</sup> brennynge / but<sup>t</sup> if a veyne  
 or a senewe lette. & þou schalt remoue þe boon þat<sup>t</sup> is corrupt<sup>t</sup> on  
 þis maner: in kuttynge away al þe fleisch & þe boon þat<sup>t</sup> is corrupt<sup>t</sup>  
 20 with an hoot<sup>t</sup> <sup>2</sup>iren, or wiþ a medicyn þat<sup>t</sup> schal be seid in þe laste  
 eende of þis booke, or ellis it<sup>t</sup> is bettere to don it<sup>t</sup> away wiþ hoot<sup>t</sup>  
 dyetynge, oþer ellys an vnconuenable medycine to þilke membre,  
 oþer ellis þe lyme þat<sup>t</sup> ys y-hurt hap an yuele discrasie, oþere ellys  
 24 þilke Vlcus is an yuele place—as in þe ende of þe elbowe, oþere ellys  
 þe Vlcus ys al rounde, oþere ellys þe bon þat<sup>t</sup> is vndire <sup>3</sup>þe vlcus is  
 corupte. Alle þese tofore seide letteþ Vlcus to by helyde, where-  
 fore yt nedip þe, to take kepe to alle þese thynges tofore seyde, &  
 28 to amendyn alle þe body, & namlye þe lymes þat<sup>t</sup> habbiþ principalte  
 in mannes body, & kepe alle þe lymes þat<sup>t</sup> beþ in here natureþ  
 disposisioun wiþ þynges þat<sup>t</sup> beþ acordynge to here naturel disposi-  
 sioun, & 3if þey ben discrasiede, remywe þilke discrasye with þat,  
 32 þat<sup>t</sup> is contrarye to þilke discrasye. Also tempre þe qualyte & þe  
 quantyte of þe blod, & streyne þe veynes 3if þat<sup>t</sup> þey brynge þedire  
 blod. Oþer ellys 3if it is possible, lete þe blod aweye. Vndo  
 glandeles, þat<sup>t</sup> beþ kurneþ þat<sup>t</sup> sendeþ þedire mater, & remywe ded  
 36 flesch, smale lippes of þe woundes þat<sup>t</sup> beþ grete, & kytte hem away,  
 3if þou maiste do non oþere weys; amende his dyetynge, & brynge  
 azeyne þe roundnesse of þilke Vlcus in to a longe fourme, aftere þe  
 lengþe of þe membre, wiþ a knyft<sup>t</sup> hot brennynge, but 3if þat<sup>t</sup> a  
 40 synwe oþere a Veyne latte. And þou schalt remywe þe bon, þat<sup>t</sup> is  
 corupe on þis manere: unwrey al þe bon, in kuttynge away al þe  
 flesch, \*—þe bon þat<sup>t</sup> is corupte with an yren, oþer wiþ a medycyne  
 þat<sup>t</sup> schal be seyde in þe laste ende of þis booke. Oþer ellys it is

or if the con-  
 dition of the  
 wound is bad.

Remedial  
 measures—

remove the  
 dyscrasia,  
 regulate the  
 patient's  
 blood,

give an ob-  
 long shape to  
 a round ulcer,

remove any  
 rotten bone  
 by means of  
 a hot iron—

[2 lf. 44, bk.]

Add. MS.  
 12,056.

[3 fol. 62 a]



**Nota.** iren. & whanne þat þe boon þat is corrupt<sup>1</sup> is vnkeuerid, schauē it  
 scraping and not as manye men doon, but touche harde þat boon with hoot  
 scratching iren; & aftirward heelde on þilke boon hoot oile of rosis, & leie on  
 generally give rise to fistulæ. oon of þe mundificatiuis þat ben in þe antidotarie whiche þat wolen 4  
 remoue þe rotid boon wipoute violence / For vndirstonde weel þou 3  
 þat þou clense þe rotid boon wip schauynge or wip filynge with  
 violence, neuere þe lattere kynde wole afterward don away a schelle  
 of þilke same boon, nouzt azenstondynge þi schauynge & þi rasyng / 8  
 wherfore in remeuyng þilke boon þou multipliest þi traueile &  
 makist newe<sup>2</sup> mundificacion to þe fulle<sup>3</sup> & þerof may come ofte  
 tymes an yuel festre. An inconuenient medicyn is amendid in  
 consideryng þe complexioun of al þe body & þe complexioun of þe 12  
 lyme & þe gre of þe medicyn; for if þat þe membre be drie as þe  
 eeris & al bony & gristly lymes, & þei han greet putride & rotschipe,  
 þanne þou nedist a ful drie medicyn / & if þat þe bodi or þe lymes  
 If the medi- 4ben mene bitwene fatnes & lenenes þat is neiþer to fatt ne to 16  
 cine was not  
 [4 lf. 45] leene, þanne þou nedist a medicyn þat is in kynde mesurabiliche  
 dryng / & if þat þe bodi or þe membre be natureliche moist, & if  
 þat he haue a litil putrede or rotschipe, þanne þou nedist a medicyn

<sup>1</sup> MS. *corrrupt*.<sup>2</sup> *newe*, error for *no*.<sup>3</sup> *to þe fulle*. Lat.: ad plenum. See *Polychr.*, iii. 443, he forgaf him the trespas at the fulle.

Add. MS. 12,056. bettere to don it away with hot yren & whanne þat þe bon þat is 20  
 corrupte is vnkeueryde, schauē yt nozt as many men don, but touche  
 harde þilke bon with hot yren & afterwarde helde on þilke bon  
 hot oyle of rosys, & leye on one of þe mundyficatyfes þat beþ in þe  
 antidotarye, whiche þat wylle remywe þe rotyde bon withoute vio- 24  
 lence. Ffor vndirstond wel, þaw 3 þat þou clanse þe rotyde bon with  
 schauynge opere wip vylinge with vyolence, neuere þe latere kynde  
 wyl afterwarde don awaye a schelle of þilke same bon, nozt azen-  
 stondynge þy schauynge & þy raspyng; wherfore in remefyng 28  
 þilke bon, þou multipliest þy traueil, & þou makyste no mundifi-  
 cacioun to þe folle; & þerof may come ofte tymes, an yuele festre.  
 And inconuenient medycine ys amendyd, in consyderynge þe  
 [5 fol. 62 b] complexioun 4of alle þe bodye, & þe complexioun of þe lyme, & þe 32  
 gree of þe medycine; for 3if þat þe membre be drye as þe erys, nose-  
 prylles & alle bony & grestly lemes, & þey han grete putrede &  
 roteschippe, þenne þou nedyste a ful drye medycyne; & 3if þat þe  
 body opere þe membre be naturellyche moist, 3if þat he haue a lyte 36  
 putrede opere roteschippe, þanne thou nedyste a medycine þat ys  
 lyte dryng. And 3if þat the body opere þe lymes ben mene  
 betwene fatnesse and lenesse—þat nys neiþere to fatte ne to lene,  
 þenne þou nedyst a medycine þat is in kynde, mesurablyche dryng. 40



þat<sup>t</sup> is litil drienge / & if þat<sup>t</sup> .ij. membrs ben in complexioun appropriate,  
 I-liche euene, & þe toon haue myche quytture, & þe toþer litil change it  
 quytture, he þat<sup>t</sup> haþ þe more quytture nedip þe driere medicyn / & according to  
 the patient's  
 complexion.  
 4 \*he þat<sup>t</sup> haþ but litil quytture, him nedip his medicyn I-maad nouzt<sup>t</sup>  
 fulliche so drie / þerfore it nedip bi mesure þat<sup>t</sup> þou kepe naturel  
 þing<sup>t</sup> wiþ þing<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> is acordinge to þe same naturel þing<sup>t</sup> / & also  
 remeue with mesurable contrariouste þing<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> is azens kynde / But  
 8 þe quantite of medicyns þat<sup>t</sup> schulden be leid to þe soor as galien *Galien.*  
 witnessip mai not wiþ lettris be writen / neþeles it sufficiþ þat<sup>t</sup> a  
 man diuise þe medicyn after<sup>1</sup> þe complexioun mai bere / For kynde  
 þat<sup>t</sup> is wondirful, fullillip þing<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> is absent, & þat<sup>t</sup>. þat<sup>t</sup> is to myche,  
 12 castip away, but if þat<sup>t</sup> it be to myche azen kynde ; & þanne kynde  
 muste nede faile in his kyndely worchinge / A medicyn mundificatif<sup>t</sup>  
 2 & exciccatif<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> is nessessarie in ech old holowe wounde, — 3 [2 lf. 45, bk.]  
 & þat<sup>t</sup> may be knowe bi þis maner / if þat<sup>t</sup> þe medicyn make  
 16 þinne quytture & blodi & make þe wounde holower, þanne he  
 schulde be, þanne is medicyn to scharpe / & if þe quytture be picke  
 & towz, þanne is þe medicyn to liþe / & also anoþer signe þat<sup>t</sup> þe  
 A thin pus, a  
 discoloured  
 skin, a burn-  
 ing sensation  
 show that the  
 medicine was  
 too dry.

<sup>1</sup> N. E. Dict. s. v., "after C. 2. c" gives later references for the use of  
*after* conj. = according as, without relative particle.

<sup>3</sup> Both MSS. omit the end of the passage. Lat. "Medicina vero mundi-  
 ficatiua & exiccatiua — aut est fortior, quam conuenit, aut debilior com-  
 petenti." Then, as a heading to the next passage: "Significatio si medicina  
 est magis sicca quam oportet." The þat in & þat may be knowe, refers to this  
 omitted heading.

And 3if þat two membrys ben in complexioun i-lyche euene, & þe Add. MS.  
 20 on haue myche quyter & þe opere lyte quyter, he þat haþ þe more 12,046.  
 quyter nedyth þe dreiere medycine,\* — afterwarde it nedip by  
 mesure þat þou kepe naturel þynge, with þynge þat is acordynge to  
 þe same nature, and also to remeffe with mesurable contraryouste  
 24 þynge þat is azeys kynde. But þe quantite of medicynes þat  
 scholde<sup>4</sup> be leyde to þe sore, as Galien witnessip, ne may nozt with  
 lettres ben wryten. Neuer þe latere it suffisith, þat a man defye þe  
 medycine, aftere þe complexioun may bere ; ffor kynde þat is  
 28 wondirfuþ fullilleþ þynge þat is absent & þat þat is to myche  
 castyth aweye, but 3if þat it be to myche azeys kynde ; & þanne  
 kynde most nedys faylen in his kendlye wirchyng. A medycine  
 mundyficatyff<sup>t</sup> & exsiccatif<sup>t</sup> þat is necessarie in eche olde holwe,  
 32 vlcere,\* — may be knowe by þis manere : 3if þat þe medycine make  
 þenne quyter & blody & make þe wounde holwere þan he scholde  
 be, þenne ys þe medycine to acute ; & 3if þe quyter be pikke &  
 towz, þenne ys þe medycine to lythye ; and also an opere<sup>5</sup> signe þat

<sup>4</sup> MS. þat scholde, twice.

<sup>5</sup> medycine, cancelled before signe.



medicyn is to scharp, þat þe place aboute þe wounde is to grene, blak, reed, eiper 3elow; & þanne þe sike man schal fele to greet heete & brennynge, also þe venym of þe wounde multiplieþ / and whanne þe vnkunnyng leche seep þese accidentis tofore seid, he 4 ordeyneþ a drie medicyn; & so ech day þe wounde apeirip.<sup>1</sup>

A livid pus, or paleness and coldness of the limb, show that the medicine was not sufficiently dry.

& þe signe þat þe medicyn is of feble dryng is, þat þe quittance & þe rotynes þat goiþ out þerof is greet in substaunce, ponderous & vneueene, wan ouþir pale & þe membre is cold & is whiȝt ouþir 8 wan, ouþir cleer in colour ouþer soft; & þe sike man felip cold in his membre / & whanne þat þou knowist þese þingis in þe firste cause make not þi medicyn so drie, & in þe secunde cause make þi medicyn more drie, & also chaunge þi worching as condicioun of 12 kynde askith <sup>2</sup>boþe of bodi & membre as weel symple as compound medicyns / He þat knowip not þes canones. wel yuele schal he heele woundis / wherfore manye lechis bryngen liȝtliche woundis with her yuel worching into þe worste olde woundis þe whiche moun not 16 aftir ben I-heeliþ bi a good leche / þese ben liȝt medicyns whiche þat drien olde woundis þat neden a litil dryng: mastik, frank encense, barli mele. & þese medicyns ben sumwhat more driere: yrios,<sup>3</sup> aristologie rotunda, orabum<sup>4</sup> þat is wiilde tare, lupines, 20

[<sup>2</sup> If. 46]

An ignorant physician may make a dangerous wound out of a slight one.

A mild siccatis.

A stronger siccatis.

<sup>1</sup> *apeirip* intr. See Prompt. Parv. *Appeyryn*, or make wors. Pejoro, deterioro.

<sup>3</sup> *yrios*. Lat. *Iris*. See Prior, *Dict.*, p. 123.

<sup>4</sup> "*Orobis*, gall. uesche, anglice thare uel mousespese."—Alphita, p. 131.

Add. MS. 12,056. þy medycine is to scharpe, þat þe place about þe wounde ys to grene, blake, red oþere to zelwe & þe syke man felyþ to grete hete <sup>5</sup>& brennyng, & also þe Venym of þe wounde multiplyeth, and whanne þe vnkunnyng leche seþ þese Accidentes tofore seyde, he ordeyneþ 24 a dryere medycine; & so eche day þe wounde apeirith. And þe signe þat þe medycine is of feble dreying is þat þe quyter & þe rotnesse, þat goþ out þere of, ys gret in substaunce, ponderose & vneueene, wan oþer pale; þe membre is colde whyte oþer wan, oþer 28 clere in coloure, oþer softe, & þe syke man felyth colde in his membre, & whenne þat þou knowist þese þynges in þe firste cas, make noȝt þy medycine so drye. In þe secunde cas make þy medycine more drye, & so chaunge þy wirkyng, as condyciouns of kynde 32 askyth, boþe of body & of membre, as wel symple as componede medycines. He þat knowip noȝt þese kanones wel\*—schal helen olde woundes; wherfore manye lechys brynge lyȝte woundes wiþ here iuele wirchyng, into þe worste olde woundes, þe whiche mowe 36 noȝt aftere be helyde by a gode leche. þese ben lyȝte medycines, whiche þat drye olde wondys þat neden a lytel dryyng; mastyke, frankensence, barlymele. þese medicynes beþ sumwhat dreiere: yreos. Aristologia. Orobum þat is wilde Tare, lupines, þe rotnesse 40

[<sup>5</sup> fol. 63 a]



þe rotynes eiþer þe drie poudre of trees; & þese medicyns ben strongere: balaustie, psidie,<sup>1</sup> rose, notts of cipris *et cetera* / & þese ben liȝt mundificatiuis: sugre, hony, water of barlich, gotis whay, <sup>A mild mundificatif.</sup>  
 4 watir of þe see, watir of brimstoon þat clensip & hetep, water of alym þat clensip & coldip. & þou schalt haue greet plente of enplastris, mundificatiuis, oyntmentis compouned in þe antidotarie of þis book /

**T**he .xij. chapitle of þe iij. techinge of þe firste tretis ¶ <sup>Cap<sup>m</sup>.xijm.</sup>  
 8 is of festre /

Festre is a deep old wounde, & þe mouþ of him is streyt, & þe <sup>A fistula</sup>  
 ground is brood, & he haþ <sup>2</sup>wiþinne him a calose<sup>3</sup> hardnesse al <sup>[<sup>2</sup> lf. 46, bk.]</sup>  
 aboute as it were a goos penne or ellis a kane / & a festre haþ <sup>is distin-</sup>  
 12 difference from a deep vlcus & a cauernose / for a deep vlcus & <sup>guishable</sup>  
 cauernose of whom it is toold in þe chapitle tofore seid, þouȝ þat <sup>from a deep</sup>  
 þei acorden togidere in depnes & in streitnesse of þe mouþ, þe vlcus <sup>ulcer by its</sup>  
 haþ not wiþinne him a calose hardnes / Wherefore a festre mai not <sup>hardness,</sup>  
 16 be clensid wiþ waischinge with which a cauernose vlcus mai be  
 clensid / but it is nessessarie aftir þat þou hast waischen it to <sup>which must</sup>  
 be removed by cauteriza-  
 tion.

<sup>1</sup> "*Psidia cortex est mali granati.*"—*Synonoma Barthol.*, p. 35.

<sup>3</sup> O. Fr. calus, (Godefroy). See later references in *N. E. Dict.*

oper þe dryȝe poudre of trees. þese medycines ben strengere: <sup>Add. MS.</sup>  
 balaustie, prosidye, rose, notys off Cipresse et. cet. And þese<sup>4</sup> ben <sup>12,056.</sup>  
 20 lyȝte mundificatyfes in cure,<sup>5</sup> hony, watire of barlye, gotyswehyȝ,  
 water of þe see, water of brymston þat clansith & hetyþ, water of  
 Alym þat clansyth & coldyth. þou schalt haue grete plente of  
 enplastres, mundificatyfes, and oygnementys componede in þe  
 24 antitodarye of þis ilke booke.

¶ Cap. xii of þe þridde techynge of þe firste tretis is  
 of a<sup>6</sup> festre.

ffestre<sup>7</sup> is a depe olde wounde and<sup>8</sup> þe mouth is streyt of hym &  
 28 þe grounde is brod, & he haþ wiþ ynne hym a callose hardnesse alle  
 aboute, as yt were a gose penne oper ellys a kane, & a ffestre haþ  
<sup>9</sup>diffence from a depe Vlcus & a cauernose; for a depe Vlcus & a <sup>[<sup>9</sup> fol. 63 b]</sup>  
 Cauernose, of whom yt ys tolde in þe chapitle toforeseyde, þowȝ  
 32 þat þey acorden togedire in depnesse & in streytnesse of þe mouþ,  
 þe Vlcus haþ noȝt wiþyn hym a callose hardnesse, wherefore a  
 festre may noȝt be clensyde with wasschynges, with þe whiche a<sup>10</sup>  
 cavernose Vlcus may be clansyde, but it is necessarye, aftere þat

<sup>4</sup> MS. þese, twice. <sup>5</sup> in cure, a scribal mistake from sugre.

<sup>6</sup> of a, above line. <sup>7</sup> MS. ffirte.

<sup>8</sup> in, cancelled; and, above line. <sup>10</sup> a, above line.



remeue pilke calose hardnesse wiþ a cauterie eiper with a medicyn cauterizinge þat is brennyng, þe which cauterie ouþir brennyng schulde make þe deppe of þe vlcus holowere þan he was / Wherefore it is nessessarie to a surgian to knowe þe difference of þis science, 4 þat he mowe knowe to heele boþe þe vlcus & þe festre wiþ medicyns different þat longen to hem boþe /

Nota.

If the fistula is in fleshy parts, use cleansing medicines.

[11. 47]

& if þat a festre be in þe fleisch or ellis bitwene senewe & senewe, so þat þe substaunce of þe senewe be not corrupt ne þe 8 boon, it is no nede to take noon opere medicyn but egrimoyn & staumpe it with salt as þou woldist make sause, & drawe out þe ius of pilke egrimoyn, & do it into þe hole of þe festre wiþ a penne & leie þe substaunce of þe same eerbe þere-vpon til he haue 12 slayn pilke festre & clensid it; & þou schalt knowe bi reednes & sadnesse of fleisch þat is wiþinne þe festre al aboute; & aftirward haue þis sirup of hony wiþ þe whiche þou schalt waische þe festre þat is now vlcus I-compouuned in þis maner / Take a pound water, 16 R vynegre half a pound, of hony dispumed 3 .iiij., of leeuves of olyue-tre bounden togidere wiþ a þred / 3 j., of galingale<sup>2</sup> 3 j., boile alle þese to þe perfiztnesse of a sirup, & lete it colden, & do away þe

<sup>2</sup> galingale, ne. galangale, for sagitelle.

Add. MS. 12,056. þou hast y-wasschyde yt, to remeffyn pilke callose hardnesse with a 20 cauterye, opere wiþ a medicine cauterysyng þat ys brennyng, þe whiche cauterye oper brennyng schulde make þe deppe of þe Vlcus holwere þanne he was. Wherefore it is necessarie to a surgiane to knowe þe difference of þis scyence, þat he mowe conne hele boþe þe 24 Vlcus & þe festre with medicines different þat longyth to hem boþe. And 3if þat a festre be in þe flesch, oper ellys bytwene synwe & synwe, so þat þe Substaunce of þe synwe be noȝt corrupte ne þe bon, yt nys non nede to take non opere medicine but egremoyne, & 28 stampe hym wiþ salt, as þou woldest maken sause, & drawe out þe jus of pilke egremoyne, & do yt into þe hole of þe festre with a penne, & leye þe substaunce of þe same erbe þere-vpon, tyl he haue slaw<sup>3</sup> alle pilke festre & y-clansyde yt; & þat þou schalt knowen 32 by þe rednesse & sadnesse of flesch þat is withynne þe festre al aboute, & aftirwarde haue þis surype off honye, with þe whiche þou schalt wassche þe festre, þat ys now Vlcus componed, in þis manere: <sup>4</sup> R water ti .j., of vynegre ti. fs, of hony despumed 3 .iiij, 36 off leuys of olyue-tre, y-bounde togedre with a þrede, 3 .j., of þe sagytelle 3 .j., boylle al þis to þe perfytnesse of a sirupe, & let yt

[fol. 64 a]

<sup>3</sup> At the end of the line. One letter wanting.

<sup>4</sup> Confection of syrup mellyne, in margin.



leeues of þe olyue, & kepe al þe remenaunt of þe sirup with þe  
 leeues of sagittel & waische þe vlcus þat was festred tofore wiþ þis  
 licour twies on þe day þat þe licour may go to þe ground, & aftir-  
 4 ward drie it weel & fille it ful of drie leeues of sagittelle & leie a  
 sagittel-leef<sup>t</sup> aboue; & þis medicyn þou schalt contynuen til it be  
 hool / Euery festre þat is in fleisch is heelid wiþ þis medicyn  
 I-preued, but if þat substaunce of þe senewe & of þe boon be If parts of a  
 bone or sinew  
 are rotten,  
 8 apeirid in þe ground, & specialiche if þat þe festre be not old, & if  
 þat þe calosite be nouzt<sup>t</sup> to hard. In þese two causis þe medicyn  
 of egrimoyne <sup>1</sup>ne suffisip nouzt<sup>t</sup>, but it is nessessarie to haue [1 lf. 47, bk.]  
 a cauterie of fier eiper a medicyn caustik / & of þese medicyns þou use cauteriza-  
 tion, or a  
 caustic medi-  
 cine,  
 and remove  
 the morbid  
 bone.  
 12 schalt haue a ful techinge folowyng in þe book / & if þat þe boone  
 were corrupt in þe deppe of þe festre, do it awei aftir þe techinge  
 tauzt<sup>t</sup> in þe chapitle tofore / & herof take hede, if þat a festre  
 perse bi þe weyes of þe vryne so þat þe vryne go out bi pilke weie,  
 16 as we han seen ofte tymes, or ellis þat it go bi crokid placis & hid  
 placis of þe face<sup>2</sup> persinge into deppe, it is<sup>3</sup> an vnperfizt cure, but  
 þou maist<sup>4</sup> pale it, & do it away þe stynche with hony waischinge,  
 enplastre, & hony mundificatiuis, & with defensiuis aboute þe place

<sup>2</sup> Lat. per tortuosas aut occultas partes faciei. <sup>3</sup> it is, above line.<sup>4</sup> pale, Lat. palliare. Dufr., *Gloss.* : 1. tegere; 2. simulare.

20 coldyn & do aweye þe leffys of þe olyfe, & kepe alle þe remnaunt of þe surype with þe leffys of sagytelle, & wassche þe Vlcus þat was  
 festre tofore with þis licoure twyes a day, þat þe lycoure may go to  
 þe grounde, & afterwarde dreye it wel & fyl yt ful of drye leffys of  
 24 sagytelle, & leye a sagittelle leff<sup>t</sup> aboue, and þis medycine þou schalt  
 conteynen tyl þat it be hol. Every festre þat is in flesch ys helyde  
 with þis medycine y-prefed, but 3if þe substaunce of þe synwe & of  
 þe bon be apeyred in þe grounde, & specialyche 3if þe festre be  
 28 nouzt old & 3if þat þe callosite be nozt to hard. In þese tweye  
 cases þe medycyne of egremoyne ne suffiseþ nozt, but it ys neces-  
 sarye a kauterye of fyre oper a medycine caustyke; & of þese medy-  
 cins þou schalt han a ful techyng, folwyng in þe boke. And 3if  
 32 þat þe bon were corrupte in þe deppe of þe festre, do yt aweye after  
 þe techyng, þat y haue tauzte þe in þe chapiteH tofore. And  
 hereof take hede: 3if þat a festere perse be þe wey3es of þe vryne,  
 so þat þe Vryne go out by pilke weye, as we haue seyne ofte tymes,  
 36 oper ellys þat he go by crokyde placys and hudel<sup>5</sup> places of þe face,  
 persyng into þe depnesse of þe hed whose grounde þou maiste nozt  
 perseyue, hit ys bettyre nozt for to cure with a perfyte cure, but þou  
 maiste pale it & don away þe stynke, with hony & wasschynges of  
 40 emplastre in mundificatyfes & with defensifis aboute þe place, þat

<sup>5</sup> hudel, adj. See Mätzner, *Dict.*, hudels, sb. O.E. *hýdels*, hiding-place.



cauteriza-  
cioun of þe  
senew þat  
is hurt.

[<sup>2</sup> ff. 48]

þat his malice mowe<sup>1</sup> þen lasse greue. For a festre þat is in ioynturis as þe feet eiþer þe knee, eiþer þe hand, eiþir þe elbowe, is hard for to heele, & sumtyme impossible / & if þat he be in anoþer place, & he haue corrodid eiþer rotid sumwhat of þe senewe, þow þat it<sup>4</sup> be greuous for to cure it, þer is noon oþer wey, but a list<sup>2</sup> cauterizacioun of þe senewe þat is hurt / For cauterizacioun wiþ hoot iren eiþer wiþ gold, þat is bettere, it clensip & drieþ þe senewe þat is corrupt & rectifieþ þe complexioun of al þe membre & <sup>2</sup>a medecyn 8 caustik worchip þe contrarie / Brennyng medicyns, boþe þe symple & þe compound þou schalt haue to þe fulle<sup>3</sup> in<sup>4</sup> antidotarie of þis book, & þou schalt fynde þe maner of cauterisynge to þe fulle in þe þridde tretis folowyng. & whanne þou hast maad a perfizt mundi- 12 ficacioun of pilke colose fleisch, regendre fleisch & consowde with medicyns regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis þe whiche þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie //

¶ Cap<sup>m</sup>  
xiiij<sup>m</sup>  
canser  
vleirat

**T**he xiiij chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste 16 tretis is of a cankre /

Cankre I-woundid comeþ of openynge, eiþer of kuttinge, eiþer of brekyng of a cankre not I-woundid, whos techinge þou schalt

<sup>1</sup> MS. *moore*.

<sup>3</sup> See page 86, note 3.

<sup>4</sup> þe þridde tretis folowyng / & whanne þou hast maad a perfizt mundificacioun struck through in red. after to þe fulle in.

Add. MS. his malyce mowe þe lasse greff. A festre þat is in juncturis as 20  
12,056. þe fote oþer þe kne, oþer þe hand, oþere þe elbowe, is hard for to heele & sumtyme vnpossible. And 3if þat he be in an oþere place & he haue coroded oþer rotyd sumwhat of þe synwe, þow þat it be greffes for to cure it, þere nys none oþere weye bote a lyzt cauterys- 24  
[<sup>3</sup> fol. 64 v] acion of þe synwe, þat is y-hurt: ffor cauterysacioun wiþ hote yren, oþer wiþ gold þat is betyre clansyth & dryeþ<sup>5</sup> þe synwe þat ys corrupte, & rectefyeth þe complexioun of al þe membre, and a medycine caustyke worcheþ þe contrarye. Brennyng medicynes, 28  
boþe symple & componed, þou schalt han to þe fulle in þe antitodarye of þis boke, & þou schalt fynde þe manere of cauterysinge to þe fulle in þe þridde tretys folwyng; & whanne þou hast made a perfyte mundyficacioun of pilke callose flesch, regenerere flesch & con- 32  
soude with medicynes regeneratyfes & consolidatyfes, þe whyche þou schalte fynde in þe antitodarye.

¶ Cap. xiii off þe þridde techynge off þe ffirste tretys  
is Off a Canker. 36

¶ Cankyre y-woundyde comyth of opnyng, oþere of kuttyng, oþere of brekyng of a cancre nozt y-woundyde, whose techynge þou



haue in þe chapitle of þe apostymes in þe þridde techinge / & he comes of a wounde yuel heelid, to whom comes a malancolient mater rotid; or for þe mater þat comes to þe wounde is þere corrupted & chaungid þe vlcus into a cankre /

arises from a badly healed or purulent wound.

& þese ben þe tokenes of þe cankre / þe vlcus is foul & stynkyng, þe lippis ben grete, wan, or blak, hard, & wiþinne kirkely, & ouer al aboute arid and holowe / & þis is þe difference bitwene

Its signs are: the peculiar condition of the wound, [1 lf. 48, bk.]

a cankre & a foul vlcus & an hore of whom I haue made mentioun aboue, þat if þat þou wassche hem boþe wiþ lye, þe cankre schal be paler & fouler þan he was before, & þere schal falle out of him pecis gobetmele.<sup>2</sup> & þe vlcus is clensid wiþ pilke lye, & þe fleisch

Nota

the effect of a lye lotion,

is made fairer þan it was tofore, ne þe vlcus stynkid not bi þe same stinche as þe cankre doþ; for þe cankre haþ a propre sauour, þe which mai not be write wiþ lettre; but pilke sauour is best knowe of men whiche þat best han seiþe cankreis.<sup>3</sup>

and the smell of the cancer.

16 A general rule in þe cure of a cankre is, þat a cankre mai not be heelid, but if þat he be do away wiþ alle hise rotis / þe secunde rule is, þat he schal not be touchid wiþ hoot iren ne with hoot medycyn caustik, þat is to seiþe brennyng, but he be in place

A cancer must either be left untouched or entirely removed.

<sup>2</sup> gobetmele, piecemeal. *Polychron.*, iv. 103: membratim. See further, Mätzner, *Dict.* <sup>3</sup> MS. cankre is.

20 schalt habbyn in þe Chapitle of enpostemes in þe þridde techyng & he comyth of a wounde yuele y-helyde, to whom comyth a malancolient rotyde matere, oþer for þat þe matere comes to þe wounde is þere corrupyd, & chaungid þe Ulcus into a Cankere. And þese beþ

Add. MS. 12,056.

24 þe toknys of þe cankere: þe Ulcus ys foule & stynkyng, þe lippes beþ grete, wanne, oþere blake, harde, and wiþinne kirkely, & ouere alle aboute areryde & holwy, & þis is þe dyfference bytwene cancre & a foule Ulcus & an hore, of whom y haue made mentioun aboue,

28 þat ȝif þat þou wassche hem boþe<sup>4</sup> wiþ leyze, þe cancre schal ben pale & fouler þen he was tofore, & þere schal fallen out of hym pecys, gobetmele. And þe Ulcus ys y-clansede with pilke leyze, & þe fleisch ys made fayrere þen yt was tofore, ne þe Ulcus stynkeþ

32 noȝt by þe same stinche as þe cancre doþ; for þe cankre hath a propre saffoure, þe which may noȝt be wryten wiþ lettres, but pilke saffoure ys best knowyn to of men, whiche þat beste han seiþe cankrys. A<sup>5</sup> generall rule in þe cure of cankre ys, þat a cankyre

[5 fol. 65 a]

36 may noȝt ben helyde bot ȝif þat he be done away wiþ alle hys rotys. The secunde rule ys, þat he schal noȝt ben touchid with hot yren ne wiþ hot medycyne caustyk—þat is to sigge, brennyng

<sup>4</sup> MS. oþere.



**Nota** where he may al be doon away / for þe more þat þou touchist him  
 wip a violent þing eiper medicyn, þe more his malice is encreessid /  
**If possible, cut away and** Take þanne good heede if he be in a fleischi place, where þat he  
 may be don al wey, & þanne kutte him al away wip alle hise rotis / 4  
 [1 lf. 49] & þanne priste out al þe malancolient<sup>1</sup> blood þat is wipinne þe  
**burn the cancer, and apply a cleansing poultice.** veynes þat ben aboute þe cankre. & aftirward brenne al aboute in  
 þe place þere as þe cankre was with hoot iren / aftirward leie on þis  
 confeccioun maad of flour of wheete & hony & ius of smalache,<sup>2</sup> til 8  
 þat he be perfiztliche clensid. After regendre fleisch & cicatrice.  
**Nota** To þis rule / take hede as ofte as þou wilt wip sirurgie heelen a  
 cancre: first euacue þe malancolient mater, for þat is ypocras  
**the counsel off ypocras:** techinge; & if þat he be growen in sich a place þere as he may not 12  
**if the cancer cannot be removed, try no cure at all.** be doon al away, as in þe necke or in þe tetis, or in þe face, or in þe  
 arshole, or in þe mareis; & also for schortere conclusioun, & he be  
 entrid in ony place þere as ony senewis, arteries, veynes, ben—as  
**ypocras.** ypocras seiþ—it is bettere nouzt to cure þe cankre þan to cure. For 16  
 & he be curid, þat is to seiþe kutt or I-brent, þei perischen þe  
 sunnere; & if þei ben not curid, þei lyuen þe lengere tyme—libro  
 vj<sup>o</sup>. *afforismorum: Canceri absconditi multum tempus perfuciant*

<sup>2</sup> *smallage*, Halle Table, p. 12. "Smalache, Marche, or Marshe Persley."  
 See Prior, *Dict.*, p. 217.

**Add. MS.** —but he be in place, þere he may al be don away; ffor þe more 20  
 12,056. þat þou touchiste hym with a vyolent thyng eiper medicine, þe  
 more hys malys is encressyde. Take þenne gode hede 3if he be in  
 a fleschlye place, where þat he may be don al aweye, & þenne kutte  
 hym al aweye wip alle hys rotys, & pruste out þe malencolyent blod 24  
 þat ys withynne þe Veynes, þat beþ aboute þe cancre, & afterwarde  
 brenne alle aboute in þe place, þere as þe cankre was, wip hote  
 yren. Afterward leye on þis *confeccioun* y-mad of floure of whete  
 hony, jus of smallache, tyl þat he be perfytly y-clansyde. After 28  
 regenerere flesch & cycatrice. To þis rule take hede as ofte as þou  
 wilt wip surgerie helyn a cancre: furst evacue þe malencolyent  
 matere, ffor þat is ypocras techynge, & 3if he be growen in swyche  
 a place, þere as he may nozt be done alle aweye, as in þe nekke ore 32  
 in þe tetys, opere in þe face, ore in þe ers hole, oper in þe marys,  
 and also for the schortere conclusioun, & he be entrede in enye  
 place, þere as enye Veynes, synwes, & arteries buþ, as ypocras  
 seiþ, yt ys betyre nozt to cure þe cancre, þen to cure; ffor he be 36  
 curyde, þat is to sigge, y-kutte opere y-brent, þey perysschen  
 sonnere; & 3if þey be nozt curyde þey lyuen longe tyme—libro  
*sexto afforismorum Canceri absconditi multum tempus per ficiunt*



curati vero cicius pereunt / But<sup>t</sup> defende þe lyme þat<sup>t</sup> is hool aboute  
 with defensif<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> bole þat<sup>t</sup> I haue ofte tymes seid & waische þe Use a lotion  
 wounde of þe cankre wiþ gotis whey, & drie it softly, <sup>1</sup>& anoynte R  
 4 þe wounde wiþinne & wiþoute with þis oynement<sup>t</sup> of rasis & <sup>2</sup>tutie<sup>3</sup> / [<sup>1</sup> lf. 49, bk.]  
 take ceruse,<sup>4</sup> tutie I-waische & medle hem wiþ oile of<sup>t</sup> rosis & wiþ and  
 ius of<sup>t</sup> purcelane<sup>5</sup> or of<sup>t</sup> sum opere cold eerbe, putte ynne sum of<sup>t</sup> þe vnguentum  
 toon, & now sum of<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> oper, til þe oynement<sup>t</sup> be weel I-maad / tute  
 8 þis oynement<sup>t</sup> is myche worþ for to defende þat<sup>t</sup> þe malice of<sup>t</sup> þe  
 cancre schal not<sup>t</sup> wexen, & also þat<sup>t</sup> þe pacient<sup>t</sup> vse a good gouern-  
 aile: as drinke good wiyn & cleer & lithe, & he muste leeu reed the diet for  
 wiyn & troublid & picke wiyn, & he may ete good fleisch, as þe canker:  
 12 motoun<sup>6</sup> of<sup>t</sup> a weþer, kide fleisch sowkyng, capouns, hennes, the patient  
 chikenes, partrichis,<sup>7</sup> fesauntis, & smale briddis, & he muste leeu: shall only  
 beeuës fleisch<sup>8</sup> & gotis fleisch, hertis fleisch & haris fleisch, goos, take white  
 dokis, & alle greete briddis þat<sup>t</sup> lyuen in watri placis, & al salt<sup>t</sup> wine and  
 16 þing<sup>t</sup> & acute þing<sup>t</sup>: as garleek, oynonys & vynegre *et cetera* [þat]<sup>\*</sup> digestible  
food.

<sup>2</sup> &, erroneously for of.

<sup>3</sup> tutie, Matth. Sylvat. "Tuchia . . Lat. Cadimia & pomfolix." Arab. tūtīā. Fr. tutie. See Wr. Wü., p. 559, 13. "Tucia, i. tutie" (xiii<sup>th</sup> cent.). It is: Oxidum Zinci impurum.

<sup>4</sup> ceruse, white lead. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. Ceruse.

<sup>5</sup> purcelane, Lat. portulaca. Halle Table, p. 90. "Another herbe there is also called Portulaca marina, only of the likenes that the leaves therof haue with porcelaine." See "Purslane," Prior, *Popular Names*, p. 193.

<sup>6</sup> moton, carnes ovine, Wr. Wü., 741, 39, xv<sup>th</sup> cent.

<sup>7</sup> partrichis, *Cathol. Ang.*, p. 270, a Partryke, perdrix. See further Skeat, *Et. Dict.* <sup>8</sup> bef, added above line, in different hand.

curati vero cicius pereunt. ¶ But diffende þe lyme þat is hol Add. MS.  
 aboute with defensiff<sup>t</sup> of bol, þat y haue ofte tymes seyde, & wassche 12,056.  
 þe wounde of þe cancre with gotys whey, & drye yt softlyche &  
 20 anoynt þe wounde withinne & without, with þis oynement of rasys  
 of tutye, R ceruse, tuthye, y-wasschyn and medle hem wiþ oyle of  
 roses & wiþ jus of poslane, <sup>9</sup>opere of sum opere colde erbe, now [<sup>9</sup> fol. 65 b]  
 puttyng in sum of þe on & now sum of þe opere, tyl þe oynement  
 24 be ful mad. þis oynement ys myche worth forto diffende; þat þe  
 malys of þe cancre þat is y-woundyde schal noȝt waxen, and also  
 þat þe pacient vse a gode gouernaylle: as drynkinge gode wyn &  
 clere & lyȝt, & he mote leuen red wyn and troblyde & þykke wyn;  
 28 & he may eten gode flesch, as motoun of a weþire, kyde fflsch  
 sokkyng, Capouns, hennys, Chykenys, partryches, flesauntis, &  
 smale briddes, & he moste leuyn beffys flesch, gotys fflsch, hertys  
 flesch, harys fflsch, goeses, dokys, & alle grete briddys. þat lyuen  
 32 in watrye places, & alle salt þynge & acute þynge: as garlyke,  
 Oynouns, vynegre, &c., þat<sup>\*</sup> þe syke men mowe lyuen þe lengere vpon



[<sup>1</sup> lf. 50]

Rogeryn  
and Roland  
pretended to  
have healed  
old cancers.

In doubtful  
cases rub  
with a powder;

In the case of  
cancer the  
patient will  
grow worse.

þe sike man may lyue þe lengere vpon erþe / Neþeles ift vlcus be ryȝt  
foul & haue nouȝt so greet malice as a cankre, of þe which vlcus I  
haue told tofore may be curid wiþ poudre of affadillis, and aftirward  
weel be clensid; & for þat þis vlcus <sup>1</sup>þat was so foul may be heelid / 4  
Rogeryn and Rowlond & manye oþere settide in her bokis þe cure  
of a cankre, þouȝ þat he be in a senewey place, & þei seien þat þei  
han heelid him / But vndirstonde weel for certeyn, þat an olde  
cankre mai not be heelid bi noon oþer wey, but bi þe same wey þat 8  
I haue seid in þe bigynnyng of þis chapitle / & if þat þou dredist  
wheþer þat it be a symple vlcus or a cankre & a foul, for þe signes  
& þe tokenes tofore seid beþ doutis, bigynne to mortifie it wiþ sum  
maner of poudre: as wiþ poudre of affadillis, & bi my witt poudre 12  
of erbe robert<sup>2</sup> / & loke aftirward þe prosis of þi worchinge seiþ  
þis boke<sup>3</sup> / For if þat he be a uerry cankre, þou schalt se þe more  
þou woldist clense him, þe more his malice schal wexen / & if he  
be not a cankre, he schal be clensid ryȝt as an vlcus / Whanne þat 16  
þou seest þe wexyng of a cankre & his malice agmenten, ceesse  
from þe verry cure & turne aȝen to þe forseid cure of þe oynement  
of tutie, þe which þat palþ þe cankre. For & þou bisie þee to

<sup>2</sup> *erbe robert*, insertion of the scribe. *Geranium Robertianum*. See *Prior*, p. 113. *Cronenburg. De Compositione Medicamentorum*, a. 1555, fol. 106, A. *Ruprechtskraut*: *Roberti herba* (*Geranii species*).

<sup>3</sup> *seiþ þis boke*, erroneously inserted.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[\* fol. 66 a]

erthe. Napeles ȝif vlcus be ryȝt foul & hath nouȝt so gret malys as 20  
a cancre, off þe whyche Vlcus y haue tolde tofore, may ben y-curyde  
wiþ poudre of affedylle, and afterwarde wel be clansyde, & for þat  
þis Vlcus þat was so foul may be helyde. Rogeryne & Rouland  
& manye oþere settyde in here bokys þe cure of þe cancre, þowȝ 24  
þat he be in a synwy place, & þey siggen þat þey haue helyde hym.  
But vndirstande wel for certeyne, þat an olde cancre may noȝt ben  
helyde by none oþere wey, bote by þe same wey, whiche þat y haue  
seyde in þe bygynnyng of þys chapyteH. & ȝif þat þou dredyst, 28  
wheþere þat yt be a cancre oþere a symple Vlcus & a foul, for þe  
signes & þe toknys tofore seyde beþ doutes, begynne to mortefye  
yt wiþ sum maner poudre as wiþ poudre of affodylles, & loke after-  
warde þe processe of þy worchyng; ffor ȝif þat he be a verrey 32  
cancre þou schalt se, þe more þou woldyste clansen hym þe more  
hys malys schal waxen, and ȝif he be noȝt a cancre, he schal be  
clansyde ryȝt as an Vlcus. Whanne þat þou seste þe waxyng<sup>4</sup> of  
þe cancre & hys malys augmenten, sese fro þe verreye cure & turne 36  
ageyne to þe forseide cure of þe oynement of tuetye, whiche þat  
palyth þe cancre. ffor & þou bysy þe to cure þe cancre, & þou pro-



cure þe cankre, & þou procede in þi cure, þou schortist þe pacientis lijf / & if þou palist, þou lenkþist his lijf /

**T**he .xiiij chapitle of þe bridde techinge of þe firste tretis is for to remeue causis þat letten þe cure of olde woundis / [lf. 50, bk.]  
¶ Cap<sup>m</sup>  
xiiij<sup>m</sup>

I tolde þee aboue in þe general chapitle of olde woundis cause whiche þat letten olde woundis to be heeled / & also I tolde þe techinge plenerliche þat ben nessessarie to remeue ech sengle cause þat is nessessarie, how þat alle maner causis þat letten mai be don away bi a good surgien & a wijs ; so þat þou ioynest þis chapitle wiþ þe opere chapitle tofore seid, þou schalt han a pleyner techinge.

12 If þat þe bodi be ful of olde humouris eiper in þe idropisie, loke þat he may be heeled of þilke disposicioun, & þanne heele him if þat þou canst / &<sup>1</sup> if þat he be not ful of olde humouris whiche þat neden no curyng of olde disposicioun. Ne traueile not in deueyn<sup>2</sup>

16 þe sike man neipir wiþ medicyns corosiuis, ne wiþ kuttinge, ne with puttyng into þe woundis greete tentis ; but do aboue þe vleus lyzt

If a patient is hydroptic or cachectic, his condition must first be improved,

<sup>1</sup> The translator, perhaps intentionally, altered his original : si non (scis), pete physicum qui curationem illius dispositionis faciat.

<sup>2</sup> in deueyn = in veyn.

cede in thy cure, þou schortest þe pacientes lyff. And 3if þou palest þou lengthiste hys lyff. Add. MS.  
12,056.

20 ¶ Cap. xiiij of þe bridde techyng of þe furste tretys, is forto remefe causes þat latten þe cure of olde woundys.

¶ I tolde þe aboue in þe general Chapytile of olde Woundes, causes whiche þat latteþ olde woundys to by helyde. And also y telde þe techynges plenerlyche þat beþ necessarye to remywe eche sengle cause, þat is necessarye to be done away. And now y schal in þis specyal chapytile teche, how þat alle manere cause þat lettyth may be done away by a gode surgyne & a wyse, so þat 3if þou joynest þis chapitele with þe opere chapyteH to fore seyde, þou schalt han a plener techyng. 3if þat þe body be ful of elde humores, opere in þe dropsye ; loke 3if þat he may be helyde of þilke disposicioun, & þenne hele hym 3if þat þou canst, and 3if þat he be nozt ful of elde humorys ; whiche þat nedyth to curyng of olde disposicioun. Ne traueyle nozt in deueyne þe syke man, nowþere with medycines corosifes, ne with kuttinges, ne with puttynges into þe wounde grete tentys ; but do aboffe þe Vleus lyzte mudyficatyfes & swote



and in the  
mean time  
only mild  
mundificatifs  
applied.

[<sup>1</sup> If. 51<sup>a</sup>]

The same  
must be done  
if the liver or  
the spleen is  
bad.

If the patient  
has too much  
blood,

use phlebot-  
omy.

mundificatiuis & swete smellynge, þat kepib þe membre lyztliche  
clene þat it stynke not / & whanne þat he is keuerid from an yuel  
disposicioun, thanne turne aȝen to þe princípal cure / & þis same  
þing<sup>1</sup> I saye of yuel disposicioun of þe lyuere of what maner cause 4  
þat he be enfeblid; þe same I saye of þe splene / But if þese  
tweyne ben in her kyndely disposicioun, olde woundis moun not be  
heelid. If<sup>2</sup> þat greet multitude of blood lettib, þat may be knowen  
bi ful replecioun of þe veines of al þe bodi, bi reednesse & exten- 8  
cioun of þe face, bi swetnes of þe mouþ, bi flating<sup>3</sup> / Whanne þat a  
man is fastynge, bi heuynes of þe browis, & bi ȝong<sup>4</sup> age, & his  
complexioun is hoot & moist, & þat he haþ vsid in his dietynge  
wyn and fleisch; & make him þanne be lete blood of þe veyne þe 12  
which þat bryngib norischinge to þe lyme, & aftirward of þe veyne  
þat mai best voiden þe membre þat is hurt / & if þat þe blood  
trespace oonly in qualite, amende him as if þat he be to hoot, voide  
him a litil & diete him with colde metis & stiptik. & aftirward 16  
procede forþ in alle maner opir causis as it is told in þe general  
chapitle, takynge hede þat þer ben summe maner medicyns whiche  
þat ben drynge & clensynge, & han a priuy<sup>4</sup> propirte to consowde

<sup>2</sup> if above line.

<sup>3</sup> flating, Add. MS. *wlattyng*. See Wright Wü. O.E. *wlatung*.

<sup>4</sup> *privy*. See *Cathol. Angl.*, *pryway*, *occultus*.

<sup>a</sup> Heading to this page: *Causes þat lettes þe cure off old woundes.*

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[<sup>5</sup> fol. 66 b]

smellynge þat kepyth the membre lyztliche clene, þat he stynke 20  
noȝt. And whanne þat he is curyde from an yuele disposicioun,  
turne aȝeyne to þe princypal cure; & þis same þynge y sugge of  
yuele disposicioun of þe lyfere, of what manere cause þat þe  
enfeblyde; þe same y sigge of the spleen, ffor but ȝif þese tweyne 24  
ben in here kendlye dysposicioun, olde woundes mowe noȝt ben  
helyde. ȝif þat grete multitude off blode lette þe, þat may be  
knowe by ful replecioun of þe veynes of alle þe body, by rednesse  
& extension of þe face, be swetnesse of þe mouth, be wlattyng, 28  
whenne þat a man ys fastynge, by <sup>5</sup>heuynesse of þe browys, & by  
ȝonge age, & þat hys complexoun ys hot & moyst, and þat he hath  
y-vsyde in hys dyotyng wyn & flesch, and þenne make hym be  
lete blode on þe veyne, whiche þat bryngeth norysschyng to þe 32  
lyme, & afterwarde of the Veyne þat may beste voyden þe membre  
þat ys y-hurt. And ȝif þat þe blode trepasse onlye in qualyte,  
amende hym as ȝif þat he be to hot, voyde hym a lytel & dyote  
hym wiþ colde metys & styptyke. And afterwarde procede forth in 36  
alle opere manere cases as it ys tolde in þe generall chapytell, takynge  
hede þat þere ben sum manere medicynes, whiche þat bep dryȝinge  
& clansynge, & haue a prefe proprete to consowde olde woundys,



olde woundis whiche þat ben difficult to be consowdid; of þe  
 whiche medicyns summe ben symple & summe <sup>1</sup>ben compouned / [1 ff. 51, bk.]  
 Symple ben: limature of iren, flour of bras brent, vitriol leed Simple con-  
 4 brent, & alle sharpe corosiuis if þat þei ben brent; for þat þei solidatifs.  
 han vertu more to consowden, & also her corrisoun is lessid / þis is  
 a medicyn compouned: take floris<sup>2</sup> eris, limature of bras ana. 3 j. a compound  
 litarge of gold, litarge of siluir, 3 .viij. gumme of cipresse, 3 .iiij. consoledatiff  
 8 sal gemme,<sup>3</sup> 3 .ij. aristologia I-brent smal to poudre of franken-  
 cense, ana. 3 .v. wex & oile of mirtill þat suffisip // //

The .xv. chapitle of þe bridde techinge of þe firste ¶ Capm.  
 tretis is of a crampe þat cometh to a wounde / xvm.

12 Nessessarie þing is to a surgian to knowe þe causis of a crampe,  
 þe which þat cometh to a wounde þat schulde be heelid, & also þat  
 he knowe þe disposicioun of him þat hath þe crampe, & also what  
 þing þat þe crampe is, þat he mowe resonabliche hele þe crampe /  
 16 þe crampe is a sjuknes cordous eiper neruous, in þe which sjuknes Cramp is a  
 cordis & þe senewis weren drawen to her bigynnyng; of þe whiche contraction  
 drawyng þat ben .ij. causis coniuinct: þe toon is repleccioun of þe of the tendons  
 or nerves  
 arising from

<sup>2</sup> Lat. flor. æris.

<sup>3</sup> sal gemme. A Salt so named, from its Transparent and Crystalline  
 Brightness.—Kersey.

whiche þat beþ deffykkel to be consoudyde, of þe whyche medicines Add. MS.  
 20 some beþ symple & some beþ componed. Symple beþ: lymature 12,056.  
 of bras, lymature of Iren, floure of bras brent; vytreol rede y-brent,  
 and alle sharpe corosifes, 3if þat þey ben y-brent. ffor þat þey han  
 þe more vertue to consouden, and al so here corosion ys y-lassyde.  
 24 þis ys a medycine componyde: R. floris eris, lymature of bras ana  
 .3. j., litarge of gold, litarge of syluere ana. 3. viij., gumme of cypresse  
 .3. iiij, sal gemme .3. ij, Aristologie I-brende, smal poudre of ffrank  
 Ensence ana. 3. v., wax & oyle of myrtyne þat suffyseþ.

28 ¶ Cap. XV. off the bridde techyng of þe ffirste tretys  
 is off a Crampe, that comyth to a Wounde.

Necessarye thyng ys a surgyne, to knowe þe causys of þe  
 crampe whiche þat comyth to a wounde þat scholde ben y-helyde,  
 32 and also þat he knowe þe dysposicioun of hym þat hath þe crampe.  
 And also what þyng þe crampe ys, þat he mowe resonablyche hele  
 þe crampe. The crampe ys a seknesse cordouse, opere ellys nerveose,  
 in the whiche syknesse þe cordes & þe synwes were drawyne to  
 36 here bygynnyng; of þe whiche drawyng þere beþ tweye causes



repletion or  
inanition.

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 52]

Repletion oc-  
curs after

- .1.  
great pain,
- .2.  
cold,
- .3.  
putrefaction.

Cramp must  
be prevented  
in three  
ways :

- .1.
- .2.
- .3.

[<sup>4</sup> lf. 52, bk.]

as it is diffi-  
cult to heal.

senewe, þe opere of þe corde, þe oper is inanisioun.<sup>1</sup> He þat is of in-anisioun, <sup>2</sup>ofte tymes he haþ a cause goynge tofore as to myche euacuacioun of blood eþer of sum oper þing, as to longe affliccioun for long akþe, or ellis for þe appetite of þe sike man haþ ben longe <sup>4</sup>tyme enfeblid ; & þis cometh litil & litil, & þe crampe þat cometh of boþe þese causis may not be heelid. & he þat cometh of replecioun haþ oon of þe .iiij. causis goynge tofore / þe firste cause is to greet akþe / þe .ij. cause is cold / & þe .iiij. cause is putrifaccioun eþer <sup>8</sup>rotynge / & þow3 þat oon sngle cause sumtyme suffice to make a crampe, ofte tymes alle þese causis happen to come togidres / And þis crampe may be heelid or þat he be confermed, & aftir þat he is confermed seelden or neuere / A surgian muste þanne be bisy in al <sup>12</sup>þat he my3te, þat a crampe ne wexe not in þe wounde þat schulde be heelid, wiþ obuacioun<sup>3</sup> defendinge þe lyme, þat noon of þe .iiij. causis tofore seid ne come nou3t into þe wounde : þe oon is in defendynge þe lyme from putrifaccioun / þe toþere is for kepyng þe <sup>16</sup>lyme fro rotynge / þe þridde is to gouerne him from a greet akyng / for it is more sikir to defende þat a crampe <sup>4</sup>ne come not, þanne aftir þat he is come with medicyns þat is douteful or dredeful to

<sup>1</sup> *inanisioun*, Lat. *inanitio*. Vigo. Interpretation. "*Inanition*, emptyng."

<sup>3</sup> *obuacioun*, Lat. *cum obuiatione defensiuorum*.

Add. MS. 12,056. *conjuncte*: þe on ys repletion of þe synwe, opere of þe corde, þe opere <sup>20</sup>is Inanyson. He þat ys in<sup>5</sup> a vision ofte tymes haþ a cause goynge to fore, <sup>6</sup>as to myche euacuacioun of blod, opere of sum othire thyng; as to longe affliction for longe akþe, opere ellys, for þe Appetite of the syke man hath be longe tyme enfeblyde ; & þis <sup>24</sup>comyth lytel & lytel, and þe crampe þat comyth of boþe þese causys may no3t ben helyde. And he þat comyth of repletion hath on of þre causys goynge tofore : þe firste cause ys to grete akþe, þe secunde cause ys colde, þe þridde ys putrefaccioun oper rotyng ; <sup>28</sup>and þow3 þat one sngle cause sumtyme suffiseth to maken a crampe, ofte tymes alle þese causes happe to come togedres. And þis crampe may ben y-helyde ere þat he be comfermyde, & after þat he ys con-fermyde selden opere neffere. A surgyne moste þenne be busye ; <sup>32</sup>in alle þat he my3te, þat a crampe ne wexe no3t in þe wounde þat scholde be helyde, wiþ obuacion dyffendynge þat none of þe þre causes tofore seyde ne come no3te to þe wounde ; þe one ys in defendynge þe lyme from putrefaccioun, þe opere is in kepyng þe lyme <sup>36</sup>from rotenesse, þe þridde is to gouerne hym from gret akyng ; ffor it is more sykere to dyffende, þat a crampe ne come no3t, þenne aftire þat he ys come with medycine þat is doutes opere dredful to

<sup>5</sup> Scribal mistake.



do away / For if a feure come to an heed or to a senewe þat  
is woundid, & if þe crampe folowe, euermore it is deedliche.

Take hede þanne to aswage þe akþe wiþ anoyntyng of oile of  
4 rosis, in doynge as I haue seid afore in þe chapitle of senewis þat  
ben woundid; for ofte tymes þe crampe comeþ fro woundis þat  
ben maad in þe heed or ellis in þe senewe / & if þat akþe were so  
greet, þat makip þe crampe for þe prickynge of a senewe or ellis of  
8 a corde / & if þat þou myztist nouzt defende þe crampe neiþir wiþ  
blood letynge, neiþer wiþ ventusyng, ne wiþ clisterie, ne wiþ sup-  
positorie, ne wiþ defensif in anoyntyng þe necke, ne þe grynde,  
ne þe arm hoolis, þanne it is nessessarie þat þou kutte al atwo þilke  
12 senewe or þilke corde þat is prickid, þou þat þe felynge or þe  
meuyng of þe lyme to whom þilke senewe or þilke corde serueþ in  
parti or in al be lost / For it is bettere þat a man lese þe felynge &  
þe meuyng of a lyme, þan for to deie. But it is bettere, if þat  
16 þou cowdist, to kepe a man þer-fro wiþ opere<sup>1</sup> medicyns þan þat þe  
senewe or þe corde be kutt al atwo. & if<sup>2</sup> þat þou were not at  
þe bigynnyng, & þou fyndist a man hauynge þe crampe for a  
wounde, do þou as I dide at melain. þer was a scoler of myn þat  
20 was a surgian þat was clepid Olyuer, which þat curide a scheþere

Treatment of  
cramp.  
Allay the suf-  
fering with  
an ointment,

if necessary,  
cut the in-  
jured nerve  
or tendon.

[<sup>1</sup> If. 53]

Nota.

<sup>2</sup> if, above line.

don aweye, Ffor 3if þat a ffeuyre come to an hed opere to a synwe  
þat ys y-woundyde, & þe crampe folwe euyre more, yt ys dedlyche.  
Take hede þenne to aswage þe akþe wiþ anoyngtyng of oyle of  
24 rosys, and in doynge as y haue seyde tofore in þe chapitle of synwes  
þat beþ y-woundyde; ffor ofte tymes þe crampe comyþ for woundys,  
þat beþ made in þe hed opere ellis<sup>3</sup> in þe synwe: And 3if þat akþe  
were so grete, þat makyþ a crampe for þe prikyng off a synwe oper  
28 ellys of a corde, and 3if þou myztest nozt deffende þe crampe, nowhere  
wiþ blode letynge, ne wiþ ventosynge, ne wiþ clysterye, ne wiþ sup-  
positorie, ne wiþ defensif in anoyntyng þe nekke, ne þe grynde, ne þe  
arme holys, þenne yt is necessarie þat þou kytte alle atwo þilke synwe  
32 opere corde þat is y-prikyde, þow þat þe ffelynge opere þe meffynge  
of þe lyme, to whom þilke synwe opere corde servyde, in party oper  
in al be loste. Ffor yt is bettyre<sup>4</sup> þat a man lese þe felynge & þe  
meffynge of a lyme þenne þaw þat he deyþe. But yt is bettyre 3if  
36 þat þou coupest kepen a man wiþ opere manere medycines, þenne  
þat þe synwe opere corde be y-kutte al atwo. And 3if þat þou were  
nozt at þe bygynnyng, and þou fyndest a man hauynge a crampe  
for a wounde, do þou as y dyde at Melan. þere was a Scolere of  
40 myne þat was a Surgyne þat was y-clepyde Olyfere, whyche þat

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 67 b]

<sup>3</sup> ellis, above line.



Case of a shepherd who had hurt his head.

The wound was closed too soon, and cramp ensued.

Lanfranc found the patient dying.

[+ ff. 53, bk.]

He reopened the wound,

anointed

of a wounde þat he hadde in þe heed; & bi þilke wounde þe pannicle  
oupir þe skyn þat keueriþ þe brayn panne þat is vnder þe fleisch  
was hurt, & neuer-þe-lattere þe brayn panne was not hurt. &  
þilke leche, or þanne he hadde *perfiztlich* purified þilke pannicle, 4  
sowdide þe wounde wipoutforþ<sup>1</sup>; & whanne þilke wounde was  
sowdid, þe pannicle þat was not weel heeled hadde a dedein<sup>2</sup> &  
was cause of gendrynge of a crampe in þilke wounde. & at þe  
laste I was clepid to þe sike man, & I foond him hauynge þe 8  
crampe, & wip þe crampe he hadde manye smale enpostymes aboute  
his face—& þat is an yuele tokene in þe woundis of þe heed—&  
þanne I demede him for deed / Neþeles at þe instaunce of hise  
freendis I wolde asaie þe worchinge of kynde vpon resoun; I made 12  
his heed to be schauē,<sup>3</sup> & I kutte aȝen þe wounde þat was <sup>4</sup>con-  
sowdid wip a rasour to þe deppe of þe same wounde, & aftirward I  
fulfillide þe wounde with hoot oile of rosis, & I anoyntide al þe  
heed with þe same oile of rosis & a litil vynegre medlid togidere, & 16  
I anoyntide þe nolle & þe necke oonly wip oile of rosis, & I dide  
on þe wounde þe ȝelke of an ey wip oile of rosis, and I boond al

<sup>1</sup> *wipoutforþ*, extrinsecus, from without.

<sup>2</sup> *dedein*, Lat. *panniculus indignatus* causa fuit spasmi. The translator misunderstood *indignatus*, and gives us an "indignant pannicle." *indignatus*, Med. Lat. damaged, hurt. See Tommas. s. v. indegnare 3.—Compare þe *ludygh lorde*—*hade dedayn of þat dede*.—Allit. Poems, B. 74.

<sup>3</sup> *I made his hed to be schauē*, *abradi caput feci*.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

curyde a schepere of a wounde þat he hadde in the hed; & by þilke  
wounde þe pannycle opere þe skyn þat keueryth þe breyne panne, 20  
þat is vndire þe flesch, was y-hurt, & nere þe latere þe breyn panne  
was noȝt y-hurt. & þilke leche, ere þanne he hadde *perfytyliche*  
y-purifiede þylke pannycle, soudyde þe wounde withouten forth; &  
whanne þat þilke wounde was y-sowdyde, þe pannycle þat was noȝt 24  
wel helyde hadde a dedeyne, & was cause of engendrynge of a  
crampe in þilke wounde. And at þe laste y was clepyde to þilke  
syke man, & y fonde hym habbynge þe crampe, & with þe crampe  
he hadde manye smale enpostemes aboute hys face, & þat ys an 28  
yuele tokne in þe woundys of þe hed, and þenne y demyde hym for  
ded. Naþeles at þe instaunce of hys frendys y þat wolde assaye þe  
worchyng of kynde vpon resoun, I made hys hed ben y-schauē, and  
y kutte aȝeyne þe wounde, þat was consowdid, with a rasoure to þe 32  
deppe of þe same wounde, & afterewarde y fulfylde þilke wounde  
with hote oyle of rosys, & y anoyntede alle þe hed with þe same  
oyle of roses & a lyteȝ vynegre y-medlyde togedre, & y anoyntede þe  
nolle & þe nekke onlye wip oyle of rosys, and y dyde on þe wounde 36  
þe ȝolke of an eye with oyle of rosys, and y bonde alle þe hed wip a



- þe heed wip a boond leiynge þer vndir herdis<sup>1</sup> or tow3 smal I tosid, and band-  
 and I openede his moup & putte into his moup þe broþ maad of a head,  
 chicken, wip comyn & also wip cleer wyn medlid wip myche water; on gave  
 4 þe morowe I turnede azen & I foond þe sike of bettere disposicioun, strengthen-  
 & I openede bettere his moup, & he spak bettere; neþeles I foond ing nourish-  
 þe wounde drie, & þanne I dide ofte tymes þe same medicyn & þe ment,  
 same oynture. In þe þridde dai þe skyn of þe heed was maad  
 8 moist, þe which was bifore as drie as þe skyn hadde be rostid at þe  
 fier, & in so miche<sup>2</sup> þe skyn was maad þinne, þat þer was no þing  
 bitwene þe skyn & þe brayn þanne. & at þe laste þe wounde quyt-  
 turide wip contynuaunce of þe same cure tofore seid, & in þis<sup>3</sup> maner [3 lf. 54]  
 12 þe 3onge man was heelid boþe of þe crampe & also of þe wounde / and so cured  
 But þilke crampe was wipoute feure; for I may not þenke þat I the patient.  
 haue seen a feure in þe woundes of þe heed, or ellis of þe senewis If fever occurs  
 prickid a crampe, þat nou3t azenstondynge remedie eiper medicyns death ensues.  
 16 þe pacient þat hadde þe crampe diede / My beste counseil is to lete Bleed the  
 him blood in þe bigynnyng þat haþ þe crampe, namely, & he be patient,  
 strong & replete, & if þat he haue not bled ynou3 at his woundis;  
 & anoynte his nolle & his necke wip hote oynementis as wip oile use oint-  
 ments,

<sup>1</sup> *herdis*. See Wright Wü. 614. 2. "Stupa, herdes." <sup>2</sup> *þat*, inserted.

- 20 bonde leggyng þere undyre hurdys oþere tow3 smal tosyde, and Add. MS.  
 y opnyde hys mouth & put into hys mouth þe broth of a chyken 12,056.  
 y-made with comyn, and also clere wyn y-medlyde with myche  
 watyre. On þe morwe y turnyde azeine & y fonde þe syke of  
 24 bettyre dysposicioun, & he opnyde bettyre hys mouth, & he spak  
 bettyre; & napeles<sup>4</sup> y fonde þe wounde drye, & þenne y dede efte [4 fol. 68 a]  
 sonys þe same medycine & þe same vncture. In þe þridde day þe  
 skyn of þe hed was y-mad moyst, whyche þat was to forne as drye  
 28 as a skyn hadde be rostyde to þe fyre, and in so myche þe skyn was  
 y-made þunne, þat þere was noþynge betwene þe skyn & þe breyne  
 þanne. & at þe laste þe wounde quytteride wip contynewaunce of þe  
 same cure tofore seyde, & in þis manere þe 3onge man was helyde  
 32 boþe of þe crampe & eke of þe wounde. But þilke crampe was with-  
 outen fleuyre; ffor y ne may no3t þynke þat y haue seyn<sup>5</sup> a fleuyre  
 in þe woundes of synwes, oþere ellys of þe hed precede a crampe, þat  
 no3t azeine stondynge remedye / oþere medycyns þe pacient þat  
 36 hadde þe crampe ne deyede. My beste conseyle is to letyn hym blod  
 in the bygynnyng þat haþ þe crampe, namly, & he be stronge &  
 replete, and 3if þat he haue nou3t bled ynou3 at hys wounde; and  
 anoynte hys nolle & hys nekke wip hote oynementys, as with oyle of

<sup>5</sup> *a wounde* struck through after *seyn*.



Nota.

small cau-  
teries,

bandages.

ypocras.

[3 lf. 54, bk.]

says that  
fever takes  
away the  
cramp or  
tetanus;he is wrong,  
if the cramp  
comes from a  
wound.Signs (symp-  
toms) of  
cramp.  
General signs.

of<sup>t</sup> nardine, euforbine, oile of<sup>t</sup> rue,<sup>1</sup> lilijs *et cetera* / & also to make  
smale cauteries punctale, þat<sup>t</sup> is to seie as smal as þe eende of<sup>t</sup> a  
pricke, bitwene ech whirlebon of<sup>t</sup> þe necke, so neuere-þe-lattere þat<sup>t</sup>  
þe cauterie go not<sup>t</sup> ouer depe / Aftirward bynde long<sup>t</sup> wolle to his 4  
heed bihynde & to his necke & to hise schuldris, & do þeron hoot<sup>t</sup>  
oile, & leie him in a soft<sup>t</sup> bed & lete him be in reste & in pees /  
But þer ben summe þat<sup>t</sup> setten in her bookis medicyns þat<sup>t</sup> pro-  
uoken þe feueris; for þat<sup>t</sup> ypocras techiþ in .iiij<sup>to</sup> afforismoris: a 8  
**spasmo<sup>2</sup> vel te<sup>3</sup>tano habito febre<sup>4</sup> superueniente soluit<sup>t</sup> egritudi-**  
**nem** / þat<sup>t</sup> is to seie: if<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> a man haue a crampe or ellis a tetane  
þat<sup>t</sup> is a sijknese þat<sup>t</sup> halt<sup>t</sup> þe membre lich streit<sup>t</sup> on boþe sidis as a  
crampe halt<sup>t</sup> þe oon side of<sup>t</sup> þe membre & þe feuere come on þilke 12  
crampe eiþir þilke tetane, he distrieþ þe crampe eiþir þe sijknese; &  
also þei anoynte wiþ to hoot<sup>t</sup> an oynement<sup>t</sup> to prouoke þe feueres, þe  
which þing<sup>t</sup> I ne apreue not in þe crampe of<sup>t</sup> a wounde þouþ<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup>  
þilke oynement<sup>t</sup> myȝte be profitable in a crampe wiþoute wounde, & 16  
where þat<sup>t</sup> humouris abounde, namely, if<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> be fleume.

Summe ben general tokenes & summe ben special of<sup>t</sup> schewynge  
of<sup>t</sup> þe crampe / General tokenes ben þese: to greet<sup>t</sup> akþe, crokidnes<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *rue, ruta.* Turner, *Herbal*, ii. 122 b. Ruta is named in Greke Pega-  
mon, in English Rue or herbe grace, in French rue de jardin, in Dutch  
Weinraut.

<sup>2</sup> Cramp and Tetanus. See Notes.

<sup>4</sup> *febre superueniente*, error for *febris superueniens*.

<sup>5</sup> *crokidness*, Lat. *obliquitas*.

Add. MS. 12,056. nardyne, enforbine, Oyle rewe, lylyes &c., and also to make smale 20  
cauteries punctales, þat is to sigge as smale as þe ende of a prycke,

bytweene euery whirlebone of þe nekke, so neuere þe latere þat þe  
cauterie go nouȝt ouere depe. Afterwarde bynde longe wolle to  
hys hed be hynde, & to his nekke, & to his schuldres, & do þere 24  
on hote oyle, & leye hym in a softe bed, & lete hym ben in reste &  
in pees. But þere be summe þat setten in here bokys medycines,  
þat provocen þe fleuerys; for þat ypocras techyth in quarto afforis-  
morum: a **spasmo vel detano habito febre superueniente soluit** 28  
**egritudinem** þat ys to sigge; ȝif þat a man haff þe crampe, oþere  
ellys a tetane, þat is a syknesse þat halt the membre y-lyche streyt  
on boþe þe sydes, as a crampe halte þe on syde of þe membre, & þe  
ffeuere come on þilke crampe oþere þilke tetane, he distroyeth þe 32  
crampe oþere þe seknesse, and also þey anoynte with to hote oyne-  
ment to prouoke þe fleuerys, þe whyche þynge y ne apreff<sup>t</sup> nouȝt in  
þe crampe of a wounde, þowþ<sup>t</sup> þat þilke oynement myȝte be profitable  
in a crampe withouten <sup>6</sup>wounde, & where þat humores habounde, 36  
namlye, ȝif yt be flewme. Somme ben general toknys, & some be  
special of schewynge of a crampe. General toknys ben þese: to

[<sup>6</sup> fol. 68 b]



of izeen, & crokidnes of schewynge, & crokidnes of eeris, of þe nose  
 þrillis, & of þe lippis, & whanne þat a man may not speke, & þe  
 cheke be constreyned & difficulte of meuyng, and namely, of  
 4 þe necke, & ofte constreynynge togidere, & a sodeyn schakyng  
 togidere. Special signes maken oon of þre maner of crampis: þe  
 toon is clepid amprostonos<sup>1</sup>, þe toþer empistenos<sup>2</sup>, þe .iiij. tetanus /  
 In þis maner of crampe þat is clepid ampros<sup>3</sup>tonos, þe senewis tofore  
 8 ben drawe togidere / þe fore partie of þe heed is crokid, þe sike  
 man may not heuen it vp, he berip his chyn as it lijþ on his brest,  
 & his mouþ is streit & he may not opene it, & þe fyngris of his  
 hand ben folden into his fist / & in empistonies þe necke is crokid,  
 12 his mouþ is open, hise chekis ben open, & þe fyngris of his hand  
 ben streyned backward / & þe tetane halt þe boþe parties of þe  
 body, so þat he may not turne his necke to no partie but al þe  
 bodi is stif & streyned, as a staf were putt yn at his necke & out  
 16 at his ers / Alle þese tokenes or ellis summe of hem schewip þe  
 disposicioun of him þat haþ þe crampe / And whanne þat þese  
 tokenes fallen in þe wounde of þe heed, or ellis of a senewe þei  
 techen bettere þe leche to fle from þe sike man þan on him to abide  
 20 & cure /

<sup>1</sup> Latin, *Emprostotonos*.<sup>2</sup> Latin, *Opisthotonos*.

Special signs.

.1.

.2.

.3.

[3 lf. 55]

amprostonos

Empistonos.

Tetanus.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

gret akþe, crokydnesse of eyzen, & crokydnesse of erys of nose þreñ  
 & of lyppes, & whenne þat a man may nozt speke, & þe chekys ben  
 constreynde, & dyficulte of swolwyng, & difficulte of mevyng,  
 24 namlye of þe nekke, & ofte constreynynge togedre, & sodeyne  
 schakyng togedire. Special signes maken one of þre manere of  
 crampes: þe on ys y-clepyde **Emprostonos**, þe oþere **Empistonos**, þe  
 þridde **tetanus**. In þese manere of crampe þat is clepyde Empros-  
 28 tonos þe synwes tofore be drawen togedire, þe fore party of þe hed  
 ys crokyde, ne þe syke man ne may nozt heffyn it vp, he berith hys  
 chyn as yt leye on hys brest; hys mouþ is streyte, ne he ne may  
 nozt opyne yt, and þe ffyngres of hys hande ben foldyde into hys  
 32 fust. And in Empistonos þe nekke ys crokyde, his mouþ is opyne,  
 his chekes beþ opyne, & þe ffyngres of hys handys ben streynde  
 bakwarde, and þe tetane halt boþe þe partye of þe body, so þat he  
 may nouzt turne hys nekke to non partie, but alle þe body is styffe  
 36 & streynde, as a staf were put in at hys hed & out at his ers. Alle  
 þese toknys oþere ellys sum of hem schewith þe disposicioun of hym  
 þat haþ þe crampe. And whanne þat þese toknys fallyn in þe  
 wounde of an hed oþere ellys of<sup>4</sup> a synwe, þey teche bettire þe leche  
 40 to fle from þe syke man, þenne on hym to abyde & cure. The firste

<sup>4</sup> of, above line.



¶ The firste tretis is eendid wip þe help of almyȝty god. Now with þe help of þe same, go to þe secunde /

¶ Cap.<sup>m</sup> j.<sup>m</sup> **N**ow bigynneþ þe secunde tretis of particuler 4 woundis of membris of office from þe heed to þe foot / and first bigynne at anotamie of þe heed /

[<sup>1</sup> ff. 55, bk.]<sup>2</sup> Al þing<sup>t</sup> <sup>1</sup>brefly ordeyned aftir my symple wiȝt diuisynge, which þat<sup>t</sup> longiþ to þe firste tretis of þis book which þat<sup>t</sup> holdiþ certeyn 8 rulis & techinge of surgerie vnder general chapitlis as we han bihiȝt<sup>t</sup> / now we wolen bigynne to treten of<sup>t</sup> curis aftir þat<sup>t</sup> þe lymes ben in mannes bodi. & first<sup>t</sup> I wole bigynne at<sup>t</sup> þe heed & at<sup>t</sup> his anotamie, & so procede forþ to ech membre dyuysynge þe anotamie of<sup>t</sup> ech 12 membre, & in ordeynynge þe curis of<sup>t</sup> woundis þat<sup>t</sup> ben maad in ech sengle membre. I seie þat<sup>t</sup> þe heed is maad of þre parties: of<sup>t</sup> a fleischi partie, of<sup>t</sup> a bony partie, & a brawni partie. þe fleischi partie is aboue þe brayn panne, þe which þat<sup>t</sup> is maad of<sup>t</sup> an hery 16 skyn; & þilke skyn is fulfillid wip braynes in euery partie /

The head consists of three parts.

<sup>2</sup> Heading to this page: *Anotemy off þe hed & woundes off the same.* / Compare Vicary's *Anatomie*, ch. iii. p. 24.

Add. MS. 12,056. tretys ys y-edyde wip helpe of almyȝtie god, now with þe helpe of<sup>3</sup> þe same y go to þe secunde.

¶ Now begynneþ þe secunde tretys off particuler 20 woundes of membris of office from þe hede to þe ffot, and ffirste y begynne at the Anotamye off the hed.

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 69 a] Al thyng breffliche y-ordeynde, aftere þe devysinge of my 24 Symple wytt<sup>t</sup>, whiche þat longith to þe firste tretys of this <sup>4</sup>boke whiche þat holdyth certeyne rulys & techynges off<sup>t</sup> surgerie vndire general chapitelis, as we han byheyȝt. Now we wylle begynne to tretyn of certeyne cures, aftere þat þe lymes ben in mannys body. 28 & firste y wyl begynne at þe hed & at hys anotamye, & so þe processe forþ to eueryche membre devysinge þe Anotamye of euery membre, & in ordeynynge þe cures of woundys þat beþ made in eche sengle membre, I sigge þat þe hed ys made of þre partyes: of a 32 fleschy partye, a bony partye, and a braynie partye. þe flesch partye is aboue þe brayn panne, whiche þat is made of an herye skyn; & þilke skyn ys fulfylde with brawnys in euery place. þe

<sup>3</sup> MS. of twice.



þe heeris of þe heed weren for greet profite ordeyned þat neiþer  
cold ne hoot, ne schulde not sodeynli entre þe poris of the skyn,  
& neuer-þe-lattere þat þe fumosite of þe heed myȝte go out bi þe  
4 poris þere as þe heer growiþ; & þe heed myȝte be þe more semeloker,  
& þat þe colouris of þe heeris of dyuers men myȝte schewen þe com-  
plecciouns of þe heedis //

[1 lf. 56]

þe skyn þat is<sup>1</sup> aboue þe brayn panne is lacertose, & ful of picke  
8 fleisch, þat he myȝte wrie þe brayn panne, þat he schulde not fele  
sodeynliche to greet heete ne to greet cold. þe which skyn is maad  
of sutil predis of senewis þat comen fro þe brayn, & of veynes &  
of arteries sotilliche I-maad; & so þe skyn of þe heed is sotilliche  
12 ioyned wiþ þe skyn of al þe bodi / & also þe skyn of þe heed is more  
þickere þan þe brain sculle, þat it schulde ben more rare<sup>2</sup> & more  
porose, þat is to seie, more ful of hoolis / þe lacertis of þe skyn pro-  
ceden aftir þat þe goynge procediþ of þe heeris /  
16 þe brayn panne is maad of manye boonys / þe firste summe,<sup>3</sup> þe  
whiche þat holdiþ þe prouitis þat longen to þe brayn panne, haþ .ij.  
helpingis; oon helpinge is: þouȝ þat an hurtyng come to oon boon,  
neuere-þe-lattere he schulde not falle to alle þe boonys / þe secunde  
20 help is, oon boon þat is to hard in oon partie ne schulde not be so

<sup>2</sup> rare. Lat. rarus.<sup>3</sup> Lat. Prima nanque summa . .

herys off þe hed were for grete proffyte y-ordeynde, þat neiþere  
colde ne hete ne scholde noȝt sodeynliche entre þe pores of þe skyn,  
& neuere þe lattere þat þe fumosite of þe hed myȝte go out be þe  
24 pores þere as þe here growyþ, and þat þe hed myȝte be þe more  
semlykere, and þat þe coloure of þe herys myȝte schewe þe com-  
plexioun of þe hed. þe skyn þat is abouen þe breyne panne ys  
lacertos & ful of þykke flesch, þat he myȝte wreyen þe breyn panne,  
28 þat he scholde noȝt fele to sodeynlyche neiþere to grete hete ne to  
cold. þe whiche skyn ys made of sotyþ predys of synwes þat  
comeþ from þe brayn & of veynis & of arteryes sotyliche y-mad;  
and so þe skyn of þe hed ys sotyliche y-Ioyned with þe skyn off  
32 alle þe bodye, and also þe skyn of þe hed ys more þykkere þenne þe  
brayne scolle, þat it scholde be more rare & more porose þat is to  
sigge more ful of holys. þe lacertes of þe skyn proceden after þat  
þe goynge procedyþ of þe herys, þe brayn panne ys mad of manye  
36 bonys. þe fyrste summe, whiche þat wiþholdyþ þe profites þat  
longyþ to þe brayn panne, haþ tweye helpynges; on helpyng ys,  
þouȝ þat an hurtyng come to on bon, neuere þe latere he scholde  
noȝt fallen to alle þe bonys; þe secunde helpe is þat on bon þat is  
40 to harde in on partye, ne scholde noȝt be so<sup>4</sup> hard in an opere [4 fol. 69 b]

Add. MS.  
12,056.



.2.  
the organs  
under the  
skull.

[<sup>1</sup> lf. 56, bk.]

The sutures  
of the skull

a.  
form the  
ways for the  
veins,

b.  
let the nerves  
go out

c.  
and the  
fumosity,

d.  
support the  
dura mater  
and pia  
mater.

The brain  
pan is formed  
of two tables,

has seven  
bones.

I. Coronal.

hard in anopir partie. / þe secunde summe, þe which þat wiphalt þe helpingis þat ben vndir þe brayn panne, haþ wipinne him. iiij. helpingis; þe whiche helpingis ben ful maad by þe <sup>1</sup>semis þat ben of þe brayn panne; ne þe helpingis myzte not be maad, but if þat <sup>4</sup>þer were manye boonys / þe first help is, þat þe veynes myzten go doun bi þe semis of þe brayn panne berynge<sup>2</sup> norischinge to þe same brayn<sup>3</sup> / þe secunde help is, þat þe senewis þat comen out of þe brayn myzte haue wey in goynge out / þe þridde help is, þat þe fumes of þe brayn myzten haue wey of smokyng out / þe fourþe is, þat neiper dura mater, ne pia mater, þat as þei ben hangid, ne myzte not greue þe brayn.

So þat þe brayn panne is maad of ij. smeþe lizt tablis, þat oon is aboue, þe toþir is byneþe / & þei ben sumwhat spongiuous in þe myddis, & rare þat þe smoke of þe heete myzte bettere passe out & þei ben smeþe þat þei myzten not greue þe brayn / Dyuers men þat maken dyuers anotamie dyuyden þe brayn panne diuerslych / summen noumbren mo boonys þan summe opir speken of / but soþenes is, þat þer ben .vj. & oon which þat susteyneþ þe sixte. þe firste boon is clepid, þe boon of þe forheed or ellis coronale, & he bigynneþ from þe browis & lastiþ to þe seem þat departiþ þe heed quarter. 20

<sup>2</sup> MS. inserts &.

<sup>3</sup> panne after brayn cancelled.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

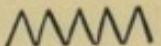
partye. Secunde summe, whiche þat withhalt helpynges, þat beþ vnder þe brayn panne, haþ with hym iiij helpynges; þe whiche helpynges beþ ful mad be þe semys þat beþ of þe breyn panne. Ne þo helpynges ne myzte nozt be mad, but 3if þat þere were manye bonys. þe firste helpe ys, þat þe veynes myzte go doun by the semys of<sup>4</sup> þe brayn panne, berynge norosschyng to þe same brayn.

Secunde helpe ys þat þe synwes, þat comyth out of þe brayn, myzte habbe wey in goynge out. þe þridde helpe ys, þat þe fumes of þe brayn myzte habbe wey of smokyng out. þe ffourþe ys, þat neipere dura mater ne pia mater, þere as þey ben y-hongyde, ne myzte nozt greue þe brayn. Sytthe þat þe breyne panne ys made of two smeþe lyzte tablys, þat one ys aboue & þe opere byneþe, & þey be sumwhat spongyouse in þe myddel & rare, þat þe smokys of þe hed myzte þe bettyre passen out, & þey be smeþe þat þey myzte nozt greue þe brayn. Dyuerse men þat makyth dyuerse Anotamye devydeþ þe breyn panne dyuerslyche. Somme nowmbryth mo bonys, þenne summe opere spekyn of; but soþenesse ys that þere ben sixe; & one whyche þat susteyneþ þo sixe. þe ffyrste bon ys clepyde þe bon of þe<sup>5</sup> fforhed opere ellys coronale, & he bygynneþ from þe browys, & lastyth vnto þe seme þat departyth þe hed

<sup>4</sup> of above line.

<sup>5</sup> þe above line.



- <sup>1</sup>& pilke is clepid coronale / þis boon haþ in sum maner of men a smal seem in foldynge of þe forheed, & þerfore sum men seyn þat þer ben .ij. boonis. ij opir boonys ben ioyned with pilke boon coronable in þe myddis of þe heed ouerþwert ouer; þat<sup>2</sup> þei ben 4 bounde togidere bi oon ioyniture, þe which þat strecchiþ from bifore to bihynde to þe lenkþe of þe heed, þe which is clepid sagittales, by as myche as he is schape lijk an arowe / & þese .ij. boonys ben clepid nerualia bi-cause þat þe figure of þe seem þat is with þe 8 coronable is þe figure of a senewe eiper of a corde / þese boonys ben in þe hizeste coppe of þe heed & byhynde in þe nolle þer is a boon þe which is clepid alauda.<sup>3</sup> & it is maad in þe symilitude of þis :  $\Lambda$  : which þat is ioyned wiþ þe boones nerualibus tofore seid bi þe mene 12 of oon þan I-made to þe lijknes of þe boon tofore seid. & þese þre semes whiche þat ioynen togidere þe .iiij. boonys tofore seid, ben maad as it were two sawis, þe whiche teeþ ben ioyned, ech of hem in opir in þis maner  / & þis ioynynge togidere of oon 16 boon wiþ anopir was maad bi-cause of iuvamentis þat I haue told to<sup>5</sup>forn; þer is no boon ioyned with anopir as þese boonys ben. [1 f. 57]

The sagittal suture unites the nerval bones (side bones), II, III.

IV. Occipital bone with the lambdoidal suture.

figure in augrim<sup>4</sup>

<sup>2</sup> þat insertion.

<sup>3</sup> Latin: "Quartum os est ex parte posteriori in puppi; et conjungitur cum prædictis nervalibus mediante una commissura ad modum literæ laudæ grecæ." The word *lauda* is a corruption of *lambda*.

<sup>4</sup> *augrim*. See *N. E. Dict.*, s.v. *algorism*.

- twarte offere. And þylke bon is y-clepyde **coronale**: þis bon hath in some manere of men a smal seme in þe ffoldynge of þe fforhed, 20 & þere fore sum men siggeþ þat þere beþ tweye bonys. Tweye opere bonys beþ y-loyned wiþ þylke bon **coronale** in þe myden of þe hed twarte offere, & þey ben y-bounde togedyre by one lucture, þe whiche þat strecchiþ from tofore to byhynde, by the lengthe 24 of þe hed, þe whiche ys y-clepyde **sagyttalis** by as myche as he ys schapyde lyke an arwe. And þese tweye bonys beþ y-clepyde **Nerualia**, by cause of þe ffigure of the seme þat ys wiþ þe coronale, <sup>6</sup>ys þe ffigure of a synwe opere of a corde. And þese bonys ben in 28 þe heyest coppe of the hed, and behynde in þe nolle þere ys a bon whyche þat is y-clepyde **Alauda**, & ys y-made to þe Symilitude of þis cyffre of Augrym  $\Lambda$ , whiche þat ys loynede with þe bonys nerualibus tofore seyde, by þe mene of on 3em y-mad to þe lyknesse 32 of þe bon tofore seyde. & þese þre 3emes whiche þat loyneþ togedyre þe foure bonys to fore seyde, ben y-made as yt were tweye<sup>7</sup> 3awes, whos teth joyned eche of hem in opere in thys manere / **WIDOW** & þis ioynynge togedire of on bon with an oper was y-made 36 by-cause iuvamentes þat y haue tolde befor; þere nys no bon y-ioynede with an opere as þese bonys ben. Undire þe bon þat ys

Add. MS. 12,056.

[6 fol. 70 a]

<sup>7</sup> MS. *tweye* twice.



V. Tassillus  
(Basilar bone)  
supports all  
the other  
bones.

VI, VII.  
Temporal  
bones (men-  
dosa); one  
portion is  
called os  
petrosun.

The skull has  
seven bones,

three true  
sutures,  
[3 lf. 58]

Vndir þe boon þat is clepid alauda, þer is a ful hard boon & holid in þe myddil, þe which boon susteyneþ alle þe boonys of þe heed. þe which boon is clepid passillus, & he is ioyned byneþe wiþ þe firste boon of þe nake. þe schap of þe coniunccioun of þe .v. boonis of 4 þe heed is in þis maner **ERM**. Boþe on þe riȝt side & on þe lift side of þe forseid boonys, whiche þat ben clepid nerualia \* [whiche þat beþ in lengthe in þe heyest place of þe hed, þere ben twey bonys on eiþere syde.] & þo boonys þat vndir setten ben clepid ossa mendosa. & þese 8 boonys in oon partie ben ful hard þere as þe hole of þe eere passip þoruȝ, & þei ben clepid petrosa; & summen seien þat þer ben .iiij. boonys ij. on eiþir side / & whanne þat alle þe boonys of þe heed ben ioyned togidere, þou schalt fynde in soþfastnes þat þer ben but vj. boonys, 12 whanne þat þou rekenest os<sup>1</sup> coronale for oon boon, & .ij. boonys þat ben clepid mendose, ij. & oon þat ben ij, & o boon þat is clepid alauda. & ij. boonys þat ben clepid nerualia þat ben .vj.; & þe .vij. boon is clepid passillare, þe which is not of þe boones of þe 16 heed, but he susteyneþ alle þe opere boonys of þe heed.<sup>2</sup> & iiij. maner of semes<sup>3</sup> makip coniunccioun of alle þe boonys in þis maner **33**

<sup>1</sup> MS. as.

<sup>2</sup> Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 2: "*& he is vnterberyng in þe hynder partie al þe bones of þe heued, & þerfore he is clepid þe berere vp, or passillus.*"


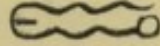
Add. MS.  
12,056.

y-clepyde Alauda, þere ys a ful harde bon & y-holyde in þe myddle, þe whyche bone susteyneth alle þe bonys of þe hed. þe whiche 20 bon ys y-clepyde **Passilus**, & he ys ioynede byneþe wiþ þe fyrste bon of þe nekke. þe schappe of þe coniunccioun of þe fife bonys of þe hed ys in þis manere **EWEN**. Bothe on þe ryȝte syde & on þe lefte syde of þe forseide bonys whiche þat beþ y-clepyde **nerualia**,\* 24 whiche þat beþ in lengthe in þe heyest place of þe hed, þere ben twey bonys on eiþere syde\*; þe whiche þat beþ vndiresetterys to þo bonys þat beþ y-clepyde **nerualia**; & þo bonys þat vndire setten, ben y-clept ossa mendosa. And þese bonys in one partye ben ful 28 harde, þere as þe hole of þe ere passyþ þoruȝ, & þey ben y-clepede<sup>4</sup> petrosa & sum men siggen þat þere ben foure bonys, two on eythere syde. & whanne þat alle bonys of þe hed be ioynede togedire þou schalt fynde in sotfastnesse, þat þere ben but sixe bonys whanne 32 þat þou reknyste os<sup>5</sup> coronale ffor on bon, & tweye bonys þat beþ y-clepyde mendose tweyne þat beþ þre, and o bon þat ys y-clepyde Alauda, & tweye bonys þat is y-clepyde nerualia—þat beþ sixe, and þe vij bon ys y-clepyde passillare, þe whiche ys nought of þe 36 bonys of þe hed, but he susteyneth alle þe opere bonys of þe hed. And þre maner of semys makyþ coniunccioun of alle þe bonys on þis

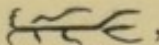

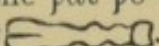
<sup>4</sup> MS. petotra.

<sup>5</sup> MS. as.



- & wip .ij. semes mendose in þis maner 220. & whanne þat þe croune of þe heed is perfiȝt, þe heed is maad in þis maner  / þis is þe foorme of an heed weel propoſsiound, round  þat he myȝte more wipholde, & þat he myȝte laſſe be hurt, & þat he be longe warpid<sup>1</sup>, hauynge tofore & bihynde eminence: þat is to ſeie apeiryng, þat þe ſenewis þat comen out of þe brayn myȝten haue a poroſe place of goynge out. & nepeles as ypocras & galion, whiche þat expowneþ ypocras, tellip<sup>2</sup>, it is poſſible to fynde opir in maner of makynge of heedis. Oon maner is, if eminence be not in partie of þe heed tofore, for if þat he be pleyn in partie tofore, bi þat pleynes þe ſeem is loſt, þat is clepid coronalis / þe ſecunde is, if þat þe heed haue noon eminence bihynde, but þat þe hyndere partie be pleyn, & bi þat pleynes þe ſeeme is loſt þat is clepid alauda / þe þridde is, if þat þe noon eminence bifore ne bihynde in þe heed, but al þe heed is round as a ſerle, & þanne þe is but oon ſeem in þe myddil of þe brayn þanne: for it is vnpoſſible þe heed to haue ony oper ſchap wipoute leſynge of ſum partie of þe brayn, & were contrarious aȝens þe liȝt / Bi þe myddil ſeem which þat is in þe heed, þere diſcendiþ a ueyne comynge fro þe lyuere bi þe
- two false sutures (mendosæ).  
A well-proportioned head is oblong with openings for the nerves,  
ypocras. & Galion  
enumerate peculiar forms:  
1. front part flat,  
2. back part flat,  
3. without any prominence.  
Nota.  
[<sup>3</sup> ff. 58, bk.]  
A vein and artery come through the basilar bone,

<sup>1</sup> longe warpid, Lat. oblongus. Comp. Langwyrpe bôc, *Indices Monast.* 12, ed. Kluge.  
<sup>2</sup> tellip, error for tellen.

- 20 manere , & with tweye semys mendose in þis manere . Add. MS. 12,056. [4 fol. 70 b]  
And whanne þat þe corone of þe hed ys perfyȝt, þe hed ys maad in þis manere . þis ys þe forme of an hed wel proporcionede, þat he be ronde becauſe þat he myȝhte be more withholde, & þat he myȝte be laſſe be y-hurt, and þat he be longewarped hauynge tofore & behynde eminence þat is to ſigge aperyng, þat þe ſynwes þat comyȝth out of þe brayn, myȝhte haue a poroſe place of goynge out. And napeleſe as ypocras & galyen, whiche þat exponeþ ypocras, 24 tellyn: it is poſſible to fynden þe opere manere makynge of hedys. On manere is, ȝif eminence be noȝt in þe partye of þe hed tofore; for ȝif þat he be pleyn in þe partye tofore, by þat pleynneſſe þe ſeme is y-loſt þat is y-clepyde coronalis. Secunde ys ȝif þe hed 32 haſt non eminence behynde, but þat þe hyndere party be playn, and by þat playnneſſe þe ſeme ys y-loſt þat ys y-clepyde Alauda.<sup>5</sup> þe þridde ys ȝif þere be non eminence tofore ne behynde in þe hed, but alle þe hed ys rounde as a cerle. And þenne þere nys 36 but on ſem in þe myddel of þe breyn þanne, ffor it is vnpoſſible þe hed to habben enye opere ſchappe wipouten leſyng of ſome party of þe brayn; & þat were contrariouſe aȝeyne lyf. By þe myddele ſeme, whiche þat is in þe hed, þere diſſendyȝth a veyne comynge

<sup>5</sup> MS. *Alauda*.



brayn panne of a boon which þat is holid þat is clepid passillarus. & bi þe same weye þer risiþ an arterie comynge from þe herte, & þei ben ioyned togidere, & of þe weuingge of þe tweyne þer is maad an hard pannicle þat is to seie a cloop þat is vndir þe brayn 4 panne; & he is hangid with summe smale ligamentis to þe brayn panne in summe of þe semes. þe which pannicle byndiþ þe boonys togidere, & it is clepid dura mater. & it is riȝtful þat an arterie schulde arise vpward from byneþe, for þe blood þat is in him is 8 sutil, & his meuyngge is pulsatif; & he hadde discendid from aboue dounward, he schulde haue discendid wiþ to greet an hastynes, but þilke ascendynge temperiþ þilke flux. & it is couenable þat þe veyne discende bicause þat þe blood þat is in þe veynes is more þickere, 12 & þe blood þat is in þe veynes goiþ doun sotilli. & boþe þese veynes þat ben pulsatif & not pulsatif ben ioyned wiþ dura mater / Also þe <sup>1</sup>veyne strecchiþ more lower, & of hem is engendrid pia mater /  
and make the dura mater.  
The blood flows upwards in the artery,  
downwards in the vein.  
The veins from the pia mater  
[1 lf. 59] bring the vital spirit to the brain, and turn it into understanding.  
iiij. cellis of þe brayn  
 Aftir þei discenden doun to þe brayn, & þei bryngen lijf & dewe 16 norischinge & cordialle<sup>2</sup> spiritis, þe which is in þe brayn & þere is defied, & þere resseyueþ naturel foorme of vndirstondynge. Pia mater enuyrouneþ al þe brayn, & departiþ him into iiij. celoles þat

<sup>2</sup> MS. inserts þe.

Add. MS. 12,056. from þe lyffere, by þe breyn ponne, of a bon whiche þat is y-holyde. 20 þat is y-clepyde pasillaris. And by þe same weye þere arysith an Arterye comynge fro þe herte, and þey ben Ioynde togedire, & of þe weffynge of þe tweyne þere is y-mad an hard pannycle þat is to sigge a cloth þat is vndir þe brayn panne, and he is hongyde wiþ 24 sum smale ligamentys to þe brayn panne in some of þe semys, þe whych pannycle byndeþ þe bonys togedire, & it is clepyde **dura mater**. And yt is ryȝtful þat an Arterye scholde arysen vpwarde from byneþyne, for þe blod þat ys in hym þat is sotyþ, & hys 28 meffynge þat ys pulsatyff<sup>3</sup>; and he hadde discendyde from aboue dunwarde, he scholde han discendyde wiþ to gret <sup>4</sup>an hastynesse, but þe ascendynge temprith þulke flux. And yt is couenable þat þe veyne discende, bycause þat þe blod þat ys in þe veynes ys more 32 þykkore, & þe blod þat is in þe veyne geþ doun softliche. & boþe þese veynes þat buþ<sup>5</sup> pulsatyf & nouȝt pulsatyf beþ y-Ioynede wiþ dura matre. And also þowþ þe veyne streche more lowere, & of hem ys engendryde pia mater. Afterward þey descenden doun to 36 þe brayn. & þey bryngen lyf & dywe norysschyngge & cordyal spirites, þe whiche is in þe brayn and þere is diffyede, & þere resseyueþ naturel forme of vnderstondynge. Pia mater environeþ al þe brayn, & departyth hym into þe þre celoles<sup>6</sup> þat beþ chaumbres : 40

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 71 a]

<sup>3</sup> MS. *prilsatyff*.

<sup>5</sup> *buþ*, above line.

<sup>6</sup> MS. *cololes*.



- ben chaumbris: þe firste, þe myddile, & þe laste. & þou; þat alle þese ben dyuydid syngulerly bi hem-siluen, it semeþ þat þe celole<sup>1</sup> þat is tofore in þe brayn is departid in two parties; & bi þat cause  
 4 summen seien þat þer ben .iiij. ventriclis of þe brayn. þe forþere partie of þe brayn is greet & brood, bicause þat he schulde resceyue manye spiritis þat ben sent to him; for þat place is propre instrument of ymagynacioun þe which resceyueþ þingis þat comprehendþ of  
 8 fantasie;<sup>2</sup> & þo þingis kunnen vndirstonde resceyueþ<sup>3</sup> bi propre instrumentis þat longiþ. & þou; þat al þe brayn, in comparisoun of þe herte & of alle opere membris of þe body, be deemed cold & moist, þis celule hauynge comparisoun to opere celules is deemed  
 12 hoot & drie. & þe myddil part of þe brayn is lasse<sup>4</sup> þan ony opere of þe opere two parties, & her foorme is punat<sup>5</sup> brood twoward þe forþere side of þe heed, & scharpere twoward þe hyndere syde, þat he myȝte be þe more able to resceyue ymagynatif þingis, & þo  
 16 þingis to ȝeue to þe ynnere partie, & þo þingis þat ben ȝeue to wiþholde / þis ventricle is sett bitwene two addiamentis of þe brayn; þe whiche addiamentis ben lijk to tweie buttokkis of a man þat ben ioyned togidere, & þei ben [to]\* þis ventricle as it were a sittynge

The foremost cell or Ventricle is the largest one, and contains Imagination.

Nota  
 [\* lf. 59, bk.]  
 The middle Ventricle has a pineal form,

lies between two addiamentis of the brain (optical lobes),

<sup>1</sup> MS. *celose*.

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: *res a phantasia comprehensas*.

<sup>3</sup> Read, þo þingis comyn undirstondynge resceyueþ. Lat.: *quas(res) communis sensus recipit*.

<sup>5</sup> *punat*, Lat.: *pineatus*.

- 20 þe firste, þe myddle, & þe laste. And þow; þat alle þese ben diffyede senglerlyche by hem selffyn, yt semeþ þat þe celele þat is tofore in þe brayn ys departyde in two parties, & by þat cause sum men siggen, þat þere ben foure ventricles of þe brayn. þe  
 24 furþere part of þe brayn ys gret & brod, by cause þat he scholde resceyue manye spiritis þat ben y-sende to hym for þat place is propre instrement of y-maginacion, þe whiche resceyueþ þynges þat buþ comprehendide of fantasie; and þo þynges comen vndirstond-  
 28 ynge resceyueþ by propre Instrementys þat longyth to hym, and þaw; þat al þe brayn, in comparson of þe herte & of alle opere membres of þe body, be y-demyde colde & moist, þis celule hauynge comparson to opere celules ys y-demyde hot & dryȝe. þe myddel  
 32 part of þe brayn ys lasse þen eny of þe opere two partyes, & here forme ys pyneat, brod towarde þe furþere syde of þe hed and scharpere towarde þe hyndor syde, þat he myȝte be þe more able to resceyue y-maginatyf þynges & þo þynges to ȝefe to þe ynnere  
 36 partye & þo þynges þat beþ y-ȝefe to with holde. þis ventricle ys y-sette bytwene tweyne additamentes of þe brayn, þe whiche additamentes ben y-liche þe two buttokkes of a man þat beþ y-ioynede togedre, and þey beþ to \* þis ventricle as yt were a syttyng place

Add. MS.  
 12,056.



stretches and contracts during perception,

is smaller than the other Ventricles.

[<sup>2</sup> 1f. 60]

The third Ventricle is the largest,

from it starts the Spinal Marrow.

The brain is cold and moist,

place eiþir a couche vpon þe which he is drawen abroad, whanne þat<sup>1</sup> he resseyueþ ymagynatif<sup>1</sup> þingis; aftirward he is drawe togidere as a worm, whanne þat<sup>1</sup> he resseyueþ ymagynatijf<sup>1</sup> þingis; & whanne þat<sup>1</sup> þe sentence of þilke ymagynacioun is brouȝt<sup>1</sup> forþ, þanne þilke 4 ventricle is drawe along<sup>1</sup>, & also þe smallere eende of þe ventricle entriþ into þe ventricle þat<sup>1</sup> is bihynde in þe heed. & þis ventricle is myche lasse þan þe oþere tweyne, bicause þat<sup>1</sup> no senewis proceden<sup>1</sup> not<sup>1</sup> out of him, & þat<sup>1</sup> manye þingis myȝte be comprehendid [in 8 litel]\* place þat<sup>1</sup> vertu of witt<sup>1</sup> myȝte þe sunnere be gaderid togidere to take his <sup>2</sup>counseil; & þis ventricle to comparisoun of oþere ventriclis is deemed hoot<sup>1</sup> & drie. & aftir þat<sup>1</sup> þe hyndere ventricle, þe which is grettere & hardere þan þis; þe which [in]\* comparisoun to 12 þe oþere tweyne is demed cold & drie, þe which is brood twoward þe fore partie of þe heed & scharp bakward, þe which resceyueþ sentence þat<sup>1</sup> ben schewid & kepiþ hem priuyliche as a cheste kepiþ tresour. & out of him goiþ out<sup>1</sup> nucha þoruȝ þe hole of þe boon, 16 þat<sup>1</sup> is clepid passillaris, & þilke nucha is cloþid wiþ two pannicles þat<sup>1</sup> goon out of þe brayn.

& al þe brayn is deemed cold & moist, bicause þat<sup>1</sup> he schulde

<sup>1</sup> MS. *procende*.

Add. MS. 12,056. oþere a couche, vpon þe whyche he ys drawyne abroad, whenne 20 þat he resseyueþ <sup>3</sup>y-maginatyff<sup>1</sup> þynges. And afterwarde he ys

[<sup>3</sup> fol. 71 b] y-drawe togedire as a worme, whenne þat he resceyueth y-maginatyff<sup>1</sup> þynges; and whenne þat þe sentence of þilke y-magynacioun ys y-brought forth, þenne þilke ventricle ys y-drawe alonge. And 24 also þe smallere ende of þis ventricle entriþ into þe ventricle þat ys behynde in þe hed, and þis ventricle ys myche lasse þenne þe oþere tweyne bycause þat non synwes procedent not out of hym, and þat manye þynges myȝhte be endyde in litel\* place, þat vertue 28 of wytt<sup>1</sup> myȝhte þe sonnere be y-gedryde togedre to taken hys counseyll. And thys ventrycle to comparson of oþere ventricles ys y-demyde hot & drye. After þat ys þe hyndere ventricle, whiche ys grattere & hardere þenne thys; þe whiche in \*comparson of þe 32 oþere tweyne ys y-demyde colde & drye, þe whiche is brod toward þe fore partye of þe hed & scharpe bachwarde, þe whyche resceyuyth sentense þat beþ schewyde & kepyth hem priuyliche as a chest kepyth tresore. And out of hym goth out<sup>4</sup> nucha<sup>5</sup> þrowe þe 36 hole of þe bon þat ys y-clepyde passillarys. And þilke nucha ys y-clothyde<sup>6</sup> wiþ tweye pannicles þat goth out of þe brayn. And alle þe brayn ys y-demyde colde & moyst. bycause þat he scholde

<sup>4</sup> in þe a, struck through after goth out.

<sup>5</sup> nucha on margin.

<sup>6</sup> MS. *ys y-clothyde twice*.



- atempren spiritual fumosite þat comen of þe herte, & þat he schulde not ben dried for to myche meuyng þat he haþ in worching of vertues; & þe brayn is whijt, bicause þat he schulde þe bettere white like a painter's table,
- 4 resseyue resoun & vnderstondyng / For if peyntouris whanne þey schulen peynte a table, first þei maken it whijt, for þer wole no colour lasten but þoruþ him; & it is neische þat þe meuyng of vertues myȝte þe bettere han place; & þe brayn is towȝ þat þe soft and tough.
- 8 senewis þat goon out of hym<sup>1</sup> myȝte be þe more towȝ, & þe more þei ben enlongid from her bigynnyng & þe more hardere þei schulen be, & also þat þei schulden be bowable ynowȝ & nouȝt aȝenstondyng her hardnesse. & it is nessessarie þat þe brayn be clopid wiþ The brain is protected by two Pannicles (Membranes);
- 12 .ij. panniclis: þat is to seie .ij. cloþis, þat in his meuyng, [as]\* I haue seid tofore, þat it schulde not be hurt of þe brayn panne. Al þe brayn is departid into .iiij. colules<sup>2</sup> with addiamentis of þe panniclis which diuide it into three cells,
- 16 to resseyuen bi ordure of digestioun, foorme & perfeccioun more þan þei hadden first of þe herte; & þat euery vertu myȝte fulfille his accidens<sup>3</sup> in his ventricle, or þan þe vois<sup>4</sup> þat is comprehendid where thought is formed.

<sup>2</sup> *cellis*, written above line.<sup>3</sup> *accidens* for *accioun*.<sup>4</sup> *vois*, Lat.: "antequam res comprehensa posset ad sequentem ventriculum pertransire."

- atempren spirituel ffumosites þat comyȝh of þe herte, and þat he Add. MS. 12,056.
- 20 scholde noȝte ben y-dreyȝede fforto myche meffynge þat he haþ in worchyng of vertues. And þe brayn is whit bycause þat scholde resceyue þe bettere resoun & vnderstondyng. Ffor þese peyntores, whenne þey schulle peynten a table, firste þey maken yt whyte, for
- 24 þere nylle none coloure lasten but yt be leyde vpon whyt; & it is þenne oþere rare, because þat vndirstondyng myȝte þe sonnere passe þorwe hym; & yt is nessche þat þe meffynges off vertues myȝhte þe betyre habbe place; & þe brayn ys towȝ, þat þe synwes
- 28 þat goȝh out of hym, myȝte be þe<sup>5</sup> more towȝere, and þe more þat þey ben enlongyde from here bygynnyng, þe more hardere þey scholde be; and also that þey scholde be bowable y-nowȝ nought aȝeynestondyng here hardnesse. And yt is necessarye þat þe
- 32 brayn scholde be cloped with tweye clothys, þat in hys meffynge as \*y haue seyde tofore he scholde nought ben y-hurt of þe brayn panne.

Also þe brayn ys departyde into þre celules with þe addiamentes of þe pannycles of pie<sup>6</sup> matris, þat þe spirites myȝt þe lengore dwellen in þe ventricles, to reseyfen by ordre, digestioun, forme & perfeccion, more þanne þey hadden fyrst of þe hert, and þat euery vertue myȝhte fulfille hys accioun in hys ventrycle, ere

<sup>6</sup> MS. *pie*, twice.



Part of the  
brain is most  
essential to  
life,

Nota

[3 lf. 61]  
especially the  
substance of  
the Ven-  
tricles.

Different  
kinds of  
wounds on  
the head.

myȝte passe to þe ventricl þat<sup>t</sup> is sewingge.<sup>1</sup> Not<sup>t</sup> aȝenstondynge þese propirtees þe brayn haþ sum substaunce of<sup>t</sup> marie þe which fulfilliþ þe voidenes of<sup>t</sup> þe forseid panniclis. & þilke mary enuyroun-  
neþ þe forseid panniclis, of<sup>t</sup> þe which mary þer may sum partie in 4  
hurtynge of<sup>t</sup> þe heed be lost<sup>t</sup>; & not<sup>t</sup> aȝenstondynge þe goynge out<sup>2</sup>  
of<sup>t</sup> sum partie of<sup>t</sup> þilke mary, a man schal nouȝt<sup>t</sup> die. For þis mary  
is not<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> þe substaunce of<sup>t</sup> þe ventriclis of<sup>t</sup> þe brayn of<sup>t</sup> þe which  
mynde is maad; for þei ben of<sup>t</sup> so greet<sup>t</sup> nobilite, þouȝ þat<sup>t</sup> þer be 8  
neuere so litil infeccioun, or ellis þat<sup>t</sup> þer falle neuere so litil a lesyng<sup>t</sup>  
of hem<sup>4</sup> þei ben deprived of<sup>t</sup> her heelp<sup>e</sup>, in so myche þat<sup>t</sup> oon colule<sup>5</sup>  
may not<sup>t</sup> be lost<sup>t</sup> & a man be saued, as manye idiotis supposen con-  
trarie / <sup>6</sup>Anotamie of<sup>t</sup> yȝen, eeris, nose, chekelappis, mouþ, tunge & 12  
teep, we deferren to ordeyne in þe þridde tretis, in þe whiche if<sup>t</sup> god  
wole we þenken to treten, & of<sup>t</sup> opere sicknessis, & of<sup>t</sup> opere lymes  
out-cept<sup>t</sup> woundis.

& þo hurtyngis þat<sup>t</sup> ben maad in þe heed eiþir þat<sup>t</sup> ben maad 16  
wiþoute wounde or wiþ wounde. & wheþer þat<sup>t</sup> þei ben wiþoute  
wounde or wiþ wounde, eiþir þei ben wiþ brekyng<sup>e</sup> of<sup>t</sup> þe brayn

<sup>1</sup> MS. *swingge*.

<sup>2</sup> MS. inserts *&*.

<sup>4</sup> of hem written on margin.

<sup>5</sup> *cellul* written above.

<sup>6</sup> The MS. has a marginal note: *Anotomy off eyen, eres, nose, chekes, mouthe, tounge, teth.*

Add. MS. 12,056. þanne þe foys þat ys comprehendye myghte passe to þe ventricl  
þat ys sywyng<sup>e</sup>. Nowȝt aȝeynestondynge þese propretes, þe brayn 20  
haþ sum substaunce of marie whiche fulfilliþ þe voydenesses of þe  
forseyde pannycleres. And þilke marye envyrownyth þe foreseyde  
pannycles, of þe whyche marye þere may sum partye in þe hurtynge  
of þe hed ben y-lost<sup>t</sup>; and noȝt ageynestondynge þe goynge out of 24  
sum partye of þilke marye, a man schal noȝt deye. Ffor þis marye  
is nought of þe substaunce of þe ventricles of þe brayn, of whiche  
mynde ys y-mad; ffor þey ben of so grete noblete, ȝif þere be neuere  
so litel infectioun opere ellys þat þere falle neuere so lytel a lesyng<sup>e</sup> 28  
of hem, þey ben depreffye of alle here helthe, in so myche þat on  
celele may noȝt ben y-lost, and a man ben saffye, as manye  
ydyotes supposen. Anothomye of eynen, neose, erne, chekelappes,  
mouþ, tonge & teþ, we deferren to ordeynen in þe þridde tretys, in 32  
þe distyncioun whiche ȝif god wol, we þynkeþ forto treten of opere  
syknesse of þe lymes, outsepte woundes. And þo hurtynges þat  
beþ y-mad in þe hed, opere þey ben mad withouten wounde, opere  
with wounde. & wheþere þat it be wyth wounde opere wiþouten 36  
wounde, opere þey ben with brekyng<sup>e</sup> of þe brayn þanne, opere



panne or wipoute brekyng of þe brayn panne / Or wheþer þat it  
be maad wip breche of þe brayn panne, or wipoute breche of þe  
brayn panne, summe ben wip hurtyng of þe brayn, & summe ben  
4 wipoute hurtyng of þe brayn / & riȝt as þilke hurtis haue differ-  
ence in tokenes, so þei han difference in perels & pronosticaciouns  
& maners with þe whiche þei musten ben holpen /

1 & if þat ony hurt be in þe heed wipoute ony wounde as wip <sup>[1 ff. 61, bk.]</sup>  
8 fallynge or wip smytyng of a stoon or of a staf or wip sum opir <sup>hurt of þe</sup>  
þing þat brusip, & if þat it be wipoute breche of þe brayn panne <sup>heed</sup>  
& wip hirtyng of þe brayn panne, it nedip not but schauynge of <sup>without any</sup>  
þe heed & anoyntyng with hote oilis of rosis & [abofen þe vncture] \* <sup>wound or</sup>  
12 to strawen on þe poudre of mirtillis seed, & streyne þe place wip a <sup>fracture.</sup>  
boond til al þe place be fastned & þe swellynge be vanyschid away / <sup>Nota</sup>  
In þis maner þou fastne al þe place þat no þing schal be corruppid, <sup>Have the</sup>  
or ellis þer schal dwelle a litil corrupcioun, & if þat ony þing of <sup>head shaved</sup>  
16 corrupcioun abide, þe place schal be opened wip an instrument, & <sup>and an oint-</sup>  
so schal þe quyttur be excludid, & he schal be curid riȝt as opere <sup>ment applied.</sup>  
empostymes þat ben woundid.

& if þat þe brayn panne were broke wipoute wounde of þe <sup>Fracture of</sup>  
20 heed þe which may be knowe bi disposicioun of þe cause & also of <sup>the skull,</sup>  
þe sike man, in biholdynge, if þat þat smytip were strong, or ellis <sup>without any</sup>  
<sup>open wound.</sup>

without brekyng of þe breyn panne. And wheþer <sup>2</sup>þat yt be mad <sup>Add. MS.</sup>  
wip þe breche of þe brayn panne opere withouten breche of þe breyn <sup>12,056.</sup>  
24 panne, some ben with hurtyng of þe brayn, some without hurtyng <sup>[2 fol. 72 b]</sup>  
of þe brayn. And ryȝte as þilke hurtynges habben dyfference in  
toknes, so þey hauen differens in pereles & pronosticaciouns &  
maners, with þe whiche þey most ben y-holpen. And ȝif an hurt be  
28 in þe hed withouten wounde, as with fallynge, opere with smytyng  
of a ston, opere a staff, opere with sum opere thyng þat brusyȝh,  
and ȝif þat yt be withouten breche of þe brayn panne, & with outen  
hurtyng of þe brayn panne, it nedyȝh nouȝt but schaffynge of þe  
32 hed, & anoyntyng wip hote oyle of roses, and abofen þe vncture \*  
to strawyn on þe poudre of þe seed of myrtylles, & streyne þe place  
with a band tyl al þe place be y-fastnyde & þe swellynge be y-  
vanschyde awaye. In þis manere þou schalt fastne al þe place, þat  
36 noþyng schal be corruppid, opere ellys þere schall dwelle a lytel  
corrupcioun. And ȝif enye þyng of corrupcion abyde, þe place  
schal ben y-opnyde with an Instrument, & so alle þe quytter schal be  
excludyd, & he schal ben y-curyd ryȝt as opere empostemys þat bep  
40 y-woundyde. And ȝif þat þe brayn panne were y-broke withoute  
enye wounde of þe hed, þe whiche may ben y-knowe by dysposicioun  
of þe cause & eke of þe syke man, in biholdynge ȝif þat þat smyt



Symptoms of  
the fracture:

[<sup>1</sup> If. 62]

as giddiness,

vomiting,  
headache.

Test by harp-  
ing on a  
thread, which  
the patient  
holds with  
his teeth.

þat þe sike haue falle from his place, or ellis þat he was smyte with  
stronge smytinge, & also if þat he fel & myzte not hastili arise. <sup>1</sup>& if  
þat he hadde scotomie, <sup>2</sup>þat is to seie a maner sijknes, whanne þat  
þer semeþ as flien or opere smale gnattis fleen tofore his yzen / or 4  
ellis he spewip his mete, or he felip to gret akþe in þe heed, & if  
þat he may not breke a knotte of a straw wip hise teep, & if þe  
heed be smyte wip a lizt drie staf as of salow or ellis of pinee—  
& þanne leie þin eere to his heed, & if þat þe boon be hool þou 8  
schalt here an hool soun aftir þe comparisoun of þe soun of an  
hool belle, also if þou makist þe sike man to holde bitwene his teep  
a þred twyned & I-wexid, & þanne bigynne to harpe with þi nailis  
vpon þe þred faste bi þe sike mannes mouþ, & so harpe wip þi naylis 12  
vpon þe þred alwey streyned & makynge soun to þe eende of þe  
þred, & þilke þred schal ben-on lenkþe fro þe mouþ of a cubite, &  
so þou schalt harpe ofte tymes, & if þat þe pacient mowe susteyne  
þe soun, he haþ not his brayn panne broke, for if his brayn 16  
panne were broke, þe sike man myzte not susteyne þe soun of  
þe þred. Alle þese signys, or ellis manye of hem bitokenen þat  
[<sup>3</sup> If. 62, bk.] þe brayn panne is broken / & tweyne <sup>3</sup>of þe laste signys ben

<sup>2</sup> *scotomie*. Vigo Interpret. "*Scotomia*. They shoulde saye, Scotoma, and it is a disease, when darckenes ryseth, when al thinges seme to go rounde about."

Add. MS. were stronge, opere ellys þat þe syke haue y-fallen from hye place, 20  
12 056. opere ellys þat he was y-smyte with stronge smytynge; and also 3if  
þat he fel & myght nought hastlye aryse, and 3if þat he hadde  
scotomye: þat ys to sugge a manere seknesse, whenne þat þere  
semyth as flyezes, opere smale blake gnattys vleyzen tofore hys 24  
eyzen, opere ellys he spyweþ hys mete, opere he felyth to grete akþe  
in hys hed, and 3if þat he may nought breken a knotte of a straw  
with hys teth, and 3if þe hed be smyten with a lyzt dreyze staff, as  
[<sup>4</sup> fol. 73 a] of salwe opere ellys pyne, and þenne leye þyn <sup>4</sup>ere to hys hed; & 28  
3if þat þe bon be hol, þou schalt heren an hol soun after þe compar-  
soun of þe soun of an hol belle & a bloke belle; also 3if þat þou  
makyste þe syke man to holde bytwene hys tep a þrede y-twyned  
& y-waxed, & þenne begynne to harpen with þy naylles vpon þe 32  
þrede faste be þe seke mannes mouth, & so harpe with þyne naylles  
vpon þe þred alle wey streyned, in makynge soun to þe ende of þe  
þred, & þilke þred schal ben of lengþe from þe mouth be þe space  
of a Kubyte; and þou schalt harpe so ofte tymes, & 3if þat þe 36  
patient mowe susteyne þe soun, he haþ nozt hys brayn panne  
y-broke; ffor 3if hys breyn panne were broke, þe seke man myghte  
nought susteyne þe soun of þe þred. Alle þese signes opere ellis  
manye of hem betokne þat þe breyn panne is broken. And to þe 40



- more certeyn þan ony of þe opere. & vndirstonde þat þe brayn panne mai ofte tymes be to-broken, & nepeles þe brayn felip noon harm in þe bigynnyng. But aftirward ofte tymes of hirtyng
- 4 of þe brayn panne, þe brayn is hirt / Galien witnessyng, þe Galien  
brekyng of boonys in þe heed is dyuers in perels fro brekyng Fracture of the skull is very dangerous,  
of opere boonys in þe bodi, for þe accidens þe which þat fallip ofte tymes to þe breche of þe brayn panne. Neþir is no man ne neuere
- 8 was þat myȝte euermore helpe to alle accidentis, whanne þat þe the following accidents (symptoms) are frequently mortal.  
brayn was meued in þe bigynnyng þat not aȝenstondyng his help,<sup>1</sup> be he neuere so good a leche, þat þe sike ne muste die /
- 12 Euel accidentis þe whiche þat [comyth to þe accidentes of þe Evil symptoms: yvel accidentes  
brayn & of hys]\* pannicle ben<sup>2</sup> alwey dwellyng as constipacioun of þe wombe, or ellis þe flix of þe wombe, or ellis crokidnes, or ellis lokyng asquynt of þe ȝen, or ellis wepyng of þe oon yȝe, or ellis an hard scotomie, or ellis febilnes of alle þe vertues & chaungyng. If the animal, natural, and vital functions,
- 16 Not oonly animal vertues, þat ben vertues of þe brayn, ben<sup>3</sup> I-chaungid, also naturel vertues & liui<sup>4</sup> vertues—sensibles & <sup>5</sup>motifes; [s. lf. 63]

<sup>1</sup> help in margin.

<sup>2</sup> One word "*spewinge*" omitted, and *as* erroneously inserted in both MSS. Lat.: "*Mala autem accidentia . . sunt vomitus perseverans constipatio ventris,*" etc.

<sup>3</sup> MS. inserts *nouȝt*.

<sup>4</sup> *liui*, Lat. *vitales*.

- laste signes beþ more serteyne þenne enye of þe opere. And vnder-  
stonde þat þe breyn panne may ofte tymes ben to-broke, & napeles
- 20 þe brayn felyth nought in þe bygynnyng none hurtyng. But  
afterwardys ofte tyme of hurtyng of þe brayn panne þe brayn ys  
y-hurt, Galien wytnessyng; the brekyng of þe bonys of þe hed ys  
dyuers in perelys from brekyng of oper bonys of þe body, for þe
- 24 accidentes whiche þat fallyth ofte tymes to þe breche of þe brayn  
panne. Ne þere nys no man, ne neuere ne was, þat myȝte euyre  
more helpen to alle accidentes whenne þat þe brayn was meffye in  
þe bygynnyng, þat nouȝt ageynestondyng his helpe, be he neuere
- 28 so gode a leche, þat þe syke ne moste deye. Euyly accidentes  
whiche þat \*comyth to þe accidentes of þe brayn & of hys pannycle,  
ben alwey dwellyng: as constipacioun of þe wombe, opere ellys  
flux of þe wombe, opere ellys crokydnesse, opere ellys lokyng a-
- 32 squynte of þe eyȝen, opere ellys wepyng of þat on eyȝe, opere ellys  
an hard scotomye, opere ellys ffebylnesse of alle þe vertues &  
chaungyng. And noȝt only anymal vertues, þat beþ vertewys of  
þe brayn, beþ noȝt y-chaungyde, but also naturel vertewys, & lyfy
- 36 vertewys sensyble & motifes; sensible, for þat þey seen noȝt

Add. MS.  
12,056.



the imagin-  
ation,  
reason,

memory,  
and motor  
power are  
affected.

A strong  
fever pre-  
ceded by a  
cold shiver-  
ing,

blackness of  
the tongue,  
blains, etc.,  
are bad  
symptoms.

sensible, for þei ben<sup>1</sup> not<sup>1</sup> riȝtfulliche; for boþe her heerynge & opere  
comoun wittis ben troublid; also priuy vertues þat ben troublid as  
ymaginatif, for þei bileuen þei seen, [þat þey seen nouȝt];\* also  
resonable vertues, for þei speken in deuyn<sup>2</sup> & answeren whanne þei 4  
ben nouȝt I-askide / also<sup>3</sup> memorial þat þei þenke nouȝt on her owne  
name / also meuable vertues is so myche greued þat vnneþe þei moun  
nouȝt meue hem nameliche aboute þe necke. þei syke greuouseleche,  
& a scharp feure falliþ, þe which arrigor, þat is to seie a cold schurg- 8  
yng<sup>4</sup> goiþ tofore / Arrigor is no þing<sup>4</sup> ellis, but as it were a prick-  
yng of nedelis, or ellis of netlis in þe fleisch, & if þis rigor come wiþ  
a feure, or ellis without feure, it is þe worste signe tokene of deeth,  
& if þe crampe folowe it is deedly / Also þese ben yuel accidentis: 12  
blaknes of þe tunge, bleyenis aboute þe skyn or þe chekis, or in ony  
partie of þe heed þanne [in]\* þe wounde, is an yuel signe.<sup>5</sup> & sum-  
tyme blood cometh out at þe eeris & noseþrillis. & if þe more partie  
of þese tokenese or ellis alle comen, þe sike man muste nedis die, 16  
[7 ff. 63, bk.] namely, & þe accidentis conteynen<sup>6</sup>; <sup>7</sup>& specialy if þe sike man  
haue be her-to-fore manye daies in good disposicioun, & after þilke

<sup>1</sup> *ben*, error for *seen*. Lat.: quia non recte vident.

<sup>2</sup> See page 102, note 2. <sup>3</sup> MS. *alle*. <sup>4</sup> *schurgyng*, schurien, to shower.

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: vel in alia parte capitis quam in vulnere: quod est malum signum.

<sup>6</sup> *conteynen* for *contynnen*.

Add. MS. 12,056. also priuy vertues ben y-trublyde as ymagenatyff, ffor þey  
beleffe þat þey seen, \*þat þey seen nouȝt; also resonable vertue, for 20  
[<sup>8</sup> fol. 73 b] þey speken in deveyn, & þey answeren whanne þey beþ nouȝt  
y-askyde; also memoryal, þat þey þynke nouȝt on here owne name;  
also meffable vertue ys so myche y-greuyde, þat vnneþe þey mowe  
nouȝt mefen hem namlyche aboute þe nekke. þey syken greuouselye, 24  
and a scharpe ffeure fallyth, þe whiche a rigoor goth tofore. A  
rigoor nys nothyng ellis but as yt were a prikyng of nedlys opere  
of nettlys in þe flesch, and ȝif þis rigoor come with a ffeuyre opere  
Sygnum Mortal. ellis with outen ffeuyre, yt is worst signe, and ȝif the crampe fol- 28  
wen, yt ys dedlye. Also þese beþ yuele accidentes: blaknesse of þe  
tonge, bleynesse<sup>9</sup> aboute þe chyn opere þe chekenesse, opere in enye  
opere partye of þe hed þenne in\* þe wounde, ys an yuele signe, and  
sum tyme blod comyth out at þe erys & noseþrylles. And ȝif þe 32  
more partye of þese toknys, opere ellis alle comen, þe syke man  
moste nedys deyȝen, namlye & þo Accidentes contynwen, and  
specialy ȝif þat þe syke man haue y-be tofore manye daies in gode  
disposicioun, & after þilke disposicioun þese yuele accidentes fallen; 36

<sup>9</sup> *bleynesse*, leady colour. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. *bley*; mistake for *bleynes*, blains.



good disposicioun pilke yuel accidentis fallen; but sumtyme in þe  
 bigynnyng þese yuel accidentis fallen wickid, & aftirward bi good  
 gouernaile & good help of þe leche pilke yuel accidentis ben  
 4 departid & good comeþ, and þanne it is a [good]\* signe, for it bi-  
 tokeneth strenkþe of kynde, hauynge no drede of þe sjuknes, &  
 kunnyng of þe leche / O holi goost, al þing fulfyllinge, alle þingis  
 sanctifynge, & alle þingis liztnynge, & alle þingis gouernynge, opene  
 8 þe yzen of hem þat loken & reden on þis book, þat þei moun vndir-  
 stonde þat þing þat is weel seid, & þat þei moun demene<sup>1</sup> þoruþ þi  
 cleernes þat, þat is yuel seid, & specialy in þis caas<sup>2</sup> where þat  
 oonly not I þat am vnwijs & vnkunnyng, but also greete maistris  
 12 & more kunnyng han writen sotilliche, & han sett in þis caas  
 dyuers vnderstondynge. Ne þei ne I ne foond no wey in þis werk  
 þat myzte us make sikir, specialiche in scriuyngis of þe brayn  
 panne, in þe whiche cure<sup>3</sup> dyuers men haue<sup>3</sup> I-wrouzt dyuersliche.  
 16 <sup>4</sup>I wole bigynne at a symple wounde of þe fleisch of þe heed, in  
 þe which þat þer is noon hurtyng of þe brayn ne brayn panne. //  
 Biholde wheþir pilke wounde be maad wiþ a swerd or ony þing  
 sembla[b]le to it, & þanne sowe pilke wounde, & caste aboue þe

It is a good  
sign when  
evil symp-  
toms grow  
better.

May the  
Holy Ghost  
enlighten the  
readers.

[\* If. 64]

Nota  
Treatment of  
a symple  
wounde.

<sup>1</sup> demene, O.Fr. "demener," for *demen*.

<sup>2</sup> in þis caas. Lat.: in isto passu. See below *pas*.

<sup>3</sup> cure, *have*, above line.

20 ryztfullyche, for boþe herynge & opere comyn wyttes ben y-trublyde; Add. MS.  
 but sumtyme in þe bygynninge euyle accidentes comyþ, afterwarde, 12,056.  
 by good gouernayle & by gode helpe of the leche, þese euyle  
 accidentes ben departyde & good comyþ, & þenne yt is a good\*  
 24 signe, for it betoknyth strengþe off kynde, hauynge non drede of þe  
 syknesse & konyngnesse of þe leche. O holy gost, al thyng ful-  
 fyllinge, al þinge sanctifynge, lytnynge & gouernynge, opyne þe  
 eyzen of hem þat redyn in thys booke, þat þey mowen vnderstonde  
 28 þat þynge þat is wel seyde, & þat þey mowe demen þorwe þy  
 clernes þat þat<sup>5</sup> ys euyle seyde, specyalyche in þis cas where þat only  
 nouzte y þat am vnwys & vnkunnyng, but also grettere maistryes  
 & more kunnyng han y-writen dotousliche. & haþ y-sett in þis cas  
 32 <sup>6</sup>dyuerse vnderstondynge. Ne þey ne y ne fonde non wey in þis [<sup>6</sup> fol. 74 a]<sup>7</sup>  
 werke þat myzte maken vs sykere, specialiche in grefynges of þe  
 breyne panne, in whose cure dyuerse men han wrought dyuerslye;  
 y wyþ begynne at a symple wounde of þe flesch & of þe hed, in þe  
 36 whiche þat þere ys non hurtyng of þe brayn ne of þe brayn panne.  
 Byholde whar pilke wounde be mad wiþ a swerde opere enye þynge  
 semblable to hit, & þan sowe pylke wounde, & caste abouen þe

<sup>5</sup> MS. at.

<sup>7</sup> Heading of the page: *Cure of symple Wounde off þe hed.*



wounde þe poudre of lym tofore seid, & do al þing bi ordre, as it is conteyned aboue in þe chapitle of woundis of fleisch /

Treatment  
of a contused  
wound.

Apply  
a maturatif,

& if þat a wounde be maad in þe heed wiþ brusinge, as wiþ a mace,<sup>1</sup> or wiþ a staf, or ony þing þat brusip, þanne it is nessessarie to 4  
leie aboue þe brusinge a maturatif maad of .iiij. parties of watir, & oon partie of comoun oile & flour of wheete, þat suffisip to make it þikke,<sup>2</sup> til þat þe mater þat is brusid be maturid; þe which maturatif schal be do abroad vpon a linnen cloof & leid to þe 8  
wounde, & þou schalt fulfille þe wounde wiþ oile of rosis & zelke of an ey, & lynt of an oold linnen cloof medlid togidere, til þat þe wounde zeue quytture & þe akþe be aswagid. & aftirward leye in þe wounde drie lynt of old cloof, & fille þe wounde of þe same 12  
lynet, & leie aboue þe mundificatif of mel roset & barly mele, <sup>3</sup>til þat it be perfiztly clensid; & leie aboute þe wounde, from þe bigynnyng til þat þe wounde be parfiztly clensid, a defensif of bole armonyak, þe which I haue told ofte tyme; aftirward incarne 16  
it, þat is to seie brynge ouer fleisch, & aftirward consowde.

[<sup>3</sup> If. 64, bk.]  
a mundifi-  
catif,  
and  
a defensif.

Cure of a  
wound which  
touches the  
membrane.

& if þat þis wounde towche þe pannicle þat byndip boonys togidere, þow þat þe boon be not to-broken, charge it not litil, but

<sup>1</sup> mace, Lat. macia.

<sup>2</sup> MS. pilke.

Add. MS. 12,056. poudre of lym tofore seyde, and do alle þyng be ordre as yt is 20  
conteynede aboue in þe chapiteH off wounde of þe flesch; and 3if

Maturatif  
for brosure

þat a wounde be mad in þe hed with a brusinge, as with a mace oþere a staf, oþer with enye þyng þat brusyþ, þanne it is necessarie to leggen aboue þe brusinge a maturatyf, y-mad of foure partyes of 24  
water, & on partye of comyn oyle & floure of whete, þat suffiseþ to maken yt þikke, tyl þat þe matere þat is brusyde be matured; þe whiche maturatyff schal be do abroad on a clof & y-leyde to þe wonde, & þou schalt fulfille þe wounde with oyle of roses & þe 3olke 28  
of an neyze,<sup>4</sup> & lenet of an olde lynne clout y-medlyde to gedre, tyl þat þe wounde 3if quyter & þe akþe be aswagede. & afterwarde leye in þe wounde dreye lynet of lynne cloth, & fille þe wounde full of þe same lynet, & leye aboue þe mundificatyff of mel rosat & 32  
barlye mele, tyl þat he be perfitlye clansyde, & leye aboute þe wounde fro þe begynnyng, tyl þat þe wonde be perfitlie clansyde, a defensyf of bol armonyak, þe whiche y haue tolde of ofte tymes; afterwarde incarne hit—þat is to sigge, brynge ouere flesch, & after- 36  
warde consoude yt; and 3if þat þis wounde touchith þe pannycle þat bynde þe bonys togedre, þow þat þe bon be nouzt to-broken,

<sup>4</sup> neyze at the beginning of a line.



- take þerof good hede, & do þerynne in þe wounde hoot oile of rosis doun to þe pannicle þat byndiþ boonys togidere, til þat þer be noon akyng in þe wounde. & kepe þilke wounde as þou woldist
- 4 kepe opere woundis of þe brayn panne; & kepe þe brayn fro cold & fro heete, for cold is moost greuous to boonys & to panniclis þat ben woundid. þer ben summe maner men þat leien wiþout forþ on alle maner woundis of þe heed, wheþer it be wiþ wounde of þe
- 8 brayn panne or wiþoute þe wounde of þe brayn panne, in what maner þat þe heed be hurt, a lynnen cloof wet in þe oynement þat is maad on þis maner / Take white rosis libram ſ, oile of rosis 3 v, whiȝt wex 3 iij, þei melten alle togidere in an yren panne, & þei
- 12 maken <sup>2</sup>þerof .j. bodi, & boile it aftirward in good wyn bi þe space of an hour; & þei leten it aftirward nyȝ colden, & þei weten þerinne a pece of a lynnen clout, & þei schapen þilke pece wiþ a schere aftir þat þe wounde is, & þanne þei baþe þilke pece in good wiyn, &
- 16 þanne leie þilke pece [on þe wounde]\*, & anoon aftir þei leien vpon þilke pece on eiþir side of þe wounde a plumaciol I-wet in good hoot wiyn; & þei leien on a drie pelowe of herdis vpon þo two wete pelowis, þe which drie pelewe of herdis schal comprehende þe
- 20 tweie wete, & bynde hem faste; & þei ȝeuen to summen to drynke

Apply  
olium ro.  
hoot.

Nota

Some physicians use a general treatment for wounds on the head.

Entreet.<sup>1</sup>

They apply Compresses with an ointment,

[<sup>2</sup> ff. 65]

<sup>1</sup> Entreet. See entreten ne. entreat, Mätzner, *Dict.*

- charge yt noȝt litel but take þere of gode hede, & do in þe wounde hot oyle of roses don to þe pannycle, tyl þat þere be non akpe in þe wounde. & kepe þilke wounde, as þou woldiste kepen opere wondys
- 24 of þe brayn panne & of þe brayn, fro colde & from hete; ffor colde ys most greuest to bonys & to pannycles þat beþ woundyde. <sup>3</sup>þere ben some manere of men þat leggen withouten forth on alle manere wondys of þe hed, wheþere it be wiþ wounde of þe brayn panne
- 28 opere without wounde of þe brayn panne, in what manere þat þe hed ben y-hurt, a lynnen cloth y-wett in þe oignement y-made in þis manere: R whit resine lb. ſ., oyle of roses 3 v., whyt wex 3 iij., þey melten aȝt togedres in an erthyne panne, & þey maken þere of
- 32 on body, & þey boyllen yt afterward in gode wyn by þe space of an Oure; & þey leten afterwarde nyȝ colden, & þey weten þere ynne a pece of lynnen cloth, & þey schapen þilke pece with a schere aftere þe wounde ys, & þey baþen þylke pece in gode wyn, & þey leggen
- 36 þilke pece on þe wounde,\* and anon afterwarde þey leggen on þilke pece on eiþere syde of þe wounde a plumacyole, y-wet in good hote wyn, & þey leggen on a drye pylwe of herdes vpon þo tweie wete pylwes, þe whiche dreie pylwe schaff comprehende þe tweie wete
- 40 & bynden hem faste; and þey ȝeuen some men to drynken gode

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[<sup>3</sup> fol. 74 b]

Cura  
Ancellina



and diet with  
wine and  
fowls.

I never dared  
to try this  
treatment.

[<sup>2</sup> If. 65, bk.]

*Nota bene.*  
Wine is  
especially  
dangerous.

Treatment if  
the skull is  
broken:

riȝt<sup>1</sup> good wyn, & to ete good fleisch of hennes & of capouns; &<sup>1</sup>  
pei comaunden to drynke a drope of water; & pei gouernen on þis  
maner alle men þat ben woundid in þe heed differentliche, & pei  
seyn þat mo men ben heelid bi þis maner cure þan dien. But bi as 4  
myche as alle auctouris ben azens þis cure, namely in dietynge, I ne  
was neuere hardi to preue þis maner cure; for in mannys bodi a  
medicyn schal not be preued which þat is not acordynge to resoun /  
For alle autouris acorden þat þer is no þing<sup>2</sup> þat so soone greueþ þe 8  
brayn & þe senewis as wyn doiþ, & vsynge of fleisch is cause of  
bryngynge yn an hoot enpostyme. Neuere-þe-latter if a man þat  
vsip of custum sich a maner dietynge haue a strong<sup>1</sup> heed, in his  
hele him dredip no wyn, & þe vertu of him þat is sijk be strong<sup>1</sup>— 12  
in sum manere of folk wiþ þis maner gouernaile, vertu is more  
strenkþid, & þe sunner þei ben heelid. But I ne procede not wiþ  
sich a maner dietynge bi cause of drede lest an hoot enpostyme  
schulde come to þe sore, but I procede in dietynge & worche aboute 16  
þe wounde as I haue seid tofore.

Opere men loke [in brekynges of þe brayn panne, wheþer þat]\*  
þe brekynge of þe brayn panne be with a greet wounde, or smal

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: & præcipiunt quod unam guttam aquæ non bibat.

Add. MS. 12,056. wyn, & to eten gode flessch of capouns & of hennys; & þey 20  
comaunden to drynken a drope watere; and þey gouernen on þis  
manere alle men þat ben woundyde in þe hed differentlyche, & þey  
sigge þat mo<sup>3</sup> men ben y-helyde by þis manere cure þen dyȝen.  
But by as myche as alle auttours beþ aȝeyns þis cure, namlyche in 24  
dyetynge, y ne was neuere hardye to preuen þis manere of cure;  
ffor in mannys bodye a medycine schal nouȝt ben preuyde, whiche  
þat is nouȝt acordynge to resoun; ffor alle auctores acorden, þat þere  
ys nouȝynge þat so sone greuyth þe brayn & þe synwes as wyn doiþ, 28  
and vsynge of flesch ys cause of bryngynge in an hot Emposteme.  
Neuere þe latere ȝif a man þat vsith of custome swyche a manere  
dyetynge haffe a stronge hed, & in hys hele he dredyth non wyn,  
[<sup>4</sup> fol. 75 a] & þe vertue of hym þat ys seek<sup>4</sup> be stronge, in some manere of folk 32  
with þis manere of gouernaylle vertue ys more y-streynþed, & sunnere  
þey ben y-helyde. But y ne procede nouȝt wiþ swyche a manere  
dyetynge, by cause of drede leste an hote empostome scholde come  
to þe sore; but y procede in dyetynge & worche aboute þe wounde, 36  
as y haue seyde tofore. Opere men loken\* in brekynges of þe  
brayn panne, wheþer þat þe brekynge of þe breyne panne be with a  
gret wounde opere a smal wounde, opere without wounde; and ȝif

<sup>3</sup> MS. no.



wounde, or withoute wounde. & if þat þer be a greet wounde, þei  
 loken wheþer þei moun se if ony pece of þe brayn panne be to-  
 broken, & þei don it away. & aftirward þei putten bitwene þe  
 4 brayn panne & duram matrem a þinne clout wet in þe white of an  
 ey, & sumwhat þe white compressid out, & þei fulfillen al þe wounde  
 of þe brayn panne with sich a maner cloop. & þei leyn in þe ouer  
 wounde which þat is in þe fleisch, lynet wet in þe white of an ey,  
 8 til þat þe blood be staunchid; <sup>1</sup>& þei leien aboue a plumaciol wet  
 in an ey. & whanne þe blood is staunchid, þei leien a dreie cloop  
 vndir þe brayn panne in þe wounde, & þei leien aboue þe wounde a  
 potage, þe which engendriþ quytture; & whanne þat þe quytture is  
 12 engendrid, þei leien in þe wounde carp,<sup>2</sup> eipir lynet of a cloute; &  
 þei anoynte aboute þe wounde wiþ vnguento fusco; & at þe laste  
 eende þei leien aboue apostolicon.<sup>3</sup>

Broken pieces  
are removed,wet com-  
presses  
applied to  
stanch the  
blood;

[1 ff. 66]

then dry  
compresses,  
a poultice,and an  
ointment.

& þei asaie in þis maner if þat þe brekyng of þe brayn panne  
 16 be wiþ a rimel,<sup>4</sup> þat is to seie a chene, eipir a creueis; & if þat  
 ilke creueis peerse to wiþinne, makynge þe sike man to streyne his

Treatment of  
a fissure of  
the skull;

<sup>2</sup> *carp*, Lat. *carpia*, 'charpie.' *oile* struck through after *carp*.

<sup>3</sup> *Apostolorum Unguentum*, a cleansing Ointment, so call'd, because it is made of twelve Drugs, according to the number of the Apostles.—Kersey. 1706.

<sup>4</sup> *rimel*, Lat.: *si fractura esset rimalis*. O.Fr. *rimule*, Lat. *rimula*, a small chink.

þat þere ben a gret wounde þey loken wheþere þey mowe seen 3if  
 enye pece of þe brayn panne ben to-broken, & þey don yt away.  
 20 And afterwarde þey putten bytwene þe brayn panne & duram  
 matrem a þenne clout y-wett in þe whyte of an eyze, & sumwhat þe  
 whyte compressyde out, & þey fulfyllen alle þe wounde of þe brayn  
 panne with swiche a manere cloth. & þey leggen in þe ofere  
 24 wounde whiche þat ys in þe flesch, lenyt y-wett in þe whyte of an  
 eyze, tyl þat þe blode be staunchyde; & þey leggen aboue a  
 plumacyole y-wet in an eyze. And whanne þat þe blode ys y-  
 staunchyde, þey leggen a dreie cloth vndire þe brayn panne in þe  
 28 wounde, and þey leggen aboue þe wounde a potage, the whiche  
 engendryth quytere; & whenne þat þe quyter ys engendryde, þey  
 leggen in þe wounde carp oþere lyneth of a clout; and þey anoynt<sup>5</sup>  
 aboute þe wounde with oygnement fusco; and at þe laste ende þey  
 32 leggen aboue Apostolicon. And þey assayen in þis manere: 3if þat  
 þe brekyng of þe brayn panne be with a rimele, þat ys to seye a  
 chyne, oþere a creueys; & 3if þat þilke creveys perse to wiþinne,  
 makynge þe syke man to streynen hys mouþ & hys nese, & þey

Add. MS.  
12,056.

<sup>5</sup> At the end of the line.



Some physicians open the fissure from end to end;

which is entirely wrong.  
[5 lf. 66, bk.]

Better open only one end of the fissure, make several holes in the skull,

and remove a piece of the bone.

mouþ & his nose, & þei maken him þanne to blowen, & þei loken<sup>1</sup> if ony þing<sup>2</sup> exale out bi þilke rimele,<sup>2</sup>— as blod or ony other mater, þei drede not to perse þilke rimelle. & þanne summe seien þat þilke rimele schulde be to-broke eiþir peersid from þe toon eende to 4 þe toþir wiþ rinspindel<sup>3</sup>, perischinge þe brayn scolle / A rinspindil is an instrument þat coteleris poudren<sup>4</sup> with her haftis, þe which figure schal be schapen in þis same chapitle folowyng. & þe worste þing<sup>5</sup> þat a man may do is to peerse þe rimele on boþe sidis / 8 But opere<sup>5</sup> men don bettere which þat peerse þe rimele on þe oon eende which is moost hangyng; & þei maken as manye hoolis, oon biside anoper, as it is nessessarie to make an hole in þe brayn panne, bi þe which hole if ony þing<sup>6</sup> be fallen vpon, duram matrem 12 myzte be clensid; & þese, in as myche as touchinge trepanacioun<sup>6</sup> worchip best / & whanne þat þei han maad manye hoolis, þei kutten from oon hole to anoper hole wiþ an instrument, þat þei moun drawe out þe boon þat is bitwene þe ordure of holis þat was 16 maad & þe rimele, & þei casten him away, & aftirward þei proceden

<sup>1</sup> þanne struck through after loken.

<sup>2</sup> as blod or ony oper mater. þei drede not to perse þilke rimelle, this is as a note at the bottom of the page.

<sup>3</sup> rinspindil, see mod. Germ. Rennspindel, f., upright drill, pump drill. Trépan.—Rumpf, *Technolog. Dict.*

<sup>4</sup> poudren for boren, under the influence of 'pore.' Lat. porus.

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: quantum est ad trypanacionem.


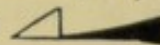

Add. MS. 12,056. maken hym þenne to blowen, & þey loken 3if enye þynge exale out by þilke rymele. \* & 3if þat enye þynge exale out by þylke rymele, as blod ore enye opere matere, þey drede nozt to perce þilke rymele; 20 and þenne some sigge þat þilke rymele scholde be to-broke opere y-perced. from þat one ende to þat opere with Rynspyndles, persynge þe braynscolle. <sup>7</sup>A rynspyndeH ys an Instrument þat Cutlers poudren wiþ here hefttes, whose ffigure schal be schappyde<sup>8</sup> in þe 24 same chapitle ffolwyng. And þe worste þynge þat a man may do, ys to perce þe rymele on boþe sydes. But opere men don bettyre whiche þat persen þe rymele at þat one ende, whyche is moste hongyng; and þey maken as many holys on bysyde an opere, as 28 bep<sup>9</sup> necessarie to maken an hole in þe brayn panne, be þe whiche hole 3if enye þynge bep<sup>9</sup> fallen vpon þe duram matrem myzte ben y-clansyde; & þese in as myche as towchyng trepanacioun worchith best. And whenne þat þey haue made manye holys, þey kutten 32 from on hole to an opere with an spatymyne,<sup>10</sup> þat ys an Instrument, þat þey mowe drawyne out þe bon, þat ys betwene þe ordre of holys þat was y-made & þe rymele, & þey casten hym aweye, afterwarde

<sup>8</sup> MS. *scharpyde*. *rp* for *pp*, like *lk* for *kk*. See p. 120.

<sup>9</sup> þ above line.

<sup>10</sup> Lat.: cum spatumine.



forþ in opere maner þingis as it is seid tofore / For whanne þou  
 desirist way of<sup>1</sup> trepaninge [þis manere trepanynge]\* sufficiþ to  
 þee in þe rimelis of þe brayn panne. þis schal be þe foorme of a  
 4 trepane [with þe whiche þe brayn scolle schal be trepaned wiþ]<sup>\*</sup>  
. & þis is þe foorme of a spatina, wiþ þe which a man  
 schal kutte from oon hole to anoþer hole . & þou schalt  
 smyte wiþ a mal<sup>2</sup> eiþer an hamer on þe greet eende; & whanne þou  
 8 hast remeued of þe boon þat schal be remoued, euene þe brynkis  
 with schauynge, þat þou mowe not leue no maner scharpnes in þe  
 brynkis. þis is þe maner of þe schap ,<sup>3</sup> & þis schauē schal  
 kutte on þe side þat foldiþ ynward, & it schal be blunt on þe oon  
 12 side þat is outward. & þei fulfillen þe wounde þat is wiþinne þe  
 fleisch wiþoutforþ, as I haue seid, with þe cloþ expressid of þe  
 white of an ey & lynet, til þat þe wounde be ful, & also til þat  
 þe kynde haue regendrid a repeirement, þe which schal fulfille  
 16 þe place þere as þe boon was don away. Aftirward þei curen  
 þe wounde aftir comoun cure of woundis / Alle opere maner of  
 trepanacioun is comprehendid vndir o summe, þou3 þat summen  
 ordeyne particuler aftir her dyuyse, diuers maners.

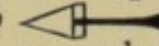
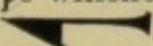
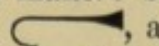
20 But bi as myche as I haue not seen in þis caas no way þat

<sup>1</sup> þe struck through after of.<sup>2</sup> mal, Lat. malleus.

A description  
 of the instru-  
 ments used:  
 the trepan,  
 the spatina  
 (spattle).

[<sup>3</sup> ff. 67]

The further  
 treatment  
 is the usual  
 one for  
 wounds.

þey proceden forth in opere manere thynges, as yt is seyde tofore. Add. MS.  
 And whenne þat þou desiriste þe wey of trepanynge, \* þis manere 12,056.  
 trepanynge suffiseþ to þe in þe rimeles of þe brayn panne. þis schal  
 24 ben þe forme of a trepane, \* with þe whiche þe brayn scolle schal be  
 trepaned wiþ . And þis is þe forme off a spatimene, with  
 þe whiche a man schal kutte with from on hole to an opere hole  
. And þou schalt smyten with a Mal opere an hamere  
 28 vpon þe gret ende; and whenne þou haste remefed of þe bon þat  
 schal be remeffyde, euene þe brynkes wiþ schauynge, þat þere mowe  
 nozt lefe non manere scharpnesse in þe brynkes. þis ys þe manere  
 of þy schafe , and þis schafe schal kutten on þe syde þat  
 32 feldyþ inwarde, & schal be blunt on þe syde þat ys outwarde.  
 And þenne fulfyllen þe wounde þat is in þe flesch, wiþoutforþ as y  
 haue seyde tofore, with cloþ expressyde of þe whyte of an eyze, &  
 lynet to þat þe wounde be ful, and also tyl þat þe kynde haue  
 36 regeneryd a repeyrement, þe whiche schal fulfille þe place where  
 þat þe bon was don away. <sup>4</sup>Afterwarde þey cure þe wounde aftere  
 comyn cure of wondys. Alle opere manere of trepanacioun ys  
 comprehendyde vndire on Somme, þow3 þat sum men ordeynen  
 40 partyklerliche aftere here devyse, dyuerse maners. But be as  
 myche as y haue nozt seyne in þis place no wey þat myzte remefe

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 76 a]



Trepanning  
is dangerous.

Galien

and

Auicen

used medi-  
cines instead  
of operating.

[<sup>3</sup> lf. 67, bk.]

Nota.

I operate if  
the broken  
piece

.1.  
gets under  
the healthy  
bone.

.2.  
or hurts the  
dura mater,

causing a  
tumour,

then cramp,

myzte remeue me from doute, bi as myche as I haue saied bi longe  
tyme, boþe bi summe auctouris experimentis, & also bi myn experi-  
ment<sup>t</sup>, & þat wei is not certeyn / þerfore here þei Galien, þat seiþ:  
if we mowe remeue quytture wiþoute doynge awei of boonys þat 4  
schulde be do away, it is good / And auicen & serapie<sup>1</sup> acorden to  
þe same sentence of cure of heed akþe þat comeþ of smytynge or  
ellis of fallynge, where þat he towchiþ<sup>2</sup> þe worchinge of hurtis of  
þe brayn <sup>3</sup>panne, not bi trepanacioun, but bi emplastris & medicyns / 8  
& also I took good hede þat manye mo men ben heelid bi maner  
of medicyns & emplastris, þan ben heelid bi trapanes, þat ben  
peersynge or þrillynge / For I ne vse not instrumentis to remeue  
the boon but in two causis / þe oon cause is if þat þe brayn panne 12  
be so myche I-slend<sup>4</sup> þat þe part þat is broke, entre vndir þe partie  
þat is hool / þe secunde caas is, if ony pece be departid from þe  
brayn panne, þe which þat prickiþ *duram matrem* / In þe firste  
caas *dura mater* is compressid. In þe secunde caas *dura mater* is 16  
prickid, which is cause of akþe, & akyng is cause of drawynge  
humouris, þere engendriþ an empostyme vpon þe same pannicle, þe  
which is cause of a crampe, & of opere accidentis tofore seid; &

<sup>1</sup> *Serapie*, probably Ser. the Elder, an Arab physician, cc. 900.

<sup>2</sup> *towchiþ* for *techþ*.

<sup>4</sup> *islend*, Add. MS. *ysclend*. See *slent*, to tear, to rend (Dorset).—Halliwell.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

me fro doute, by as myche as y haue assayed longe tyme boþe by 20  
sum auctores experyment<sup>t</sup>, & also by myn experyment, & þat wey  
is nozt certeyn, þerefore here þey Galien, whiche þat seiþ: 3if we  
mowe remywe quyter without doynge away bonys þat scholde be  
do away, hyt is good. And Auisene & Serapio acorden to þe same 24  
sentense of cure of hed-akþe, þat comyþ off smytynges opere ellys of  
fallynge, where þat he techith þe worchyng of hurtynges of þe  
brayn panne & of þe brayn, nozt by trepanacioun, but by emplastres  
& by medycines. And also y toke gode hede þat manye mo men 28  
ben y-helyde by manere medycines & emplastres, þenne ben y-helyde  
by trapanes þat beþ persynge opere þryllynge. Ffor y ne vse nozt  
Instrumentes to remywe þe bon, but in tweye cases—þat on cas ys  
3if þat þe breyn panne be so myche y-scleud, þat þe part þat ys 32  
y-broke entre vndir þe partye þat ys hol, þe secunde cas ys 3if þat  
enye pece be departyde from þe brayn panne, whyche þat pryketþ  
*duram matrem*. In þe firste cas *dura mater* ys compressede. In þe  
secunde cas *dura mater* ys y-prikyde, þe whiche ys cause of akþe, 36  
& akyng ys cause of drawynge of humoures, the whiche engendriþ  
a posteme vpon þe same pannycle, the whiche is cause of a<sup>5</sup> crampe,  
& of opere accidentes tofore seyde, & at þe laste þey bryngen dep

<sup>5</sup> *a*, above line.



at þe laste þei bryngen deef to þe pacient / In þese .ij. causis finally death.  
 I leue hem<sup>1</sup> constreyned to remeue a boon wiþ handely<sup>2</sup> instru-  
 mentis. In alle opere maners of brechis eiper in creueis, in what  
 4 maner þat þei happen, þow3 þat I be not siker of þe pacientis lijf, In all other cases I use medicine,  
 neþeles I procede in þis maner with more trist, bisekyng alwey  
 help of god, þe which þat<sup>3</sup> haþ heelid mo men bi myn hondis, þat<sup>4</sup> [3 lf. 68]  
 am his instrument, þan haue ben deed, nou3t azenstondynge alle and by God's help I have generally been successful.  
 8 my cautels & helpinge. For soþe þat I haue biholde soþliche resonis  
 & þe proces of opere auctouris, I holde þis wey lasse dredful þan  
 any opere / for I folowe þe sentence of Galien, which þat seiþ: Galien  
 if þat a man haue but o wei to his hele,<sup>4</sup> it is good þat he holde  
 12 pilke wey, þow3 þat it be yuel.

& whanne þat I come to a man þat is woundid in þe heed, & I Treatment of fractures of the skull, without trepanning:  
 knowe þat þe brayn panne be broke, bi tokenes tofore seid, first I  
 considere þe vertu of him þat is pacient, & also his age & alle  
 16 opere particuler þing, & nameli vertu, & gladliche I leue þe cure,  
 if þat I se ony deedly tokenes, but if it so be þat I be preied wiþ  
 þe grettere instaunce of þe freendis of þe sike man. & not azen-  
 stondynge her preier I telle hise freendis þat bi wey of resoun þe

<sup>1</sup> hem for am; leue is erroneously added in margin.

<sup>2</sup> handely ne. handy.

<sup>4</sup> MS. iwele.

20 to þe pacient. In þese tweye causes y am constreynde to remefe a Add. MS. 12,056.  
 bon with handly Instrumentes. In alle opere manere of breches  
 opere of crefeys, in what manere þat þey happen, þow3 þat y be  
 not sykere of þe paciente, naþeles y procede in þis manere with  
 24 more trest, by sechyng alweye help of god, þe whyche þat haþ  
 y-helyde mo m<sup>5</sup>en be myn handys, þat am hys Instrument, þenne  
 han be ded, nou3t azeynestondynge al my cauteles & <sup>6</sup>helpynge. [6 fol. 76 b]  
 Ffor sytthe þat y haf beholde sotelyche þe resouns & þe processes  
 28 of opere auctorys, y holde þis wey lesse dredful þenne enye opere.  
 Ffor y folwe þe sentence of galien, which þat seiþ: 3if þat a man  
 hath but o wey to hys hele, hyt ys gode þat he holde pilke weye,  
 þow3 þat pilke wey be eueH. And whenne þat y come to a Man  
 32 þat is woundyde in the hed, & knowe þat hys breyn panne ys  
 to-broke, by þe tokenys tofore seyde, ffirste y considere þe vertu of  
 hym þat ys pacient, & also hys age & alle oper<sup>7</sup> partyclere thyng,  
 & namly vertue. And gladliche y leue þe cure. 3if þat y se enye  
 36 dedlye signes; but 3if þat so be þat y be preyde wiþ the grettere  
 Instaunce of þe frendes of þe seke man. And not azeynestondynge  
 here preyere, y telle hys frendys þat by resoun þe pacient scholde

<sup>5</sup> MS. m, en cut away.

<sup>7</sup> oper; above line.



If there are  
no mortal  
symptoms  
and if the  
wound is  
large,

[1 ff. 68, bk.]

I shave the  
head and  
apply  
*Olium  
Rosarum*,

a defensif  
ointment,

compresses,  
and band-  
ages.

patient schulde die, & panne I worche aboute him as in a man in  
whom yuele accidentis appere. & if þat þe signys ben not  
deedliche, & þe breche of þe brayn panne be with a greet wounde  
of þe heed, & þat a greet partie of þe brayn panne be do away al 4  
togidere, so þat I mowe <sup>1</sup>haue a good wey to leie medicyns vpon  
*duram matrem* / First I do schauē his heed, afterward I leie on an  
eeld linnen clout & a þenne,<sup>2</sup> wett in .ij. parties of oile of rosis  
swete smellynge, & oon partie of mel roset colat, bitwene þe *duram* 8  
*matrem* & þe brayn panne slygly & softli, þat *dura mater* be not  
compressid wip þe clop þat is wet tofore seid; & I fulfille þe  
wounde of þe fleisch wip lint of oold linnen clop wett in þe zelke  
of an ey, & oile of rosis, boþe liche myche; & anoynte aboute þe 12  
wounde wip a defensif of bole armoniak ofte tymes I-seid, & leie  
aboute þe wounde a plumaciol, þe which þat schal keuere al þe  
wounde; & panne aboute al-togidere I leie a greet plumaciol, wett  
in good hoot wiyn. & aftirward I bynde þe wounde wip a boond, 16  
byndynge ofte tymes aboute þe heed wip þe lynet & þe clop, þe  
which þat is in þe wounde & aboute þe wounde myzte not slide to  
no partie, & bynde þe wounde in þat maner þat *dura mater* bi no

<sup>2</sup> MS. *panne*, error for *a þenne*. Lat.: *pannum lineum vetustum et subtile*. See below.

Add. MS. 12,056. deyze, & þenne y wirche aboute hym, as y worche in a Man in 20  
whom yuel accidentes apere. And 3if þat þe signes be nought  
dedlyche, & þe breche of þe breyn panne be with a gret wounde of  
þe hed, & þat a grete partye of þe breyn panne be don awaye alle  
togedre, so þat y mowe han a gode wey to legge medycynes vpon 24  
*duram matrem*. ffirste y do schaffe hys hed, afterwarde y legge an  
olde linnen clout & a þenne, y-wett in two parties of oyle of rosys  
swote smellynge, & on partye of mel rosat colat bytwene þe *duram*  
*matrem* and þe brayn panne, slyglye & softlye, þat *dura mater* be 28  
nozt compressyde with þe cloth þat ys y-wett tofore seyde, & y  
fulfille þe wounde of þe flesch with lynt of olde linnen clop wet in  
þe 3olke of an eyze & oyle of roses, of boþe y-lyche myche; & y  
anoynte aboute þe wounde with deffensyfe of bol armonyak ofte 32  
tymes seyde, & y legge abouen þe wounde a plumacyole whiche þat  
schal keuere alle þe wounde, and þenne <sup>3</sup>abouen alle togedre y  
legge a grete plumacyole in-wet in gode hot wyn. And afterwarde  
y bynde þe wounde with a bande, in byndynge ofte tymes aboute þe 36  
hed, þat þe lynet & þe clop whyche þat is in þe wounde & aboute  
þe wounde myzte nozt slyde to non partye, and y bynde þe wounde  
in þat manere þat *dura mater* be no weye be compressyde. þe

[3 fol. 77 a]



- wey be compressid. þe heeris of þe heed schulen be remeued away on þis maner: clippe hem first with scheris, afterward take .ij. parties of water cold, & oon partie of oile <sup>1</sup>of rosis in somer, & [1 ff. 69]
- 4 make hoot þe same water & oile in wyntir, & waische þe heed softliche, takynge hede þat no water ne oile entre into þe wounde, & þanne schauē it wiþ a rasour / & whanne þat I haue serued þe pacient on þis maner, I lete him reste til on þe morowe, & aftirward
- 8 I serue þe wounde on þe same maner til þat þe wounde be hool / Neþeles I considere if þat þe pacient be ful of blood, & his vertu be strong, & if he be 3ongt, & litil blood bled at his wounde, & whanne alle þese þingis acorden, I make him to be leten blood on þe I bleed
- 12 coral<sup>2</sup> veyne of þe arme / & but if he mowe go to priuy, I helpe him oonys aday, or wiþ suppositories or wiþ clisterie; & I procede in dietynge, as I haue seid in þe chapitle of dietynge / & whanne þat þe wounde makip sufficiently quytture, I leie in þe wounde of If pus is discharged
- 16 þe brayn panne, & vpon þe brayn panne, as I haue don tofore; & aboue þe wounde I leie a mundificatif of mel roset, colat, & barly mele, til þat þe wounde be clensid, & þat þe dura mater be sowdid I use a mundificatif
- with þe brayn panne / & þanne I caste in þe wounde of þe heed and puluis capitalis.
- 20 a poudre maad on þis maner / Take frank encense & ciperi, þat is þe

<sup>2</sup> coral veyne, vena cephalica.

- herys of þe hed schul be remywede away on þis manere: clippe hem firste with scherys, afterwarde take two partyes of colde water & on partye of oyle of roses in somere, & make hot þe same watyr Add. MS. 12,056.
- 24 & þe oyle in wyntere & wassche þe hed softliche, takynge hede þat non watere ne oyle entre into þe wounde, & þenne schaffe yt with a rasoure. & whenne þat y haue seruyde þe pacient on þis manere, y lete hym resten tyl on þe morwe; and afterwarde y serfe þe wounde
- 28 on þe same manere tyl þat þe wounde be hol. Napeles y consydere 3if þat þe pacient be replet of blod, & hys vertue be stronge; & 3if þat he be 3onge, & lytel blod haue nou3t go out of hys wounde, & whanne alle þese þynges acorde, y make hym to by leten blod on þe
- 32 coral veyne of þe arme; & but 3if he mowe schiten, y helpe hym onys a day, opere wiþ suppositorye opere wiþ clisterye; and y procede in dyetynge as y haue seyde in þe chapyteH of dyetynge. And whenne makyth sufesentlyche quyter, y legge in þe wounde
- 36 of þe brayn panne & vpon þe brayn panne as y haue don toforn, & aboue þe wounde y legge a mundyficatyff of mel rosat colat & barlye mele, tyl þat þe wounde ben y-clansyde, & þat þe dura mater be y-soudyde wiþ þe breyn panne; & þenne y caste in þe wounde of
- 40 þe hed, poudre y-mad on þis manere: R frank Ensence, ciperi, þe



[<sup>1</sup> lf. 69, bk.]<sup>2</sup> note of a cipres, <sup>1</sup>seed of mirtilles, mirre, ana. orobi,  $\bar{z}$  j; make poudre, & leie þis poudre in þe wounde, & aboue þe poudre leie þedis of lynnē cloþ, or ellis lynet; & aboue al-togidere leie an entreet maad of .ij. parties of whizt rosyn,<sup>3</sup> & oon partie of wex 4 moltun togidere vpon stronge vynegre, & colid þoru a þinne streynour vpon cold water / & whanne þin hondis ben anoyntid wiþ oile of rosis, malaxe<sup>4</sup> it longe tyme togidere. In somer take euene porcioun of whizt rosyn & of wex; in wyntir / take .iiij. 8 partis of rosyn,\* & þe .v part of wex, & drawe abroad þat treet<sup>5</sup> on a cloþ, & leie it on þe wounde til þat he be perfizliche cicatrisid. & if þat þer were ony partie of þe boon þat prickide duram matrem, þanne I aforce me to remeue þilke partie þat 12 prickiþ wiþ pynsouns,<sup>6</sup> if þat I may; & if þilke partie þat prickiþ be ioyned so faste to þe hool boon þat he wolde not be remeued away, þanne I remeue him away wiþ rugement<sup>7</sup> from þe partie þat halt,<sup>8</sup> in makynge oon hole or two, or mo, aftir þe quantite of þe 16

Lay over all an  
Entreet  
(Plaster)  
made from  
wax and oil  
of roses.

I remove a  
bone which  
pricks the  
membrane,  
with pincers.

<sup>2</sup> At the foot of lf. 69 is this note: R *radicis erios, aristologe, thuris, mer, aloes, sanguis draconis, orobus ana, ffac puluis.*

<sup>3</sup> whight rosyn, hardened Terpentine.

<sup>4</sup> malaxe, Lat. malaxo, mollify.

<sup>5</sup> treet = entreet. See p. 123, note 1.

<sup>6</sup> wiþ pynsouns, cum piccario. See Pynsone, Tenella. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 400.

<sup>7</sup> wiþ rugement. Lat.: cum rugine ruginando, Fr. rugine, ruginer.

<sup>8</sup> Both MSS. omit to translate the Lat. *si non possum.*

Add. MS. 12,056. note of cypresse, sede of mirtylles, mirre ana.  $\bar{z}$  i., oreby.  $\bar{z}$  j., mak poudre & leye þis poudre in þe wounde, & aboue þe poudre leye þe þedys of lynne cloþ opere ellis lynet; and aboffe al togedire y-legge an entrete <sup>9</sup>y-made of two partyes of whyte resyn & on party 20 of wex y-molten togedre, & vpon stronge Vynegre, & y-colyd þorwe a þenne streynoure vpon<sup>10</sup> colde water; & whenne þat þyne hondys ben anoyntede with oyle of roses, & malaxe yt longe tyme togedyre. In somere take euene porcioun of whyt resyn & of wex; in wyntere 24 take foure partyes of —\* & þe fiftte partye of wex, & y-drawe abroad þilke tret on a cloþ & legge yt on þe wounde, tyl þat he be perfizliche cycatrysed. And 3if þat þere were anye —\* of a bon. whiche þat prekyde duram matrem, þenne y aforce me to remeffe 28 þilke partye þat prykeþ with pynsounes 3if y may. And 3if þilke partye þat prikeþ ys y-ioynede so faste to þe hol bon þat he nyl nouzt be remeffyd away, þenne y remeffe hym awaye wiþ rugenyng. from þe partye þat halt, in makynge an hole, opere two, opere mo, 32 after þe quantyte of þe bon þat scholde be don away,\* þat halt with þe hole bon; & afterwarde y kutte with a spatymene from on hole

<sup>10</sup> MS. o pound.



- boon þat schulde be don away [þat halt with þe hole bon & afterwarde y kutte with a spatymene from on hole to anoþere tyl al þe bon be remeffyde awaye.]\* / & whanne þat þe boon is remeued
- 4 awei; I procede in þe cure as it is <sup>1</sup>seid in þis chapitle / But [1 ff. 70]
- whanne I remeue a boon wiþ instrumentis of þe brayn panne, panne I stoppe þe sijk mannes eeris, þat he mowe not heere þe I stop the patient's ears during the operation.
- 8 þat is broke, þe which þat goiþ vndir þe partie þat is hool, & compressiþ þe dura mater. & if þat a gobet eiþir a pece of a boon holde sumwhat in þe wounde, & myȝte not lyȝtliche be remeued away, & he prickiþ not dura mater ne compressiþ not dura mater,
- 12 þanne at þe bigynnyng I do on þe boon hoot oile of rosis, & I fulfille þe wounde wiþ oile of rosis & þe ȝelke of an ey medlid Nota
- togidere, til þat þe boon be neischid & may lyȝtliche be remoued I soften the bone before removing it.
- 16 worching bitwene þe boon & duram matrem, as it is seid tofore /
- & if þat þe breche of þe brayn panne were as a creueis or ellis I-slend, & neiþer part of þe boon were lowere þan oþer, þanne I considere if þat ilke slendynge<sup>2</sup> perce al þe brayn panne; & þat
- 20 þou schalt knowe bi þe tokenes tofore seid, or ellis þou schalt knowe bi þis signe, þat neuere failiþ / Make <sup>3</sup>a plastre of poudre of [3 ff. 70, bk.]

<sup>2</sup> slendynge, see p. 128, note 4.

- to anoþere tyl al þe bon be remeffyde awaye.\* And whenne þe bon Add. MS. 12,056.
- ys remeffyde away, y procede in þe cure, as yt is seyde in þis same
- 24 chapyteH. But whanne þat y remeffe a bon with Instrumentes of þe brayn panne, þenne y stoppe þe syke mannys eres, þat he mowe noȝt here þe sonn of þe eyren þat trepanyth. And y remeffe þe same manere, þe partye þat is broke, whiche þat goþ vndire þe
- 28 partye þat ys hol, & compressyth þe dura mater; and ȝif þat a gobbet oþere a pece of a bon helde sumwhat in þe wounde, & myȝte noȝt lyȝtlye be remeffyde away, and he prikyde nouȝt ne compressyde nouȝt duram matrem, þenne at þe bygynnyng y do on
- 32 þe bon hot oyle of rosys, and y fulfille þe wounde with oyle of roses & þe ȝolke of an eyȝe y-medled togedire, tyl þat þe bon be y-nesschyde, and mowe lyȝtliche be remywed awaye; þenne y remeffe þe bon, & y procede in worchyng bytwene þe bon &
- 36 duram matrem, as it is seyde tofore. & ȝif þat þe breche of þe breyn panne <sup>4</sup>were as a cerfes, oþere ellys y-slend, & neiþere party [4 fol. 78 a]
- of þe bon were lowere þenne oþere, þen y consydere ȝif þilke slendynge parten alle þe breyn panne, & þat þou schalt y-knowe by
- 40 þe toknys tofore seyde, oþere ellys þou schalt y-knowe by þis signe þat neuere faileþ: make a plastre of þe poudre of mastyk & þe



How to discern by means of a Plaster, whether the fissure pierces the skull or not.

When the skull is pierced,

some physicians use trepanning.

[4 M. 71]

Nota.

mastik & þe white of an ey, medlid togidere as pikke<sup>1</sup> as hony, & distende<sup>2</sup> it vpon a clop, & leie it on þe place þat is hurt fro morowe til euen, or ellis from þe euene til þe morowe / & whanne þat þe plastre is remoued away, if þat þe creueis peerse þoruþ þe 4 brayn panne, þou schalt se þe plastre more drie azens þe creueis þan in ony oþer place, for þe greet heete þat cometh fro þe brayn [& 3if þe breyn panne]\* be nouþt I-slend þoruþ, þe plastre schal be nomore drie aboue þe creueis þan on anoþer place / & if þe creueis perse 8 not þe brayn scolle, þe cure is as it is seid in þe bigynnyng of þis chapitle, þere as I tolde of cure of wounde of þe heed, where þat þe brayn panne eiþer þe brain is not hurt. For if þat ilke remile peerse þe brayn panne, þer is a greet doute in þe caas, for summen seien þat 12 it is impossible sich a wounde to heele; but if þe remele be trepaned, & a quantite of þe boon be doon away, þat þe superfluyte þat is cast vpon duram matrem may be doon away, or ellis þe dura mater schulde putrifien & be corrupt, & bi þat skil<sup>3</sup> þe pacient schulde 16 die, þe which þat myzte<sup>4</sup> be heeled bi þe remeuyng of þe boon / Neþeles I þat haue seen in trepaninge greet perel, namely whanne

<sup>1</sup> MS. pilke.

<sup>2</sup> distende, Lat. distendo.

<sup>3</sup> bi þat skil, Lat. quare. Skil = causa, synon. with 'resoun' occurs frequently in *Polychron.* See Gloss. The same construction in: '& by þe same skile' ea ratione, *ibid.*, iii. 465.

Add. MS. 12,056. whyte of an eyze, y-medlyde togedyre as þykke as hony, & distende it on a clop, & leye it on þe place þat ys hurt from morwe tyl euene, 20 oþere ellys from euene tyl þe morwe. And whenne þat þe plastre ys remefyd away, 3if þat þe crefeys persith þorwe þe breyn panne, þou schalt se þe plastre more drye anonde<sup>5</sup> þe crefeys þen in enye oþer place, for þe gret hete þat comyth from þe brayn; \* & 3if þe 24 breyn panne\* be nozt y-sclend þorwe, þe plastre schal be namore rye abouen þe crefeys þenne on an oþere place. And 3if þe crefeysd perse nouzt þe brayn scolle, þe cure is as yt is seyde in þe bygynnyng of þis chapyteH, þere as y tolde of þe cure of wounde of 28 hed, where þat þe breyn panne oþere þe brayn ys nozt y-hurt. Ffor 3if þat pilke ryemele persyth þe breyn panne, þere ys a gret doute in þe cas, ffor some seyne þat yt ys vnpossible swyche a wounde to ben y-helyde, but 3if þe rymele be y-trepanyd & þat a quantyte 32 of þe bon be y-don away, þat þe superfluyte þat ys y-caste vpon duram matrem mowe be done away, ellys þe dura mater scholde putrefien & be corrupt, & by þat skylle þe pacient scholde deye, whiche þat myzte be helyde by remywyng of þe bon. Napeles y 36 þat haue y-seye in trepanyng grete peryle, namlyche whanne þat

<sup>5</sup> Over an erasure.



- pat<sup>t</sup> þe creueis is bisidis þe semys, where þat<sup>t</sup> þe trepaninge is deedlich / & I haue seen manye þat<sup>t</sup> wiþoute trepanyng<sup>t</sup> almyȝty god haþ delyuerid bi myn hondis, wiþoute touchinge of<sup>t</sup> ony brayn
- 4 scolle wiþ ony trepan or wiþ iren ; but<sup>t</sup> I helde in to þe creueis hoot<sup>t</sup> de vertute Olium Rosarum. oile of<sup>t</sup> rosis colat<sup>t</sup>, & mel roset<sup>t</sup> colat<sup>t</sup>, medlid togidere aftir þe doctrine tofore seid, fulfillynge al þe wounde with sich maner I use oil of roses, clopis ; & aftirward leie aboue þe ȝelke of<sup>t</sup> an ey & oile of<sup>t</sup> rosis
- 8 medlid togidere, & aboute a defensif<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> bole armoniak tofore seid, a defensif til þat<sup>t</sup> þe quytture be engendrid. & aftirward I contynue mel roset<sup>t</sup> & oile of<sup>t</sup> rosis in þe wounde, & aboue a mundificatif<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> mel and a mundificatif medicine, roset<sup>t</sup> & barly mele til þat<sup>t</sup> þe ligament<sup>t</sup> be fully engendrid on þe
- 12 brayn panne, & þat<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> knowe whanne þat<sup>t</sup> þou seest<sup>t</sup> þe boonys ben<sup>1</sup> ioyned togidere, as it<sup>t</sup> were two bordis weren ioyned togidere with cole<sup>2</sup> or with glu ; & þanne I fulfille þe wounde wiþ drie þedis of<sup>t</sup> clene lynnyn cloþ, & aboue <sup>3</sup>a mundificatif<sup>t</sup>, til þat<sup>t</sup> [<sup>3</sup> ff. 71, bk.]
- 16 þe boon be keuerid. þanne I strowe on aboue þe capitale poudre tofore seid, & I leie on þe schauynge or ellis þe rasure<sup>4</sup> of<sup>t</sup> lynnyn cloþ, & aboue al þis I leie on a treet<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> whiȝt<sup>t</sup> rosyn ; & I do alle and a plaster of terpentine. þese þingis þat<sup>t</sup> I haue seid tofore til þat<sup>t</sup> þe wounde be consowdid /

<sup>1</sup> *ben*, above line.


<sup>2</sup> *cole*, Lat. : sicut si essent duo ligna cum glutino in simul incolata.

<sup>4</sup> *rasure*, Lat. rasura.

- 20 þe crefeys ys bysyde þe semys, where þat trepanynge ys dedlyche, Add. MS. 12,056. and y haue seye manye þat wiþouten trepanynge almyȝtie god haþ delyuerede be myn handys, without touchynge enye brayn scolle with trepane opere with eyren ; but y helde into þe crefeys hote
- 24 oyle of roses, and y legge aboue cloþes y-wett in mel rosat colat, & oyle rosat colat y-medlyde togedyre aftere þe doctryne tofore seyde, fulfillinge aȝ þe <sup>5</sup>wounde wiþ swyche manere clothys, & afterwarde y legge aboue þe ȝolke of an eyȝe & oyle of roses y-medlyde [<sup>5</sup> fol. 78 b]
- 28 togedres, and aboue þe wounde a defensiff<sup>t</sup> of bol armonyac tofore seyde, tyl þat þe quyter be engendryd. & afterwarde y contynwe mel roses & oyle rosarum in þe wounde, & aboffe a mundificatyf<sup>t</sup> of mel rosarum & barly mele, tyl þat þe ligament be fulliche engendrede
- 32 on þe breyn panne, & þat þou schalt y-knowe whenne þat þou seste þe bonys Ioynyde togedre, as yt were tweye bordys Ioynede to gedre wiþ colle opere wiþ glew ; & þenne y fulfille þe wounde with drye þedis of lynnyn cloþ, and abouen a mundificatyf<sup>t</sup> tyl þat þe
- 36 bon be keffride aboue. & þenne y strawe on aboue þe capytale poudre tofore seyde, & y legge on þe schaffynge opere ellys þe rasure of lynnyn cloþ, and abouen al þis y legge on a Tret of resyne ; & y do alle þynges þat y haue seyde tofore tyl þe wounde be con-




& if þe make an obieccioun how þat it myȝte, wiþoute arerynge of  
 þe boon, þe blood & þe quytture be dried, þe which þat fil doun bi  
 pilke slendynge vpon *duram matrem* / I answere : riȝt as þe mater  
 of þe frenesie & þe mater of þe litarge<sup>1</sup> þat is more doutes, bi  
 emplastris wiþoutforþ I-leie is dissolued, & þer is no slendynge of  
 þe brayn panne, ne no wounde in þe skyn, myche more liztloker &  
 more bettere þe blood, þat is lizt & able to be resolued, þe which  
 þat wente doun bi þe forseid slending<sup>2</sup>, may bi þe forseid slendynge  
 þe bettere be exaled. Ne pilke blood is not viscat<sup>2</sup> in þe substaunce  
 of dure matris, as þe mater is in empostymes, wherfore he is more  
 obeissaunt\* — — to þe attraccioun of medicyns /

[<sup>3</sup> ff. 72] & if þe brayn panne be hurt wiþoute wounde<sup>3</sup> of þe skyn, þe  
 which þou shalt knowe bi þe tokenes tofore seid / þanne summen  
 kutte aboue þe hurtyng in þe maner of a crose, & þei areren þe  
 .iiij. quarters, & þei kutten & fleen þe pannicle þat keueriþ þe  
 boonis. & aftirward þei vsen trapanes & her opere comoun curis, as  
 it is schewid tofore / But I kutte not þe skyn in þe maner of a  
 crose, but in þe maner of a scheeld or ellis of a þing<sup>4</sup> þat is triangle  
 in þis maner , & I make but oon quarter, & I vnwrie þe boon  
 þat þe oyle of þe rosis may peerse yn, & þat þe vertu of þe medicyn, 20

<sup>1</sup> *litarge*, Lat. *lethargus*. Lethargy, stupor.

<sup>2</sup> *viscat*, Lat. *inviscatus*, inclosed. See below, *inviscat*.

Add. MS. 12,056. souted. And ȝif me maken an obieccioun how þat yt myȝte with-  
 outen arerynge of þe bon, þe blod & þe quyter be dreyede whiche  
 þat fel doun by pilke slendynge vpon þe *duram matrem*, I answere :  
 ryȝte as þe matere of þe frenesie & þe matere of þe litargie þat is  
 more doutes, by emplastres withouten forth leyd is desolfed, and  
 þere nys none sclyndynge of þe breyn panne ne no wounde in þe  
 skyn, myche more lyztlokere & more bettere þe blod þat is lyzt &  
 able to ben reselfyde, whiche þat wende done be þe forseide  
 slendynge, may be þe forseide slendynge beter ben exaled. Ne  
 pilke blod ys noȝt inviscat in þe substaunce of dure matris as þe  
 matere ys in apostemys, wherfore he ys more obeyssaunt to\* þe  
 expulcioun of kynde, & also ys more obeyssaunt to the attraccioun  
 of medycine. And ȝif þe brayn panne be hurte wiþout wounde of  
 þe skyn, þe whiche þou schalt y-knowen by þe toknys tofore seyde,  
 þenne sum men kutten aboue þe hurtyng in þe manere of a cros, &  
 þey areryn þe foure quarters, & þey kytten & flen þe pannycle þat  
 keferith þe bonys, & afterwarde þey vsen trepanys & here opere  
 comyn cures, as yt ys schewyde tofore. But y kytte noȝt þe skyn  
 in manere of a cros, but in þe manere of a Schelde opere ellys of  
 a thyng þat ys tryangle in þis manere , & y make but on  
 quartere & y vnwrye þe bon, þat þe oyle of roses may persen yn,

[<sup>4</sup> fol. 79 a]



- pat<sup>t</sup> is maad of hony of rosis & oile of rosis, may drawe fro byneþe þe brayn-panne / & I do in þis caas al þing<sup>t</sup> as it<sup>t</sup> is declarid next<sup>t</sup> aboue. & if<sup>t</sup> 3e make obieccioun azens me bi costantyne<sup>1</sup> or ellis bi  
 4 opere, þat<sup>t</sup> seien þat<sup>t</sup> bi al oure myȝt we eschewen þat<sup>t</sup> neiþer oile  
 ne noon oyntuose þing<sup>t</sup> falliþ not<sup>t</sup> wiþinne þe brayn-panne / I  
 answe<sup>r</sup>e wiþ auicen, þat<sup>t</sup> seiþ: þat<sup>t</sup> he worchiþ riȝtfulliche þat<sup>t</sup> vsiþ  
 teped<sup>2</sup> oilis, & þe same tellen galion & serapion; & also I seiþ þat<sup>t</sup>  
 8 oile of rosis, þe which þat<sup>t</sup> schal<sup>3</sup> be maad of grapis of olyue trees  
 þat<sup>t</sup> ben not<sup>t</sup> ripe, is not<sup>t</sup> oyntuose, but<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> is drie, & is clepid oile  
 enfancinum;<sup>4</sup> & namely whanne þat<sup>t</sup> rosis ben medlid wiþ pilke  
 oile, pilke oile haþ gete to him a swete smellynge & a drie þing<sup>t</sup> of  
 12 comfortynge<sup>5</sup> animal spiritis; & also þat<sup>t</sup> oile haþ a vertu expressif<sup>t</sup>,  
 as galion telliþ in þe book of symple medicyns, bi þe welche þe  
 brayn is comfortid & akþis ben swagid / & if<sup>t</sup> þer be maad ony greet<sup>t</sup>  
 blood, it<sup>t</sup> is maad sutil with þat<sup>t</sup> oile; & whanne alle þese þingis  
 16 ben congaderid & leid aboue duram matrem, it<sup>t</sup> is clensid /

¶ Sumtyme þe brayn is meued of sum greet<sup>t</sup> hurt<sup>t</sup> eiper of sum  
 fallynge or of sum smytynge wiþoute ony wounde or wiþoute ony

<sup>1</sup> Constantinus Africanus, c.e. 1070.

<sup>2</sup> teped, Lat. tepidus.

<sup>4</sup> enfancinum, for omfacinum *ὀμφάκινον ἔλαιον*, oil made from unripe olives (*Diosc.* I. 29). *Vigo Interpr.*: "Omphax in Greke is an vnripe grape. *Vigo* calleth oyle of omphacine, that oyle that is made of vnripe Olyves." Compare *Tomm. Dict.* s. v. onfacino.

<sup>5</sup> See below.

Constantyn  
objects,

but  
Auicen,

Galion,  
Serapion,  
and I use

[<sup>3</sup> lf. 72, bk.]

Oleum  
enfancinum

as a strength-  
ening  
remedy.

Galion.

Concussion of  
the brain not  
complicated

Add. MS.  
12,056.

- and þat þe vertue of þe medycine, þat ys y-mad of honye of  
 20 roses & oyle of roses, may drawe fro byneþe þe brayn-panne; and  
 y do in þis cas al þynge, as yt declarith nexte aboffe. And ȝif  
 men make obiectioun aȝeyns me by constantine opere ellys by hym,  
 þat seyth þat by alle oure myȝht<sup>t</sup> we encheuyn þat neþere oyle ne  
 24 non vncomys<sup>6</sup> þynge falle noȝt withynne þe brayn-panne, I answe<sup>r</sup>e  
 with Auecene, þat seyth: þat he wircheþ ryȝtfulliche þat vsith  
 certeyne oyles, & þe same telliþ galien & serapion, and also y seye  
 þat oyle of roses, welche þat be mad of grapes of Olyue tres þat beþ  
 28 noȝt ripe, is noȝt vnctuouse, but is dreyȝe; & it is clepyde oyle  
 Omfacinum, & namlye whanne þat roses ben y-medlyde with þat  
 oyle, pilke oyle hath y-gete to hym a swete smellynge & a dreyȝinge,  
 cumffortynge animal spirites; and also pilke oyle hath a vertue  
 32 expressif<sup>t</sup>, as galien tellyth in the bok<sup>t</sup> of symple medycines, by þe  
 whyche þe brayn ys conffortyde & akþes ben aswagede, & ȝif þere  
 be mad enye gret blod, yt is y-made Sotyȝ; & whenne alle þese  
 þynge ben y-gadryde togedyre & leyde abouen, dura mater ys  
 36 clansed. Sumtyme þe brayn ys meffye of sum gret hurt opere of  
 sum fallynge, opere of sum smytynge withouten eny wounde ore enye

<sup>6</sup> Corrupt, probably for *vinctuous*.



by a wound  
or fracture.

*Nota*

A certain  
Canon fell  
from his  
horse,  
and was left  
senseless.

[1. 73]

I thought  
him dying,

*Nota*

but entreated  
by his friends

I anointed his  
head

and laid on  
compresses,

brecche of ony boon, þanne do þou as I dide to a chanoun of þe  
ordre of seynt<sup>t</sup> austyn. Whanne þat<sup>t</sup> he wolde haue lept vpon an  
hiz hors & haue seten in þe satel, þe hors areride vpon hise two  
hyndere feet<sup>t</sup>, & pilke chanoun fel doun backward vpon þe erþe vpon 4  
his heed; & al his bodi was brusid & namely aboute þe heed, þat<sup>t</sup>  
anoon he loste þe meuyng and þe felyng of al his body / þanne a  
lewid leche <sup>1</sup>þat<sup>t</sup> was frend to pilke chanoun was clepid, & he cowde  
not<sup>t</sup> helpen him, for he hadde neuere seen þe same caas, ne he 8  
cowde not<sup>t</sup> no lettrure<sup>2</sup> / & at<sup>t</sup> þe laste I was clepid, & I foond him  
neiþer heerynge, ne spekyng, ne no þing<sup>t</sup> meuyng, & I deemede  
him for deed / & neþeless<sup>3</sup> I seide, & he were my broþer, I nolde not<sup>t</sup>  
for an .C. mark, but<sup>t</sup> I asaiede in him goodnes of þe helpinge of 12  
medicyns / for ofte tyme kynde wiþ good werkis helpiþ priuylliche  
þat<sup>t</sup> semeþ vnpossible to a leche. & þei þanne preiden me with greet<sup>t</sup>  
instaunce / & I made þe heeris of his heed to be schauen & þanne  
I anoyntide al þe heed wiþ. iij. parties of oile of rosis, & oon partie 16  
of vynegre hoot<sup>t</sup> medlid togidere, & I castide aboue poudre of  
mirtillis, & leide aboue a sotil linnen cloþ þinne, wett<sup>t</sup> in þe same

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: nec sciebat aliquid de scripturis. O.Fr. lettreure. See *Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat. Gloss.

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: meo tamen addens iudicio quod pro centum marchis argenti non dimitterem, quin adhuc probarem in eo, si meus esset frater, iuuenta medicinæ inducens.

Add. MS. 12,056. breche of eny bon, þan do þou as dyde y to a Chanoun of þe ordre  
of seint Austyn. Whanne þat he wolde haue lopyn vpon an hye 20  
hors and haue seten in þe sadyt, þe hors areryde vpon hys two  
[3 fol. 79 v] <sup>3</sup>hyndere fete, & pilke chanoun fel doun bakwarde vpon þe erthe  
on hys hed; & alle hys bodye was y-brusyde, and namlye aboute þe  
hed þat anon he lost þe ffelyng & þe meffyng of alle his bodye. 24  
þanne a lewyde leche þat was frende to pilke Chanoun was y-  
clepyde, & he couþe helpe hym nozt, for he had neuere seyne þe  
same cas, ne he ne couþe nozt on lettre. And at þe laste y was  
clepte, & y fonde hym nozt heryng ne spekyng ne nothyng 28  
mevyng, I demyde hym for ded, and napeles sauýde, 3if þat he  
were my broþere y nolde nouzt for an hundrede mark<sup>t</sup>, but y sayede  
in hym þe godnesse & þe helpyng of medycines; ffor ofte tymes  
kynde with gode werkys helpith preueliche þat semyth vnpossible 32  
to a leche. And þenne þey preyede me with gret Instaunce, and y  
made the herys of hys hed to be schaffen and þenne y anoynt aþ þe  
hed with þre partye of oyle of roses, & on partye of vyneger hot  
y-medlyde togedyre, & y caste abouen þe poudre of mirtylles, and y 36  
leyde abouen a sotyht þenne cloth y-wet in þe same oyle & vynegre,



- oile & vynegre, & aboue þat tow3 smal tosid, & I boond al þe heed a bandage,  
 wiþ a boond, & aboue I leide a lambis skyn. & so I chaungide it<sup>1</sup> and a lamb's  
 þries ech day in anoyntyng þe nolle & þe necke into þe myddil<sup>1</sup> skin.  
 4 of þe rigge-boon bihynde wiþ hoot oile of camomille / In þe  
 ij. day he openede a litil hise y3en, & he bigan to loke aboute On the 2nd  
<sup>2</sup>him as it hadde be a deef man þat were in a wondring / & þanne his eyes.  
 summe wolden haue asaied if þat he myzte haue ete / & I wolde [2 lf. 73, bk.]  
 8 not suffre him to ete / & I seide þou3 þat he wolde ete þat he  
 schulde not / In þe iij. day I spak to him / he answeride me babe- On the 3rd he  
 lynge as a child þat bigynneþ to speke, but he myzte forþ wiþ no babbled.  
 word<sup>3</sup> / In þe iiij. dai he spak boistousliche<sup>4</sup> / & þanne I 3af him to On the 4th he  
 12 drynke hoot ypocras<sup>5</sup> þat is maad of sugre & of watir / In þe v. spoke  
 day he took pikke ti3anne<sup>6</sup> / In þe vj. dai I 3af him broþ of a boisterously.  
 chicken; and þanne he bigan to strenkþe litil & litil, & litil & litil From the 6th  
 to meuen / & neuer-þe-lattere he myzte not walke not manye daies day I gave  
 16 aftir. & whanne þat he myzte take sufficiently mete, I comaundide him strength-  
 ening food,

<sup>1</sup> of þe myddil, inserted.

<sup>3</sup> See below, note 8.

<sup>4</sup> *boistisliche*. Lat.: balbutiando, stammering, seems to connect the sense of O.Fr. boistous, lame, with boisterous.

<sup>5</sup> *ypocras*, error for *ydrosacre*. See below. "*Hydrosaccharum*, a Syrup made of Water and Sugar." Phillips. *Hippocras*, a kind of "Artificial Wine, made of Claret or White Wine, and several sorts of Spice." *Ibid*.

<sup>6</sup> Lat. *ptisanam spissam*. Matth. Sylv.: "Tisanna i. aqua ordeï uel fariola."

- & aboue þat tow3 smale y-tosyde, & y bonde alle þe hed with a band, Add. MS.  
 & abouen y leyde a lambys skyn, & so y chaungede yt twyes euerye 12,056.  
 day; in anoyntyng þe nolle & þe nekke into þe myddeft of þe  
 20 rygge-bon byhynde wiþ hote oyle of Camamylle. In þe secunde  
 day he opnyde a lyte his ey3en, & he bygan to loken aboute hym  
 as it hadde be a deff man, opere ellys a man þat were in a  
 wondrynge; and þenne some wolden haue assayedede 3if þat he wolde  
 24 eten, & y wolde nouzt<sup>7</sup> Suffren hym to eten, & y seyde þow3 þat he [7 fol. 80 a]  
 wolde eten he scholde nozt. In þe þridde day y spak to hym, &  
 he answerde me bablynge as a childe þat begynneþ to speke, but he  
 myzte formen non worde.<sup>8</sup> In þe fourþe day he spak bostynglyche,  
 28 and þenne y gaf hym to drynke hot ydrosacre, þat ys y-mad of Sugre  
 & of watyre. In þe ffyfte day he toke pikke<sup>9</sup> tysan. In þe sixe day  
 y gaf hym þe broth off a chykne, & þenne he gan to strengþe litel  
 & lytel & lytel, & lytel to meffen, & neuere þe latere he myzte nozt  
 32 walkyn by manye dayes. And whanne þat he myzte take Suffi-  
 sauntlye mete, y comaundyde hym to take Pylulas Cochias, for to

<sup>8</sup> Lat.: verbum non potuit formare.

<sup>9</sup> MS. þilke.



purgative pills, him to take pilulas chochias<sup>1</sup> for to resolue bi euaciacioun þe matere þat I-gaderide togidere in þe heed bi þilke fallinge / & I comaundide and brain of fowl and kid. him to ete ofte þe braynes of briddis heedis, & of hennys & of smale briddis & kedis / & in þis maner he was hool ; neþeles he was 4 neuere so sotil of witt as he was tofore /

Evil symptoms  
[3 lf. 74]  
are: cramp, immobility except of the muscles of the chest.  
Three ways of treatment:  
1. the way used by Anselme.  
2. trepanning.  
3. my own way,

In þis ben yuel signes as þe face to be to<sup>2</sup> crokid, & þe yzen to loke asquynt<sup>3</sup> eiper crokidliche, apoplexie, crampe, to schite wiþoute felynge, & vnmouablete of alle þe membris outcept þe lacertis of 8 þe brest þat moun be saaf<sup>4</sup> / He þat rediþ þis book may chese aftir his owne wil oon of iij. weies þe whiche þat ben now vsid / þe toon is þe wey þe whiche þat is seid in þe bigynnyng of þis chapitle, þe which wey manye vsen, & a leche of Ianewe<sup>5</sup> þat is clepid anselme 12 vsiþ þis wey, & þerbi he gate myche money / neþeles I wiste weel þat manye men dieden in hise handis bi þis wey / þe secunde maner is in almaner hurtyng of þe heed to vsen terabracioun<sup>6</sup> eiper remeu- yng of þe boon wiþ handliche instrumentis / þe iij. is my wey þe 16

<sup>1</sup> *Cochia*. An ancient name for several officinal purgative pills. Dunglison, *Medic. Lex.* κόκκος, a pill. Alex. Trall. Compare Fr. cochée.

<sup>2</sup> *be to*, added in margin.

<sup>4</sup> Lat. : præterquam lacertorum pectoris qui sallire videntur. The translator evidently read *salcere* instead of *sallire*.

<sup>5</sup> Anselmus de Ianua. A. de Porte, quoted by Guy de Chauliac as Anserinus de Ianua, XIII. cent. Ianua is Genoa, see Eloys Dictionn. historique.

<sup>6</sup> "Terebration, a boring or piercing; a Term more especially used in Surgery." Phillips. "Terebra, an Awger or Wimble, a Piercer; also an Instrument to engrave on Stones; also a Surgeon's Trepan or Trepaniron." *Ibid.*

Add. MS. 12,056. resolfe by evacuacioun þe matere þat was y-gadrede togedire in þe hed by þilke fallinge. And y comaundyde hym to eten ofte þe braynes of briddys hedys, as of hennys & of smale bryddes, & also of kyddes; and in þis manere he was hol; napeles he was neuyre 20 so sotyl of wyt as he was tofore. In þis cas buþ yuele signes: as þe face to be crokyde, & þat on eyze to loken asquynt oþer crokydliche, apoplexie, crampe, to schyte wiþout felynge, & vnmouablete of alle þe membris outsepte þe lacertes of þe brest þat 24 mowe be saff. He þat redith þis bok may chesen after hys owne wyl, one of þre weyes whiche þat beþ now y-vsyde, þat on ys þe wey whiche þat ys seyde in þe bygynnyng of þis chapitell, þe whiche weye many vsen, and a leche o Ianewe þat is y-clepyde 28 Anselme vsith þis weye, & þereby he gat myche moneye, napeles y wyste wel þat manye men dyzeden in his handys by þis wey. þe 7secunde weye is in alle manere hurtynges of hed to vsen tere- bracioun, oþere ellys remeffyng of þe bon with handliche Instru- 32 mentes; þe þridde ys my weye whiche þat y haue tolde opynlye in



which *pat* I haue told openliche in almaner caas / & I bileue, if *pat* he take hede to alle *pese* weyes & *pat* he wole wisely discussen alle *pe* opynyons of auctouris, *pat* he schal seen fewere die bi my  
 4 .iij. wey *pan* bi ony of *pe* *opere* .ij. weyes // Almy<sup>3</sup>ti god lede *pe* redere of *pis* werk in *pe* best<sup>t</sup> wey, *poru<sup>3</sup>* whos my<sup>3</sup>tis, wordis takis sentencis & also vnderstandinge.

where fewer people die.

*hou<sup>3</sup>* *pat* we han bihoten to tretyn of<sup>t</sup> ano<sup>1</sup>tamie of membris [<sup>1</sup> ff. 74, bk.]  
 8 *pat* ben compound, in *pe* bigynnyng of eueri chapitle of *pis* secunde tretis, nepeles we leeu<sup>2</sup> it<sup>t</sup> for *pe* bettere for to treten of anotamie of *pe* visage, to *pe* *bridde* tretise, where we schulden treten of<sup>t</sup> sijknes *pat* comen to *pese* membris, *pe* whiche syknessis ben non<sup>3</sup>  
 12 woundis // // //

The anatomy of the face is given in the 3rd treatise.

## The secunde chapitle of woundis of *pe* face & ¶ Cap. ij. anotamie of *pe* same.

Woundis *pat* ben maad in *pe* face, or *pei* be maad wip a swerd  
 16 or wip sum dinge<sup>4</sup> ellis *pat* woundip, or *pei* ben maad wip pricknyge of a knyf, arowe, eiper spere. It<sup>t</sup> is necessarie *pat* a surgian haue more diligence in *pe* woundis of *pe* face, for it<sup>t</sup> is a place *pat* is myche seen, & it<sup>t</sup> is wel to do make<sup>5</sup> a sotil<sup>6</sup> cicatrice / A wounde

Wounds of the face must be treated carefully.

<sup>2</sup> Lat. *relinquimus tamen propter melius.*

<sup>3</sup> MS. *now.*

<sup>4</sup> *dinge*, in margin.

<sup>5</sup> Compare: *pis instrument may ze do make wipoute grete cost.* Quinte Essence, p. 62.

<sup>6</sup> *a sotil*, in margin.

20 alle manere of cas; and y beleue 3if *pat* he wyl take hede to alle *pese* weyes, & *pat* he wy<sup>h</sup> wyslye discussen *pe* opyniouns of Auctores, *pat* he schal se fewere dy<sup>3</sup>e be my *bridde* weye *penne* by enye *opere*. Almy<sup>3</sup>tie god lede *pe* redere of *pis* werk<sup>t</sup> in *pe* beste  
 24 wey, *porwe* whose my<sup>3</sup>te, wordes taky<sup>h</sup> sentence & echyn vnderstandynge. *hou<sup>3</sup>* *pat* we han behoten to treten of Anotamye of membres *pat* ben componed, in *pe* bygynninge of eueri chapyte<sup>h</sup> of this secunde tretys, napeles we leuen yt for *pe* bettire for to treten  
 28 of *pe* Anotamye of *pe* vysage, to *pe* *bridde* tretys, where we schulle tretyn of seknesse *pat* comy<sup>h</sup> to *pis* membres, whyche seknesse be<sup>h</sup> non woundes.

Add. MS. 12,056.

## ¶ Cap. off woundes of *pe* face & Anotamye of *pe* same.

32 Woundes *pat* ben made in *pe* face, *opere* *pey* be<sup>h</sup> mad with a swerde, ore wip sum thyng<sup>e</sup> ellys *pat* wounde<sup>h</sup>, *opere* *pey* ben mad wip prikyng<sup>e</sup> of a knyf, arwe, *opere* spere. Yt is necessarye, *pat* a surgyne haue more diligence in *pe* woundes of *pe* face, for it is a  
 36 place *pat* is myche y-seyne, & yt ys wel y-do to make a soty<sup>h</sup> cicatrice. A wounde *pat* ys mad with a swerde *opere* with sum byng<sup>e</sup>



There is a lie  
about re-  
placing a nose  
cut off.

[1 lf. 75]<sup>2</sup>

Wounds of  
the nose :

a longi-  
tudinal cut,

a transverse  
cut, the nose  
still hanging.

Adjust the  
nose, retain  
it in position  
by splints  
of wax,

sew it,

þat is maad wiþ a swerd or wiþ sumpþing<sup>t</sup> semblable þat is alwei in  
lenkþe, a man muste sotilliche sowen & gaderen þe parties of þe  
wounde togidere / & for þat manye men liþen of þe wounde of þe  
nose, þei seien þat oon bar his nose kutt of in his hond, þe which 4  
nose was afterward sett azen in his owne kynde ; þe which is an open  
lesynge / For þe spirit of lijf of felynge & <sup>1</sup>meuyng passip, whanne  
a membre is depertid from þe bodi / I wole bigynne at a wounde of þe  
nose þat is kutt in lenkþe, þe which cure is liþt to hele / Brynge þe 8  
parties togidere of þe wounde & sowe hem, & worche aboute þe wounde  
as I haue seid tofore in þe chapitle of woundis / & if þat þe nose  
were kutt ouerþwert down to þe ouer lippe, & neþeles þat þe ouer lippe  
& þe nose were kutt al away, but þat it held faste at boþe þe eendis 12  
of þe eendis of þe wounde, þanne sette azen þe nose in his propre place,  
þe noseþrillis ech azen opir as þei weren tofore, & make two smale  
tentis of wex & putte on eipir noseþrille aboute þe wounde, if þat þou  
maist, & þanne make a poynt bi þe space of a litil fyngre from þe oon 16  
eende of þe wounde, & anoþer poynt at þe opere eende of þe wounde,  
& anopir poynt in þe myddil of þe nose azen þe forheed ; and aftir-  
ward a poynt on eipir side of þe nose, aftirward make [a poynt]\*  
bitwene eueri poynt, so þat þou haue in noumbre of alle þe poyntis 20

<sup>2</sup> Heading to this page : *Off wondes off the fface & Anotomy off þe same ffrom the face to the ffote.*

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[<sup>3</sup> fol. 81 a]

semblable þat is alweye in lengthe, a man moste sotylliche sowyn &  
gedre þe parties of þe wounde. And for þat many men lyþen <sup>3</sup> of  
þe wounde of þe nese, þey seyþen þat on bare hys nose y-kytte of in  
hys hande, þe whiche nose was afterwarde y-sette azeine in hys 24  
owne kynde ; þe whiche ys an opyn lesynge, for þe spiryt of lyf of  
felynge & of meffynge passith aweye, whanne a membre is departyde  
from þe body. I wylle begynne at þe wounde at þe nese þat is  
y-kutte in lengthe, wose cure ys lyþt to hele ; brynge þe parties to- 28  
gedre of þe wounde & sowe hem, & wirche aboute the wounde as y  
haue seyde tofore in þe chapitle of wondes. And 3if þat þe nese  
were y-kutte twarte offere down to þe ouere lippe, & napeles þat þe  
ouyre lippe & þe nose were noþt kutte al away, but þat it helde 32  
faste at boþe þe endys of þe wounde, þanne sette azeine þe nose in  
his propre place, þe noseþrellys yche azeins opere as þey were to-  
fore, & make two smale tentys of wex, & putte in boþe þe nose-  
þrellys aboute þe wounde, 3if þat þou maist, & þenne make a poynt 36  
by þe space of a litel fyngere from þat on ende of þe wounde,  
& an opere poynt at þe opere ende of þe wounde, and an opere  
poynt in þe myddel of þe nose anentys þe forhede ; & after-  
warde a poynt on eipere syde of þe nose, afterwarde make a poynt\* 40  
betwene evyry poynt, so þat þou haue in noumbre of alle þe poyntes,



- whanne þei ben ful maad, .ix. Caste þe poudre þat<sup>t</sup> is tofore seid throw a powder on the wound,  
 vpon þe wounde, þat<sup>t</sup> is maad of<sup>t</sup> <sup>1</sup>lime, frank encense, & sandragoun [<sup>1</sup> lf. 75, bk.]  
 / & take þe white of an ey & oile of<sup>t</sup> rosis, & bete hem togidere,  
 4 & wete þerinne a linnen cloof & leie aboue þe wounde / Aftirward  
 bynde\* þerto þre plumaciols, oon vndirneþe, anoper on þe oon side, apply three pledgets, and two bandages,  
 anopir on þe topir side / & þanne bynde þe nose wiþ two bandis /  
 þe toon schal holde vp þe nose þat<sup>t</sup> he may not discende dounward /  
 8 þe topir schal be leid aboue þat<sup>t</sup> he mowe kepe þe plumaciols, poudre,  
 & þe sowynge / & þilke boond þat<sup>t</sup> is vnder þe nose þat<sup>t</sup> halt<sup>t</sup> þe nose one holds the nose in position,  
 vpward, schal be knytt<sup>2</sup> aboue vpon þe heed, & aftirward he schal be  
 turned ouertwert<sup>t</sup> ouer þe forheed, þat<sup>t</sup> he mowe holde þe boond, þat<sup>t</sup>  
 12 þe nose decline to neiþir<sup>3</sup> side. & þe boond þat<sup>t</sup> is leid aboue þe nose, the other the pledgets.  
 schal be bounden bihynde in þe nolle / & aftirward he schal turne azen  
 aboue þe nose, holdynge þe plumaciols þat<sup>t</sup> þei moun not wagge to  
 neiþir side aboute þe sowynge; & aboute þe forheed, þou schalt<sup>t</sup> leie  
 16 þe defensif<sup>t</sup> of bole, & aftirward þou schalt<sup>t</sup> worche on þe wounde of  
 þe nose, as I haue seid in a wounde of fleisch in þe fourþe<sup>4</sup> tretis / [<sup>3</sup> lf. 76]  
 þe woundis þat<sup>t</sup> ben maad in opere parties of þe face <sup>5</sup>as wiþ Wounds on other places must be carefully stitched,  
 a swerd or ony þing<sup>t</sup> semblable, brynge hem togidere & sowe hem &  
 20 cure hem, as it<sup>t</sup> is conteyned in general chapitlis of woundis, takynge

<sup>2</sup> MS. *kutt*.<sup>3</sup> MS. þe neiþir.<sup>4</sup> *fourþe* for *firste*.

- whenne þey ben ful mad, .IX. Caste þe poudre þat is tofore seyde Add. MS. 12,056.  
 vpon þe wounde, þat is y-mad of lym, frank ensence, sanedragoun,  
 & take whyte of an ey & oyle of roses and bete hem togedire, &  
 24 leye þereynne a lynne clof & leye abouen þe wounde, aftirwarde  
 [bynde]\* þereto þre plumaciolus, one <sup>6</sup>vndireneþe, & on on þat o syde, [<sup>6</sup> fol. 81 b]  
 an opere on þe opere syde; & þanne bynde þe nose wiþ tweye bandys,  
 þat on schalt holden vp þe nose þat he may nouzt discendyn dun-  
 28 ward, þat opere schal be leyde aboffe þat he mowe kepyn þe plum-  
 acyolus, poudere, & þe sowynge. And þilke bande þat ys vnder þe  
 nose þat halt þe nose vpwarde, schal be knett abouen on þe hed,  
 and aftirwarde he schal be turnyde twarte offere þe forehed, þat he  
 32 mowe holde þe bande, & þe nose declyne to neiþere syde. And þe  
 bande þat ys leyde aboffe þe nose, schal be bounden behynden in þe  
 nolle; and afterwarde he schal turnen azeyne aboffe þe nose, hold-  
 ynge þe plumacyoles þat þey mowe nozt wagge on neythere syde  
 36 aboute þe sewynge; & aboute þe forhed þou schalt legge þe deffensif<sup>t</sup>  
 of bol, and aftirwarde þou schalt worche on þe wounde of þe nose  
 as y haue seyde in a wounde of fleisch in þe firste tretys. þe  
 woundes þat bep y-mad in opere partye of þe face as with a swerd  
 40 ore opire þynge semblable, brynge hem togedire, sowe hem, & cure  
 hem, as yt ys conteyned in generaht chapitle of woundys, takynge



Nota bene

or brought  
together by  
an adhesive  
plaster.A wound  
made with  
a dart or an  
arrow.[<sup>1</sup> lf. 76, bk.]If the arrow  
head is  
hidden,

try to find it,

hede herto þat þe sowynge þat is maad in þe face schal be more  
sotil & fairer þan in ony opere partie of þe body / & þou maist  
make a sowynge in þe face, if þat þe wounde be not to myche, on  
þis maner / Take mastik, sandragoun & poudre hem & tempre hem 4  
togidere wiþ þe white of an ey to þe pickenesse of hony, & wete  
þerinne two pecis of linnen cloþ as longe as þe wounde / & leie þe  
toon on þe oon side of þe wounde, & þe oper on þe toþir side & lete  
hem drien / & aftirward make þe wounde sumwhat to blede, & 8  
þanne brynge þe parties of þe wounde togidere; & sowe þilke .ij.  
pecis togidere, & caste aboue poudre of lyme, frankencense, san-  
dragoun tofore seid, & wete a cloþ in þe white of an ey & oile of  
rosis, & leie aboue al togidere, & kepe þe partie wiþ ligature & 12  
prosede forþ in alle þinges as I haue tofore seid /

& if þat þe wounde be maad wiþ a dart or wiþ an arewe & þe  
arowe be drawe out & þe wounde be myche sene, þanne þe cure is  
1 þe same þat was seid in þe same chapitle or elles in þe firste tretis, 16  
wheþer þat þer be a senewe prickid eiþir noon. But if þe arowe  
heed were entriged in ony priuy place of þe face, so þat it myȝte  
not be seen, þanne euery man bisie him to knowe bi his witt how  
þat þe sike man stood, whanne þat he was smyte, & whens þat þe 20  
arowe cam, & to what partie þe wounde strecchiþ, þat he mowe loke

Add. MS.  
12,056.[<sup>2</sup> fol. 82 a]

hede hereto, þat þe sowynge þat ys y-mad in þe face, schal be more  
sotyl & fairere, þanne in enye opere party of þe body. And þou  
maiste maken a sowynge in þe face, ȝif þat þe wounde be nouȝt to 24  
myche, on þis manere. R. mastyk & sangdragoun & poudre hem &  
tempre hem togedire wiþ þe whyte of an eyȝe to þe þyknesse of  
hony, & wete þereynne tweye pecys of linnen cloþ as longe as þe  
wounde, & leye one on þat o syde of þe <sup>2</sup> wounde, & þe opere on þat 28  
opere & lete hem dreyȝen, and afterwarde make þe wounde sum  
what to blede, & þenne brynge þe partyes of þe wounde togedires;  
& sowe þilke two pecys togedres, & caste aboue þe poudre of lym,  
ffranc ensence, sanddragoun tofore seyð, & wete a cloþ in þe whyte 32  
of an eyȝe & oyle of roses, & leye abofe al togedyre, and kepe þe  
partyes with ligature, & procede forþ in alle þynges as y haue tofore  
seyð. And ȝif þat þe wounde be y-mad with a dart opere with an  
arwe, & þe arwe ben y-drawe out and þe wounde be myche y-sene, 36  
þenne þe cure ys þe same þat was seyde in þe same chapytell opere  
ellys in þe firste tretys, wheþere þat þere be a synwe prikyde opere  
none. But ȝif þat þe arwe-hed were entrygede in enye priuy place of  
þe face, so þat yt myȝte nouȝt ben seyȝen, þenne euerye man bysie 40  
hym be his wyt, to knowe how þe seke man stod, whanne he was y-  
smete, & whennys þat þe arwe come, & to what party þe wounde  
strecchith, þat he mowe loke ȝif þat he mowe fynden enye manere



if þat he mowe fynde ony maner wey how he may drawe out þilke  
 arowe-heed; & þanne drawe him out þe best maner wey þat he  
 may / & if he may not, heelde he in þe wounde oile of rosis & þe  
 4 3elke of an ey togidere medlid; & wiþ þis medicyn worche in þe  
 wounde, til þat kynde schewe sum maner wey / Manye men han  
 born an arowe-heed in þe parties of her face bi longe tyme; &  
 after longe tyme kynde haþ cast out þe arowe heed, or ellis he haþ  
 8 schewid sum wey bi þe which wey þilke arowe-heed myȝte be taken  
 out. & þou must take hede bi al þi miȝt þat, whanne þat þou  
 sowist þe woundis of þe face, þat þe mouþ be not crokid, but make  
 so sliȝly þi sowynge þat þilke accident may <sup>1</sup>not fallen; & þat þou  
 12 maist do weel, if þat þou cowdist ordeyne weel þi sowynge / & if  
 þat þou canst, kepe weel þi sowynge wiþ plumaciols and wiþ  
 byndyngis // // //

and draw  
 it out;  
 if you fail,  
 apply  
 Olum  
 Rosarum  
 till nature  
 works.

Beware of  
 disfiguring  
 the mouth in  
 making the  
 suture.

[<sup>1</sup> lf. 77]

**T**he pridde chapitle of þe secunde tretis is of  
 16 woundis of þe necke & anotamie of the same.

Bi þe necke is conteyned al þe place þat is bitwene þe heed &  
 þe schuldris, þe which anotamie I wole telle as I haue bihiȝt /  
 Summen maken difference bitwene þe necke & þe wesaunt<sup>2</sup> & þe

Anatomy of  
 the neck.

<sup>2</sup> wesaunt gula; wesande, ysophagus. Wright W., page 676, XV. cent.  
 See *Vicary*, page 47, note 4.

20 wey, how he may drawen out þilke arwe-hed; and þenne drawe  
 hym out þe beste manere þat he may. And ȝif he may nouȝt, helde  
 into þe wounde oyle of roses, & medle he oyle of roses & þe ȝolke  
 of an eyȝe togedre, & helde into þe wounde, & wiþ þis medycine  
 24 worche in þe wounde, tyl þat kynde schewe sum manere wey.  
 Manye men han born an arwe-hed in þat partyes of here face by  
 longe tyme; and aftere kynde haþ cast out þilke arwe-hed, opere  
 ellys haþ schewyde sum weye by whom þilke arwe-hed myȝte be  
 28 taken out. And þou moste taken hede be al þy myght þat whanne  
 þat þou sowyste þe woundes of þe face þat þe mouþ be noȝt crokyde,  
 but make so slylye þy sowynge þat þylke accident may noȝt <sup>3</sup>fallen; [3 fol. 82 b]  
 & þat þou maiste do wel, ȝif þat þou coupest ordeyn wel þy sowynge  
 32 & ȝif þou coupest kepen wel þy sowynge wiþ plumacyolus & wiþ  
 byndynges.

Add. MS.  
 12,056.

¶ Cap. iij. tretis ij is off woundes of þe nekke &  
 Anotomye of þe same.

36 ¶ **B**y the nekke is contynwede alle þe place þat is bytwene þe  
 hed & þe schuldris, whose Anotamye y wyȝt tellen as y haue  
 behyght. ¶ Some men makyth dyfference bytwene þe nekke & þe  
 SURGERY.



In the neck  
are  
vij spondilis,  
or Vertebrae,  
the 1st is  
articulated  
with the oc-  
cipital bone.

[<sup>2</sup> If. 77, bk.]

.1.  
.2.3.  
.4.5.6.  
7

From the  
cervical  
vertebrae  
spring 7 pairs  
of sinews,

prote-bolle, & alle þese ben comprehendid vndir þe name of þe necke. In þe necke þer ben .vij. spondelis þat is to seie whirlboonys / whirlboonys of þe rigge. þe firste of þe boonys is bounde wiþ a boon of þe heed þat is clepid passillare<sup>1</sup> with manye smale feble ligamentis; & þei were feble bi-cause þat þilke ioynnt next to þe heed myzte meue many weies. & þe cause whi þat þer were smale ligamentis multiplid in þat ioynt, þat manye smale myzten susteyne a greet burþun as weel as a fewe greete; & if þat þer were a fewe greete, þei weren not so able to be meued / þe firste spondile<sup>2</sup> is bounde to þe secunde / þe secunde to þe þridde, þe þridde to þe fourþe / þe fourþe to þe fifþe, þe fifþe to þe sixte / þe sixte to þe seuene / þe seuene is bounde loseliche to þe firste spondile of þe 12 rigge, þat þe necke myzte more liztliche meuen, which þat is clepid þe .vij. spondile / whanne þat þou rekenest [from þe hed dunwarde]\* Seuene peire of senewis proceden out [by þese .vij. spondelis. þe firste peire of synwe procedeth out]\* bitwene þe firste 16 spondilis and<sup>3</sup> þe boon of þe heed þat is clepid passillare / þe secunde peire of senewis is bore bitwene þe firste spondile & þe secunde, & so euery peire passen out bitwene ech spondile / þese senewis ben

<sup>1</sup> See *Vicary*, page 44, note 2.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *of*. Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 2: " & he is vnterberyng in þe hynder partie al þe bones of þe heued, & þerfore he is clepid þe berere vp or passillus."

Add. MS. 12,056. wesant & þe prote-bolle, and alle þese be comprehendyd vndir þe 20 name of þe nekke. In þe nekke þere ben vij spondiles—þat is to say, whirle bonys of þe rigge. þe furste of þe bonys ys y-bounde wiþ a bon of þe hed þat ys y-clepyde passillare wiþ manye smale feble ligamentys; & þey weren feble bycause þat þilke Iuncte 24 nexte þe hed myzte meffe manye weyes. And þe cause why þat þere were manye smale lygamentes multeplyede in þat Iuncte, þat manye smale myzte susteyne a grete burthyne as wel as a fewe grete; & 3if þat þere were a fewe grete, þey were nouzt so able to 28 be meffyd. The firste spondyle ys y-bounden to þe secunde, þe secunde to þe þridde, þe þridde to þe fourþe, þe iiij. to þe v., þe v. to þe vi., þe sixte to þe sevenþe, þe vij. ys y-bounden loselyche to þe fyrste spondile<sup>4</sup> of þe rugge, þat þe nekke myzte more lyztlyche 32 meffen, whiche ys clepyde þe vij. spondile, whenne þat þou reknyste from þe hed dunwarde.\* vij. peire off synwes growiþ out by þese .vij. spondelis. þe firste peire of synwe procedeth out\* bytwene þe fyrste spondile<sup>5</sup> & þe bon of þe hed þat ys y-clepyde passillare; 36 þe secunde peire of synwes ys y-bore bytwene þe firste spondile & þe secunde, & so euery peire passith out bytwene euery spondile.

[<sup>5</sup> fol. 83 a]

\* MS. *Whenne þat þou reknyst from þe hed, struck through, after spondile.*



dyuydid in many weies bi þe heed, þe necke and þe face, & þe brest, schuldris & þe armes; þe braunchis of þe senewis of þe heed in sum place ben conteynued & ioyned with þese senewis / & þese 4 senewis ben clepid meuyngge, riȝt<sup>1</sup> as þe senewis þat comen of þe fore partie of þe brayn ben clepid felynge, & þese han also felynge. Of þese senewis þat comen of þe spondilis of þe necke þere ben maad braunnys, þe whiche ben instrumentis of meuyngge of þo 8 parties. In <sup>1</sup>þe necke bihynde, þere ben ordeyned open<sup>2</sup> veynes comynge fro þe lyuere þe whiche þat ascenden into þe heed / & vndir þe veynes þer ben arteries priuylliche<sup>3</sup> comynge fro þe herte & goynge to þe heed for notable profitis. & whanne þat þei han<sup>4</sup> 12 doon al her office in þe heed þei discenden doun bi þe place þat is bihynde þe eeris & þei bringe partie materie spermatife: þat is to seie mater of sperme, doun to þe ballokis / & þefore it is seid if þat þo veynes weren kutt, a man schulde neuere engendre<sup>5</sup> / On þe 16 riȝtside & also on þe liftside of þe necke ben ordeined. ij. nollis<sup>6</sup> whiche<sup>7</sup> ben of ligamentis matire, þe whiche proceden out of þe

communi-  
cating with  
the sinews of  
the head.

[1 lf. 78]

The neck  
contains  
veins  
and arteries,  
ascending  
from the  
heart,

and bringing  
spermatic  
matter to the  
ballocks,

it contains  
also liga-  
ments,

<sup>2</sup> open, Lat. manifestæ, superficial. <sup>3</sup> Lat. arterie occulte. <sup>4</sup> MS. ben.

<sup>5</sup> Avicenna quotes Hippocrates as authority for this curious belief: "Et Hip. quidem dixit in suis intentionibus quod plurimum materie spermatis est ex cerebro & quod descendit ex duabus venis que sunt post ambas aures. Et propter hoc abscindit phlebotomia ambarum generationem & facit incurrere sterilitatem." *Canon Lib. III, Fen XX, Tract. 1, Cap. 3, ed. Ven. 1523, fol. 5.*

<sup>6</sup> nollis, Latin cervices, seem to be the transverse processes.

<sup>7</sup> whiche, struck through after nollis.

þese Synwys buȝ deuyded manye weyes by þe hed, & þe nekke, & þe face, & þe breste, schuldres, & þe armes; þe braunches of þe 20 synwes of the hed in some place beȝ contynwede & ioyned with þese synwes. And þese synwes buȝ y-clepyde meffynge ryȝte as þe synwes þat comyȝh of þe fore partye of þe brayn beȝ y-clepyde felynge & þese habbiȝ also felynge. Of þese Synwes þat comyȝh 24 of þe spondlis of þe nekke þere beȝ mad brawnys, þe whiche beȝ instrumentes of mevyngge of þe partyes. In þe nekke behynde, þere ben y-ordeyned opyn veynes comynge from þe lyffere whiche þat ascendyn to þe hed, and vndire þo Veynes þere ben Arteryes y- 28 hud priuelyche, comynge ffrom þe herte & goynge to þe hed for notable profetes. And whanne þat þey han do al here office in þe hed, þey descenden doun by þe place þat beȝ behynde þe erys & þey bryngen materie spermatice, þat is to say mater of sperme, don 32 to þe ballokes, & þefore it ys y-seyde: ȝif þat þo Veynes weren y-kutt, a man scholde neuere engendre. On þe ryȝt syde & eke on þe lefte syde of þe nekke þere ben y-ordeyned tweye nollis, þe whyche beȝ of lygamente mater, þe whiche proceden out of þe bonys

Add. MS.  
12,056.



to support  
the sinews.

*Gula,*  
[<sup>3</sup> lf. 78, bk.]  
gullet run-  
ning from  
the mouth to  
the stomach.

The gullet  
has 2 coats.

The windpipe  
is made of  
gristle,

boonys of þe heed & of þe spondilis, & þei strecchen doun to þe eeris<sup>1</sup> in lenkþe biside þe spin boon, & þei ben a couche & a rest-  
ynge place to þe senewis þat comen out of þe nucha. In þe fore  
partie of þe necke þere is gula, þe which þat strecchiþ from þe chyn 4  
doun to þe forke of þe brest;<sup>2</sup> & bitwene þe necke & gula wiþinne-  
forþ þere is ordeyned mary,<sup>3</sup> þat is to seie þe wesant; þe which þat  
discendiþ of<sup>4</sup> a smal skyn enuerouynge <sup>5</sup>al þe mouþ wiþinneforþ  
& so goynge doun to þe stomak, & he is hool & conteyned wiþ þe 8  
stomak, & is of substaunce of þe same stomak, & he discendiþ doun  
bi þe hyndere partie of þe necke cleuyng to þe spondilis til þat he  
come to þe fifþe spondile of þe rigge; & þere he is departid from  
þe spondilis, & he declineþ into þe ynnere partie til þat he peerse 12  
þoruþ þe mydrif,<sup>6</sup> & is compounned of .ij. panniclis, & in þe ynnere  
cloþ þere ben braunnys in lenkþe bi þe whiche drauþtis is maad of  
mete & of drynk, & þe vttere cloþ þere ben brawnys in brede bi  
þe whiche is castynge out of superfluytees; & he haþ noon tran- 16  
suersarie, þat is to seie goynge ouerþwert, for wiþholdynge is not  
nedeful to him. & in þe fore partie of þe brest þere is sett þe  
canne<sup>7</sup> of þe lungis, þe which is compounned of gristil ryngis bounde

<sup>1</sup> *eeris* for *ers*.

<sup>2</sup> *the forke of the brest*, the clavicle.

<sup>3</sup> *mary*, Lat. *meri* siue *oesophagus*. Arab. *mari*.

<sup>4</sup> MS. *of*, twice.

<sup>6</sup> *mydrif*, diaphragma. Wright W., *Gloss.*, page 578, l. 23, XV. cent.

<sup>7</sup> MS. *same*. Lat. *canna pulmonis*. See *Vicary*, page 47, note 7.

Add. MS. of þe hed & of þe spondiles, & þey strecchen doun to þe ers in 20  
12,056. lengþe besydes þe spyne bon, & þey ben a couche & a restynge  
place to þe synwes þat comyth out of þe nucha. In þe fore partye  
of þe nekke þere ys gula whiche þat strecchiþ from þe chyn doun to  
þe furcle of þe brest; and bytwene þe nekke & þe gulam wiþynne- 24  
forþ þere ys <sup>8</sup>y-ordeyned mery—þat ys to seie þe wesand; þe whiche  
þat discendiþ of a smal schyn enviroynge alle þe mouth withynne-  
forþ, & so goynge doun to þe Stomak, & he ys hol & conteynde wiþ  
þe Stomak, & ys of Substaunce of þe same stomak, & he dissendiþ 28  
doun by þe hyndere partye of þe nek clevyng to þe spondelis; tyl  
þat he come to þe .v. spondile of þe rugge, & þere he ys departyde  
from þe spondelis and declyneþ into þe Innere partye tyl þat he  
perce þorwe þe mydryff, & he ys componed of twey pannycles, and 32  
in þe Innore cloþ þere ben brawnys in lengthe, by þe whiche drauþte  
ys made of mete & drynke, and in þe vtter cloþ þere bene brawnys  
in brede by whom ys made castynge out of superfluyte; and he haþ  
non transversarye, þat ys to seie goynge twartoffere, for wythhold- 36  
ynge ys nouzt nedful to hym. And in þe fore partye of þe brest  
þere is y-set þe canne of longes, þe whiche ys componed off grustlye

[<sup>8</sup> fol. 83 b]



togidere wiþ pannicleris ligamentis, hauynge in þe ynnere partie a ful smeþe pannicle ioynynge togidere þilke gristili ryngis. & þilke ryngis whanne þei ben ioyned wiþ merie, þei ben defautif<sup>1</sup> aȝens þe 4 merie / & þe foorme of þe canne of þe lungis is\* as it were þe foorme of a cane, <sup>1</sup>þat is to seiē a rehed,<sup>2</sup> of þe which rehed þe [1 ff. 79] fourþe partie were kutt away in lenkþe, & aftirward þilke caane is wrie with a sotil clooþ þat whanne þat a greet mussel of mete passe 8 doun bi þe merye, he schulde not haue lettinge, but þilke pannicle of merye ȝeueþ stede<sup>3</sup> to þe greet mete passynge doun to þe stomak. and gives way to great morsels. þe prote-bolle<sup>4</sup> is maad of iij gristlis, & is sett aboue þese two weies. & boþe on þe riȝtside & on þe lift side of þe caane of þe 12 lungis þer ben ij. greete veynes þat ben clepid organice or ellis guydes<sup>5</sup>; & vndir þe veynes þer ben greete arteries, & of þe kuttynge of þilke veynes & arteries þer comeþ ofte tyme greete perels, & sumtyme deēþ; for þe grete affenite þat þei han wiþ þe herte, An incision into them is dangerous, for they are near the heart and the liver. 16 and þe greet noyousnes<sup>6</sup> þat þei han to þe lyuere, bi hem sonner<sup>7</sup> blood is euacued, wherfore spiritus exaliþ, þe whiche þat ben

<sup>2</sup> Read *reed*.

<sup>3</sup> ȝeueþ stede, Lat. *cedere*. See *Catholicon Angl.*, page 155, to *giffe stede*, *cedere*, *locum dare*. <sup>4</sup> prote-bolle. See *Vicary*, page 48, note 1.

<sup>5</sup> *guydes*, Lat. *guidegi*, *Ibid.* p. 48, note 3. Compare Arab. *widādsch*, *vena jugularis*. Matth. Sylv.: "Guedegi sunt vene guides. Alguidegi in collo flobotomantur."

<sup>6</sup> *noyousnesse*. See *noyous*, *Cathol. Angl.*, page 256. The Latin has: *propinquitatem*, and the translator seems to have been influenced by the preceding *affenite*. <sup>7</sup> *sonner*, in margin.

rynges y-bounde togedire wiþ panycleris ligamentes, habbynge in Add. MS. þe Innore partye a ful smeþe pannicle Ioynynge togedire þilke 12,056. 20 grustly rynges. And þilke rynges, whenne þat þey ben ioynede with mery, þey ben defautyf anonde þe mery. And þe forme of þe canne of þe longes [is]\* as yt were þe forme of a cane—þat is to say a reed, of þe whiche reed þe fourþ part were kutt away in lengthe, & aftere- 24 ward þe canne ys y-wreye wiþ a sotyl cloth, þat whanne þat a grete mosseH of mete passe doun be þe mery, he scholde han non lettynge, but þilke pannicle of mery ȝeuyth stede to þe grete mete passynge doun to þe stomak. þe protbolle þat is mad of þre grustlys, ys y-sette 28 aboue þese<sup>9</sup> two weyȝes. And boþe on þe ryȝte syde & eke on þe lefte syde of þe cane of þese longes, þere beþ tweye grete veynes þat beþ y-clepyde **organice** opere ellys **guydes**. & vndire þe veynes þere ben grete arteryes, and of þe kyttinge of þilke Veynes & 32 Arteryes þere comyth ofte tymes gret peryle & sumtyme sodeyne deþ; for þe grete afynite<sup>10</sup> þat þey han in þe herte & þe grete noyenne þat þey han to þe lyffer, sennore by hem blod ys evacuated, wherfore spiritus exaleþ whyche þat buþ frendys, boþe to þe body &

<sup>10</sup> a, above line.



The muscles,  
nerves, and  
vessels of the  
neck

[4 lf. 79, bk.]

pass in its  
longitudinal  
direction.

Wounds on  
the neck are  
either longi-  
tudinal or  
transverse.

In the latter  
case staunch  
the blood,

sew the vein,  
and the  
nerve,

and apply a  
preparation

freendis boþe to þe body and also to<sup>1</sup> þe soule<sup>2</sup> / þe ligament<sup>3</sup> of þe  
þe prote is clepid emanence eiþir þe heiþþe of þe epiglote, & in þe sidis  
of þe prote þere is sett gula. &<sup>3</sup> þe goynge of þe brawnys, senewis  
and cordis, veynes & arteries & her braunchis bi<sup>4</sup> parties of þe heed 4  
proceden aftir þe ordour of eeris,<sup>5</sup> & þei ben ordeyned in þe necke  
& in gula aftir her lenkþe. & herbi þou maist<sup>6</sup> se þat it is necessarie  
a surgian to make hise kuttingis & hise brennyngis bi lenkþe of þe  
necke & of þe prote, & þat þe woundis þat ben maad ouerþwert<sup>8</sup>  
ben more perlous, þan þo þat ben in lenkþe /

Now we wolen tretyn of woundis þat ben maad in þis place,  
wiþ a swerd or wiþ sum þing semblable to him, or wiþ an arowe or  
sum þing semblable to him. & if it be wiþ a swerd, eiþir it is ouer- 12  
þwert eiþir in lenkþe / & if it be ouerþwert & þere be kutt greete  
veynes eiþer arteries, it is to dreden. Neþeles þou schalt helpe to  
staunche þe blood & consowde þe veyne, aftir þe techinge tofore  
asigned in þe chapitle of flux of blood. & if þer be a senewe kutt, 16  
þanne brynge boþe parties of þe senewe togidere & sowe þe pelliclis  
of þe senewe wiþ þe sowynge of þe woundis, as I haue tauzt tofore  
in þe place of sowynge of senewis, & leie aboue lumbricus of þe

<sup>1</sup> to, above line.

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: qui est inter corpus et animam amicabile ligamentum.

<sup>3</sup> in, inserted.

<sup>5</sup> eeris for heeris.

Add. MS. 12,056. eke to þe soule. þe ligamente of þe prote ys y-clepyd þe<sup>6</sup> eminence 20  
opere þe hekþe of þe epiglote, & in þe sydes of þe prote þere is y-set  
gula. & þe goynge of brawnys, cordys, synwes, veynes, arteryes &  
here braunchys by parties of þe hed proceden aftyre þe ordre of  
heres, & þey ben ordeyned in þe nekke & in þe gula aftire here 24  
lengþe. And hereby þou maiste ysene, how þat yt is necessarye a  
surgyn to maken hys kuttinges, & hys brennynges by lengþe of þe  
nekke & of þe prote, and þat þe woundys þat ben y-mad twarte  
offere beþ more perylose, þen þo þat bene in lengthe. 28

**Wonde of þe nekke.** ¶ Now we wyl tretyn of woundes þat  
beþ mad in þis place wiþ a swerd opere with sum þynge semblable  
to hym, opere wiþ an arwe, opere with sum þynge semblable to hym.  
And 3if it be wyth a swerde, opere yt ys twarte offere ore in lengthe ; 32  
and 3if it be twart offere, and þere ben y-kutt grete Veynes opere  
arteryies, hit ys gretly to dreden. Napeles þou schalt helpe to  
staunche þe blod & to consowde þe veyne, aftere þe techynge tofore  
asygnd in þe chapytle off flux of blod. And 3if þere be a synwe 36  
kutte, brynge þe parties of þe synwe togedyre, & sow þe pellykles  
of þe synwe with þe sowynge of þe wounde, as y haue tauzt tofore  
in þe<sup>7</sup> place of sowynge of synwes, and leye aboffe lumbricus of þe

[7 fol. 84 b]

<sup>6</sup> þe, above line.



- erþe, þat<sup>t</sup> beth erþe-wormes staumpid & boilid wiþ oile of<sup>t</sup> rosis, & <sup>of earth-</sup>kepe þe sowynge <sup>worms.</sup> <sup>[1 lf. 80]</sup> <sup>1</sup>with byndynge, & so procede forþ in al þing<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> þe cure, as it<sup>t</sup> is told in þe chapitle tofore schewid / & if<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> þe <sup>If the wound</sup> <sup>is longitudin-</sup> <sup>al it needs</sup> <sup>sewing and</sup> <sup>puluia</sup> <sup>2</sup>wounde were in lenkþe, it<sup>t</sup> is not<sup>t</sup> necessarie but<sup>t</sup> for to sowe þe wounde & caste aboue þe poudre of<sup>t</sup> lyme, frankencense, & sandra-  
goun, & kepe þe poudre & þe sowynge wiþ byndynge, til þe wounde  
be ful consowdid / & if<sup>t</sup> þe wounde were maad in þe parties wiþ an  
8 arowe or wiþ a knyft, or with a spere or sum þing<sup>t</sup> semblable to hem,  
& if<sup>t</sup> þer be an arowe, drawe him out<sup>t</sup>; & if<sup>t</sup> an arowe be drawe out<sup>t</sup>,  
loke if<sup>t</sup> þer folowe emorosogie,<sup>2</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> is to seie, a greet flux of blood,  
& þanne staunche it<sup>t</sup> aftir þe doctryne þat<sup>t</sup> is told tofore / & if<sup>t</sup> þer <sup>An arrow</sup> <sup>must be</sup> <sup>drawn out,</sup> <sup>and if</sup> <sup>Emorogie</sup> <sup>(hemorrhage)</sup> <sup>ensues,</sup> <sup>staunch the</sup> <sup>blood,</sup> <sup>if there are</sup> <sup>pains, tent</sup> <sup>the wound.</sup>  
12 be no flux of blood, loke if<sup>t</sup> þer be akþe / & if<sup>t</sup> þer be akþe, putte in  
þe wounde a litil tent<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> may holde þe wounde open al a day, þat<sup>t</sup>  
þou maist<sup>t</sup> seen þat<sup>t</sup> þe woundid man schal haue noon akþe / & if<sup>t</sup>  
he haue noon akþe, lete þe wounde be consowdid; for sumtyme it<sup>t</sup>  
16 happiþ, þat<sup>t</sup> an arowe or sum þing<sup>t</sup> semblable passiþ þoruþ þe necke  
& þe þrote, & he touche not<sup>t</sup> þe senewe, arterie, ne veyne, & þanne it<sup>t</sup> <sup>[3 lf. 80, bk.]</sup>  
nediþ not<sup>t</sup> but<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> þe wounde be <sup>3</sup>consowdid. & if<sup>t</sup> þer were akþe <sup>If there are</sup> <sup>pains and</sup> <sup>swelling,</sup> <sup>tent the</sup> <sup>wound and</sup> <sup>apply oil of</sup> <sup>roses.</sup>  
20 þe wounde wiþ hote oile of<sup>t</sup> rosis & to putte in a tente not<sup>t</sup> to
- <sup>2</sup> Lat. emorosagia. Matth. Sylv.: "Emorogia. Emorosagia .i. sanguis fluxus vel discursus."

- erthe þat<sup>t</sup> beþ erthe wormes y-stampyde & boylled wyth oylle of <sup>Add. MS.</sup> roses, & kepe þe sowynge with byndynge, and so procede forþ in alle <sup>12,056.</sup> þynge in þe cure, as yt is tolde in the chapitle tofore schewyde.
- 24 And 3if þat<sup>t</sup> þe wonde were in lengþe, yt ys nozt necessarie but  
forto sowe þe wounde & to casten aboue, þe poudre of lym, ffrank  
ensence & sank<sup>t</sup> dragoun, & to kepe þe sewynge & þe poudre with  
byndynge, tyl þat<sup>t</sup> þe wounde be ful consouded. And 3if þat<sup>t</sup> þe  
28 wounde were y-mad in þo parties with an arwe opere a knyff<sup>t</sup>, opere  
a spere, opere sum þynge semblable to hem, and 3if þere be an arwe,  
drawe hym out, and 3if þe arwe be drawen out, loke 3if þere folwe  
emorosogie, þat<sup>t</sup> ys to seye, a gret flux of blod, & þenne staunche hym  
32 aftere þe doctryne y-told tofore. & 3if þere be non flux of blod,  
loke 3if þere be akþe; & 3if þere be akþe, put into þe wounde a  
lytel tente þat<sup>t</sup> may holde þe wounde opyn al day, þat<sup>t</sup> þou may se  
þat<sup>t</sup> þe wounded man schal han non akþe. And 3if he haue non akþe,  
36 lete þe wounde be consoudyde; ffor sum tyme it happith, þat<sup>t</sup> an  
arwe, oper sum thyng semblable passith þorwe þe nekke & þe þrote,  
& 3it he touchiþ nozt veyne, arterye, ne synwe, & þenne it nedip  
nozt but þat<sup>t</sup> þe wonde be consouded. And 3if þere were akþe opere  
40 ellys a bygynnyng of swellynge, þan yt were necessarie to fulfyllen  
þe wounde wiþ hot oyle of roses & to put in a tente nozt to grete,



greet<sup>t</sup>, wet in þe 3elke of an ey & oile of rosis hoot<sup>t</sup>, & so holde þe wounde open, til þat he 3eue quytture, & aftir clense him & aftir consowde him / Vndirstonde þe perilis þat comen for [wondys]\* þat ben maad in þis place / þe firste perel is: if þat þe necke be kutt<sup>t</sup> 4 ouerþwert<sup>t</sup> wip a swerd, so þat þe necke-boon & þe marie of þe necke-boon be al atwo, it is deedliche. & if þat nucha, þat is mary of þe necke boon, is not kutt<sup>t</sup> al atwo but is hurt<sup>t</sup>, it is perile of lesynge, felynge & meuynge,<sup>1</sup> & at þe laste be deed, but if þat 8. and generally mortal

medicyns þat I schal telle moun helpe / & if þat ony veyne or ony greet senewe be kutt<sup>t</sup> ouerþwert<sup>t</sup>, I suppose þat he be heelid, þe necke schal neuere haue<sup>2</sup> his free meuynge; & if þat ony of þe veynes organik, þe whiche þat ben clepid guydes, or ellis ony of þe 12 arteries þat ben vndir hem be kutt<sup>t</sup>, it is drede of sodeyn deef, for sodeyn exalacioun of þe spiritis & also for affinite of þe herte; & also if þat þe cane of þe lungis be kutt<sup>t</sup> ouer<sup>3</sup>þwert<sup>t</sup> al atwo, for þe more partie it is deedliche / Also it is seid, þat if þe veynes þat 16 ben bihynde þe eeris bee kutt<sup>t</sup> al atwo, he ne schal neuere engendre. And also sumtyme it is kutt<sup>t</sup> eipir prickid þe senewe þat is clepid reuersif<sup>t</sup>, þat is vndir boþe sidis of þe eere, of þe whiche kuttinge or prickynge euermore is maad hosnesse<sup>4</sup> / And if þat þe places 20

**Nota.** Hoarseness follows the cutting of the "reversif nerve" (auricularis posterior).

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: est periculum amissionis sensus et motus. <sup>2</sup> haue, in margin.

<sup>4</sup> hosnesse. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 248. "hoorsnesse, Rancor."

Add. MS. 12,056. y-wett in þe 3olke of an ey3e & oyle of roses hot, & so holde þe wounde open to þat he 3yfe quytter, & afterwarde clanse hym & afterwarde consowde hym. Nota: vndirstande þe peryles þat comen from wondys\* þat ben maad in þis place. þe firste <sup>5</sup>Perel ys: 3if 24 þat þe nekke be kutte twarte offere with a swerd, so þat þe nekke-bon & þe marye of þe nekke-bon be y-kut al atwo, yt is dedlyche; and 3if þat nucha, þat ys þe marye of þe nekke-bon, is no3t y-kut al atwo but ys y-hurt, yt is peryle of leosynge, ffelynge & meffynge, & 28 at þe laste to be ded, but 3if þe medycines þat y schal tellen afterwarde mowe helpen. And 3if þat enye Veynes opere enye gret synwe be y-kut twart offere, y suppose þat he be helyde, þe nekke schal neuere haue hys fre meffynge; and 3if enye of the veynes 32 organyk<sup>t</sup> whiche þat bep clepyde guydes, opere ellys enye of þe arteries þat bep vndire hem bep y-kut, yt ys drede of sodeyne deef, ffor sodeyne exalacioun of þe spirites & also for Afynyte of þe herte; & also 3if þat þe canne off<sup>t</sup> þe longes be y-kut twarte offere al 36 atwo, for þe more partye it is dedlyche; & so it ys seyde 3if þat þe veynes þat bep behynde þe eres be y-kut al atwo, he schal nevire engendre. Also sum tyme ys y-kut opere y-prekyde þe synwe þat is clepyde reuersiff<sup>t</sup>, þat ys vndire boþe þe sydes of þe ere, of whose 40 kuttinge opere prekyunge euere more ys maad horsnesse. And 3if

[<sup>3</sup> fol. 85 a]



ben peersid with an arowe, & þouȝ þat trache arterie be peersid or ellis ysophage, so þat nucha be nouȝt prickid bi þe mydle, þanne ȝitt he may be heelid wiþ gode medicyns & acordynge.

4 þou schalt helpe nucha þat is hurt in þis maner: þou schalt helde into þe wounde, in þe bigynnyng, oile of rosis, & aftirward do yn oile of rosis & ȝelke of an ey medlid togidere, and þou schalt be bisy in al maner to aswage akþe; & whanne þat quytture is

Treatment if the spinal marrow is hurt.

Apply  
Olium  
Rosarum.

8 maad, þanne leie a mundificatif wiþ medicyns confortatiuis & incarnatiuis maad in þis maner / Take oile of rosis colate 3.iiij., wex, rosyn of ech two dragmis, terbentine .iiij. 3, frankencense, mastik of ech .i. 3, mirre, sarcocol,<sup>1</sup> mummie<sup>2</sup> of ech 3.ß., barly mele 3.ß.,

R

Modus  
confortandi  
& mundifi-  
candi vul-  
nera Nuche.

12 streyne it on a clop & <sup>3</sup>leie it on þe nucha þat is hurt. & þei þat hereof<sup>4</sup> pronosticacioun schulde go tofore, þe which schulde schewe to yuel, neþeles bi þis medicyn þer cometh a rectificacioun to þe nucha, & melioracioun of meuyng of lymes, þat ben byneþe þe place of þe nucha þat is hurt, more helpinge, þat semeth possible to þe leche. For þer is no þing vnpossible to stalworþe<sup>5</sup> nature; namely, whanne þat it is holpen wiþ a good leche & wiþ þingis, þat ben

[<sup>3</sup> lf. 81, bk.]

Tho' the prognosis is unfavourable, yet medicine,

Nota

nature and the physician may help.

<sup>1</sup> *Sarcocolla*, Gr. *Σαρκοκόλλα*, "is the Gumme or liqore of a tre growyng in Persia." Halle, *Table*, p. 109.

<sup>2</sup> *mummie*, *mumia*. See Halle, *Table*, p. 72, and Notes.

<sup>4</sup> MS. of here.

<sup>5</sup> *stalworthe*. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. *Stalwart*.

þat place ben y-perced with an arwe, & þowȝ þat trachea arteria be y-percyde opere ellis ysophage, so þat Nucha be nouȝt þrilled be þe mydle, þey mowe ben y-helyde with gode medycines & acordynge. þou schalt helpe Nucha þat ys y-hurt in þis manere: þou schalt helden into þe wounde in þe bygynnyng oyle of roses & afterwarde leye aboffe oyle of roses & þe ȝelke of an eyȝe, and þou schalt be busy in alle manere to aswage akþe; & whenne þat quyter ys y-mad, þenne leye a mundificatyff wiþ medicynes confortatyff and <sup>6</sup>Incarnatyfes y-mad in thys manere: R. oyle of rosis colat .3. iiij, with<sup>7</sup> resyne ana. 3. ij, terbentyne 3. iiij, frank ensence, mastyk ana. 3. i, mirre, sarcocolle,<sup>8</sup> mumie ana. 3. ß, barly mele .3. ß; streyne it on a clop & leye yt on þe nucha þat is hurt. And þawȝ þat hereof euere more pronosticacion scholde go tofore whiche scholde sownen to yuele, napeles by þis medicine þere comyth rectificacioun to þe nuca, & amelioracioun off mevyng of lymes þat beþ beneþe þe place of þe nuca þat ys y-hurt, more helpynge, þenne semyth possible to þe leche. For þere ys noþynge vnpossible to Stalworth nature; namlyche whanne þat yt is holpen wiþ a gode leche & wiþ þynges, þat beþ

Add. MS.  
12,056.

[<sup>6</sup> fol. 85 b]

<sup>7</sup> wiþ for wex.

<sup>8</sup> MS. *sarceticolle*.



Wounds of  
the brain, the  
Spinal Cord,

and the  
principal  
nerves

[\* If. 82]  
are mortal.

Avoid such  
hopeless  
cases.

helpinge & acordynge to a good intencioun / Here vndirstonde þat<sup>t</sup>  
al maner wounde þat<sup>t</sup> peersiþ to þe substaunce of þe brayn or ellis  
to þe nucha, so þat<sup>t</sup> bi þer hurtynge of þe nucha þe meuyng & þe  
felynge of summe lymes ben lost, nameliche from þe whirle-boonys 4  
of þe rigge, of þe reynes vpward, & al maner wounde þat<sup>t</sup> is maad  
in þe extremittees of<sup>1</sup> þe lacertis<sup>2</sup> as .iiij. fyngir mele<sup>3</sup> brede vndir þe  
schuldris, eiþer .iii. fyngir mele brede aboue þe elbowe eiþer byneþe,  
eiþir .iiij. fyngir mele aboue þe kne or byneþe / & ech wounde þat<sup>t</sup> is 8  
in a senewe place with strengest akþe & hardnes, <sup>4</sup>schal be deemed  
deedlich, for þe nobilte of þilke brayn, & for þe affinite of þe nucha  
wiþ þe brayn, of þe which nucha passiþ as a reuere<sup>5</sup> from a welle,  
& for þe affinite of þilke senewe wiþ þe brayn bi mene of nucha, of 12  
þe whiche þei passen out as a flood / Wherfore þou schalt euermore  
in sich maner woundis pronosteken deth, & euermore fle as miche  
as þou myzt<sup>t</sup> from vnresonable curis, but if þou be with þe more  
instaunce y-preied / Neþeles sumtyme nature wiþ good helpinge 16  
worchiþ þat<sup>t</sup> semeþ to þe leche vnpossible, neuer-þe-lattere loue noon  
sich [cures]\* but if þou be greetliche preied & þanne entermete of  
þe cure of þe sike man //

<sup>1</sup> MS. *as*. Lat. in extremitatibus lacertorum.

<sup>2</sup> *lacertis*, the sinewy part of the arm. See *Vicary*, p. 57, note 1.

<sup>3</sup> *ij fyngir mele brede*. Lat. *tribus digitis*.

<sup>5</sup> MS. *rēuere*.

Add. MS.  
12,056.

of  
woundes  
þat ben  
dedlich

[<sup>6</sup> fol. 86 a]

helpynge & acordynge to a gode entencioun. Here vndirstande þat 20  
alle manere wounde þat persith to þe substaunce of þe brayn oþere  
ellys to þe nuca, so þat by þe hurtynge of þe nuca þe meffynge &  
þe ffelynge of some lymes ben y-lost, namlyche from þe whirle-  
bonys of þe rugge, of þe reynes vpwarde, & alle manere wounde þat 24  
ys mad in þe extremitis of þe lacertes as þre fyngremele brede in  
þe schuldres, oþere þre fyngre mele brede aboue þe elbowe oþere by-  
neþen, oþere þre fyngre mele aboue þe kne oþere byneþene, & euery  
wounde þat ys in a synwye place with strengest akþe & hardnesse, 28  
schal be demyde dedlyche: ffor þe noblete of þilke brayn, & for þe  
Affynite of nuca wyth þe brayn, of þe whiche nuca passith as þe  
Ryuere from a welle, & for þe Afynite of þilke Synwes wiþ þe brayn,  
by mene of þe Nuca, of whom þey passen out as of a flod, where- 32  
fore <sup>6</sup>þou schalt euyre more in swiche manere woundes pronostiken  
deþ, and euere more fle as myche as þou mayst<sup>t</sup> from vnresonable  
cures, but 3if þou be wiþ þe more Instaunce y-preyede. Napeles  
sumtyme nature with gode helpynge worchith þat semeþ to the 36  
leche vnpossible. Neuere þe latere loue non swiche cures\* but 3if  
þou be gretliche y-preyede, and þenne entyremete of þe cure of þe  
syke man.



**T**He .iiij. chapitle of þe .ij. tretis is of woundis ¶ Cap<sup>m</sup> .iiij<sup>m</sup>  
 of þe spaude,<sup>1</sup> schuldre, arm, handis, fyngris,  
 brawnys, veynes, & her anotamie /

4 þe spawde is oon of þe .iiij. boonys, þe which þat<sup>t</sup> makþ þe  
 foorme of þe schuldre / & þe spawde-boon is þinne & brood two-<sup>1</sup> The Shoul-  
 ward þe schuldris & in hise endis gristly. On þe vpper side of der-blade.  
 him he haþ an egge sumwhat greet<sup>t</sup> & twoward þe arm <sup>2</sup>in þe place [<sup>2</sup> If. 82, bk.]  
 8 of þe schuldre he is greet<sup>t</sup> & round; & þilke eende is holowe as a  
 box, & þis boon is lich to a pele<sup>3</sup> wiþ þe whiche men setten breed  
 into þe ouene, & on þe hyndere partie of the schuldre he haþ an  
 eminence. & in þe box of þis boon — —<sup>4</sup> þe which is clepd adiu-<sup>2</sup> The Ad-  
 12 torium; þe which is oon boon sumwhat crokid, greet<sup>t</sup> & holowe / jutor  
 (Humerus)  
 þis boon is greet<sup>t</sup> for necessite of strenkþe, & of schap holowe, þat<sup>t</sup> is strong and  
 he were lizt<sup>t</sup>, þat<sup>t</sup> he schulde not þoru; his heuynes lette þe worch- hollow.  
 inge of lacertis, & þe round extremite of þis boon entriþ into þe  
 16 holownes of þe spawde. & þei ben bounden togidere wiþ a bowable  
 ligament. þe canel-boon<sup>5</sup> of þe brest is in þis maner maad, hauynge  
 The Cannel  
 bone (Clavicle)

<sup>1</sup> *spaude*, *spatula* = scapula, shoulder-blade. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 352.  
 “*spawde* *Armus*.” O.Fr. *espalde*.

<sup>3</sup> *pele*, Lat. *palla*. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 273, note 4.

<sup>4</sup> Some words are wanting in both MSS. (*entriþ þe extremite of a boon*).  
 Lat.: In hac pyside sive concavitate huius ossis, intrat extremitas ossis  
 adiutorii.

<sup>5</sup> See *N. E. Dict.* This is the earliest reference for *canelbone* = clavícula.

¶ Capit. .iiij. tretis .ij. is of woundes of þe spaude, Add. MS.  
 schuldre, arme, handis, ffigres, bawnes, veynes, 12,056.  
 20 and here Anotamye.

þe spawde ys one of þe .iiij. bonys whiche þat makþ þe forme  
 of þe schuldre, & þe spawde-bon is þenne & brode towarde þe  
 schuldres & in hys endys gristly. On þe vppere syde of hym he  
 24 haþ an egge sumwhat gret & towarde þe arme in þe place of þe  
 schuldre he ys grete & rounde. And þilke ende ys holwe as a box,  
 and þis bon ys lyche to a pele, þe whiche men settyth brede into  
 þe ovyne, and on þe hyndere partye of þe schuldre he haþ an  
 28 emynense. & in þe box of þis bon — —\* whiche ys y-clepyde ad-  
 iutorium þe whiche ys a bon sumwhat crokyde, gret & holow. þis  
 bon ys gret for necessite of strengthe, & of schappe holwe, þat he  
 were lyzte, þat he scholde nouzt þrowen his hevynesse lette þe  
 32 wirchyng of lacertes, and þe rounde extremite of þis bon entreþ in-  
 to þe holwenesse of the spaude. & þey beþ y-bounde togedre with  
 a bowable ligament. þe canel-bon of þe brest ys in this manere



an additament<sup>t</sup> sumwhat<sup>t</sup> round in þe neþer partie, þe which entriþ a maner box, þe which is in þe ouer partie of þe ouer boon of þe .vij. boonys of þe brest<sup>t</sup>. Euery extremite of þilke vij. boonys ben ioyned with þe spawde, þat þe schuldre myȝte be þe more strengere, 4  
 & forto make þis place more strengere, þer ben sett<sup>t</sup> .ij. smale boonys, þe whiche ben clepid rostralia<sup>1</sup> to þe lijknes of þe bele <sup>2</sup>of a crowe, & for to fastne þe schuldre, þis boon rostral is putt<sup>t</sup> in maner of a wegge / But þe boon of þe adiutori hap in þe neþer partie twoward 8  
 þe elbowe .ij. eminentis, & þe oon of þe eminence is more hizere þan þat oþer; & boþe þese eminence ben as þei it were holf<sup>t</sup> a boket<sup>3</sup> wiþ þe which men drawen watir / & þilke .ij. additamentis ben ioyned wiþ þe boonys of þe arm / þe arm from þe elbowe dounward hap .ij. 12  
 bonys; & þe ouer boon, þe which þat arecchip fro þe þombe to þe boon þat is clepid adiutorium, is þe smallere boon; & þe neþir boon þat strecchip from þe litil fyngir to þe elbowe is þe grettere boon. & he hap in þe ouer ende twoward þe elbowe an additament<sup>t</sup> lijk twoward 16  
 a bille or a pike; & þilke pike makip þe elbowe scharp whanne þe arm is folden, & it lettip þat þe arm may not be bowid [bakwarde]\*.

Joins with the  
Os Rostrale  
(Coracoid),  
[<sup>2</sup> lf. 83]

and has 2  
eminences.

The Forearm  
has two bones  
(Ulna and  
Radius),

and an "Ad-  
ditament"  
(Olecranon).

<sup>1</sup> *rostralia*. Coracoids. "*Rostriformis Processus*, a Process of the Shoulder-blade, and of the lower Jawbone."—Phillips.

<sup>3</sup> Compare *Vicary*, p. 49, l. 18, where the word *polly* is substituted for bucket.

Add. MS. 12.056. [4 fol. 86 b] y-made, habbynge an additamente sumwhat <sup>4</sup>rounde in þe neþere partye, þe whiche entryth a manere box, þe whiche ys in þe offere 20  
 partye of þe ovyre bon of þe vij. bonys of þe brest<sup>t</sup>. And euerye extremyte of þilke vij. bonys beþ y-loyned wiþ þe spawde, þat þe schuldre myȝhte be þe more strenger; and forto make þis place þe more strengere, þere beþ sette two smale bonys whiche beþ y-clepyde 24  
**rostralis** to þe lyknesse of þe byle of a crowe, & forto fastne þe schuldres, þis bon rostrale ys y-put in þe manere of a wegge. But þe bon of þe adiutorie hap in þe neþere partye towarde þe elbowe tweye emynences, and þe on of þe emynence ys more herre þenne 28  
 þe othire; and boþe þese emynence beþ as yt were half<sup>t</sup> a bokett<sup>t</sup> wiþ þe whiche men drawip water; and þilke tweye Additamentis beþ y-loyned with þe bonys of þe arme. þe Arme from þe Elbowe dunwarde, hap two bonys, and þe offere bon whiche þat strecchip 32  
 from þe þowmbe þat ys clepyde adiutorium is smallere bon, and þe neþere bon þat strecchith from þe lytel fyngere to þe elbowe is þe grettere bon. & he hap in þe offere ende towarde the elbowe an additament like to a byle oþere a pyk<sup>t</sup>, and þilke pyk<sup>t</sup> makyth þe 36  
 elbowe scharpe, whenne þat þe arme ys y-folden, and it letteþ þat þe arme may noȝt ben y-bowyde bakwarde.\* þese tweye bonys beþ



þese .ij. boonys ben so ioyned togidere, þat it semeþ as þouȝ it  
 were but oo. boon. & þe neþir ende of þese boonys ben ioyned  
 with þe boonys of þe hand, þe whiche ben clepid rasceta,<sup>1</sup> þat ben  
 4 .viij. boonys, .iiij. of <sup>2</sup>hem ben ordeyned & ioyned with summe  
 additamentis to þe .ij. boonys of þe arm / & þe oþere .iiij. ben con-  
 teyned<sup>3</sup> with þe boonys of þe hand þat ben clepid pecten<sup>4</sup> / þe  
 firste boon of pecten is ioyned with þe first boon of rasceta,<sup>5</sup> & þe  
 8 oþere .iiij. in þe same maner outaken þe þombe. —<sup>6</sup> þat haþ .iiij. The thumb  
 boonys as þe oþere fyngris han, conteyneþ<sup>3</sup> his firste boon wiþ þe has 3  
 extremite of þe ouer fosile,<sup>7</sup> & þe þombe euenliche aȝenstondip þe phalanges.  
 strenkþe of þe oþere fyngris in clicchinge.<sup>8</sup> & alle þese boonys þat  
 12 menciouȝ is maad of, þat ben in ioynturis, as þe schuldris, elbowis,  
 raschet, & þe knottis of alle þe fyngris, ben ioyned togidere bi mene  
 of ligamentis, as it is seid tofore / & þese boonys ben clopid wiþ  
 symple fleisch & brawnys after þat þe dyuersite of foorme of lymes  
 16 askiþ /

& alle þe greete senewis proceden out of nucha, þe whiche  
 senewis ben compounned wiþ ligamentis & wiþ symple fleisch,  
 makynge brawnys meuyng þo parties; of þe whiche brawnys  
 20 summe ben open to a mannys siȝt, & summe ben hid; for þei ben  
 departid in two <sup>9</sup>þe leeste parties<sup>10</sup> / þere ben .iiij. brawnys open in  
 þe fleischy partie of þe arm, bitwene þe schuldre & þe elbowe: oon  
 on þe ynnere half, anopir on þe vttere half, anopir on þe lowere  
 24 half, anopir on þe hiȝere half. Whanne þe ynnere brawn is drawe  
 togidere þanne is þe arme foldid ynward, & þe contrarie brawn on  
 When the inner Muscle contracts,

<sup>1</sup> *Rasceta*, Arab = carpus. Castelli, *Lexicon medic.*, p. 139. See Littré: "rchette," and Devic Suppl. to Littré. *Diet.*

<sup>3</sup> *conteyned*, *conteyneþ* for *continued*, *continuesþ*.

<sup>4</sup> *pecten*, Latin, pecten manus. See Halle, *Treatise of the Anatomye*, p. 62 (A.D. 1562). "And after these bones Rasceta, are constitute the bones of the palmes of the hands, called Ostea metacarpis. i. Postbrachialia, Palma, vel manus pectus." The corrupt form *Patinis* occurs in *Vicary*, p. 50, l. 9.

<sup>5</sup> MS. *pasceta*.

<sup>6</sup> Two words (þe þombe) are wanting. Latin: Nam pollex tria habens ossa. . . . He counts the metacarpal bone of the thumb as a phalanx.

<sup>7</sup> *fosile*, Latin: focile. See *Vicary*, p. 49, note 3.

<sup>8</sup> *in clicchinge*, Latin: (pollex) ut sit solus ex opposito comprehendens cum aliis firmitus, et firmitus retinens apprehensum.

<sup>10</sup> Lat. in tres partes minimas diuiduntur.

so y-ioynede togedire, þat it semyth as on bon. And þe neþere ende  
 of þese bonys beþ y-ioyned wiþ þe bonys of þe hande, whiche beþ  
 28 y-clepyde rasceta þat beth viij bonys.

*Here the Add. MS. ends.*



the outer extends.

The muscles end in Cords near the joints of the arm.

[4 lf. 84, bk.]

N

From the Vena Cava one branch runs to each armpit,

where it divides into 2.

1. at the elbow called Basilica,

in the right hand Salvatella, in the left hand Splenatica;

þe vttere half<sup>1</sup> is maad long<sup>1</sup>; & whanne þat<sup>1</sup> þe vttere brawn of<sup>1</sup> þe<sup>1</sup> arm is maad schort<sup>1</sup>, þanne is þe arm drawe outward & þe ynnere is maad long<sup>1</sup>; & in þe same maner by<sup>2</sup> oþere .ij. brawnys, þe arm is houe vp & lete falle down / & whanne þat<sup>1</sup> alle þe brawnys traueilen<sup>4</sup> liche myche, þe arm stant<sup>1</sup> euene riȝtliche & declyneþ to no partie / & þese brawnys,<sup>3</sup> .iiij. fyngir mele from þe ioynture of<sup>1</sup> þe schuldre, ben nakid cordis, & þei ben þe same from þe ioynture of<sup>1</sup> þe elbowe & in þe myddil of<sup>1</sup> þe adiutorie, þat<sup>1</sup> is þe place þat<sup>1</sup> is from þe<sup>8</sup> schuldre to þe elbowe; þe cordis ben multiplied dyuersliche wiþ fleisch to þe composicioun of<sup>1</sup> þe same brawnys, .iiij. fyngir mele aboue þe elbowe. & .iiij. fyngir mele by<sup>4</sup>neþe þe elbowe ben nakid cordis; & þere þei maken anopir<sup>5</sup> brawn; & in þis maner ben<sup>12</sup> maad nakid cordis & generacioun of<sup>1</sup> brawnys, til euery lyme haue his meuyng, after þat<sup>1</sup> it nedip him.

In boþe þe armes ben .iiij. open veynes þat<sup>1</sup> comen from þe lyuere, & ben scharpeled<sup>6</sup> þoruȝ þe arm. For þere is a braunchid<sup>16</sup> veyne þe which wexip on þe vttere partie of<sup>1</sup> þe lyuere, & is dyuydid in two parties: oon arisyng, anopir descendyng; þe veyne arisyng comeþ to þe mydrif<sup>1</sup>; & sum partie of<sup>1</sup> hir is sparpoiled<sup>7</sup> þoruȝ þe mydrif<sup>1</sup> & þe lymes of<sup>1</sup> þe brest<sup>1</sup> / þat<sup>1</sup> oþere partie of<sup>1</sup> þe veyne passip<sup>20</sup> to þe arm-hoolis, & þere he is forkid. & þat<sup>1</sup> veyne passip byneþe the arm to þe elbowe, & þere sche may be seen; & he is clepid basilica<sup>8</sup> or ellis epatica, & aftirward he strecchip bi þe neþir partie of<sup>1</sup> þe arm to þe hond, bitwene þe litil fyngir & þe leche<sup>9</sup> fyngir, &<sup>24</sup> sche is clepid saluatella<sup>10</sup> or ellis epatica in þe riȝthond, & in þe lift-hand splenatica. þe toþir partie of<sup>1</sup> þis veyne þat<sup>1</sup> is dyuydid fro þis assellari strecchip to þe vttere partie of<sup>1</sup> þe schuldre: & þere is

<sup>1</sup> brawn, struck through after of þe.

<sup>2</sup> MS. ben.

<sup>3</sup> ben, inserted.

<sup>5</sup> corde, cancelled, after anopir.

<sup>6</sup> ben scharpeled, Latin: disperguntur—O.Fr. escharpiller, mettre en pièces. See Godefroy.

<sup>7</sup> is sparpoiled, Latin: dispergitur—O.Fr. esparpeiller. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 351, note 6.

<sup>8</sup> Basilica. See *Vicary*, p. 52, note 5. There is one reference for *φλέψ βασιλική* given in *Stephanus Thes.*, from Synesius, *De febribus*, which is a translation of an Arab. treatise by Constant. Africanus.

<sup>9</sup> leche fyngir. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 291, note 4. O.E. *læcefinger*, *Leechd.*, vol. i. p. 394. See Notes.

<sup>10</sup> Salvatella. See *Vicary*, p. 53, note 1. Dufresne gives one reference for Salvatella with a different meaning: "Pellicula involvens cerebrum." It occurs frequently in the Latin translations of Arab. authors, and translates Arab. sceilem or osailemon.



- <sup>1</sup>dyuydid. & þe oon partie goiþ to þe heed & þe opir partie to þe arm. & þilke is eftsoones dyuydid, & þe oon partie is spred bi þe arm manye weies wiþoute forþ, þat is clepid funis<sup>2</sup>; & þe opere  
 4 partie strecchiþ euene to þe elbowe, & þere sche is schewid bi þe ouer partie of þe arm; & so sche strecchiþ to þe hand, & þere sche apperip bitwene þe fyngir and þe pompe, & is clepid cephalica. ij. braunchis þat ben diuided þat comen fro þe schuldre, þe toon is  
 8 cephalica, þe opere from assillari,<sup>3</sup> þat is basilica, maken oon veyne þat is clepid mediana eiper purpurea. & þere ben .iiij. veynys, as it is seid bifore, *scilicet*, finis<sup>4</sup> brachij þat strecchiþ bi þe vttere partie of þe arm, & sephelica þe which þat strecchiþ bi þe ouer partie, &  
 12 basilica þat strecchiþ bi þe lower partie & communis seu mediana seu purpurea seu fusca quod idem est is comun veyne eipir myddil veyne, þe which þat is compounned of basilica & cephalica tofore seid, & sche apperip openliche in þe foldynge of þe myddil of þe  
 16 arm. // ¶ þe veynes þat comen from þe lyuere han manie departingis & dyuers placis, & for to telle alle þe departyngis, it is not profitable for a sirurgian / Saue it suffisiþ for a sirurgian, for to knowe in what place þe grete veynes sitten & þe arterijs, so þat he mowe  
 20 saue him-silf from perel & helpe hem, whanne þei ben kutt / þis þou schalt wite, þat from þe lyuere þer comeþ a veyne to euery lyme bicause of nurischinge. & for to make þe lymes ful of lijf, Arterijs comen þerto also. & þerfore in euery place þere þat ben  
 24 grete veynes, in þe same place ben arterijs.
- ¶ Bi þes þingis þat ben aforseid, þou maist wite wel þat þere comeþ greet perel of woundis, þat ben aboute þe schuldris & vndir þe arme-pittis,<sup>6</sup> & in þe boon of adiutorie, & in þe arm, & in þe  
 28 hondis / for whi: if woundis be maad in adiutorijs & in þe arme ouerþwert, it is greet perel lest þe braun be kutt away, wherby þe arme schulde haue his meuyng; & it is perel of kuttinge of veynes and arterijs, lest þe blood myȝte not be staunchid. ¶ And  
 32 if it be maad a wounde with a þing þat prickide, & falle vpon a

[<sup>1</sup> If. 85]  
 2. the other runs a. into the head;  
 b. one branch, funis, outside the arm; another branch, Cephalica, along the arm, between the thumb and the 1st finger.  
 The Basilica with the Cephalica form the Mediana.

Besides these 4 chief Veins,

there are many smaller ones,

[<sup>5</sup> If. 85, bk.]

which a Surgeon needn't know.

With every vein there is an Artery.

Off perelles off wondes an quattes,

if an important muscle is cut

or a blood-vessel,

if a Cord or Tendon is wounded,

<sup>2</sup> *funis*, Castelli, *Lexic. Medicum*, p. 351. "Arabes venam Medianam vocasse Funem brachii, testatur Ioh. Zecchius, lect. ii. in sect. 1. *Sph. Hipp.* p. m. 109." On this place *funis* evidently means not the vena mediana, but one of the recurrent veins.

<sup>3</sup> *Vena ascclariis*. Matth. Sylv.: "Vena communis nigra purpurea media — dicatur communis quoniam componitur ex assellari et humerali."

<sup>4</sup> *finis* for *funis*.

<sup>6</sup> *þe arme-pittis*. See *Wr. W.*, 627. 3. xv. cent.



[1 lf. 86] corde þat<sup>t</sup> is in þe <sup>1</sup>ende of þe braun, & is clepid thenantos,<sup>2</sup> þanne  
 where cramp  
 may arise,  
 it<sup>t</sup> is greet drede of þe spasme & aftirward of deef, for þe akyng  
 entriþ in þe corde þat is prickid, & so þe akyng arisiþ vp to þe  
 especially if  
 it is the ten-  
 don of the  
 elbow.  
 brayn, & þanne comeþ spasme. ¶ Also it falliþ many tyme þat<sup>t</sup> a  
 man is hurt þe brede of iij. fyngris wiþinne aboue þe elbowe, þer  
 is þe eende of þe braun & þere ben cordis; & þanne þer wole come  
 greet akyng, & þanne þe spasme aftir, & þese woundis ben mortal.

Treatment:  
 A wound  
 along the  
 arm is not  
 dangerous,  
 and must be  
 sewn.  
 ¶ If þat wounde be maad endlongis in þe arme & in adiutorio, 8  
 þanne it is not so greet drede þerof, þerfore it is necessarie for a  
 sirurgian to knowe þe perel of woundis þat falliþ in þis place, &  
 wheþer þe wounde be ouerþwert<sup>t</sup> or endelongis. & if þe wounde be  
 endelongis, þanne he schal ioyn þe wounde togidere & sewe hem, 12  
 & sprynge þeron þe poudre of lyme & of þere þingis, as it is aforeseid,  
 for to kepe þe sewyngis & þe ligaturis togidere & alle þingis as it is  
 aforeseid in þe wounde of fleisch. ¶ If þer be ony nerues, or  
 If nerves or  
 blood-vessels  
 are cut,  
 [3 lf. 86, bk.]  
 staunch the  
 blood,  
 join the  
 nerves or  
 cords  
 and apply a  
 defensive  
 medicine.  
 arterijs, ouþer veynes kutt<sup>t</sup> <sup>3</sup> ouerþwert<sup>t</sup>: þanne þou schalt worche 16  
 with þingis þat streyneþ blood, & þou schalt sewe þe hedis of þe  
 nerues togidere or of þe cordis. & þe pacient schal be kept from  
 akyng wiþ good kepinge & with reste, & he schal ligge in an euene  
 bed. & þou schalt leie aboute þe wounde a defensif of bole & of 20  
 oile of rosis þat is aforeseid / And þou þis defensijf be forþete in  
 of þere woundis, in þis wounde it may not in no maner. ¶ þou  
 schalt kepe þe sewyngis & þe ligaturis with poudre & lynet, as it  
 is aforeseid / Also þis þou must knowe if þou sewist sich a maner 24  
 wounde of nerues & cordis, & if þe akyng go not away, þou  
 muste rippe þe sewyng aȝen, & þou þis be contrarie to þe soudynge  
 of þe nerues, ȝitt<sup>t</sup> it is bettere to do<sup>4</sup> þus, þou he lese þe meuyng  
 of sum lyme, þat þe nerue seruede þerfore, þan falle in þe spasme; 28  
 for þanne it were drede of deef / þerfore it is necessarie for to  
 opene þe wounde & fille it ful of oile of rosis & of ȝelke of an ey.  
 & vpon <sup>5</sup> þe wounde leie of þe same medicyn til þe wounde quyt-  
 ture, & þanne make þe wounde clene with mundificatiues, & þanne 32  
 regendre fleisch as it is aforeseid // If it be so þat þere come ony  
 hoot apostymes vpon woundis in þis place: þanne þou schalt  
 worche as it is aforeseid in a propre chapitre // If it so be, þat þou  
 leie vpon þe wounde oile of rosis, & ȝelke of an ey for to do awei þe 36

<sup>2</sup> thenantos, sinew. Matth. Sylv.: "Tenantos gre. est chorda que in capitibus musculorum aggregatur." It is a corrupt form of Gr. *τένοντες* (Suidas Gloss.).

<sup>4</sup> do above line.



akyngē, & if þere falle a flux of blood, & þanne if þou leidist þerto  
 ony constreyning þingis, þe akyngē wolde be þe more, & if þou  
 leidist þerto þe ȝelke of an ey & oile, þat wole make þe flux of  
 4 blood þe more—In þis caas what is for to done? þou schalt brenne  
 þe hedis of þe veynes & of þe cordis with an hoot yrn, but þou  
 schalt not touche þe lippis of þe wounde wip iren in no maner; &  
 þanne þou schalt leie in the wounde þe ȝelke of an ey & oile of  
 8 rosis, til al þe rynde of þe brennyng falle awei. & þanne þou schalt  
 leie þerto mundificatiues, & þanne þou schalt regendre fleisch, and  
 þanne þou schalt soude þe wounde /

If oil causes  
hemorrhage,  
and styptics  
pain,

then use the  
Cauterium  
actuale  
(red-hot  
iron).

12 <sup>1</sup>Of woundis of thoracis & of þe brest & of þe  
 membris þat ben conteyned in it, & anothamia.

**T**Horax is maad of .vij. boonys & euery boon at þe eende is  
 cartilagosum / þese .vij. boonys ben ioyned togidere in þis  
 maner þat euery leenē vpon oþir, & wip þese .vij. boonys ben maad  
 16 fast .vij. ribbis þat ben grete ribbis, & þe .vij. ribbis ben maad fast  
 in þe rigge boon bihynde, & þese ribbis ben crokid / Wipinne<sup>2</sup> þese  
 .vij. ribbis ben v. ribbis þat ben lasse, & ben clepid litil ribbis, &  
 ben maad fast bihynde with .v. boonys of þe rigge, & in þe forside  
 20 of a man þei haue no fastnyngē to no boon, saue þei ben maad fast  
 with lacertis.<sup>3</sup> & bitwixe þe .viij. boon & þe .ix. boon, diafragma is  
 maad fast, for to bigynne tellyngis of boonys aboueforþ. & þis  
 diafragma departiþ þe spirituals from þe guttis. & in þe holownes  
 24 þat is aboue liggip þe herte & þe lungis /

¶ V. C<sup>o</sup>.

The Brest has  
7 bones with  
gristly ends,

7 true,

5 false Ribs,

and the  
Diafragma,  
which divides  
the Spiritual  
Members  
from the  
guts.

þe herte<sup>4</sup> is maad of hard fleisch & strong & of lacertes þat þei  
 miȝte be hard, þat it ne schulde take a greuaunce liztli.<sup>5</sup> & þerfore  
 summen seiden þat it is al braun; but it is not so, for þe braun of  
 28 a man meueþ whanne he wole, & restiþ, & þe herte is alwei meuyngē  
 & not reste. & þe herte is schape aftir a pyne, & hangip in þe  
 myddil of þe hizere holownes, & hangip sum-what to þe liftside-  
 ward; & þe hizere þerof is brood, & þat place is medlid wip car-  
 32 tilaginosus ligaturis, & is maad fast in þe lungis<sup>6</sup>; & þe lungis  
 touchip not þe herte, saue in þe aboue, þere it is maad fast togidere,

[4 If. 88]

The heart is  
made from  
muscular  
fibres,

is like a pine,

is surrounded  
by Pannicles  
(Pericar-  
dium),

<sup>2</sup> wipinne. The Latin has *infra*, which the translator took for *intra*.

<sup>3</sup> lacertis. See *Vicary*, page 57, note 1.

<sup>5</sup> Avicenna, Lib. III., Fen XI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, ed. Venet, 1527, f. 204:

"Cor quidem creatum est ex carne forti ut sit longinquum a nocumento."

<sup>6</sup> lungis, a mistranslation of *panniculi*. The pericardium is also called *panniculus cordis*.



and has  
ij. ventriclis.

& þe lunge defendiþ þe herte from greuance. & þe herte haþ two ventriclis .i. two holowe placis wiþinne, & þat oon ventricle sittip in þe riȝt side of þe herte, & þat oper in þe lift side<sup>1</sup>; & þese ventriclis holdiþ & resseyueþ eir & norischiþ þe herte / In þe riȝt ventricle 4

Into the right  
one comes a  
Vein from the  
liver,

[\* lf. 88, bk.]

comeþ a greet veyne þat is clepid ramosa<sup>2</sup> þat comeþ from gibbo<sup>3</sup> epatis, & comfortiþ diafragma, & peersiþ þoruȝ diafragma. & þis veyne is ful of greet<sup>4</sup> norischinge blood & hoot, & it norischiþ lymes of greet substaunce. & þis veyne goiþ bi þe riȝt side of þe herte, & filliþ þe herte ful of norisching blood. & þanne þe blood in þe herte sutilliþ<sup>5</sup> & filliþ ful þe two ventriclis of þe herte, & of þis clene blood þe spirit is engendrid; which spirit is more cleer & more schynyng & more sutil, þan ony bodi þat is maad of þe iiij. 12 elementis. & þefore it is turnid<sup>6</sup> into heuenly bodies, & it is

and fills the  
Heart with  
nourishing  
blood,  
which is  
refined  
into a clear  
spirit between  
body and  
soul.

From the left  
Ventricle  
springs  
arteria  
venalis

bitwixe a mannys bodi & his soule a louely byndynge. ¶ And of þe lift ventricle þere wexiþ out ij. [arteries]<sup>7</sup> and þat oon þerof haþ a maner coote, & þefore of summen it is clepid arteria venalis.<sup>8</sup> & 16

and the Aorta  
from which  
all other  
Arteries pro-  
ceed.

þis arterie beriþ sutil blood to þe lungis & norischiþ þe lungis / And þat opere arterie haþ .ij. cootis. & of þe ilke<sup>9</sup> comeþ alle þe arteries in a mannys bodi, & ben departid in euery lyme of a mannys bodi. & þese arterijs makip alle a mannys lymes to haue lijf & spiritis; 20 & alle þes arterijs & alle þese spiritis þat ben aforeseid; and þese arterijs goiþ to þe brayn<sup>10</sup> & þei goiþ to þe lyuere & ȝeueþ him vertu ful myche & makip defynge / And þese arterijs goiþ to a mannys ballokis & ȝeueþ him vertu for to engendre; & in þis place 24 þe vertu of alle þe spiritis of a mannys bodi ben ioyned togidere.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The translator has omitted the following passage: "In medio illorum duorum ventriculorum est quedam fouca: & vocatur a quibusdam ventriculus tertius, super ventriculo dextro et sinistro. Item duo additamenta cartilaginosa fortia et flexibilia quandam habentia concauitatem, et constringuntur & dilatantur, & recipientes & retinentes nutrimentum et aerem ad nutriendum et temperandum cor."

<sup>2</sup> The translation is not correct. Lat.: "ad dextrum nanque ventriculum venit una vena ex ramosa vena." This vein is the vena cava inferior, which gets the blood from the liver by the venæ cavæ hepaticæ. "The seconde veyne is called Vena choele, or Vena concaua, and of some Vena Ramosa." Halle, *Anatomic*, page 78.—1565.

<sup>3</sup> gibbus. See *Vicary*, page 69, note 1. <sup>5</sup> sutilliþ. Latin: subtiliatur

<sup>6</sup> MS. turid. Latin: vergit in naturam supracelestium corporum.

<sup>7</sup> arteries, wanting. <sup>8</sup> Arteria venalis. See *Vicary*, page 58, note 1.

<sup>9</sup> MS. inserts, ij cootis

<sup>11</sup> The translation is corrupt. Lat.: Iste namque spiritus cordialis, qui per viam quæ dicta est a corde sumit originem, sicut omnes virtutes, quarum est instrumentum, cum ad ventriculos peruenit cerebri, aliam ibi recipit digestionem, quæ meretur formam suscipere spiritus animalis, & ita ut ad epar dirigitur, in ipso formam recipit nutritiui, et in testiculis generatiui, donec



- ¶ þe lungis ben maad of .iij. substauncis: of fleisch þat is þe lungs are made of 3 tissues, flesh, vessels, and ligaments.  
 recchingē,<sup>1</sup> & braunche of arterijs, & of veynis,<sup>2</sup> & of cartilaginis  
 þat ben holow, & þese goþ out of canna pulmonis as it is afore-  
 4 seid. ¶ þe profit þat þe lungis doiþ a man is þis: þe lungis drawiþ  
 eir into þe herte, for to do awei þe fume & þe vntemprid heete of  
 þe herte, & mak iþ þe herte in tempre hete / And in tyme whanne They bring cool air to the heart.  
 þe herte is constreyned, þanne it is necessarie for to drawe coold eir  
 8 to þe herte; & if þe lungis myȝte not drawe eir to þe herte, þe  
 spirit of lijf schulde be stoppid, & so a man schulde be deed / &  
 þerfore it is necessarie þat a man haue clene eir, for þe eir passiþ The air ought to be clean.  
 þoruȝ þe lungis þat ben tendre & goiþ to þe herte; & þerfore vnclene  
 12 eir doiþ harm to þe lungis & also to þe herte. & þerfore þe lungis  
 ben <sup>3</sup>departid into .ij. placis, & if þer falle ony harm to þe oon [3 lf. 89, bk.]  
 partie of þe lungis, þanne þat opere partie beriþ al his charge //
- ¶ Woundis þat ben maad in þe brest. If þe wounde go into þe Woundis mad in the brest  
 16 holownes, þanne it is miche to drede þerof, for þanne it miȝte falle  
 þat sum substaunce of þe herte miȝte be harmed, & þanne þe wounde  
 were mortal // ¶ Ouþer if þe wounde ȝede into þe lungis, þere were Wounds of the lungs are dangerous,  
 greet perel: for þe wounde mai not be helid but if it be soudid  
 20 anoon // ¶ And if þe wounde go þoruȝ diafragma, it is mortal / wounds of the midriff, or the heart are mortal.  
 And if it be so þat þe herte be hurt, þere lijþ no<sup>4</sup> cure þeron, saue  
 he schal die anoon; for þe herte takiþ no lijf of no lyme of al þe  
 bodi, saue þe herte ȝeueþ lyues to euery lyme of þe bodi; & þe  
 24 herte ordeyneþ alle lymes to vertues, & þe herte is þe welle of lijf;  
 & þerfor þe herte mai suffre noon harm, saue ioie ouþer sorowe / When the heart, the well of life, is hurt,  
 þerfore if þe herte be kutt wiþ a swerd ouþer ony greet arterie þat  
 is nyȝ þe herte, þe wounde is mortal; for þe arterijs goiþ to þe herte  
 28 <sup>5</sup>& þanne al þe blood of þe herte & þe spirit passiþ out bi þe arterijs, [5 lf. 89\*]  
 as þou myȝt se bi ensauple of a candel. For if a candel þat  
 brenneþ, ouþer a weke, be putt al in oile ouþer in grese, þe fier þerof  
 wole out; in þis same maner is þe spirit of lijf queynt, whanne þe  
 32 herte is hurt, for þe greet flux of blood, þat falliþ to þe herte &  
 stoppiþ þe spirit of lijf / Ouþer if þer be greet flux of blood com- or the blood and the spirit of life flow out from the wound.  
 ynge fro þe herte, þanne þe spirit passiþ out þerwiþ; as þou miȝt  
 se bi ensauple of a candel: whanne þe talow of a candel is doon,  
 36 or wex, or oile, þanne þe liȝt wole passe, & in þe same maner it

omnis spiritus, omnisque particularis virtutis perfectio cum virtutum operationibus coniungatur. <sup>1</sup> *recchingē*. Latin: rara.

<sup>2</sup> *braunche of arterijs & of veynes*. Latin: ramis arteriæ venalis.

<sup>4</sup> MS. *do*. Lat.: Cor autem vulneratum curam non recipit.



When the lungs are hurt the wound must be stitched before it suppurates.

[<sup>2</sup> If. 89\*, bk.]

Medicines reach the lungs by a long way, and therefore the patients get phthisis.

The midriff is to the heart what bellows are to a fire.

Symptoms if the herte be wounded,

[<sup>4</sup> If. 90]

and if the lungs be wounded.

Throw a powder into the wound,

and close the wound when the lungs are healed.

De vulnera dia-  
diafragma.

Symptoms of a wounded midriff.

fariþ bi a mannis lijf, as it is aforseid. ¶ þe lungis wolen take no souding whanne þei ben hurt, but if þe leche be þe more kunnyng & soude þe wounde or it quytture. For if it qutture, þe lungis moun not be maad clene but wiþ cowzyng, & þe more þat þe 4 pacient cowzeþ, þe more þe wounde wexiþ // ¶ Also þe lungis ben euermore meuyng; & [if] woundis<sup>1</sup> schulen be soudid in lymes, þe lyme<sup>2</sup> mote reste; & þerfore for þe contynuel meuyng of þe lungis, þe woundis þerof ben seid incurable // ¶ Also þou; a man wolde 8 soude þe woundis of þe lungis wiþ ony medicyne þat is consolidatif, it ne mai not come þerto but bi a long wey as bi þe stomak, ouþer bi þe lyuere, ouþir bi veynes, & so þe vertu of þe medicyne ne may not come to þe lungs, but bi þe forseid weies; & þerfore men þat 12 ben hurt in þe lungis falliþ in þe tisik<sup>3</sup> / ¶ If a man be hurt in diafragma, þer is no remedie þerof; for diafragma is alwei meuyng, for þat is an instrument of wijnd to the herte, riȝt as a belowe is an instrument for a fier / For riȝt as a below, whanne he is opened, 16 he takiþ in wijnd, & whanne he is closid, he puttiþ out wijnd & blowiþ þe fier /

¶ If þe herte be woundid, in þis maner þou schalt knowe: þe pacient schal swowne, & þe blood þat comeþ out is blak, & he schal 20 siȝe sore, & þanne he is but deed //

¶ If þe lungis ben hurt, þou schalt<sup>4</sup> knowe in þis maner bi cowzyng, & þe blood þat goiþ out of þe wounde wole be spumous & cleer / If þe wounde hereof be streit wiþoutforþ, make it largere, 24 & þanne in þe wounde of þe lungis caste poudre of mastix. & olibani,<sup>5</sup> draganti, gumme arabici, fenigreci ana; & he schal ete no mete saue þat, þat he mai soupe, & penidis<sup>6</sup> medlid þeron, & loke þat he haue sciencence & good reste, & þat he traueile not; & þou 28 schalt not close þe wounde wiþoute, til þe wounde of þe lungis be sowdid, & þanne soude þe wounde wiþoutforþ //

¶ If þat a wounde be in diafragma, þes ben þe signys þerof: streit secching of breen, & greet agreuauunce for to drawe his 32 breen, & greet akynge in his side, & greuous cowzyngs; alle þese ben signys of deef, & principali if þese signys be greet & greuous /

<sup>1</sup> þat inserted. Lat.: et vulnerata membra indigent ut quiescant.

<sup>3</sup> "*Tisica*, Italis et Hispanis Phthisis."—Dufresne. "*Tissick*, an Ulceration of the Lungs, accompany'd with an Hectick Feaver, and causing a Consumption of the whole Body."—Phillips, 1706. *tysyk*, Hampole, 701. "þat man þat hath þe tisik & þe etik," Quintess, p. 17, 7.

<sup>5</sup> *Olibanum*. Thus masculinum. Arab. al-louban (Devic. Dict.). N.E. oliban.

<sup>6</sup> *Penidium*, barley sugar.



If þese signys ben but litil & not strong<sup>1</sup> greuou, þanne ȝeue him metis & drynkis þat mowe swage<sup>1</sup> þe cowȝe, & þanne take a tent<sup>2</sup> þat be not to greet, & wete it in þe ȝelke of<sup>2</sup> an ey & oile of rosis, [<sup>2</sup> lf. 90, bk.]

4 & þanne cure þis wounde as þou doist opere woundis /

If it so be þat a wounde be in a caua<sup>3</sup> & noon of þe forseid lymes ben not hurt, þanne wete a tent in oile of rosis hoot & putte in þe wounde; & whanne þou remeuest þi medicyne ouper leist

If a wound enters into the hollows of the chest

8 þerto ony medicyne, be war þat þer passe out noon eir þoruȝ þe wounde, ne entre in noon eir into þe wounde, & þerfore or þou chaunge þi tent, loke þat þou haue þingis þat ben necessarie þerfore redi, þat þe wounde mowe be stoppid anon, þat þere go no breēþ

beware that no air passes through the wound.

12 into þe wounde, ne out of þe wounde / For if þer go ony breēþ out, it wole afeble þe patient, & if þer go ony breēþ þere, it wole do harme to þe spaulis. Leie vpon þe wounde oile of rosis & þe ȝelke of an ey, & herwiþ wete þi tent til þe wounde quytture. & þanne

16 euery dai make him to turne vpon his side, & make him cowȝe & spitte out þe quytture, & awoide þe quytture bi þe wounde also. & if þere be myche quytture, & may not be avoidid bi þe wounde,

Make the patient cough out the pus.

þanne þou schalt make sich a maner waischinge & putte it yn wiþ [<sup>4</sup> lf. 91]

20 <sup>4</sup>an instrument maad lijk a clisterie / R .mel ro. ȝ iiij., mirre, R

fenigreci, farine lupinorum ana ȝ ȝ, boile hem to þe consumpcioun of þe .iiij. part in li j. of swete wijn, & li j. of water, & þanne cole hem & putte in þe colature as it is aforseid. Vpon þe wounde

a loction for woundis with in the breast

24 wiþoutforþ, from þe tyme þat it quytturiþ, leie þis mundificatif planed vpon a clooþ.<sup>5</sup> R mel ro. li j., farina ordeï substillissimi. ȝ R

iiij., mirre, fenigreci ana. ȝ j., be þei encorperat<sup>6</sup> & boild at esi fier / & whanne þei ben weel boild, & weel medlid togidere so þat

A cleansing (mundificatif) plaster.

28 it be picke, do hem doun of þe fier, & do þerto ȝ .iiij. of terbentyne waischen & medle hem weel togidere. þis emplastre þou schalt vse, & þe waischingis þat is aforseid, & þou schalt holde open þe wounde with a tent wet in oile, til þe quytture þat is withynne be

32 perfitli dried / þis þou schalt knowe bi þe vertu of þe patient & bi þe sauour of his breēþ, & whanne his cowȝynge goiþ awei, & whanne

One knows by the odour of the patient's breath

<sup>1</sup> swage. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 372.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *canna*. Lat.: Cum autem vulnus est in cassum penetrans. *Cassus*, Pecten. Semibarbaris ex Arabico. Castellus, Lex. Med. *Casse*, Arab. Kas, cup, calice.—Devic. I would rather trace it from Lat. *cassus* adj. void, hollow, and *cassum*, i = *cassa*, orum sb. the hollows. The latter form *cassa* gave origin to Ital. *cassa* f. See *cassa del cranio*, etc.

<sup>5</sup> &. Lat.: super pannum distensum. O.Fr. *planer*, Lat. *planare*.

<sup>6</sup> *encorperat*. Lat. *incorporatus*, O.Fr. *encorperer*.



if the wound is clean. his vnkyndely heete goiþ awei / If þou doist alle þese þingis to him  
 [1 lf. 91, bk.] þat ben aforseid, & þe quytture <sup>1</sup> be not wiþdrawe þerwith, & his  
 When sup- cowzyng & his akyng be not aswagid, & his vertu be feble, & his  
 puration con- spirit be nouzt, þanne do þou nomore þerto, saue he schal al turne 4  
 tinues, a weak patient dies. him to goddis merci // ¶ Saue if it so be þat he haue þe cowze &  
 If the patient is strong, greet quytture in þe wounde, & he be strong, & principali if þer  
 make a new incision. wexe ony swellynge in his side bihinde bitwixe þe .iiij. & þe .v. rib,  
 þan þere þou schalt make a newe kutting & lete out þe quytture, 8  
 & bi þis place drawe out þe quytture, & holde þe wounde open,  
 & lete þe olde wounde close togidere. & if it be nede, caste yn  
 þe forseid waischinge bi þis wounde & leie a mundificatif wiþoute  
 til þe quytture be al aweie, & þis cure þou schalt folowe / It falliþ 12  
 Do the same, if blood and pus gather on the midriff. ofte tyme þat a man is hurt an hiȝ aboue in þis place, & þanne  
 þe blood & þe quytture falliþ vpon diafragma & gaderiþ togidere,  
 þanne þou schalt kerue him bitwixe þe .iiij. & þe .v. rib as it is  
 aforseid, for þe blood & þe quytture mai haue no cours to þe wounde 16  
 aboue; & if he is kutt so byneþe, þanne þe blood & þe quytture  
 [2 lf. 92] mai be drawe away; <sup>2</sup> & if þou doist not þus þe pacient schal die,  
 & if þou doist þus þe pacient schal be delyuerid wel // Whanne  
 woundis ben in thorase ouper in þe brest, & þe woundis ne goon 20  
 not þoruȝ, þanne þou schalt cure him as it is aforseid in opere  
 woundis //

Of woundis of þornis<sup>3</sup> ouper spondilium, & of þo þat  
 ben conteyned in him & anothamie /<sup>4</sup> 24

¶ vj. c. /

The spinal column is composed of 30 Spondles or Vertebrae.

**B**Onys of þe necke, as we haue aforsed, ben .vij, & rigge boonys  
 of þe brest ben .xij, & of þe reynes ben .v. riggeboones, &  
 vndir þe reynes ben .iiij. riggeboones, & vpon þe place þat is clepid<sup>5</sup>  
 —þe boon of þe tail is maad of .iiij. rigge boones, & þere ben .xxx. 28  
 ¶ Eueri boon of þe rigge is an hole þoruȝ, & þoruȝ þe ilke hoolis  
 nucha<sup>6</sup> goiþ endelong þe rigge; & eueri boon of þe rigge haþ .iiij.  
 addiciouns to him, & summe han mo; þis is not necessarie to telle  
 to a sirurgian, saue it is necessarie to a sirurgian for to knowe þis : 32

<sup>3</sup> MS. þorais. Lat.: De vulneribus spinæ seu spondylium & eorum anatomia. The scribe changed þornis, the translation of 'spinæ,' into þorais, for thoracis, as in the heading to Cap. V. The words: & of þo þat ben conteyned in him are taken from the same Chapter-heading.

<sup>4</sup> See Vicary's Anatomy, page 74.

<sup>5</sup> One word is here wanting. Lat.: super locum qui dicitur aboratur alahume. aboratur is perhaps a corruption for ab arabis, alahume is the Os sacrum.

<sup>6</sup> nucha, Arab. nukha', spinal marrow.



- pat' euery rigt-boon hap a greet' hole, & nucha goip per þoru3. & Through the  
 per ben opere smale hoolis in þe boones bi þe sidis aboutforþ, & pere passes the  
 þoru3 goon nerues for to holde þe lymes faste <sup>1</sup>togidere. & so þese [1 lf. 92, bk.]  
 4 .xxx. boones ben bounden togidere wiþ stronge ligaturis, & þei ben  
 so strongeli bounden togidere þat' þei semeþ al oon boon. þese The Spondles  
 boones bineþe þe necke is clepid þe rigge ouþer spina, & þis is þe form the  
 foundement of al þe bodi //  
 8 ¶ Woundis þat' ben maad in þis place. If' nucha be kutt' The Prog-  
 þoru3 ouerþwert', þe wounde is mortal for þe nobilte of' nucha þat' nosis is un-  
 comeþ fro þe brayn rigt' as a ryuer comeþ of' wellis.<sup>2</sup> ¶ And þou3 favourable, if  
 nucha be not' kutt' al þoru3 saue hurt', it' is greet' perel þerof', the Spinal  
 12 þe lymes bineþe schulen lese her meuyng, for þe nerues þat' ben Cord is cut,  
 aboute þe boones of' nucha ben kutt'. & also þe rigge-boones ben or the Spon-  
 kutt' & herof' cometh greet' perel / And if' þe braun þat' sittip ende- dles, or the  
 longis þe rigge in boþe sidis of' þe rigge-boon & durip<sup>3</sup> from þe heed Muscles along  
 16 adoun anoon to þe tail eende, & if' ony of' alle þese be kutt' ouþer the Spine  
 prickid, it' is greet' perel for þe spasme, for þe causis þat' ben aforseid / are severally  
 þe curis herof' ben lijk to þe curis þat' ben aforseid of' opere The Treat-  
 woundis, saue it' is necessarie for a cirurgian to knowe pronosticatiuis ment is the  
 20 of' þis <sup>4</sup>place, & also if' a man be hurt' in þat' place, he mote haue same as in  
 for þe causis aforseid //

Of woundis of þe stomac / & intestinum & wombe, &  
 anothamia /

- 24 **I** Haue seid heretofore in what' maner mery<sup>5</sup> goip doun þoru3 ¶ vijo. co.  
 þe necke wipinneforþ, and goip þoru3 diafragma, & is maad  
 fast' with diafragma, & diafragma goip aboute þe mouþ of'  
 þe stomak. & þe stomak is schape in þis maner,<sup>6</sup> & in oon  
 28 side he is gibbous, & in þe toþer side he is more playn.  
 & þe stomac is maad of' .ij. cloþis. & þat' oon cloþ sitti' The stomac  
 wipoute & þat' op'er wipinne, & þe cloþ þat' sittip wipinne is made of 2  
 is villosus & neruous, & þe cloþ þat' is wipoutforþ is Membranes  
 32 fleischi / ¶ In þe ynner cloþ ben longe villis wherof' with longi-  
 comeþ drawynge, & þere ben villis ouerþwert', wherof' tudinal and  
 transverse  
 fibres.

<sup>2</sup> Rases, Liber ad Almansorem, Tract. I, Cap. 1, ed. Ven. 1506, fol. 2.  
 "Cerebrum quasi fons sensuum est et motus voluntarii, Nucha vero sicut  
 fluuius magnus ab eo manans."

<sup>3</sup> durip. Lat. distenditur. As to the local sense, compare O.Fr. durer.

<sup>5</sup> mery, oesophagus. Arab. marijun, windpipe.

<sup>6</sup> In the margin is a diagram of the shape of the stomach.



comeþ wipholdyngt / In þe clooþ þat is wipoutforþ, þere ben longe villis, & þat makip expulcioun. þe ynnere clooþ is neruous, þat it mowe fele whanne it is ful; wipoutforþ it is fleischi for to make him hoot & moist, þat he miȝte helpe for to make digestioun. 4  
 [1 lf. 93, bk.] mete <sup>1</sup> þat is resseyued into þe stomac / The skyn þat is wipoute þe stomac is norischid of blood, þat comeþ fro þe lyuere in smale veynes & goip al aboute þe stomac. ¶ Also þere comeþ arterijs 8 from þe herte to þe stomac & makip him to haue lijf, & of þese .ij. pingis, þat is to seie vena & arteria, gibbus<sup>2</sup> is maad þat gouerneþ þe stomac & þe guttis wip his fatnes, & makip hem hoot. ¶ In þe botme of þe stomac þere is a mouþ, and þat mouþ is more 12 streit þan þat aboue. & þe firste gutt is maad fast to þe lower mouþ, & þis gutt is clepid duodenum.<sup>3</sup> þis is þe skille whi he is clepid so, for he is of þe lengþe of xij. ynchis; & þanne þere ben .vj. guttis bineþe him; & þanne þis firste gutt is maad of .ij. cootis, 16 as alle þe opere guttis ben, but þe .ij. gutt is smal & folde togidere. þe .iiij. gutt is clepid ieinum,<sup>4</sup> *id est*, fastynge, for he is euermore voide,<sup>5</sup> & þat is for he is nyȝ þe galle & resseyueþ myche colre<sup>6</sup> for to avoide him, & þere goip to him manye veynes, wherbi he is 20 voidid / Aftir him þere comeþ a gutt þat is clepid orobum<sup>7</sup> <sup>8</sup>ouper a sak, & it haþ but oon mouþ, & he resseyueþ alle þe fecis; & þere is fulfillid þe firste digestioun of þe guttis / Aftir þis gutt þer is a gutt þat is clepid colon, & lijþ ouerþwert þe wombe & resseyueþ 24 feces / And aftir þis gutt comeþ langaon,<sup>9</sup> & is þe eende of alle; & he haþ .iiij. brawnys, & þerof he haþ vertu for to wipholde þe fecis yn, & for to putte hem out whanne a man wole / Euery meynge of þe guttis is kindely & eueri gutt of þese þat ben 28 aforseid haþ diuers kynde // ¶ þer ben manye maner causis whi þat guttis ben folde with nerues: þe firste enchesoun is þis, þat a man schulde not as soone as he hadde ete, anoon riȝt go to sege as

Arteries bring life to the Stomach.

The Entrails or Guts: duodenum.

Ieinum.

Orobum, [8 lf. 94]

where the first digestion is made

Colon. langaon. retains and finally evacuates the faeces.

The entrails are nervous

1. that the food may be retained

<sup>2</sup> *gibbus*, mistake for *zirbus*. See *Vicary*, page 64, note 2; and page 86, note.

<sup>3</sup> *duodenum*. See *Ibid.* page 65, note 1.

<sup>4</sup> *jejunum*. See *Vicary*, page 65, note 2.

<sup>5</sup> Avicenna, Lib. III., Fen. XVI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, ed. Ven. 1527, f. 248. "et nominatur hoc intestinum ieinum, quum ipsum inuenitur secundum plurimum inanitum et vacuum."

<sup>6</sup> *colre*. Lat. cholera. Choler, "Bilis."—Huloet.

<sup>7</sup> *orobum*. Lat. orbum. The *Ileum* is here meant.

<sup>9</sup> *langaon*. See *Vicary*, page 66, note 5. Lat. longanon, longao = the straight gut.



- doip a beest. þe .ij. cause is þat þe mete miȝte abide in þe stomak  
for to make digestion, & þat þat is not fulfillid in þe stomak is  
fulfillid in þe guttis. þe .iiij. cause is þis, þat it first abide in oon  
4 gutt / & þanne it is sent to anoþer & so forþ. & þanne for to holde  
alle þese þingis / þe stomak & þe guttis is ordeyned a skyn, þat is  
clepid þe siphac<sup>1</sup>; & is a syngle skyn & is not<sup>2</sup> villous, & is engen-  
drid bineþe as is diafragma is aboue, as it is aforeseid, & is maad  
8 fast at þe rigge bihinde, for to holde vp þe stomak & þe guttis / In  
þis partie bineþe þis þer ben engendrid of siphac .ij. þingis þat ben  
clepid dindimi<sup>3</sup> & goip adoun al aboute þe ballokis, & is clepid þat  
ynner skyn of þe ballokis; & þoruþ þis dindimi goip arterijs &  
12 veynes to þe ballokis, & makip hem haue lijf & norischinge &  
kynde of sperme // ¶ Alle þese þingis þanne ben comprehendid in  
a skyn þat is fleischi & of lacertis maad, & is clepid mirac, & is  
clepid þe vttere wombe in whiche ben lacertis, for to helpe putte out  
16 þe fecis & wijnd & vrine /
- þerfore woundis þat ben maad in þe stomak ben perilous, & in  
þe guttis, for manie causis / þe firste cause is þis, for her worchinge  
is necessarie to þe bodi, for þei ben þe firste instrument of digestioun,  
20 & her worchinge is so necessarie to þe bodi, þat it mai in no maner  
be susteyned, ne abide wiþoute hem / þerfore if þere be ony woundis  
in þis place her worchinge is lost, but if þe wounde be soudid  
anoon; & þat is ful hard & sumtyme impossible for þei ben neruous,  
24 & þere is no fleisch on hem, & also for þei ben alwey meuyng, &  
principali whanne woundis ben maad in þe hindere partie of þe  
stomak ouþir in þe smale guttis / For if þe woundis falle in þe  
nepir partie of þe stomak þat is fleischi, ouþer in þe greete guttis  
28 bineþe, if þe leche be kunnyng, þe pacient mai lyue /
- ¶ If it bifalle þat a man be hurt in ony of þese placis þat ben  
aforeseid in þe stomak ouþer in þe guttis, þe leche muste knowe  
wheþer þe substaunce of þe guttis or of þe stomak be prickid þoruþ  
32 or no; þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe goyng out of þe fecis at þe  
wounde, & þanne þe wounde is iugid mortal. ¶ If a man be  
woundid in his stomak & þe wounde of þe wombe wiþoutforþ ne  
be not brood, þanne kutte it more & þanne sewe the wounde of þe  
36 stomak wiþ a nedeþe þat is .iiij. squar & wiþ a sutil þreed, & þis þou  
schalt speciali, whanne þe wounde is in<sup>5</sup> a fleischi place of þe stomak,

.2.  
and digested  
in the  
stomach  
.3.  
and the guts.

[2 lf. 94, bk.]

Siphac  
(Great Omen-  
tum):

it is con-  
tinuous in its  
lower part  
with the  
dindimi  
(Tunica  
vaginalis).

ciffac is þe  
inar sken,

mirac  
the vtter.  
(Peritoneum)

Wounds of  
the stomach  
and the  
bowels are  
dangerous,  
as their func-  
tional activity  
is necessary.

[4 lf. 95]

The patient  
may recover  
if the fleshy  
part of the  
stomach or  
guts is  
wounded.  
Nota.

A wound  
which per-  
forates the  
entrails is  
mortal.

Sew the  
wound in the  
stomach,

[5 lf. 95, bk.]

<sup>1</sup> siphac. See *Vicary*, page 62, note 4.

<sup>3</sup> dindimi, used elsewhere to signify the Testicles.



and keep the  
external  
wound patent  
while the  
stomach  
heals.

When the  
bowels fall  
out from the  
wound, re-  
place them,

[1 lf. 96]

Nota.  
sew the  
Siphac and  
Mirac to-  
gether,

and keep the  
external  
wound patent.

[3 lf. 96, bk.]

Some phy-  
sicians put a  
reed-pipe  
into the  
wounded in-  
testine before  
sewing it.

for if þe wounde be aboue in a place of þe stomak þat is neruous,  
ne traueile þou not þere aboute þanne, for it is an idil / Whanne  
þou hast sewid þe wounde bineþe as it is aforseid, þanne springe  
þeron poudre consolidatif & soude þe wounde of þe stomak, & holde 4  
open þe wounde of þe skyn wiþoute, til þe wounde of þe stomak be  
hool // ¶ If it bifalle þat a man be hurt in þe greete guttis bineþe,  
so þat þe wounde be not to greet, þanne þou schalt sewe þe gutt, &  
þe eendis of þe predis schulen hange out, & þe vtter wounde schal 8  
be holde open, til þe wounde of þe gutt be soudid ¶ If it so be þat  
þe wounde of his wombe wiþoutforþ be so brood þat þe guttis falle  
out, putte hem yn anoon while þei ben hote / If it be so þat þe  
guttis be colde, or þat þou come þerto, & þe wounde of þe wombe 12  
be to swolle, & þe guttis be chaungid wiþ þe eir, wherfore þe guttis  
wolen not in azen, þanne þou must sutilli make þe wounde of þe  
wombe a litil more, þat þe guttis <sup>1</sup>mowe listly falle yn azen wiþoute  
greuauunce. Whanne þe guttis ben ynne, sewe mirac & siphac in 16  
þis maner togidere, so þat þei moun boþe be soudid togidere; for if  
mirac were soudid & not siphac, þanne aftir þe tyme þat þe wounde  
were soudid, þere wolde leue a crepature.<sup>2</sup> þerfore þou must sewe  
in þis maner / Take þat oon side of mirac & siphac togidere so 20  
þat þei be euene, & loke þat þi nedel be .iiij. squar, & þanne make  
oon poynt þoruþ hem ij. togidere, in þe same maner in þe toþer, &  
þus þou schalt make þeron as manie pointis as þou þenkist neces-  
sarie / And whanne þou hast sewid mirac & siphac togidere in a 24  
good maner, þanne knytte þe predis togidere þat þei vnknytte not,  
as þou seest þat is to doing; & lete þe eendis of þe predis hange  
out, & þanne springe vpon þe sewynge þe poudre consolidatif þat  
is aforseid, and holde open þe wounde wiþoutforþ til mirac & siphac 28  
be perfitli soudid, for in þis maner mirac & siphac moun be soudid  
bi þis cause: Siphac is neruous & haþ <sup>3</sup>no fleisch, & mirac is fleisch,  
& bi þe vertu of him siphac is soudid; & þanne do þe cure herof  
aftir as it is tofore // ¶ Summen seien þat þe smale guttis moun 32  
be sowdid in þis maner: make a pipe of eldre, & putt wiþinne þe  
gutt, & þanne soude þe gutt þer vpon. & I seie þat it is not soop,  
for þis þing, þe smale guttis wolen not soude, & to þe greete guttis  
þis queyntise is nouþ; þerfore triste to þe maner þat is aforseid, 36  
& take kepe of þe perels þat ben forseid.

<sup>2</sup> crepature, hernia.



Of woundis of þe lyuere & splen & reynes & þe  
bladdre, and anothamia<sup>1</sup> /

- T**he firste schapinge of þe lyuere is maad of þe .ij. spermes as ¶ viij. Co.  
4 **ben** þe opere principal lymes, saue þe greetnes of þe lyuere is The Liver is  
principali maad of blood & is in þe hardnes of fleisch. & þe sub- made of  
staunce þerof is fleischi, & it is in þe maner as it were blood runne,  
& chilus comuneþ fro þe stomac to þe lyuere for to zeue him  
8 norischynge, & þe lyuere is gibbous wipoute, & wipinne holow þat  
it miȝte be þe more closynge to þe stomac. & þe heete of þe <sup>2</sup>lyuere  
makip þe stomac to seþe as fier makip a furneis to seþe.<sup>3</sup> ¶ The  
lyuere haþ addicioun, & ben diuers; for in summe ben .iiij. & in  
12 summe ben .v. & in summe ben .iiij. Of sperme þe mater of þe  
lyuere wipinne is gaderid. & þerof comeþ a greet veyne & is en-  
gendrid in sima<sup>4</sup> epatis, & is clepid þe ȝate of þe lyuere. & of þis  
veyne summen seien þat þere ben engendrid .viij. veynes, & sum-  
16 men seien þat þere ben mo; & þus veynes ben ȝatis riȝt as rootis  
of a tree.<sup>5</sup> & þese veynes ben clepid miseraice / & summe of þese  
veynes ben maad fast wip þe botme of þe stomac, & wip a gutt þat  
is clepid duodeno, & summe wip þe smale guttis, & summe wip þe  
20 gutt þat is clepid ieiumum, & summe wip orobo ouþir wip þe sak //  
¶ þe lyuere is maad fast to þe riȝtside of þe stomac, & in þe  
liftside of þe stomac sitt þe splene, & is schape along, & is maad  
fast with o partie of þe stomac. & oon partie þerof is maad fast  
24 twoward þe rigge in þe liftside, & haþ .ij. poris, & þoruȝ þat oon  
pore he drawip malancolious blood of <sup>6</sup>þe lyuere, & clensip þe  
lyuere of malancolious superfluite, & þerof þe splene is norischid.  
& þere is anoþer pore þat goip to þe mouþ of þe stomac, & makip  
28 þe mouþ of þe stomac to haue appetite<sup>7</sup> //

The Liver is  
made of  
blood.

[<sup>2</sup> If. 97]

The Liver is  
to the  
Stomach,  
what fire is  
to a furnace.  
lyuer.

From the  
spermatic  
part of the  
Liver comes  
the Vena  
Porta.

The Mesen-  
teric veins  
are branches  
of the Vena  
Porta.

The Spleen

draws the  
Melancholic  
Blood from  
the Liver,

[<sup>6</sup> If. 97, bk.]  
and incites  
Appetite in  
the Stomach.

<sup>1</sup> See *Vicary's Anatomy*, page 68.

<sup>3</sup> "for his heate is to the stomacke as the heate of the fyre is to the Potte or Cauldron that hangeth ouer it."—*Vicary*, p. 69.

<sup>4</sup> *sima*, concavitas hepatis. Matth. Sylv., see Dufr. *σιμός, ἡ, ὅν*, hollow, concave: *τὰ σιμὰ τοῦ ἥπατος*, the bottom of the liver. Poll. 2. 213, Galen. It is used opposite to *κυρτός*, convex, curved, in Galen ad Glauc. 2.—See *Stephanus Thesaurus*.

Sloane 2463, fol. 40: "*Syma of þe lyuer is as it were þe palme oper þe holwenesse of þe hond. The vtilite, whi þat it is of suche forme oper schappe is because þat it schulde ben aplied oper leyen to þe stomak as þe hond lieth to an appull, whan þe appull is in þe hond.*"

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: *venæ quæ sunt ipsi portæ sicut radices arbori*.

<sup>7</sup> *De propr. rer. Trevisa*, Lib. V., Cap. 41, Add. 27,944, fol. 57 b: "*& Constantyn seiþ þat þe melte is i-set in þe lift side, & þe schap þerof is*



The Reynes

þe reynes ben set, þat oon in þe riȝtſide & ſittip hiȝere, & þat oon in þe liȝtſide & ſit lowere, & ben maad of hard fleiſch, & ben ſett in two ſidis of þe rigge boon. Boþe þe reynes hauen .ij. veynes ouþir .ij. neckis, & þat oon is aboue, & þat opere is bineþe. þoruȝ 4  
 þe necke aboue of þe reynes is drawe watri blood & comeþ from vena ramosa<sup>1</sup>; & þis watri blood is vryne, & from þe reynes it goiþ to þe necke of þe bladdre þoruȝ a veyne þat is clepid kylym,<sup>2</sup> & in þis maner þe vryne comeþ into þe bladdre / 8

draw watery  
blood from  
the  
vena ramosa,  
and transmit  
urine to the

bladdre  
via the  
ureters.

The Bladder  
has a neck,  
longer in  
men than in  
women.

[<sup>4</sup> lf. 98]

galle.

þe bladdre is maad of .ij. þinne skynnes, & boþe skynnes ben neruous, & þe necke of þe bladdre is fleiſchi. In men þe necke is long, for it paſſiþ þoruȝout þe ȝerde, & in wymmen þe necke of þe bladdre is ſhort, & is maad faſt to the cunte.<sup>3</sup> / þe necke of þe 12  
 bladdre hath oon braun, & is in þe mouþ of þe bladdre <sup>4</sup>& þat makip a man holde his vryne whanne he wole, & putte cut his vryne whanne he wole, wiþ help of þe wombe þat preſſiþ, & of lacertis // ¶ Of þe galle we makip noon anothamie, for al oure 16  
 ſcience makip noon mencion of a wounde in þe galle /

Only ſmall  
and recent  
wounds of  
the Liver can  
be healed.

¶ Woundis þat ben maad in þe lymes aforeſeid ben euermore perilous / For alle þeſe lymes, ouþir þei ben principal lymes as is þe lyuere, ouþir þei ſerueþ principal lymes, wiþoute whiche lymes þe 20  
 bodi ne mai not be ſuſteyned / If þe lyuere be hurt in þe depe ſubſtaunce, þanne þe lyuere ſchal leſe al hir worchinge, & al þe blood þerof wole be diſturblid þat is matere of þe ſpirit, & in þis maner þe ſpirit of liȝt is diſturblid & þe foundement of alle hiſe vertues; 24  
 ſaue if þe wounde of þe lyuere be but litil it may be ſoudid, ſo þat þe wounde be freiſch & not oold hurt, forwhi a principal lyme mai not ſuffre longe ſijknes // ¶ þoruȝ a man were hurt in þe ſplene, ȝitt he miȝte be wel curid, & þoruȝ þere were a gobet þerof kutt 28  
 away, ſo þat it ne were not to myche and ouerþwert, for þerof ofte tyme falliþ þe dropesie; ouþir if þe poris were kutt, it wolde afeble þe ſtomac. ¶ Woundis þat ben in þe reynes ben not curid,

Even ſevere  
wounds of the  
ſplene  
can be cured.

[<sup>5</sup> lf. 98, bk.]

*cuelong, and is ſomwhat holouȝ toward þe ſtomak & bunchinge toward þe ribbis. In þeſe tweye places he is i-bounde with corteyn ſmale cloþinge, & me ſeiþ þat þe melte haþ tweye reynes, by þe on þerof he drawiþ blak colera of þe blod to þe lyuour, & by þe opir he ſendiþ what ſufficeþ to þe ſtomak to comforte þe appetite þerof."*

<sup>1</sup> *vena ramosa*, Vena Cava.

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: per venam chylin quæ a quibusdam pori uritides dicitur = Meatus Urinarii = Ureter. *Kylym*, from *χυλός*, juice. See alſo *Vicary*, p. 72, note 3.

<sup>3</sup> "Hec vulva, cunte." Wright, *Voc.*, p. 677. 32, xvth cent. O.Fr. cunne, Lat. cunnus, *cunte* is a diminutive form like *cunetta* of *cuna*.



- for þei ben norischid wiþ watri blood, for þat is *contrarious* to Wounds of the kidney  
soudinge / & for þe reynes ben alwey in meuyng, & also vryne þat  
alwei is bityng, goiþ þoruþ þe reynes. ¶ þe bladdre ne mai not be and bladder are incurable,  
4 soudid if it be kutt, for it is a lyme þat is neruous & hap no fleisch,  
& is alwei meuyng, & for he is alwei resceuyng vryne & also þe as ypocras says.  
vryne fretiþ & þat lettiþ þe souding / For ypocras seiþ / If þe  
bladdre be kutt, or þe brayn, or þe herte, þe wounde is mortal. ¶ If  
8 a leche be sent aftir, for to come to a man þat is woundid in ony of  
þese forseid / if þe leche be a man of good loos & a kunnyng man, The physician shall warn the patient's friends, but cheer the patient,  
he schal, whanne he comeþ to þe pacient, & seeþ þe perel þerof, he  
schal telle þe perel of þe wounde to þe pacientis frendis, & he schal  
12 seiþ to þe man þat is hurt þat he schal ascape & fare weel; and [2 lf. 99]  
first he schal make him haue hise riȝtis<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup>of holy chirche, & lete and advise him to arrange his spiritual and temporal affairs.  
him make his testament, or þat his vertu faile / þanne he schal  
bigynne wiþ his good worching, riȝt as he took no drede þerof /  
16 for ofte tyme kinde worchiþ, þat þat semeþ vnpossible to þe leche,  
& principali if he worche wel. Neþeles þouþ þe leche se goode nota.  
signys bi þe pacient, he schal alwei haue his owne pronosticacioun The physician must never despair, and always remember his first prognosis.  
as it is aforseid, til þe man be al hool, if he schal ascape / for ofte  
20 tyme whanne þe pacient drawiþ toward þe deef, his passioun wole  
aswage; & also þe contrarie þerof is seen, þouþ þe pacient haue  
greet peyne & þe signes of deef, ȝitt he mai ascape / & þerfore for  
þese perels þat ben aforseid, he mot be war of vndirtakyng & of He must be cautious in a foreign country.  
24 biheest // ¶ If a leche be in straunge cuntre, he ne schal bi no maner  
wei take sich a cure. & also he schal forsake alle maner of curis  
þat ben harde to do, & also he schal forsake curis þat ben longe for  
to make ony perfeccioun þerof, & he mote be war þat faire biheste,  
28 ne veyn glorie, ne coueitise ne bigile him not /

<sup>3</sup>Of woundis of þe ȝerde & of ballokis, & of þe regioun [3 lf. 99, bk.]  
of þe bladdre and anothamia.<sup>4</sup>

- 32 **G**Od almyȝti þat alle þingis knewe tofore þe makynge of þe ¶ ix. Co  
world ouþir of man, he knewe þat a man schulde be maad  
of moist substaunce, as of sperme, in which natural hete schal  
worche.<sup>5</sup> & for to resseyue þe mater of sperme, it is necessarie þat Man's generative organs.

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: primo tamen ipsum faciat confiteri.

<sup>4</sup> Comp. *Vicary's Anatomy*, p. 81.

<sup>5</sup> Compare *Avicenna*, Lib. III., Fen. XX., 1. 1., ed. Venet. 1527, fol. 279:

"Sublimis deus creauit duos testiculos," etc.



a man haue ballokis / He made ballokis as it was necessarie, & 3af hem schap & complexioun for to engendre / & he 3af a man greet delite for to lie bi a womman, so þat a man schulde not haue abhominacioun þerof, saue a man schal do it with greet will & wiþ 4 greet loue, so þat generacioun miȝte be multiplied wiþ greet delite<sup>1</sup> /

The Yard has ¶ Also god almiȝti schop in a man a 3erde. & in þe bigynnyng þerof ben cartilaginis & ben maad fast to þe laste boon of þe rigboon, & is maad of nerues, veynes & arterys, & is sumwhat holow, 8

n Glans þat he miȝte be fulfillid wiþ spirit. & in þe heed þerof is fleisch and Prepuce. þat is felynge, & a skyn þat goiþ ouer & is clepid prepuce. & [2 lf. 100] þe meuyng of þat skyn<sup>2</sup> & of þe fleisch tofore helpiþ for to putte out þe sperme / þe risynge of a mannes 3erde comeþ of a mannes 12 herte, & witt of þe brayn, wilnyng, & greet desier; & watri humour comeþ of þe lyuer. & haþ .ij. open holis; & þoruþ þat oon hole goiþ out vryne & comeþ fro þe bladdre, & þoruþ þat opir hole comeþ sperme and comeþ fro þe ballokis. & þese .ij. holis ben 16

Auicenn mentions a 3rd one. good for to knowe / And auicenn seiþ: þat þere is þe .iiij. hole, & þoruþ þat hole passiþ a maner of superfluite þat a man feiliþ not, as whanne he halsiþ a womman wiþ hise hondis; saue þis þridde hole is not knowen of a cirurgian<sup>3</sup> //

The structure of the Testicles. þe .ij. ballokis ben maad of hard fleisch in þe maner as ben wommans brestis, & þat oon ballok of a man is grettere þan þe toþer & stronger, & to þe ballokis comeþ veynes & arterijs, & makip hem haue lijf & norischinge. & superfluite of good blood & cleue 24

They make sperm of the purest blood. comeþ þerto of alle þe lymes, & gaderiþ togidere in a mannes ballokis, & þere it bicometh whiȝt & turneþ into sperme, riȝt as blood bicometh

[4 lf. 100, bk.]<sup>4</sup> mylk in a wommans brestis / And þer ben maad fast wiþ þe ballokis .ij. vessels, & ben brode vpon þe ballokis, & narowe toward 28 þe 3erde, & ben clepid þe vessels of sperme, & ben clepid of auicenne

<sup>1</sup> *De propr. rer.*, Lib. V., Cap. 48. Add. 27,944, fol. 60 b: "For as Constante seiþ, to covenable getynges & gendringe of bestis god haþ ordeyned & i-made couenable membres, in þe whiche he haþ i-sette þe cause & mater of generacioun, þe whiche may not come forþ in dede wiþoute affeccioun of loue. ¶ In þe membres genytral god haþ send such an appetite inseperable, þat eueriche beest schulde be comfortid to multeplie beestis of his owne kynde, and þat is i-doo by schewinge of god, lest 3if þe doynge of generacioun were abhominable, generacioun of best were i-lost." This passage is taken from *Constantinus Afric. De morb. cog. et. cur.*, Lib. VI., Cap. 1, ed. Basil, 1536, p. 122.

<sup>3</sup> *Avicenna l. c.*, "Et in virga sunt meatus tres, meatus vrinae et meatus spermatis et meatus alguadi." *Matth. Sylv.*: "Alguedi est humor ille qui egreditur, cum aliquis tangit mulierem."



barbachi,<sup>1</sup> & of þese vessels cometh sperme into þe 3erde, & þoruþ þe 3erde is born into þe matris of wymmen / In þese .ij. vessels sperme is fulfillid, saue þe hete þerof cometh of þe ballokis; & to þe ballokis  
4 as it is aforseid cometh veynes & arterijs, & goiþ þoruþ dindimous, þat ben maad fast to þe siþhac as it is aforseid //

*Auicenn*  
calls them  
Barbachi.

¶ Þe maris in a womman is maad neruous & is schape as it were a 3erde þat were turned azenheer.<sup>2</sup> & þe necke of þe maris is  
8 fleischi, & brawny, & felynge, & gendring, & in þe necke of þe maris ben veynes þat ben to-broke whanne a womman lesiþ hir mayden-hode. & þe botme of þe maris is schape as it were þe case of a mannes ballokis / And þe maris haþ .ij. brode ballokis in þe necke,  
12 & wiþ þe ilke .ij. ballokis ben maad fast .ij. vessels of sperme, & ben more schort þan a mannes vessels of sperme / And of þese <sup>3</sup> vessels, a wommans sperme goiþ to þe botme of þe maris / And in þe tyme of conseuyunge þe wommans sperme [is] medlid wiþ a mannes /  
16 And þe maris of a womman haþ wiþinne .ij. grete concauitees / And þe maris haþ manie veynes, & þoruþ þe ilke veynes, whanne a womman haþ conseued, cometh blood to<sup>4</sup> þe lyuer for to norische þe child. And whanne a womman is not wiþ childe, þoruþ þe same  
20 veynes cometh blood of þe veynes menstrie & is putt out, & in þis maner a womman is purgid of superfluite of blood; & it is maad fast bitwixe þe grete gutt & þe bladdre, & is hizere þan þe bladdre, & is maad fast to þe rigge wiþ ligaturis, & in tyme of child berynge  
24 þe ligaturis recchiþ, & aftir þat tyme<sup>5</sup> \*—— /

The Matrix  
has two  
balloks  
(Ovaries),  
and two  
spermatic  
ducts (Fallopian  
Tubes).  
[<sup>3</sup> If. 101]

The Embryo  
is nourished  
by blood from  
the liver.

Menstruation  
removes  
superfluous  
blood.

If þere be woundis in ony of alle þese placis, þei ben stronge perilous for her sutil complexioun, & for her nobilte of worching.

Wounds of  
generative  
organs are  
dangerous.

¶ If it so be þat a man be hurt in his 3erde or ouerþwert in a  
28 litil quantite, þou schalt sewe þe wounde, & sprynge þeron poudre, & leie þerto defensiuis, & lete him blood, & diete him with pinne  
mete, & cure him wiþ good diligence // ¶ If it so be þat a mannes  
3erde be kutt al off ouerþwert, þanne it is greet drede þerof / for  
32 þe veynes þat cometh þerto & þe arterijs & manie nerues, for sumtyme þe pacient mai be deed, or þe blood mowe be staunchid / Saue

Treatment of  
a wounded  
yard.

[<sup>6</sup> If. 101, bk.]

If the yard is  
cut away,  
death from  
hæmorrhage  
may ensue.

<sup>1</sup> *barbachi*, Arab. *bārbaḥ*, 'conduit of water, canal of the urine.'

<sup>2</sup> Galen (ed. Kuehn, vol. IV., p. 635) has originated this curious comparison, which has been copied by the Arab. authors. *Avic.*, Lib. III., Fen. XXI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, Ven. 1527, fol. 285 b: "Matrix est quasi conversum instrumentum virorum."

<sup>4</sup> *to*, mistake for *from*. Lat.: per quas sanguis ei venit ab hepate.

<sup>5</sup> Some words are wanting. Lat.: partusque completo tempore constringatur.



Wounds of  
the Testiclescause Impo-  
tence.Wounds of  
the Matrix  
are mortal.Treatment  
of wounded  
Colon.[<sup>2</sup> lf. 102]

in þis cás þou schalt take hede for to do awei þe akyngē wip oile of  
rosis, anoynte him aboute þe ers & þe regioun of þe 3erde, & brenne  
þe 3erde wip an hoot irn for to constreyne þe flux of blood; for a  
cauterie streyneþ blood tofore alle þingis. ¶ Woundis þat ben in 4  
þe ballokis, þei roten hem anoon, & þouz a man be not in perel of  
deep þoru3 þe hurtyng of hem, 3itt his generacioun is lore / A  
wounde in þis place schal be curid in þe same maner as woundis in  
opere place of þe bodi, & þe cure schal not be chaungid þerof // ¶ If 8  
it so be þat a womman be hurt in her marijs wip a swerd, ouþir wip  
a knyft, ouþer wip a dart, þe wounde is mortal // ¶ If it bifalle þat  
colon<sup>1</sup> be hurt wip sum scharp þing ouþir wip hardnes of humouris,  
he may wel be curid þe while þe wounde is freisch, with putting 12  
of vnguentum album rasis of ceruse distemprid wip ius of arnog-  
lossa.<sup>3</sup> & if it so be þat þe wounde of þis place be olde, þanne it  
is for to make a mundificatif þerto, wip castyngē yn of gotis whay  
ouþir watir of barley //

16

Of woundis in þe haunche and of þe coxe of þe knee,  
and of boonis of þe feet and of anothomia.

¶ x<sup>o</sup>. c<sup>o</sup> /  
The Haunch-  
boneshave each a  
box (aceta-  
bulum) which  
contains the  
head of the  
thigh-bone.[<sup>6</sup> lf. 102, bk.]  
The thigh-  
bone

BOnys of haunchis ben maad fast wip þe latterē boon of þe  
rigboon / & ri3t as þe rigboon susteyneþ alle þe boones aboue, 20  
so alle þe boones bineþe ben maad fast to him / þese boones ben  
cartilaginous & sutil toward þe fore partie, & bineþe þei ben more  
greet; & eueri of hem haþ a box þat is clepid pxis haunche &  
vertebrum sit þeron.<sup>4</sup> & þat is þe eende of þe hipe boon. & wip 24  
this boon is maad fast þat boon þat goiþ ouerþwert vndir þe ars  
aboue þe 3erde, & is clepid os pectinis. & as summen seien þere ben  
iiij. partis, saue in cirurgie it is seid al oon. & þe place of þe con-  
iuncioun of þese boones is clepid þe scie.<sup>5</sup> & sumtyme þese boones 28  
goon out of þe ioynt, as þou schalt haue a perfit teching<sup>6</sup> herof in  
þe .iiij. tretis in þe chapter of dislocacioun / þis hipe boon, as it is

<sup>1</sup> Lat. Se si collo vulnus fieri accideret. Phillips. "Collum Uteri, the Neck of the Womb."

<sup>3</sup> arnoglossum. Wr. Wü., p. 559. 27 (XIII. cent.) "Arnoglosa, i. plauntein," O.E. wegbrade, waybread.

<sup>4</sup> Sloane 2463, fol. 42 b: "þei ben cleped ylia other ossa yliorum, and in þe vtter partie of þe mydward of hem ben concauytes other holewnesse, þe whiche ben clepid boystes, in þe whiche þe endes of þe bones of the þices ben receyved inne."

<sup>5</sup> scie, Med. Lat. scia, from ισχίον, it means the hip-joint. Wr. Wü., 610. 11 (xv. cent.), "Scia an<sup>ce</sup> the whyrlebon."



- aforseid, is maad fast<sup>t</sup> aboue wip ligaturis & pannyclis & nerues, & it<sup>t</sup> is a greet<sup>t</sup> boon & miche holow wipinne, & is ful of<sup>t</sup> marow ; & it<sup>t</sup> is hollow and is greet<sup>t</sup>, for it<sup>t</sup> schulde be strong<sup>t</sup> ; & it<sup>t</sup> is holow, for it<sup>t</sup> schulde be
- 4 list<sup>t</sup>. & þis boon is maad fast<sup>t</sup> in þe knee, & þere þe boon of<sup>t</sup> þe hipe is joined with the leg-bone in the knee. & þe boon of<sup>t</sup> þe leg<sup>t</sup> ben ioyned togidere in a box as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid.
- & þese boones ben bounden togidere wip ligaturis & senewis, & vpon þe ioynt<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> þese boones & for to kepe þis ioynture from harm, is
- 8 ioyned þeron a round boon & is clepid rotula, & of<sup>t</sup> summen it<sup>t</sup> is clepid þe yze of<sup>t</sup> þe knee, & alle þese boones ben bounden togidere wip strong<sup>t</sup> ligaturis // ¶ Vndir þe round boon of<sup>t</sup> þe knee ben ordeyned .ij. boones in þe leg<sup>t</sup>, & þat<sup>t</sup> oon þerof<sup>t</sup> is grettere & sittip tofore in
- 12 þe leg<sup>t</sup>, & þe toþer is smaller & sittip bihynde in þe leg<sup>t</sup>. & in þe neþer partie þei ben maad fast<sup>t</sup> wip þe boon of<sup>t</sup> calcanei þat<sup>t</sup> susteyneþ alle þe boones, & with alkarad,<sup>1</sup> & þat<sup>t</sup> is a boon þat<sup>t</sup> fulfillip þe ioynture & is <sup>2</sup>ioyned wip þe boon þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid naucula /
- 16 ¶ Racheta<sup>3</sup> of<sup>t</sup> þe foot<sup>t</sup> is maad of<sup>t</sup> iiij. boonis, & ben bounden togidere wip ligaturis. & wip þese boonys ben maad fast<sup>t</sup> þe bonys of<sup>t</sup> þe toos þat<sup>t</sup> ben .xiiij., for eueri boon haþ .iiij. boones, saue þe boon of<sup>t</sup> þe grete too, & þat<sup>t</sup> haþ but<sup>t</sup> .ij. boones / to alle þese boones
- 20 comeþ nerues fro þe riggeboones—& wip þese nerues, & with þese ligaturis, & wip symple fleisch þese boones ben maad fast<sup>t</sup> togidere —& 3eueþ to þese lymes meuyng & felynge. & þer ben grete brawnes in a mannes leggis & in hise hipis, & ben ful of<sup>t</sup> grete
- 24 veynes & arterijs & senewis, & ben departid into alle þe leggis & to þe feet<sup>t</sup> / & summe of<sup>t</sup> þese veynes comeþ fro a veyne of<sup>t</sup> þe lyuer, þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid vena ramosa as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid in armys. & þerfore þese placis ben swiþe perilous, whanne þei ben woundid, for þe perels þat<sup>t</sup>
- 28 ben aforseid. & þese veynes ben departid in þe foot<sup>t</sup>, & .ij. þerof<sup>t</sup> ben in þe holow of<sup>t</sup> þe foot<sup>t</sup> wipoutforþ, & þat<sup>t</sup> oon veyne þerof<sup>t</sup> is clepid sciatica, & þat<sup>t</sup> oþere is clepid renalis, <sup>4</sup>& þis is þus miche to seie : þat<sup>t</sup> oon veyne serueþ for þe scie, & þat<sup>t</sup> oþer for þe reynes /
- 32 þanne þer ben ij. oþer veynes in þe holow of<sup>t</sup> þe foot<sup>t</sup> withinne, & þat<sup>t</sup> oon is clepid sophena, & þat<sup>t</sup> oþer is clepid vena ventris, id est a veyne of<sup>t</sup> þe wombe. ¶ þe veyne þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid renalis scheweth it<sup>t</sup> silf<sup>t</sup> bitwixe þe list<sup>t</sup> too & þat<sup>t</sup> oþer too next, & þe blood-letyng<sup>t</sup>
- 36 of<sup>t</sup> þis veyne is good for þus manye þingis : for cancrena þat<sup>t</sup> ben in

Rotula.

The two bones of the leg

articulate with the Calcaneus and Astragalus.

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 103]

Nauicula.

The Racheta has four bones articulating with the fourteen Phalanges.

The nerves confer movement and sensation to the leg.

The veins of the lower limbs start from the Vena Ramosa (Vena Cava), which divides into the

Sciatica and the Renalis.

[<sup>4</sup> lf. 103, bk.]

Saphena, Vena ventris.

<sup>1</sup> alkarad, Lat. alchaab, from Arab. *al kab*, a die.<sup>3</sup> Racheta, Lat. Rasceta, from Arab. *rusgh*, which means the carpus or the tarsus. The Rasceta pedis is not exactly our tarsus, as it comprises only the three Cuneiform bones and the Cuboid bone.



þe hipis & for a mormal<sup>1</sup>, & for varices & for vlcera þat<sup>t</sup> ben in þe hipis ouþer in þe leggis.

Wounds of the lower extremity are dangerous.

Treatment of such wounds.

[<sup>2</sup> ff. 104]

the þerd book conteynes viij. c.<sup>4</sup>

Bi alle þese skillis þou myzt wel se, þat<sup>t</sup> woundis þat<sup>t</sup> be maad in þese placis ouerþwert<sup>t</sup> ben swiþe perilous for þe kutting<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> nerues 4 & of<sup>t</sup> cordis & braun, & of<sup>t</sup> veynes & of<sup>t</sup> arterijs, for alle þese þingis goiþ endelong<sup>t</sup> þe leggis & þe hipis, & þerfore woundis þat<sup>t</sup> ben maad ouerþwert<sup>t</sup> in þis place ben swiþe perilous as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid //

¶ Woundis þat<sup>t</sup> ben maad in þes placis þat<sup>t</sup> ben curable, schulen be 8 curid in þe same maner as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid in curis of<sup>t</sup> armys & of<sup>t</sup> hondis / Saue of<sup>t</sup> o þing<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> take kepe, þat<sup>t</sup> woundis þat<sup>t</sup> ben maad iij. fyngris brede wiþinne þe knee, for þe <sup>2</sup>nobilte of<sup>t</sup> þe place & for þe causis þat<sup>t</sup> ben forseid, þe wounde is iugid mortal / þerfor 12 woundis þat<sup>t</sup> ben in þese placis þat<sup>t</sup> ben forseid & ben curable þou must do good diligence þerto, & be wel war of<sup>t</sup> woundis þat<sup>t</sup> ben mortal as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid //

¶ The techinge of<sup>t</sup> þe .ij. tretis is fulfillid þoruþ þe help of<sup>t</sup> god, 16 & now schal bigynne þe techinge of<sup>t</sup> þe .iij. tretis & schal conteyne .xvij. chapitris /<sup>3</sup>

Here bigynneþ þe þridde book.

¶ i<sup>o</sup>. c<sup>o</sup> /

Of þe engendryng of heeris //<sup>5</sup>

20

**H**Eeris ben engendrid of<sup>t</sup> greet<sup>t</sup> fume & of<sup>t</sup> viscous mater, & þe more hoot<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> a man is, þe more heer he schal haue<sup>6</sup> / & þer falliþ manie amendentis of<sup>t</sup> heeris.<sup>7</sup> ¶ First<sup>t</sup> we wolen speke for to make heer fair, & aftirward of<sup>t</sup> oþere sijknessis þat<sup>t</sup> falliþ in placis 24 of<sup>t</sup> heeris.

<sup>1</sup> for a mormal, ad malum mortuum, a severe form of leprosy. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 343.

<sup>3</sup> Inserted by the translator; the number of the chapters is incorrect. Lat. Add. 26,106, f. 44 b: "Incipit tractatus tertius, et erit de curis morborum, qui non sunt vulnera, qui possunt accidere diuersis membris a capite usque ad pedes, que veniunt ad curam cyrurgici, qui continet tres doctrinas et est capitulum primum doctrine prime, tractatus tertii de ornatu capillorum."

<sup>4</sup> The marginal note ought to be: þe firste doctrine of the þerd book conteynes VIII. C.

<sup>5</sup> A list of passages on the same subject from works of Lat. and Arab. authors is given by Adams, *Paulus Aegineta*, vol. I., p. 339 (for "Rhases ad Mansor, VI. 1.", *ibid.*, read "Rhases ad Mansor, V. 1.").

<sup>6</sup> De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 66 b.: "And here is i-bred and comeþ out of fumosite hoot & drie." Compare *Vicary*, p. 24.

<sup>7</sup> Lat.: quibus multa accidunt corrigenda.



¶ If þou wolt make longe heeris, ouper if þou wolt make heeris wexe long, dissolue a litil mustard in water of decoccioun of *bletarum*<sup>1</sup> & waische þerwith ofte, & þanne anoynte with comoun oile.

A wash to make the hair grow long.

- 4 ¶ If þou wolt make heeris 3elow, þou schalt do in þis maner. R. mirre ʒ iiij., lupinorum amarorum ʒ vj., <sup>2</sup>flos salicis, fecis vini combusti ana ʒ .iiij., grinde hem wel togidere & distempere hem. R. wip lie maad of askis of vinis, & herwith anoynte þe heeris aftir þe [2 lf. 104, bk.]  
8 tyme þat þei ben wel waissche wip þe forseid lye //

- ¶ If þou wolt make hem blac<sup>3</sup> R stercus irundinum, & enulam siccam, & orobum,<sup>4</sup> semen raphani & sulphurus, & florem capillaris<sup>5</sup> succus, grinde alle þese wip a galle of a bole ouper of an oxe & tempere hem wip vinegre, & herwith anoynte hise heeris, & first þou schalt fumie<sup>6</sup> hem wip sulphur, & þus þou schalt do ofte. & þou schalt anoynte him with oile of sambuci, þat is maad of whit flouris of ellern, & leid in oile rȝt as me makip oile of rosis.

An ointment to dye the hair white.

- 16 ¶ If þou wolt kepe þe eendis of þe heeris fro fretynge, kutte hem alle euene & ʒeue þe pacient good mete, & anoynte ofte his heed with oile & watir medlid togidere, & anoynte herwith ofte / & anoynte it with muscillage seminis lini & psillij<sup>7</sup> //

A treatment to keep the ends of the hair from splitting.

- 20 ¶ If þou wolt make heeris crisp R farinam fenigreci, & mirre, & semen raphani gallarum, gummi arabici, calcis abluti, & wynde alle þese þingis & frote þe heeris, and þei<sup>8</sup> wolen bcome crisp.

R  
An ointment to make the hair crisp.

[8 lf. 105]

- ¶ If þou wolt kepe heeris þat þei schulen not falle awei. R ladani<sup>9</sup> .ʒ j, & resolue it in ʒ iiij of oile of mirtilles & herwip anoynte þe rootis of þe heeris / ¶ If þou wolt saue heeris fro hoornes so þat þei bcome not whit, þanne it is necessarie for to kepe him fro al maner þingis þat engendriþ fleume, & fro greet<sup>10</sup> studiynge,<sup>10</sup> & fro fisch þat is rotid, & fro roten wijn, & he mote ofte

An ointment to keep the hair from falling off.

R  
Feed well in order to prevent the hair from getting gray.

<sup>1</sup> *bleta*, *Alphita*, p. 22, "*Beta major*, uel *bleta* uel *bletis*, *atriplex agrestis* uel *domestica*."

<sup>3</sup> *blac*, O.E. *blác*, *albus*.

<sup>4</sup> Lat. : *orobum*, qui appellatur in gallico *uicia*.

<sup>5</sup> Lat. *florum cappa*; *capillaris* is a mistake for *capparis*, the caper plant. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. *Caper* 1.

<sup>6</sup> *fumie*, Lat. *suffumigare*. Compare *Macer. Engl. Translat.*, xvth cent., Sl. 2527, f. 251: "*make therof a suffumygacyon*."

<sup>7</sup> *psillie*, Wr. Wü., p. 559. 6 (XIII. cent.), "*psilliun*, i. luseded." Cooper, "*psyllion*, the herb called fleawort."

<sup>9</sup> *Ladanum*, *Laudanum*, *Labdanum*. "A gumme that runneth from the hearbe Lada, and is much used in Pomanders."—Cooper.

<sup>10</sup> *fro greet studiynge*, Lat. a *fastidio*. The correct explanation is given in *De propr. rer. lib. VII. Cap. 44. Add. 27,944. fol. 91<sup>b</sup>*: "*And fastidium is vnskilful abhominacioun & wlatsonnes of mete & drinke and most greueþ þe vertu of fedinge and of norischinge, for as Isidir seiþ, fastidium is i-seide as it were makeinge noye & disese, for a man þat haþ abhominacioun haþ noye and disese in þing þat anothir haþ solas in & lykinge*."



R purge fleume with turbit, and vse strong<sup>t</sup> wijn & a litil, & vse sutil sauce, & vse of þese þingis: R. mirabolanorum,<sup>1</sup> kebulorum indorum, emblicorum, & bellicorum<sup>2</sup> ana,<sup>3</sup> & grinde hem alle with oile of almondis longe, & þanne tempere hem vp with wijn & hony, & eueri 4 morowe he schal take þerof þe quantite of a note / And þow schalt die hise heeris if þei ben white, wiþ tincture þat ben forseid //

▲ hair-dye.

R ¶ If a man desirþ for to haue blac heeris as doiþ greuis<sup>4</sup> & spaynardis, þanne make þis tincture. R foliorum mirti, foliorum 8 papaueris rubij, capilli, ciperi, spice, seminis bletarum, apii, ana 3 j., seþe hem in iiij li of watir, til þei come to o pound, & þanne cole<sup>5</sup> hem & do þerto li. j. of oile of violet<sup>6</sup> & boile hem in a double vessel til al þe watir be waistid away; þanne caste into þe oile 3 fs 12 of acacie, & make aischis of pyne applis, whanne þe kirkels ben taken out þerof, & medle hem alle togidere, & kepe þis oynement. & herwiþ anoynte heeris þat þou wolt make blake.

[¶ ff. 105, bk.]

### Of allopucia þat is namys of fisik þat signifieþ 16 diuers passiouns /

¶ ij<sup>o</sup>

The falling  
off of the hair  
called Alo-  
pecia is a  
sort of  
Leprosy.

N Amys of phisice þat signifieþ diuers passiouns vnder oon name ofte tyme bigiliþ a leche, & bringiþ him into greet error / For comounli al maner lesing<sup>t</sup> of heer is clepid allopucia<sup>7</sup>; saue for 20 to seie þe soþe, allopucia is a maner spice<sup>8</sup> of lepre þat cometh of rotid fleume / Saue in þis chapitre I wole speke of allopucia þat falliþ oonli in þe heed. Allopix in grew, is seid a fox in latin, for a fox in sum tyme of þe 3eer his heer pilip awei, & þerfore fallyng<sup>t</sup> 24 awei of heer is clepid allopucia / ¶ Tinea<sup>9</sup> is as miche to seie as a

The disease  
is called

<sup>1</sup> *Mirabolans*, a kind of Plums.—Phillips.

<sup>2</sup> *Chebuli*, *Emblici*, and *Bellirici* are different kinds of *Mirabolans*. See Tommaseo Diz.

<sup>3</sup> Lat. *ana partes equales*.

<sup>4</sup> Greeks.

<sup>5</sup> *cole*, Lat. *colo*, strain through a sieve.

<sup>7</sup> De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 66 b.: "And if suche fumosite faileþ nouzt, but is infect or i-lette by som opir humore, þan failinge and lak of heer is nouzt propirliche ballidenes, but a special yuel þat phisicians clepen *allopiciam*. ¶ By þat yuel þe nurtur of heer is corrupt & faileþ, & þe heer falleþ & þe ferþe partye of þe heed is bare, and þe furþer skyn of þe heed is þe foulere. ¶ Soche men faren as foxes, for þe heer of hem falliþ happiliche for inmoderat and passinge hete. ¶ *Allopes* in grew, *vulpes* in latyn, a fox in englishe."

<sup>8</sup> *spice*, Lat. *species*. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 355, "a Spyce; species." As to the pleonastic use of *spice*, compare: *a maner kynde of sponges* (leaf 109).

<sup>9</sup> De propr. rer., *ibid.*, fol. 80: "Also þe heed is ofte disesid wiþ an famuler passioun, þat children haue oft, and by constantin þat yuel hatte *squama*, *skalle*, & we clepiþ þat yuel *tynea*, *moppe*, for it fretiþ & gnameþ þe over partie of þe skyn of þe heed as a moppe fretiþ cloof & cleueþ þerto wiþoute departinge & holdinge þe skyn wel faste."



reremous, for þe heeris of a reremous ben alwey aboute þe heed, & þerfore cirurgians makip difference bitwixe allopuciam & tineam, for þei <sup>1</sup>clepid tineam þere þat þere is corrupcioun in þe skyn wip harde crustis & quytture / Saue allopucia is whanne þe heeris fallip awei wipoute ony wise of þe skyn.<sup>2</sup>

Tinea when attended by corruption of the skin.  
[1 lf. 106]

¶ Allopucia þat is wipoute comeþ of þe skyn,<sup>3</sup> & sumtyme it comeþ in þe eende of a siknes for defaute of norischinge of þe bodi þat schulde helpe to norische þe heeris, oupir it comeþ, for þe poris openeþ to myche / In þis cas it is necessarie for to augmente norischinge of þe bodi wip good metis þat engendriþ good blood, & frote wel þe heeris of his heed wip þin hond & anoynte it wip oile of mirtillorum / If þis suffise not, frote wel þe heeris of his heed with þin hond til þe skyn of his heed bicomme reed; & þan frote it wip ryndis of an oynoun til it bicomme drie, & þanne þere wole arise þere vpon, as it were, bladdris, & þanne anoynte þe place wip grece of a maulard. & whanne þe heeris wexen agen, lete schauwe hem ofte, for miche schauynge is good þerfore /

Alopecia arises from want of nourishment.

Treatment of this disease.

If it so be þat allopucia comeþ of vijs<sup>4</sup> of humouris, þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe teching<sup>5</sup> þat is aforseid in allopucia þat comeþ of long<sup>6</sup> sijknes; for if it come of vijs of humouris, þanne vlcera wole be in þe skyn. þan þou must loke of what humour it come, þat þou miȝt knowe bi disposicioun of al þe bodi & bi þe colour of þe place, as if þe pacient be fleischi & wel colourid, & if þe fleume of his mouþ be swete, & þe pustulis þat ben in his heed be reed, & if his vryne be picke & reed, & if he be ȝong<sup>7</sup>, & if he etip metis þat engendriþ miche blood, & if vlcera be in þe skyn, & if al þe skyn be reed & ful of quytture, alle þes ben signys of aboundaunce of blood. If it so be þat his bodi be leene, & þe colour of þe place be rufus ouþer ȝelow, & vlcere be drie, it is signe þat colre is þe cause / If his bodi be sumwhat whijt, & if he haþ smale veynis, & if he haue miche moisture in his mouþ, & if his vryne be whijt & picke, & if he þirstip not, & if þe place be whijt & neische and miche moisture þeron wipouten ony brennyng, it is a signe of fleume / If þe colour of his bodi be derk ouþer blac, & if he be leene, & if his vryne be pale & þinne, & if he haþ greet appetit, & if his blood be blac, & if he vsip miche for to ete beef & caul, &

The skin is ulcerated,  
[5 lf. 106, bk.]  
if the disease is caused by bad humours.

Signs for telling

whether it is caused by superabundance of blood, by choler,

by phlegm,

[6 lf. 107]

<sup>2</sup> withoute ony wise of þe skyn, Lat. absque cutis vitio apparente; of vijs of humouris, Lat. propter humorum malitiam.

<sup>3</sup> Mistranslated from the Lat. alopecia quæ sine cutis est vulnere.

<sup>4</sup> See note 2.



or by melan-  
choly.

opere þingis þat engendriþ malancolie, & if þe place of þe siknes be  
ledy & hard, þat is a signe of malancoli, saue þis passioun comeþ  
ful seelde of malancoli, but if it be of greet corrupcioun, & þanne  
it is worse þan ony oþer aforseid / 4

First remove  
the cause of  
the disease.

*Galion.*  
a generale  
rulle off  
galyen.

If the patient  
is full of  
humours,  
bleed and  
purge.

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 107, bk.]

To purge  
coler

R̄

R̄

Whanne þou knowist of what humour it comeþ, first þou  
must auoide<sup>1</sup> þat humour, for þis is a general rule of .G., for as .G.  
seip / First, þou must do awei þe cause, & I woole teche þee to  
auoide þe matere with fewe medicyns þat ben approued & ben 8  
laxatiuis, profitable, & ben necessarie for a cirurgian for to knowe  
alle þe maner of purgaciouns, for ellis he schal neuere wel worche  
in sich maner causis / If it so be þat a man be ful of humouris, þou  
must first bigynne for to lete him blood, if he be strong & in age, 12  
þat is, & not to 3ongt ne to oold. & þan lete him blood, ouþer garse  
him, & þan afterward purge him, saue it is bettere to purge him  
first, & þanne wiþinne a few daies lete him <sup>2</sup>blood / If it so be þat  
blood be oonli þe cause, þanne it suffisiþ ynow for to lete him 16  
blood / ¶ If it so be þat þou dissoluest þe water wiþ a laxatif, &  
if þou letist not him blood tofore ne aftirward, þanne þou art not  
sure; for ofte tyme þe medicyne laxatif wole engendre a feuer, &  
principali if it be hoot / 20

¶ Colre schal be purgid in þis maner / R̄ violarum ʒ j., pruno-  
rum ʒ j & ʒ, sebesten .xv. in noumbre, iuiubas .xx., seþe hem in  
iij li of water, til þei come to li j, & cole hem, & resole þeron  
cassia fistula<sup>3</sup> ʒ j., thamarindorum, manne ana ʒ ʒ, & boile hem a 24  
litol togidere, & þan cole hem, & aneuen do þeron poudre of mira-  
bolani citrini ʒ j., & of rubarbe, & amorowe cole hem, saue chaufe  
it a litil first, & distempere it with ʒ ʒ of sugre rosarum, & lete  
him drynke it<sup>4</sup> / ouþer wiþ þese pelottis<sup>5</sup> / R̄ aloes cicotri<sup>6</sup>ni ʒ j., 28  
mirabolani citrini, rosarum rubearum ana ʒ ʒ, scamonie quintam

<sup>1</sup> *auoide*, Lat. *evacuare*. See *N. E. Dict.*, *avoid*, 1.

<sup>3</sup> *cassia fistula*, see *Alphita*, p. 35, and *Adams l. c.*, vol. III., p. 429. It is *Cassia fistula* L., the pudding-pipe tree.

<sup>4</sup> The following prescription is omitted in the text, but written in a different hand at the bottom of lf. 107 bk.: *pro colera R̄ cantaridarum, mane, medulle cassia fistule ana ʒ ʒ, myrbol, cytri[ni] ʒ ij, boylle in ti ʒ natir, to the halfe put therto ʒ j suger & ʒ 3, & drenk yt.*

<sup>5</sup> *pelottis*, Lat. *pillis*, Fr. *pelote*, a little ball. Phillips. "Pellota (in the *Forest Law*) the ball or round fleshy part of a Dog's Foot." *Charta de Foresta*, 1225: in *Annales de Burton. Annales Monast. Luard*, vol. I., p. 233: "Talis autem sit expeditatio [canum] per assisam comitatum, quod tres ortilli abscidantur siue *pelota* de pede anteriori."

<sup>6</sup> *aloes cicotri<sup>6</sup>ni*, Lat. *sucotri<sup>6</sup>ni*, for *socotri<sup>6</sup>ni*, so called from the island Socotra.



partem .3. j., þat is to seie þe .v. part of 3., & make þerof pelottis with sirupo violaceo. & þis is good to 3eue to a strong man / Also þese ben good pelottis for to purge clene colre / R̄ mirabolani 4 citrini .3. j., scamonie cocte .፩ ፬, masticis <sup>1</sup>grana iij., grinde hem & tempere hem vp wip ius of iouis barba,<sup>2</sup> & make þerof pelottis & þis ius, but collige on zest.<sup>3</sup> ¶ þis þou must wite þat whanne þou wolt purge colre, first þou muste make a preparatijf tofore with 8 oxisacra<sup>4</sup> & wip metis þat ben colde & moist & wip reste.

¶ If þou wolt purge fleume þou schalt to þis medicyne þat Maister William of Salerne vside / R̄ turbit albi gummosi .3. j. & ፩ j, diazinziberos .3. ij., & medle hem togidere & make herof a gobet, 12 & medle þerwip a litil of sirupe of rosis. ¶ It is good forto medle zinziberos wip turbit for þat wole comforte þe stomac & defie fleumatik humouris, & also it is good for to ete euery dai fastyng wipouten ony medlynge of ony laxatif / R̄ zinziberis albi .3. j., 16 liquericie rase .3. iij., gariofili cardamoni, nucis muscati, granorum paradisi .3. ij., zucare albissime .li. ij., & make herof a letuarie not to hard soden; ouþir wip þese pelottis: pulueris pigre,<sup>5</sup> turbit electi ana .3. x, pulpe coloquintide .3. iij. & ፩ j, grynde all þese & sarce hem,<sup>6</sup> 20 & tempere hem vp wip oile of almondis & make þerof pelottis, & herof þou myzt <sup>7</sup>3eue at oonys 3. ij. ¶ þe poudre of pigre þat goiþ to þese pelottis is good þou3 it were bi it-silf.<sup>8</sup> & it is swipe comoun, & Rasis & A. acorden þeron, & hali abbot & serapion<sup>9</sup> / R̄ 24 rosarum rubearum, masticis, xilobalsami, spice, cassie lignie, azari ana,<sup>10</sup> aloes þat it be good, double to alle. ¶ If fleume be medlid wip

R̄

[1 ff. 108]

To purge  
Flem. l. h.A prescrip-  
tion of Wil-  
liam of Sa-  
lerne

R̄

R̄

[7 ff. 108, bk.]

A powder  
used by  
Rasis &  
Auicenn

R̄

<sup>2</sup> iouis barba, med. L. for Sempervivum tectorum. Add. 15,236, fol. 4: "Iouis barba, semperuiua idem. G. Iubarbe A. siluegrene."

<sup>3</sup> zest, Lat. et sit dosis una. "Zest, a chip of orange . . . it is also sometimes taken for a short afternoon sleep or Nap: as to go to one's zest."—Phillips. Zest (chip of orange), Fr. zeste, Lat. schistus—zest (nap), Esp. siesta, Lat. sextus.

<sup>4</sup> oxisacra—Oxysaccharum, a Composition of Sugar and Vinegar.—Phillips.

<sup>5</sup> pigre, πικρός, η, όν, sharp, bitter. Matth. Sylv.: "Pigra Gal. in dinamidiis .i. amara, quæ amaritudine sua morbos & humores expellunt."

<sup>6</sup> sarce hem, Lat. cribellentur. Cathol. Angl., p. 318. "a Sarce, colum." Phillips. "Scarce or Sarce, a fine Hair Sieve." Lat. serica, Ital. sargia, Fr. sarge.

<sup>8</sup> be it-silf. The N. E. Dict. s. v. by 4, gives examples for the early occurrence of 'by oneself' = alone. The first reference for 'by itself' is quoted by Shaks.

<sup>9</sup> hali abbot & serapion are not named in the Latin text. Hali abbot, also called Hali þe abbot, is Ali the son of Abbas, a Persian physician (994), the author of 'al muluki' = the Royal. See Sprengel II., p. 412.

<sup>10</sup> Lat. ana partes equales.



cochium  
Rasis.

To purge  
melancole  
R̄

[<sup>3</sup> ff. 109]

R̄

A stronger  
medicine:  
R̄

After having  
purged, pro-  
ceed to the  
local cure;  
use rubbing  
and mild  
medicines,  
if necessary—  
stronger ones  
R̄

[<sup>6</sup> ff. 109, bk.]

R̄

For rich peo-  
ple use an  
ointment of  
Cantharides.

colre, þanne do [þerto]<sup>1</sup> þe forseid pelottis of turbit, of scamonie .3 ij. & ð, sticados arabici<sup>2</sup> .3 .v, & þanne þou schalt do þerto turbit .3 .v—& it was aforseid .3 x in þe resceit tofore—& þese pelottis ben clepid cochium rasis, & þis is þe beste þing þat mai be 4 for to purge dyuers humouris þat ben in þe heed / I ne knewe no medicyn laxatif þat is so good, þat is so profitable for to purge ij. humouris þat ben medlid togidere as þis medicyn is / For þere ben opere medicyns as sure as þis, saue þei ben not so myȝty. Also 8 þere ben opere medicyns more myȝty, saue þei ben not so sure. ¶ þou schalt purge malancoli wiþ þis liȝt medicyn þat is ofte ȝeue / R̄. epithimi .3 j., & boile it in li j. of gotis whey, saue þou schalt boile it but a while, & lete hem stonde so al nyȝt, & a morowe 12 chaufe <sup>3</sup> it a litil & cole it, & ȝeue it to drynke; ouþer make it wiþ a decoccioun of Epithimi Rasis R̄ mirabolanorum indorum .3 x, pollipodij 3 .v, sene 3 vij, turbit 3 iij, sticados .3 x, seþe alle þes in iij li of watir, til it come to j. li., & þanne do þerto epithimi 16 3 .x, & lete it boile a litil, & þan sette it adoun fro þe fier; & whanne it is cold cole it & do þerto sugre ro. 3 j., & ȝeue it to drynk in diluculo / If þou wolt make a medicyn þat is more strenger, ȝeue first bi iij. houris þese pelottis. R̄ aloes 3 j., salis 20 indi 3 .ð., agarici .3 ij., ellibori nigri þe .iiij. part of a 3., & make herof pelottis wiþ hony, ouþer make herof a sirup.

Whanne þou hast wel purgid þe mater, þanne þou must go to þe cure in þis maner / Loke if frotyngis and liȝt medicyns þat ben 24 seid in þe firste bygynyng of þis chapiter suffise in allopucia þat ben not vlcera, saue oonli fallyng awei of heeris. If þe forseid medicyns wolen not serue, þan þou muste make stronger / R̄ spume maris, þat is a maner kynde of sponges,<sup>4</sup> saue it is more sutil & 28 more whit, 3 x. baurac<sup>5</sup> .i. <sup>6</sup>nitrum, in þe stide herof we moun do þerto sal gemme, sulphuris, euforbij ana 3 .ij., staphisagrie, cantaridarum ana .3 j, grynde alle þese togidere & make hem wiþ oile, & anoynte herwiþ his heed. ¶ If þou wolt worche more stronglich 32 aboute þe place þat þe heeris ben pilid awei, & principaly if he be a riche man: R̄ olium de ben.<sup>7</sup> 3 j., cantaridarum & kutte awei þe

<sup>1</sup> Wanting.

<sup>2</sup> *stecados* or *stickadone*, Cassidonie or French Lavender. Minsheu.—*Stoechas d'Arabie*. Pharmacopœa Gallica.

<sup>4</sup> See page 179, note 1.

<sup>5</sup> *baurac*, Arab. = nitrum.

<sup>7</sup> "*Ben* or *Behn*, the Fruit of a Tree, like the Tamarisk, about the bigness of a Filberd, which the Perfumers bruise to get the Oil out of it, not so sweet smelling of it-self, but proper to receive any sort of Scent."—Philipps.



- hediz þerof & þe wyngis ana .3 j., stampe a litil cantarides & leie hem in oile of violet,<sup>1</sup> & sette þe viol<sup>2</sup> vpon soft colis & lete hem boile, & putte in a smal sticke, and alwei meue hem & it wole  
 4 bicombe al into an oynement, & make it haue a sote smel wiþ musco, & herwiþ anoynte his heed; & þis wole make bladdris arise þeron, & it wole make heeris to growe. Saf þou must take hede, þat in medicyns þat ben cantarides ynne, þei wolen make a greet  
 8 brennyng, and þat brennyng wole be yuel to take awei. & sumtyme it falliþ þat þoruþ þat brennyng comeþ a feuer. First, þou schalt helpe þis caas<sup>3</sup> in þis maner: þou schalt anoynte þe place with vnguentum<sup>4</sup> album þat schal be seid in þe antidotarie / [4 lf. 110]
- 12 ¶ Vlcera þat ben in allopucia ouþer tinearum<sup>5</sup> summe ben curable & summe ben incurable; if it be so þat þe substaunce of þe skyn be not to hard, þanne þou schalt traueile þereaboute. Also if þe skyn be hard & calose,<sup>6</sup> þanne it is seid incurable // ¶ If þere ben  
 16 pustulis þat ben hote & ful of blood, & þe skyn be ful of humouris & neische, þanne it is good for to garce þat skyn, & þanne waische al his heed with þat blood hoot, & þanne hile<sup>7</sup> his heed wiþ caule leuis. & þanne aftirward anoynte al his heed wiþ oile of notis  
 20 ouþer of camomil hoot, til al þe scabbis þerof be wel tobroke. & þanne bigynne for to drie with þese drynge medicyns / R̄, argillam rubeam þat it be neische & clene wiþouten grauel & wiþouten stoonys, & distempere it with strong vinegre, & make it as it were  
 24 an oynement, & þerwiþ anoynte his heed // ¶ Item, argillam partes ij., sulphuris viui, cineres corticis, cucurbite siccos<sup>8</sup> pulpe colloquintide ana partem j., distempere hem with vinegre<sup>9</sup> & anoynte herwiþ. þis is good þing þerfore & driþ swiþe vlcera þat ben  
 28 hoot, & alle pustulas þat ben in þe heed & in þe face; þis driþ & soudiþ // ¶ If þe matere be corrupt & swiþe hoot & brennyng, first þou schalt aswage þe heete wiþ vnguentum album rasis þat schal be seid in þe antidotarie, & anoynte þerwiþ al his heed, &  
 32 þanne leie þerevpon a linnen cloþ wet in þe iuys of stooncroppe,<sup>10</sup>

Inflam-  
 tory symp-  
 toms, such as  
 fever,  
 to be treated  
 with unguen-  
 tum album.

Ulcers accom-  
 panying  
 Alopecia or  
 Tinea are  
 sometimes  
 incurable.

Treatment, if  
 there are  
 blood-pus-  
 tules, and if  
 the skin is full  
 of humours.

R̄

Cool with un-  
 guentum  
 album

and a lotion.

<sup>1</sup> in oile of violet, Lat. in oleo in fiala.

<sup>2</sup> viol, Lat. fiala. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 129, s. v. fialle.

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: Primo casu succurre cum unctione . . . in secundo casu ponas egrum in balneo.

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: Vlcerosarum autem allopiciarum seu tinearum.

<sup>6</sup> calose, Lat. callosus. The references in *N. E. Dict.* are later.

<sup>7</sup> hile, O.E. helan.

<sup>8</sup> MS. siccage.

<sup>10</sup> stooncroppe, Wright W., 712. 35. "Hec vermicularis, stoncroppe." Lat.: crassula minor Add. 15,236, fol. 175 b.: "Cassula minor frigid. sicc. teste de soriz. stoncroppe."



& lete þis lye þeron til al þe brennyng be aweie, & þanne aftir þis anoynte his heed wip oile of violet. & þanne hele his heed wip leuys of *bletarum* til al þe skyn bicomē moist & neische & wipoute brennyngt, & þanne drie it vp & soude it wip þingis þat ben afor- 4

Treatment of Tinea in an early stage.

R̃

seid // ¶ Item, if tinea be<sup>1</sup> newe, þou schalt do þerto anoþer maner cure / R̃, abrotani agrestis,<sup>2</sup> fumiterre, lappacij acuti,<sup>3</sup> artemesie<sup>4</sup> ana .m. j. boile alle þese in oile til þei bicomē al drie þeron, & wip þis oile anoynte his heed manye daies, & þanne sprynge þeron 8 poudre of staphisagre & of elleboro; wip anoyntingt of þis oile þe matere schal be<sup>5</sup> taken out of þe skyn, & wip frotyngt of þis

[<sup>5</sup> lf. 111]

Treatment, if there is much phlegmatic (liquid) matter in the skin.

poudre it schal be dried // ¶ If þe mater be fleumatik þat is in þe skyn, & if þere be<sup>6</sup> myche corrupcioun þeron & if þe skyn be 12 crusty,<sup>7</sup> þanne waische his heed wip a decoccioun of malowis in watir, & þanne anoynte his heed wip oile of camomille & oile of notis medlid togidere; & whanne it is anoyntid, hile his heed wip caule leuis, & þus þou schalt do manie daies til þe skyn be more 16 scabbid<sup>8</sup> þan it was. & þan frote it wel wip an oynoun til þe skyn bicomē hoot & reed, & þan þou schalt waische his heed wip lye maad wip aschis of a vine, & þeron schulen be dissolued wijn-drastis brent.<sup>9</sup> & whanne þou hast waische his heed herwip, þan 20

An ointment for removing the hair.

R̃

þou schalt anoynte his heed wip þe oynement þat wole pile awei þe heeris / R̃, calcis vif .3. iij., arsenec 3 j., aloes 3 .iij., & make herof a poudre & tempere hem togidere wip seþing hoot water, & herwip take awei hise heeris, & þan waische his heed azen wip þe lye þat 24 is aforseid til þe matere be wel dried / þan for to make þe heeris 10 wexe & for to regendre skyn & soude it, þou schalt anoynte þe place with an oynement þat is maad þus / Take aischis maad of a mannes heer 3 j., fecis of oile, lynseed ana. 3 .iij., mirre 3 j. & 1, 28 staphisagre .3. ij., euforbij .3. j., make þerof an oynement // ¶ If

Another for restoring the hair and skin.

[<sup>10</sup> lf. 111, bk.] to mak heres grow

R̃

Treatment, if the matter is melancholic (cold and dry).

þe matere come of malancoli, þou must take hede to make þe matere neische and moist wip waischingt of a decoccioun of violet & fumi- terre in water, & anoynte it wip oile of violet til þe matere be 32 resolued & þe skyn bicomē neische, & þe pacient schal ete moist

<sup>1</sup> not, erroneously inserted. Lat. Item fit aliter cura tineæ novæ.

<sup>2</sup> *abrotani agrestis*, Wr. Wü., p. 544. 20, *superuude*. Add. 15,236, f. 14 bk.: "*Abrotanum, gallice aueroyn. anglisce suthernewode*." See *Alphita*, p. 1.

<sup>3</sup> Add. 15,236, f. 17 bk.: "*Lapacium acutum. anglisce reddoke*."

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*, fol. 12: "*Artemisia. A. mugwort*."

<sup>6</sup> be, in margin.

<sup>7</sup> crusty, Lat. crustosus.

<sup>8</sup> scabbid, Lat. ulceratus. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 320.

<sup>9</sup> Lat.: in quo dissoluta sit fex vini combusta.



metis, & þou schalt baþe him in swete watir, & þan þou must drie it vp wiþ medicyns þat drien þat ben aforseid /

þis is a medicyn þat is approued of G. & is good for tineam & A general prescription of Galien for skin-diseases.  
 4 vlcera þat ben harde in þe heed, & for pustulis þat ben clepid saphati,<sup>1</sup> & for impetiginem & morpheam,<sup>2</sup> & for fallyngt awei of heeris, & for al maner scabbe. R̄, gallarum .3 iij., seminis secute R̄  
 3 .ij., baurac .3 j. & þe iij part of [3 i],<sup>3</sup> sulphuris vif 3 ij. & ð.,  
 8 arsenec rubij, aristologie rotunde ana 3 ij, salis armoniaci, fuliginis, amigdalarum <sup>4</sup>amarum, colloquintide, eris vsti, venarum [4 ff. 112]  
 citrinarum, & in stide þerof þou miȝt take lumbricos terrestres brent,  
 litargirij, capparum foliorum, fice sicce,<sup>5</sup> radices canne siccarum, flos  
 12 eris, alumnis sicci, rosarum, mirre, aloes, olibani ana 3 ð., picis  
 liquide, foliorum oliue, vellis vaccini, ana .3 j., grinde hem sutilly &  
 tempere hem wiþ eysel, & sette hem in þe sunne in a vessel of glas,  
 ouþer in a vessel of erþe glasid<sup>6</sup> wiþinne, & meue hem wel in þe  
 16 sunne, til it bicome al an oynement, & herwiþ anoynte his heed, til  
 it be perfittly hool, saue þou muste take kepe of þingis þat ben  
 aforseid þat þe humouris be purgid /

### Of þe fallynge of heeris //

20 **C**Aluiciem is a fallyngt away of a mannis heeris tofore, & is as  
 miche to seie as ballid. & oon cause herof [is]<sup>8</sup> kindly as Baldness is caused by old age,  
 whanne a man is oold for to be ballid, & oon þerof is vnkyndly,  
 as whanne a mannis heeris falliþ awei for sijknes as it is aforseid & by sickness,  
 24 remedijs þerfore in þe nexte chapter here tofore. & if þis cause  
 come for elde þanne it is incurable // ¶ Also ballidnesse <sup>9</sup>comeþ of [9 ff. 112, bk.]  
 humouris rotid þat ben vndir þe skyn as it is in allopucia & tineam, by a corruption of the humours.  
 & þe cure herof is bi avoidyngt of humouris as it is aforseid.<sup>10</sup> ¶ þe

<sup>1</sup> *Saphati*, Hebr. Sapahath.—Philipps. "Saphatum, a dry Scurf in the head."

<sup>2</sup> *morphea*, a skin-disease. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 243, s. v. Morfew.

<sup>3</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 46 b.: et quartam partem 3 i<sup>ra</sup>.

<sup>5</sup> *fice sicce*, Lat. fisti sicce. Halle Table, p. 87: "Fistakia so named bothe in Greeke and Latine, and vulgarly Fistici, are the frutes of a tree." Fisti-nut, from fistick-nut.

<sup>6</sup> *glasid*, vitreatus.

<sup>7</sup> This paragraph is omitted in the printed editions of Lanfranc's Surgery and in Add. 26,106. It is preserved in Roy. MS. 12. C. XIV, fol. 32, where it forms part of cap. II, but with a separate heading. The translator took it for cap. III, but did not alter the following chapter-numbers. <sup>8</sup> *is*, wanting.

<sup>10</sup> De propr. rer., lib. V., cap. 66, Add. 27,944, fol. 67: "*Ballidnes is priuacioun and defaute of heer, and comeþ of defeaute of moist fumosite in þe formere partye of þe heed; so seiþ constantyn. . . . Ofte þe heer of men*



cause whi þat makip a man ballid ben þese / as whanne þe skyn  
 recchiþ along<sup>t</sup>, & if his bodi be drie & þinne & his skyn hoot<sup>t</sup>, þan  
 R<sup>7</sup> þou must do þis cure / Take olium mirtinum & olium de mastice  
 ouþer olium ladani, & anointe þerwith his heed. & if þe tyme of<sup>t</sup> 4  
 þe 3eer be coold, þou muste anointe him wiþ olium de spica //

Treatment, if  
 the patient is  
 young, ¶ Whanne a mannes heeris fallip awei so in vnkyndeli tyme, as þe  
 while he is 3ong<sup>t</sup>, þan make him a baþ & anoynte him wiþ camo-  
 mille & wiþ bittir<sup>1</sup> almondis & wiþ oile maad þerof<sup>t</sup> // If a man 8  
 bicome ballid for cause þat his skyn is to neische, þese ben þe  
 signys þerof<sup>t</sup> as whanne a man haþ fewe heeris & sotil / þanne take  
 olium mirtinum & olium masticis wiþ oilio laurino, & herwith anointe  
 his heed, whanne hise heeris ben schauen awei // ¶ Item, take 12  
 capilli veneris, ladani ana, grinde hem & medle hem with wijn &  
 [2 lf. 113] with olio mirtino / If a mannes heed be waischen<sup>2</sup> herwiþ, it wole  
 make hise heeris longe & make hem sitte faste / Also take water  
 þat bletis ben soden yn & a litil mustard, & þerwiþ waische hise 16  
 heeris & after anointe him wiþ oile // ¶ Also to make heeris þat þe  
 falle not / take leuys of mirte & sette hem in water til þe watir  
 þerof<sup>t</sup> bicome al troublly þan take li .j. of þe water & olium infantini  
 or of oile þat is vnripe & medle hem togidere. & þan seþe hem til 20  
 þe water waaste awei, & þanne caste þerto canel & ladanum grounden  
 & resolved in wijn, & make herof an oynement & anointe herwiþ þe  
 rotis of þe heeris /

An ointment  
 for preserv-  
 ing the hair  
 from falling  
 off.

Of litil pustulis þat wexip in a mannes face or in 24  
 children hedis /<sup>3</sup>

¶ iij<sup>o</sup>. c<sup>o</sup> / Saphati ben litil pustule þat wexip in a mannes heed & in  
 Saphati, a  
 scab on the  
 head and face. children forhedis & her face, & principali in wommens facis, &  
 also in mennys facis þat ben moist, & makip sumtyme crustis / For 28  
 to cure þis passioun, here þou schalt haue a good medicyn of .G.  
 Treatment of  
 Galien. þat is aforseid of aischis of cucurbite & argilla // ¶ Children moun  
 be holpen þerof<sup>t</sup> if her norice absteyne hir fro salt metis & sharpe  
 & fro strong<sup>t</sup> wijn<sup>4</sup>, & þe child schal be bapid in a decoccioun of 32

þat ofte seruen venus fallip and bredip ballidnes litil & litil. . . . And if a  
 man is withoute hed-her, he is i-holde þe more vnhest.

<sup>1</sup> MS. butir. MS. 12. C. XIV, fol. 32 bk.: cum amigdalidis amaris.

<sup>3</sup> Lat., Add. 26,106, fol. 47: "pustule parue que nascuntur in capite fronte et facie puerorum."

<sup>4</sup> Gul. de Salic., lib. I., cap. 2, Sl. 6, fol. 55 b.: "This seknesse is not bred but in children, when þei souken, and it ys clepid a crost, and it ys mad in hem in þe forhed and in þe hede. . . . The cure of it ys þat euery



camomile <sup>1</sup> & rosis & fenigreci, & þou schalt<sup>t</sup> anointe þe place wiþ <sup>[<sup>1</sup> lf. 113, bk.]</sup>  
 oile of camomille hoot // ¶ Furfurea ben a maner of squamis .i. <sup>Furfures</sup>  
 schellis þat<sup>t</sup> comeþ of brennyng<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> is in þe skyn ; if þei be frotid <sup>(dandriff).</sup>  
 4 wel wiþ a manys nailis, þei wolen falle awei, & sumtyme þei ben liȝt<sup>t</sup>  
 & wolen falle awei wiþ þe heeris, whanne þei ben schauē & wiþ  
 waischingis of hoot water / If þis suffise not<sup>t</sup> þerfore, anoynte his <sup>Ointment.</sup>  
 heed with an oynement<sup>t</sup> maad of farina ciceris & þe seed of malowe  
 8 uisci temperid with vinegre / If it be not remeued herwiþ, anoynte  
 him wiþ þis oynement<sup>t</sup> // Take farine ciceris .ȝ. iiij, farine fenigreci, <sup>R</sup>  
 sulphuris viui, nitri croci,<sup>2</sup> sinapis ana .ȝ. .iiij., tempere hem wiþ  
 vinegre and watir /

12 Of cloop<sup>3</sup> þat is clepid fraclis or goute roset.

**P**Annus is a superfluite þat falliþ in a wommans face, & comeþ <sup>iiij<sup>o</sup>. co.</sup>  
 ofte in childberyng<sup>t</sup>, & also whanne hir menstrie is wiþholde, <sup>Pannus, a</sup>  
 & is as it were a maner ledi<sup>4</sup> colour or purpur, & sumtyme it is <sup>skin-disease</sup>  
 16 medlid myche wiþ blak, & it comeþ alwei of malancolious matere. <sup>on the face,</sup>  
 & þou schalt<sup>t</sup> first purge þe matere with a decoccioun of epithimi & <sup>which affects</sup>  
 gotis whey, & þou schalt<sup>t</sup> make þat<sup>t</sup> <sup>5</sup>he leue metis þat<sup>t</sup> engendriþ <sup>women, when</sup>  
 malancoly, & þanne take seed of raphani in a newe linnen cloop, <sup>they are with</sup>  
 20 bittir almoundis, mele of benis, seed of melonum & curcubite, <sup>child.</sup>  
 stampe hem alle togidere & tempere hem wiþ water & dissolue a lital <sup>Apply a</sup>  
 safron & hony & make þerof an oynement<sup>t</sup>, & herwiþ þou schalt<sup>t</sup> <sup>purging</sup>  
 anoynte hir face at euen late, & amorowe þou schalt<sup>t</sup> waische hir <sup>medicine,</sup>  
 24 face with a colature of bran // ¶ If it so be þat<sup>t</sup> þis passioun be <sup>[<sup>5</sup> lf. 114]</sup>  
 oold, þanne þow schalt<sup>t</sup> make a stronger oynement<sup>t</sup> wiþ þe same  
 oynement<sup>t</sup>, & do þerto eruca þe seed þerof, & argentum viuum  
 slayn<sup>6</sup> wiþ spotil, & pepir & mirre,<sup>7</sup> & tempere hem wiþ oximel, &  
 28 sumtyme it is nede to sette vpon þe place watir lechis. & after <sup>and leeches.</sup>  
 þat<sup>t</sup> anoynte it wiþ þe poudre of catapucie<sup>8</sup> & staphisagre temperid

day þe place most be anointed with oyle of camomille hoot. And þe noryse  
 absteine hyre fro flesses, and fro chese, and fro sharp metis."

<sup>2</sup> croci, for crossi.

<sup>3</sup> cloop, translated from Pannus. Lat. : De pannis, cossis et gutta rosacea et de lentiginibus et cicatricibus vulnerum.

<sup>4</sup> ledi, from "lead." Lat. lividus.

<sup>6</sup> slay, Lat. extinguerē, precipitate. Comp. H. G. Niederschlag.

<sup>7</sup> mirre, mistaken from Lat. nitro.

<sup>8</sup> catapucie. Add. 15,236, fol. 74 bk. : "Catapucia, semen spurge, catapuste, spurge sed." The original meaning "a medicinal preparation" is shown in Aelfr. Gloss. : "Catapodia, a swylfende drenc." Compare N. E. D. s. v. catapuce.



Auicē.  
R̃  
vnguntum  
amigdala-  
rum.

[1 lf. 114, bk.]

Cossi are  
small pus-  
tules on the  
face.

dubium

R̃

Gutta rosacea  
changes the  
colour of a  
man's face.

A purging  
medicine.

[5 lf. 115]

with hony // ¶ Also a medicyn of A. for þis passioun / Take argenti  
viui .3 j. g<sup>m</sup> amigdalorum 3 ij. medle hem togidere & stampe hem  
til þou se noþing<sup>1</sup> of þe quik siluer, & do þerto seed of melonis  
maad clene .3 iij., stampe alle þese togidere & anoynte herwiþ hir 4  
face aneue & amorowe ; waische hir face wiþ watir <sup>1</sup>þat violet hap  
leye þeron / Lentigines<sup>2</sup> ben purgid wiþ a strong<sup>3</sup> purgacioun & wiþ  
a strong<sup>4</sup> medicyn þat ben forseid for pannum //

¶ Cossi<sup>3</sup> ben litil pustulis & harde þat ben engendrid in þe face, 8  
& principali aboute þe [nose],<sup>4</sup> & þei makip þe place reed, & þefore  
þis medicyn is good. R̃, sulphuris viui .3 j, & make it to sutil  
poudre, & leie it in a pound of watir of ro. in a glasen vessel, &  
stoppe wel the mouþ þerof, & hange it in þe sunne in þe monþe of 12  
Iulij & august bi xv. daies, & euery dai þou schalt meue þe vessel, &  
with þis watir þou schalt anoynte his face þere þat þe passioun is //

¶ Gutta rosacea,<sup>5</sup> þat is a passioun þat turneþ þe skyn of a  
mannys face out of his propur colour & makip þe face reed. & þis 16  
passioun comeþ of humouris brent & abidiþ in þe skyn, & herfore  
is a good purgacioun þat purgip salt humouris. & þis is þe medicyn /  
R̃, litargiri, auripigmenti, sulphuris viui, viridis eris ana<sup>6</sup> & poudre of  
litil meis<sup>7</sup> brent, & of þis poudre half so miche as of alle þe opere. 20  
& þis schal be poudrid wiþ .ij. partis of trifolij<sup>8</sup> & þe .iiij. part of  
swynys grese freisch, & make of alle þese an oynement. & on euen  
anoynte herwiþ his face, & amorowe waische his face wiþ a decoc-  
cioun of semina frigidorum<sup>9</sup> & wiþ a litil campher, & þan make his 24  
face clene, & þan anoynte his face wiþ olio tartarino,<sup>10</sup> & al þe

<sup>2</sup> "Lentigo, a Pimple, or Freckle; a small red Spot in the Face, or other Part, resembling a Lentil."—Phillips.

<sup>3</sup> Gulielm. de Salic., lib. I., cap. 63, Sl. 277, fol. 12, mentions as skin-diseases: þe ampte, þe teter and þe ryngworm. Dunglison identifies the ringworm with cossi, deriving it from Lat. cossis, or cossus, m., a worm that breeds in wood. The description given by Gul. de Sal. differs entirely from Lanfranc's description of cossi.

<sup>4</sup> nose, omitted in MS., but space left free. Dubium in margin refers to it. Lat. circa nasum.

<sup>5</sup> De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 65, Add. 27,944, fol. 100 b.: "And nurphea is al in þe skynne, & lepra in þe fleische & in þe skynne; þis infectionn is but litil diuers from infeccioun þat hatte gutta rosea, þat infectip þe face wiþ smale pymples, and comeþ of a gleymy & a MS. & bloody & colerik humours, þat ben bytwene felle and fleische." Sl. 563, fol. 17 b.: "þe rose goute." Gutta rosacea vel rosea, Rosy Drop or Whelk. (Dunglison.)

<sup>6</sup> The dose is omitted, so it is in Add. 16,106, fol. 47 b. Prints: unc. 1.

<sup>7</sup> meis, "mice." Lat. pulveris parvorum suricum. meis is probably an error for mīs.

<sup>8</sup> MS. fin.

<sup>10</sup> The translator has omitted the prescription of oleum tartarinum, given



remenaunt<sup>t</sup> herof<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> do of<sup>t</sup> þis cure & fulfille wiþ medicyns  
as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid / *ad pannum* /

¶ Cicatrices vulnerum ben remeued wiþ litargirum nutricum, & To remove  
4 is good for manie maner þingis, for it<sup>t</sup> doiþ awei wennys, and it<sup>t</sup> doiþ the scars of  
awei scharpnes of þe browis & gendriþ good fleisch in woundis & wounds.  
fretiþ awei wickid fleisch, & is maad in þis maner / Take litarge & R̄  
grinde it<sup>t</sup> sotilli in a mortar & caste þerto a litil vinegre & þanne  
8 a litil oile of ro., & þus þou schalt<sup>t</sup> do til it<sup>t</sup> come to a perfit  
oynement<sup>t</sup> /<sup>1</sup>

### Of icchingē & smertynge<sup>2</sup> and scabbe.

¶ Cap<sup>o</sup>. v<sup>o</sup>.  
pruritus

12 I Cchingē & scabbe comeþ of salt<sup>t</sup> humouris, & a mannys kynde Itch and  
hap abhominacioun þerof<sup>t</sup>, & putteþ<sup>3</sup> hem out<sup>t</sup> of þe skyn,<sup>4</sup> & scabs arise  
þis falliþ ofte of salt<sup>t</sup> metis & scharpe metis & of <sup>5</sup>wijn þat<sup>t</sup> from acid  
is strong<sup>t</sup>; & it<sup>t</sup> falliþ ofte to hem þat<sup>t</sup> wakiþ & traueiliþ & [s lf. 115, bk.]  
vsiþ no baping<sup>t</sup> & weriþ no lynnē cloþis, & þis is oon of þe and are  
16 siknes þat<sup>t</sup> is contagious, for o man mai take it<sup>t</sup> of anoþer / þis maner caused by  
sijknesse comeþ sumtyme of blood, sumtyme of fleume, sumtyme of salt meat,  
colre, sumtyme of malancolie / Also scabbe, sum is drie & summe strong wine,  
is wet<sup>t</sup> / If it<sup>t</sup> be drie, it<sup>t</sup> schal propirli be clepid icche / And if it be and filth.  
20 moist<sup>t</sup>, it<sup>t</sup> schal be clepid scabbe / To þe cure herof<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> avoide They are  
salt<sup>t</sup> fleume, þou schalt<sup>t</sup> defie þe matere wiþ þis sirup / R̄, abstinthij, contagious.  
R

Dry scab is  
called itch.  
Treatment of  
scabs.

in the Lat. Original. It is written by a later hand on the margin of lf. 114, bk.: "*oylle off tarter. R, tarter off whyt wyn made in powder temperd w<sup>t</sup> renygre as past, bynde yt in a clothe & put yt under embers, to yt be welle brent; þan put yt in a ston pot with an holle benethe. & þis ys oylle off tarter.*"

Two prescriptions, which are not in the Lat. Original, are added on the same place:

"*aqua pro guta rosacha: R, lytargiri, argenty viui ana ʒ iiij, acety alby li. i, boyll yt to conschoun<sup>a</sup> in an erthen veselle, let stande & clere & keep yt.*"

"*R. salt ar. 3 i, saltpeter 3 i, salt comun 3 i, clere water ʒ iiij, mixte togeder with y<sup>e</sup> sexte part off a 3 off camffer, let colle, put thes ij waters togeder.*"

<sup>1</sup> The following prescription, translated from the Lat. Original, is written by a later hand on the margin of leaf 115: "*Item gos gres & dow & diaculum, alle sycatryues it rectifyes.*"

<sup>2</sup> *smertyng*, Lat. *pruritus*.—*Prurigo*, *emertung*, Wr. W., 114. 3.—*emertung*, is probably a mistake for *smertung*, to O.E. *smeortan*. <sup>3</sup> MS. *putte*.

<sup>4</sup> De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 62, Add. 27,944, fol. 99: "*Schabbe is corrupcioun of þe skynne, & comeþ of corrupt humours þat beþ bytwene felle and fleissche, & hurtiþ & greueþ & defouliþ þe body. For as Constantine seiþ, kynde puttiþ out euēl humours to þe vttir parties of þe body to clense and to purge þe inner parties.*"

<sup>a</sup> consumption.



abrotani, cuscute, fumus terre, ana m .j., & take xx. damascenes & xij. figis, & vj. datis, sene 3 j, thimi, epithimi .3 ß., seþe hem wel in li iij of water & li j. of vinegre til þei come to li j. & dī. cole hem & do þerto iuys of fumi terre & sugur li .j. & ß, & make þerof 4  
 R þese pelottes, R7, aloes optimi, cortices mirabolani, citrini, ana .3 j stampe hem & tempere hem with iuys maad of fumi terre, til þei be þicke as it were hony, & lete it drie til þer mai be maad gobetis 8  
 [1 f. 116] þerof & maad þerof pelottis, & herof þou schalt 3eue þe <sup>1</sup>wei3te of ij. 3. at oonys, & þis medycyne mai be rehersed ofte. ¶ Also blood leting<sup>r</sup> is good þerfore, if oþere particlis acordiþ þerfore // ¶ Also gotis whey is good þerfore, in which be leid mirabolani wiþ sugre, & ofte 12  
 R take, for þat clensiþ miche, & is maad in þis maner / In li .j of gotis whey leie 3 j. of mirabolani citrini powdrid an eue, on þe morowe heete hem & cole hem & do þerto 3 .j of sugre ro. // ¶ If it be drie  
 Treatment of dry scab. scabbe, hoot watir is good for to baþe him ynne, in which is soden 16  
 fumi terre & enula, lappacij acuti, & in þe baþ anoynte him with oile of ro. & iuys of ache & vinegre, & herwith his bodi schal be  
 An ointment made by Rasis. wel frotid in þe baþ ouþer in a stewe // ¶ Also an oymen<sup>t</sup> þat rasis  
 R made for þe scabbe þat is drie / R7 salis communis, salis gemme, 20  
 ellebori, nigri costi, 3 .j., picis liquide 3 vj., olium violarum & aceti, & herof make an oynement / & anoynte herwiþ in his stewe & frote him wel, & aftir lete him be þerinne by an hour, & aftir baþe him in a decoccioun of bran & lappacij acuti, enule campane<sup>2</sup> & arthe- 24  
 de scabi humida. misie // ¶ If þe scabbe be moist / þan make an oynement of rasis /  
 R R7, argenti viui extincti, <sup>3</sup>& in þis maner þou schalt sle<sup>4</sup> it: leie it  
 [3 lf. 116, bk.] in a peuter disch & spete þeron, & frote it wiþ mannes heeris, & do  
 eleborus nygr. þerto: whit litarge, elleborum nigrum, alumen<sup>5</sup> vetus, oleandrum ana, 28  
 grynde alle þese togidere & tempere hem with vinegre,<sup>6</sup> & herwiþ al his bodi schal be anoyntid at euen, & at morowe he schal be stewid,<sup>7</sup> and whanne he swetiþ his bodi schal be frotid wiþ vinegre // ¶ Also

<sup>2</sup> MS. *compare*.<sup>4</sup> *sle* = slay. See p. 189, Note 6.<sup>5</sup> *alumen*, on margin.<sup>6</sup> The following passage omitted by the translator is written on the bottom of lf. 116, bk., by a later hand: "*& olio communi miscantur de quo totum corpus unguatur in cero, mane intret stupyam et cum sudaueret ffricet corpus cum usne et aceto. vsne i. mosse off the oke.*"*usne*, Arab *ouchna*. See *Littre-Devic*.—"Usnea, a kind of green Moss which grows upon Humane Sculls that have been lying in the open Air for some years, and which is used in Physick."—Phillips.<sup>7</sup> *he schal be stewid*, Lat. *intret stupham*. See Skeat, *Etym. Dict.*, s. v. *stew*.



azen scabbe & icching<sup>t</sup>, first<sup>t</sup> lete þe pacient<sup>t</sup> blood, & make him þis  
 oynement<sup>t</sup> / R̄, sulphuris viui & t̄m<sup>1</sup> de sale & tartaro, grinde hem R  
 wel togidere til it<sup>t</sup> bicomē in þe maner of<sup>t</sup> an oynement<sup>t</sup>, & wiþ þis  
 4 oynement<sup>t</sup> anoynte þe pacient<sup>t</sup>, & þis wole delyuere him fro icching<sup>t</sup> //  
 ¶ Also if<sup>t</sup> þe pacient<sup>t</sup> haue greet<sup>t</sup> brennyng<sup>t</sup> & greet<sup>t</sup> icching<sup>t</sup>, þanne  
 anoynte al his bodi wiþ oile of<sup>t</sup> ro. þat<sup>t</sup> ben good, & lete him reste  
 so .vij. daies // ¶ Also for þe same cause / R̄ succus affodillorum & R  
 8 distempere it<sup>t</sup> wiþ whit<sup>t</sup> hony & anoynte him herwith, whanne he  
 goiþ out<sup>t</sup> of his stewe; for þis oynement<sup>t</sup> doiþ away filþe of<sup>t</sup> þe skyn  
 and clensip myche /

### Of morphue<sup>2</sup> and impetigine<sup>3</sup> //

12 <sup>4</sup>NOW we han medycyns drawen of .ij. wellis & of manie [4 ff. 117]  
 maistris, þat<sup>t</sup> is to wite: of Salerne, & of Costantyn, & ¶ vj<sup>o</sup>. c<sup>o</sup>  
 Platearij, & of Iohannes de sancto Paulo & of opere manie auctouris, The school of  
 as of Ipocras, Galien, & Serapion, & Isaac, & Iohanne[s] Mesue, and the Arab  
 16 Auicen / Hali þe abbot<sup>t</sup>, & Rasis, & of opere manie auctouris / Alle physicians  
 þese auctouris speciali zeue it<sup>t</sup> us, saue þei acorden not<sup>t</sup> in names / differ as to  
 the names of  
 the diseases.  
 5 Forwhi impetigo, serpigo & morphea ben seid in salerne diuers  
 names, for þat<sup>t</sup> men of salerne clepen albam & arabes clepen im-  
 20 petigo morphea / & men of salerne clepen morpheam / men in  
 arabie clepen it<sup>t</sup> albarec /<sup>5</sup> & þerfore I wole in þis book teche þe

<sup>1</sup> MS. t̄m, tantum. This prescription is neither in the prints nor in Add. 26,106, but preserved in Roy. MS. 12 C XIV, fol. 33 b.

<sup>2</sup> *morphue*. See p. 187, Note 2. N.E. morphew, Med. L. morphea, Fr. morphée, Ital. morfea, is probably the Latinized form of an Arab. past part. marfu, connected with marf, 'thin.' See *Lane Lex.*, p. 1132.

The derivation given by Tommas: *μορφή*, is unsatisfactory. Phillips: "Morphew, a kind of white Scurf upon the Body, from the French Word *Mort-feu*, i. e. dead Fire; because it looks like the white Sparks that fall from a Brand extinguished."

<sup>3</sup> De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 63, Add. 27,944, fol. 99: "And þis eucl hatte impetigo, for it lettip and greueþ þe skyn and þe fleissch, namliche with tikelingē and icchingē. Also þis eucl hatte serpigo, as it were a crepinge eucl, for it crepiþ into þe skynne al aboute as it were a serpent opir an addre, & infectiþ þe skynne and defouleþ it wiþ smale skales aftir cracchingē and clawinge."

Lib. VII., cap. 65, fol. 100: "Morphea is speckes in þe skynne, and comēþ of corrupcioun of mete and drinke, and what is lepre in þe fleische is morphea in þe skynne. Also som morphea is white & comēþ of fleume, & som is blak & comēþ of malencolia, & som is red & comēþ of colera opir of blood."

<sup>5-5</sup> The passage is corrupt. Lat.: Nam serpigo, impetigo, morphea sumuntur aliter apud salernitanos aliter apud arabes. Quod enim salernitani vocant  
 SURGERY. O



Serpigo is an acidity of the skin.

Treatment:

[1 ff. 117, bk.]

R

Impetigo, a disease, where the skin gets white.

Morphea, a kind of leprosy confined to the skin.

Albaras.

Nota

[7 ff. 118]

Albaras is a local disease of the flesh and the skin.

difference of euery of hem, & after þat þe curis of hem / & I seie þat serpigo is a scharpnes of a mannes skyn, & it is clepid serpigo, for it passip fro place to place. þou schalt cure it wiþ gumme of cheritrees distemperid wiþ vinegre, ouþer gumme of 4 pluntre & anoynte wiþ buttir & turbentyne. & þis oynement is good þerfore / Take gres <sup>1</sup> of a doke clene purid, ysopi humide, olium ro., 3elow wex, terbentyne, mussilaginis seminis citoniorum<sup>2</sup> ana, make of alle þese an oynement, & anoynte him þerwith amorowe, 8 & þanne waische him in watir þat þer hap leie þeron semen melonum & violet. & be he ofte bapid wiþ sich swete water. & good swete mete is good for hem þat engendriþ good humouris //

¶ Impetigo is anoþer maner passioun, as whanne a mannys 12 skyn chaungip in oþer colour þan it schulde, & propirli into whit colour & wiþouten ony harmyng of þe skyn. & þer is no þing þeron þat harmeþ a man, saue oonly þe colour of þe skyn chaungip oþir þan it schulde be // <sup>3</sup> 16

¶ Morphea is a passioun þat þe skyn is out of his propir colour & þe skyn is harmed þerbi. & morphea is a spice of lepre þat sitt in þe skyn; for riht as lepre sittip in þe fleisch, in þe same maner riht so morphea sittip in þe skyn. <sup>4</sup> 20

¶ Albaras.<sup>5</sup> Not oonly þe skyn, saue þe fleisch is harmed þerbi / þis is þe difference of albaras & morphea / In morphea þe vertu of expulcion<sup>6</sup> is strong / & þe mater <sup>7</sup> þerof is but litil, & þerfore it is al putt into þe skyn / In albaras þe vertu of expulcion is but feble & 24 þe matere is corrupt, & þerfor it is boþe in þe fleisch & in þe skyn, & þer is but litil difference bitwixe albaras & lepre, saue albaras abidiþ alwei in oon place, & lepre goip into al þe bodi / In boþe þese causis it is nede for to avoide humouris þat ben in þe cause<sup>8</sup>, 28

serpiginem, arabes vocant alunda. Et impetigo apud arabes est morphea, et apud salernitanos aliter et aliter apud nos. Quod autem Salernitani vocant morpheam, arabes vocant albaras.

<sup>2</sup> *Citonia* = Cydonia, quince.

<sup>3</sup> Lat. Add. 16,106, fol. 48 bk. : et non peccat ibi nisi color.

<sup>4</sup> Not in the Lat. Origin.

<sup>5</sup> *Albaras*, Arab. al-baras, leprosy. Compare *Avicenna*, lib. 4, fen. 7, tract. 3, cap. 9, and ff.

<sup>6</sup> MS. *expulsif*. Lat. : virtus expulsiva.

<sup>8</sup> *humouris þat ben in þe cause*. Lat. : Conveniunt in hoc quod omnis humoris indigent euacuatione peccantis. *N. E. Dict.* s. v. cause, q. b. gives references for *to be in cause* : to be to blame.—*Littre Dict.* (14th cent.) ils en sont en cause.—Dufr. gives several references for *in causa esse* : to be ill, from *Causa*, morbus.



- saue þat oon mote haue stronger medicyns þan þat oþer. ¶ Impe-  
 tigo muste haue abstynence fro þingis þat engendriþ fleume, & he  
 muste haue a purgacioun for to purge fleume / Anoynte þe place  
 4 wiþ oile of whete þat is maad in þis maner / Take whete & leie  
 bitwixe two platis of iren hoot / & presse hem togidere & þerof  
 wole bicomme oile // ¶ Also in anoþer maner / Take .ij. vessels of  
 erþe, so þat þe moup of þe oon vessel go to þe moup of þe toþer  
 8 vessel, & þat oon vessel schal stonde in þe erþe, & in þe vessel  
 aboue þou schalt do þi whete, & þou schalt stoppe þe moup of þe  
 vessel þat is aboue þat þe whete is ynne with a plate of bras ouþer  
 of iren þat is bettere, <sup>1</sup>& þe plate schal be ful of smale holis. & [¶ If. 118, bk.]  
 12 þan þe moup of þis pott schal be ioyned to þe moup of þe pott þat  
 is in þe erþe with good lute, þat þere mowe noon air out þerof. &  
 þan make a fier aboute þe pott þat is aboue þe erþe, & þere wole  
 distille oile into þe pott þat is bineþe in þe erþe, & wiþ þis oile þou  
 16 schalt anoynte þe place ofte, & frote harde. & if þis suffise not,  
 þanne þou schalt sette vpon þe place watir lechis ofte, for to do  
 away þe fleumatik blood / If þis suffise not, leie þervpon a mun-  
 dicatif of cantarides stampid wiþ whete, til þe place schyne<sup>2</sup>, &  
 20 þan cure it vp wiþ an oynment of ceruce / Frote him wiþ an oyn-  
 ment maad of armoniac & with þe sournes of citri, & nitro is  
 good þerfore //
- ¶ þe white morphu is curid wiþ purgacioun þat purgiþ roten  
 24 fleume, & wiþ þis special medicyn / R<sup>7</sup>, trifere minorum .3. .iiij.,  
 turbit, pulueris pigre .3. .ij., colloquintide .3. .ij., make herof pelottis  
 wiþ hony, & he schal take þerof .iiij. pelottis euery wike, & eueri  
 dai bitwixe he schal take .3. .ij. of trifere minorum, & he mote  
 28 absteine him fro metis þat engendriþ <sup>3</sup>fleume; & þe place shal be  
 frotid in þe sunne wiþ an oynment of tapsia, & þe seed of raphani,  
 rubie maioris / elleboro nigro & mustard, & distempere hem wiþ  
 vinegre / Also froting wiþ squillis is good þerfore //
- ¶ þe blac morphe is curid wiþ ofte purging of malancoli, wiþ  
 32 gotis whei, & wiþ epithimo, & oþere medicyns þat purgiþ malan-  
 colie, þat be forseid in allopucia; & his dietyng schal be moist, &  
 he schal absteine him fro metis þat engendriþ malancolie, & he  
 36 schal be bapid ofte in swete watir, & he schal be anoyntid & frotid  
 as it is aforseid //
- ¶ Albaras þat is whit is curid wiþ þe same þingis & with

Treatment of  
Impetigo.Purge and  
use an oint-  
ment.

R

R

Oil of wheat  
obtained by  
distillation.

[¶ If. 118, bk.]

Treatment of  
the whyt  
Morphea.

R

[¶ If. 119]

Treatment of  
the black  
morfue.<sup>2</sup> til þe place schyne, donec locus excoriatur.



Treatment of  
white  
Albaras stronger medicyns þat<sup>t</sup> ben aforseid in þe cure of þe white morphu,  
& miche castyng<sup>t</sup> is good for hem, & þou schalt<sup>t</sup> frote wel þe place  
with squillis in a stewe, & after þat<sup>t</sup> sprynge þeron poudre maad of  
tapsia, & staphisagre, & þe wombis of cantarides, & seed of eruce, 4  
& tordis of a culuere, & þou schalt<sup>t</sup> anoynte him wiþ blood of a  
blac serpent, for þat<sup>t</sup> is bi prop<sup>r</sup>te good þerfore /

Black  
Albaras  
is incurable,  
[1 lf. 119, bk.]  
the attendant  
discoloration  
of the skin  
may be cured.

Albaras þat<sup>t</sup> is blak is incurable, for it<sup>t</sup> is a particuler lepre, &  
but<sup>t</sup> <sup>1</sup>if it<sup>t</sup> be so þat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> mowe be take awei wiþ alle rootis, it<sup>t</sup> schal 8  
neuere be curid; saue þe colour of his skyn mai be amendid / R̄,  
aloxanti, þat<sup>t</sup> is þe flour of þe wiþi,<sup>2</sup> mirram, feces of wijn brent,  
reed cley, & alyme, poudre alle þese, & herwiþ frote þe place til þe  
patient<sup>t</sup> fele prickyng<sup>t</sup> & brennyng<sup>t</sup>. þis wole deye þe skyn for 12  
manie daies, & whanne þis failiþ reherse it<sup>t</sup> azen.

### // Of lepre and of þe domys of lepre<sup>3</sup> //

¶ vij<sup>o</sup>. c<sup>o</sup>  
Leprosy  
arises from  
the corrup-  
tion of the  
melancholic  
humours and  
affects the  
whole body.

[7 lf. 120]

**L**ep<sup>r</sup>a<sup>4</sup> is a foul sijknes þat<sup>t</sup> cometh of malancolie corrupt<sup>t</sup>, ouþir  
of humouris þat<sup>t</sup> ben brouzt<sup>t</sup> to þe forme of malancolye<sup>5</sup> 16  
corrupt. & it<sup>t</sup> goiþ into al þe bodi, riȝt<sup>t</sup> as a cancre is in oon lyme  
of a mannes bodi / For whanne malancolie multiplieth<sup>6</sup>, & a mannes  
guttis ben not<sup>t</sup> strong<sup>t</sup> for to putte it<sup>t</sup> out<sup>t</sup>, & þe weies bitwixe þe  
splene ben stoppid & þe poris of þe skyn closid, þan malancolious 20  
blood wole rote wiþinne, & rotiþ complexiouns of þe lymes. & þe  
bigynnyng<sup>t</sup> of þe mater myȝte be of blood ouþir of fleume, colre,  
ouþer of malancolie, neþeles whanne þe mater is fulfild <sup>7</sup>it<sup>t</sup> is malan-  
colie corrupt. & þis is oon of the syknessis þat<sup>t</sup> ben contagious / 24  
¶ In þis place I wole sette curis of lepre þat<sup>t</sup> ben profitable for a  
cirurgian to kunne, & also curis þat<sup>t</sup> cometh ofte to a cirurgian  
handis /

<sup>2</sup> Lat. aloxantum, quod est flos salis. The translator read *salicis* for *salis*.  
*ἀλόσανθον, τὸ*, brine. Matth. Sylv.: "Alosantus i. flos salis et invenitur  
super petras nili fluminis."

<sup>3</sup> Lat. de lepra et indiciis leprosi The translator read *iudiciis*.

<sup>4</sup> Add. 27,944, fol. 99 b.: "*Lep<sup>r</sup>a meselrye is an universal corrupcioun of  
membres & of humours.*" Four different kinds of Leprosy are distinguished,  
"1. the *Élaphantia*; 2. the *Tiria* or *Serpentina*, and haþ þat name of an  
addre þat hatte tyrus, for as an addre leneth liȝtliche his skynne and is skaly, so  
he þat hath þis maner lepra is ofte i-strept and i-hulde, & ful of scales; 3. *alo-  
picia* & *vulpina* foxissch; 4. *leonina*, it fretiþ as a lyon & destroyeth all þe  
membres."

<sup>5</sup> & inserted.

<sup>6</sup> *multiplieth*, Lat. *multiplicatur*.—Multiplie, fructificare, multiplicare.  
*Cathol. Angl.*, p. 246.



Men þat ben leprous,<sup>1</sup> in þe bigynnyng<sup>1</sup> her heeris of her heed  
 falliþ awei, & þe heeris of her browis, & þe heeris of her berd; &  
 her forheed bicometh reed & as it were schynnyng. ¶ Also in  
 4 summe þe face wexiþ reed & swellþ & is sumwhat ledi, & prin-  
 cipali aboute [þe nose]<sup>2</sup> // ¶ Also her vois is rowþ ouþer sumtyme  
 it is wondirly scharp, & þe whit of her iȝen bicometh al deik, & þe  
 heeris goon awei of her browis / Her noseþrillis bicometh smal,  
 8 ouþer wondirly greet, & her noseþrillis ben streit for to drawe yn  
 wijnd, & her nailis bicometh ledi / Also her breeþ wole stynke &  
 her sotes / Also her pisce wole be streit<sup>3</sup> & þei schulen haue greet  
 snesyng<sup>4</sup> / Also þei wilneþ myche to comne<sup>4</sup> wiþ wommen / Also  
 12 þei schulen be heuy, & if her skyn be in þe coold eir, it wole bicometh  
 as it were þe skyn of a gander<sup>5</sup> þat þat hise feperis weren pilid  
 away / Also þese ben priuy þingis: if þou prickist his leg bihynde,  
 he ne schal not fele it / & if þou waisschist hise lymes in watir,  
 16 anoon riȝt it wole drie yn // Also þese signes ben comoun: his  
 yȝen wolen bicometh rounde, & þer wolen wexe pustulis in his tunge,  
 & her nailis wolen bicometh greet, & þer wolen wexe scabbis aboute-  
 forþ. And þe fleisch þat schulde be bitwixe þe þombe & þe nexte  
 20 fyngir þerto schal be wastid away, & if þou prickist him in þe hele  
 he schal not fele it, & if he be lete blood, her blood wole be  
 scharpe & as it were ful of grauel. & if þou waischist her blood,  
 in þe botme þerof wole leue as it were grauel. & þis sijknese aftir  
 24 þe tyme þat it is conformed is incurable, saue in þe firste bigyn-  
 nyng it mai be curid wel //

Signs of  
Leprosy:  
the hair falls  
off,

the face gets  
red and  
swollen,  
the voice gets  
hoarse,

the nostrils  
are dis-  
figured,

the breath is  
foetid,

[<sup>5</sup> If. 120, bk.]

the legs lose  
their feeling,

pustules grow  
on the  
tongue,

the blood is  
sharp and  
leaves a sedi-  
ment like  
sand.

Treatment of  
Leprosy.

[<sup>6</sup> If. 121]

Strong medi-  
cines are  
dangerous.

¶ þe cure of lepre is not sett in þis book, for þis book is of  
 cirurgie, saf þer ben in þis solempne medicyns & apreued for to  
 28 kepe a man, þat þei schulen not wexe, & for to make it priuy, &  
 cauterijs þerfore / For alle þese þingis falliþ for a cirurgian / þis<sup>6</sup> þou  
 schalt knowe: if þe siknes be strong, it is hard for to do ony  
 medicyne þerto; fforwhi, if þe sijknese be strong, þanne he muste  
 32 haue stronge medicyns, & þat were greet perel, & also þe medicyn  
 muste be ofte rehersed.<sup>7</sup> Saue þou schalt chese a liȝt medicyn þat

<sup>1</sup> The symptoms of leprosy are similarly described by Avicenna, lib. IV.,  
 fen. 3, tract. 2, cap. 2.

<sup>2</sup> þe nose, wanting.

<sup>3</sup> her pisce wole be streit, Lat. item accidit eis strictura pectoris.

<sup>4</sup> comne for comune.

<sup>7</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 49 b.: Scias quod in egritudinibus fortibus si fuerint  
 cronice fortes non competunt medicine, nam licet propter egritudinis fortitudi-  
 nem medicina sit nocciua tamen dari non debet, quia medicinam oportet sepius  
 iterari.



Light purg-  
ing medi-  
cines.

[<sup>2</sup> If. 121, bk.]

Give the pa-  
tient nourish-  
ing food.

A preparation  
made from  
the flesh of a  
black snake

is given, until  
the patient  
becomes  
giddy.

Then let him  
lie down and  
give a re-  
viving medi-  
cine in case  
of collapse.

wole falle for to purge þe humour liȝtli // A medicyn maad of gotis  
whey wiþ epithimo, þis medicyn is riȝt & good, for it purgiþ  
malancolie litil & litil, & also a man schal not be greued þerebi //  
Pelottis þat be maad of epithimo þat ben aforseid in þe tretijs of 4  
allopucia ben good herfore, for þin entent schal be oonly for to  
purge malancolie þat is corrupt, & amende his complexioun wiþ  
good dietyng. Blood letyng is not good þerfore, but if þe cauce  
come miche of blood / If his breeþ be streit, þanne it comeþ of þe 8  
veyne þat goiþ to þe herte / Sumtyme it is in þe veyne of þe nose<sup>1</sup> /  
þou schalt ȝeue to men þat ben drie lepre & comeþ myche of colre,  
þou schalt ȝeue him gotis whey ofte for to drynke, & <sup>2</sup>þou schalt, in  
as miche as þou miȝt, make his complexioun moist & baþe him in 12  
tempere baþ & lete him swete þerinne; & þan þou schalt anoynte  
him wiþ oile of violet & oile of cucurbita, & þou schalt ȝeue him  
good metis þat engendriþ good blood, & hese metis & hise drinkis  
schulen be in tempere heete, not to hoot ne to coold // ¶ Summen 16  
curiþ hem wiþ þe fleisch of a blac eddre<sup>3</sup> þat ben in drie lond &  
amongst stones, & þan þei kutten away þe heed & þe tail of þe eddre  
& doiþ awei þe guttis wiþinne / & þan þei doon hem in<sup>4</sup> a vessel of  
erþe wiþ a litil peper & galyngale & salt & vinegre & watir & oile, 20  
& so þei seþe þe eddre til al þe fleisch þerof be dissolued. þanne  
þe broþ herof is ȝeuen to drynke, & þe fleisch for to ete til þe  
patient haue scotomiam<sup>5</sup> & al his bodi to-swolle / Whanne his bodi  
is to-swolle & he haþ had scotomiam, þan leie him in a bed & lete 24  
him ligge; & if þere falle ony þing to him as syncopis, ouþer greet  
cooldnes of hise lymes wiþoutforþ, or if his herte quake, þan ȝeue

<sup>1</sup> Incorrect translation. Add. 26,106, fol. 49 b: "Flebotomia namque non convenit nisi quum seis lepram esse valde sanguineam cum hanelitus strictura tunc fit de uena cordis et de duabus guides timendo suffocationem: alia fit de venis nasi propter palliandum faciei colorem."

<sup>3</sup> De propr. rer., *ibid.* fol. 100: "To hele opir to hide lepra as plato seiþ, best is a rede adder wiþ a white wombe; ȝif þe venym is awaye & þe tail & þe heed i-smyte of, þanne þe body i-sode in leke, ȝif it is ofte i-take & i-ete; in þe same wise wyne in þe whiche it rotieþ, ȝif þe patient drinke ofte þerof, and þis helpiþ in many iueles, as he telleþ of a blind mannes wif þat wolde slee here housbonde, and ȝaf him an addre with garlek in stede of an ele, þat it myȝte slee hym, & he eet it, and aftir þat by moche swete he recovered & had his siȝt goode & clere." The flesh of vipers is commended by Galen for the treatment of elephantiasis. Lib. II., Simpl. de carne viperæ.

<sup>4</sup> in, in margin.

<sup>5</sup> scotomia, σκότωμα, ατος, τό, dizziness. Vigo Interpret.: "They shoulde saye Scotoma, and it is a disease, when darckenes ryseth before the eyes, and when al thinges seme to go rounde about."



him tiriaca maior wiþ a litil musco ouþer hoot' wijn // In þis maner  
 al his <sup>1</sup>fleisch wole pile & alle hise heeris wolen falle awei & newe [1 lf. 122]  
 heeris wolen come vp azen / & þis medicyne schal be rehersed so  
 4 ofte, & kepid wiþ dietyng<sup>t</sup> til he be perfitli hool / Forwhi manie A skilful  
physician  
often cures,  
where a neg-  
ligent one  
fails.  
 men moun be delyuerid of manye greet' sicknessis, if her leche is  
 kunnyng & diligent aboute hem, & bi negligence & defaute of  
 help manie men ben perischid / Cauterijs herfore þou schalt fynde  
 8 ynowe in þe chapiter of cauterijs, & oynementis þat makip clene &  
 soudip, all þese þingis þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie.

¶ Of waastyng off membris and bicomem smal /

12 **A** Mannes lyme bicomem smal wiþ greet' streynyng<sup>t</sup> of ligaturis ¶ viij<sup>o</sup>. c<sup>o</sup> /  
 þat takip awei þe norischyng<sup>t</sup> of þe lyme, or of long' akyng<sup>t</sup> Limbs be-  
come swollen  
after a  
streight  
ligature,  
they become  
larger by  
congestion.  
 of ioynt' þat enfebliþ al þe lyme / þese þingis makip a mannes lymes  
 to bicomem smal // ¶ Also a mannes lymes bicomem greet' ouþer þan  
 þei schulde be,<sup>2</sup> whanne veynes ben feble & matere fallip þerto &  
 16 þe vertu of soudyng<sup>t</sup> failip, & in þis maner þe lyme swellip, & þe  
 mater is fleumatik, & for defaute of heete it turnep not into  
 quittance <sup>3</sup>saue it abidip in þe lyme & swellip þe lyme / [3 lf. 122, bk.]

¶ A lyme þat is bicomem smal, in þis maner þou schalt make it To restore a  
wasting limb  
remove the  
cause of the  
disease,  
 20 greet': if þere be ony þing to take awei þerof as akyng<sup>t</sup> ouþer ony  
 stricture, ouþer ony byndyng<sup>t</sup>, þan remeue away þat first in þe  
 manere as it schal be seid in þe chapiter of ioyntis. Whanne þe  
 akyng<sup>t</sup> is doon awei, þanne waische þe lyme wiþ a decoccioun of apply a wash  
 24 malowis & violet & rotis of bismalue in watir, saue his lyme schal  
 be in þe water no lenger þan it bigynnep for to bicomem reed & sum-  
 what to swelle, & be war þat his lyme be not so longe in þe water  
 til þat he swete, & þan drie his lyme wiþ a linnen cloob & frote it  
 28 a litil wiþ þin hond, & þanne take a litil smal 3erde & bete þe lyme  
 þerwiþ til þou drawe blood þerto, & make a plastre þerto in þis and an adhe-  
sive plaster.  
 maner. R̄, picis naualis, picis grece, resine albe ana, & melte alle R  
 þese in a panne. & whanne þei ben molten cole hem þoruþ a cloob  
 32 into coold water, & þanne anoynte þin hondis with oile & þan take  
 it vp of þe watir & tempere it togidere & make þerof gobetis &  
 kepe hem for þin vss<sup>4</sup>, herof þou schalt plane vpon <sup>5</sup>a leþer, & [5 lf. 123]  
 leie it to þe lyme þat is forseid, & so lete it ligge adai, & aneuen

<sup>2</sup> Lat. ingrossatur etiam membrum aliquod ultra debitum. Compare þe  
 colour . . . chaungip opir þan it schulde be, p. 194, Note 3.

<sup>4</sup> vss.



There is no perfect cure in case of an old dislocation.

If the swelling of a limb is caused by the phlegm,

use a purging medicine,

a bandage and compresses, soaked in lye,

R

[1 ff. 123, bk.]

or in a solution of saltpetre,

R

or bruise lily-leaves, and apply them.

If the swelling arises from melancholic blood, purge and use a softening ointment.

[2 ff. 124]

drawe it away, & so lete þe lyme be til amorowe, & þanne reherse þe waischinge þat is forseid & þe froting & þe beting. þis wiþouten ony drede wole bringe [þe lyme] azen to his greetnes as it schulde be, but if þe lyme be out of ioynct & haue be longe tyme, þan it 4 wole be hard, þan it is yuel to make þe lyme greet azen as it schulde. & þou3 it mowe not be maad greet as it schulde be, neþeles bi þis maner it may be myche amendid //

¶ If a mannes lyme is gretter þan it schulde be, if þe cause 8 þerof be of fleume þat þou mi3t knowe bi neischenes of þe lyme, for if þou þriste yn þi fyngir, þer wol leue a pitt þerafter, it may be brou3t azen to greetnes þat it schulde be, if it be purgid ofte wiþ a medicyn þat is clepid trociscus de turbit þat is aforseid, & þe pacient 12 schal kepe him fro alle metis þat engendriþ fleume, & he schal be war of greet replecioun of metis & drinkis, & þan þou schalt cure him wiþ medicyns þat schulen be seid in þe chapiter of apostemes of fleume / Take lye maad <sup>1</sup> of aischis of wijn or of an ook, & leie 16 þeron a double linnen cloop & wete it wel, & þerwiþ folde þe lyme, & þan streyne þe lyme wiþ a boond, & euery dai þou schalt wete it .ij. sipis in þat lie & bynde so his lyme, & in þis maner his lyme schal drie. Ouper in þis maner / Take sal nitre & distempere it 20 wiþ watir, & þanne take a sponge þat it be so myche þat it mowe hile al þe lyme & þan lete þe sponge drie so þervpon, & þan wete þe sponge azen & leie it on þe lyme azen, & lete it drie azen & alwei bynde wel þe lyme; & þis þou must do manye sipis. Or take 24 þe leues of lilie celestie & grynde hem wel and þanne leye it vpon þe lyme, & þanne bynde wel þe lyme, & in þis maner þe matere wole waaste away & þe lyme wole bicomme smal as it schulde / If it so be þat þis greetnes come of malancolious blood or of greet 28 fleume, make him a purgacioun with gotis whey & epithimo, or anopir competent medicyn. & first þou schalt make þe lyme neische wiþ oile of lilie, or wiþ oon of þe oynementis þat ben mollificatiuis þat <sup>2</sup> schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, þanne go to þe cure þat is 32 forseid. Whanne þe swellyng of þe lyme is doon aweie, if it be in hond or in arme, þat falliþ ofte tyme, or in þe foot & in þe leggis & in þe knee, þanne þou schalt make bitwixe þe fyngris cauterijs þat ben clepid cauterium cultellare, as þou schalt fynde in þe chapitre of 36 cauterijs // þe greetnes of a mannes foot þou schalt cure as it schal be seid in elephancia as it is conteyned in his propre chapitre /



pe firste chapiter of engendering of humours & pe  
kindis of hem, & conteyneþ .xviij. chapters /

pe .2. doo-  
trine.

- 4 **E**Veri enpostym is engendrid of .iiij. humouris, oupir of water,  
or of wijnd. & it is impossible for a cirurgian for to kune  
a cure, but if he knowe pe cause þerof, & þerfore me þou3te  
þat it was necessarie for to make a propre chapitre of pe generacioun  
of humouris<sup>1</sup> & alle pe propurtees þerof, þat pe redere of þis book  
8 mai knowe pe causis of apostyms & pe curis þerof & metis & drinkis  
þat ben necessarie in þis cause for norischinge<sup>2</sup> & augmentinge<sup>2</sup> of pe  
lymes & for to engendre natural heete / // Whanne pe mete falliþ  
into a mannes stomac & þou haddist anothamie þerof, þan in pe  
12 stomak pe mete is soden, & þan fro pe stomak it goiþ into pe guttis,  
& þerof þou haddist anothamiam, & þan pe mete goiþ anoon to pe  
gutt þat is clepid orobum or pe sak. Veynes þat ben clepid  
miseraice & þere ben manie maners þerof as it is forseid, & þei ben  
16 maad fast wiþ pe botme of pe stomac & wiþ pe gutt þat is clepid  
duodeno, & wiþ pe smal gutt, & wiþ pe gutt þat is clepid ieiumum  
as it is forseid, & wiþ þese veynes bigynneþ pe .ij. digestioun &  
berip a veyne þat is clepid kilus<sup>3</sup> to pe lyuer, & þat veyne goiþ to  
20 pe stomac fro pe lyuer. & pe .iiij. humouris of .iiij. substauncis ben  
engendrid in þis place of digestioun<sup>4</sup> / For þere is engendrid þere a  
maner spumous substaunce whanne pe digestioun failiþ heete; &  
þere engendriþ anoper partie þat is sutil as it were wijn; & pe  
24 greet substaunce goiþ adoun & styunkiþ. If þere be engendrid greet  
fleume<sup>5</sup> & miche, þat is cause for it quenchip þe hete of pe stomac /  
Also in pe same placis is engendrid a subtil substaunce, & scharp  
hete worchip þeron & gaderip him hete & scharpnes, & þis is clepid  
28 collera rubea; & if humouris wexip to miche, it wole achaufe pe  
lyuer / & causis of engendring of colre ben hote metis & drinkis &

¶ 1o. co.

Impostema  
ingendred  
off þe .iiij.  
humors.

A disease can  
only be cured  
if the cause is  
known.

[2 lf. 124, bk.]

The first  
digestion.

The food is  
sodden in the  
stomach,  
and passes  
through the  
guts.

Incipit ij  
dygo

The mesaraic  
veins carry  
the chyle to  
the liver.

nota

The four  
humours  
are produced  
in the liver.

1. Phlegm,

[2 lf. 125]

2. the  
Cholerie  
humour,

<sup>1</sup> De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 6, Add. 27,944, fol. 33: "*Pise foure humores bey i-bred in þis manere: whan mete is i-fonge in pe place of seeping, þat is pe stomak, first pe more sotil partie & fletinge þerof, þat phisicians clepiþ pthis-maria, þat is i-drawe be certeyn veynes to pe lyuore, & þerby pe worching of kinde hete it is i-chaungid into pe foure humoures; þe bredinge of hem bigynneþ in pe lyuer, but it endiþ þere atte fulle.*"

<sup>3</sup> The translator mistook *kilus* for the name of the Vein, perhaps in reference to the *Vena cava*, called *Vena chillis* by the translators of Arab. medical works, from *κοιλη*.

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: Ita in hepate ex chylo veniente a stomacho quatuor humores substantiæ generantur.



3. Blood, traueile & fastyng<sup>1</sup> & stronge saucis // ¶ Also þer is a clene sub-  
 staunce engendrid þat kyndeli hete worchip þeron, & þat is blood.  
 & þe matere herof is good metis & drynkis þat ben swete // ¶ Also  
 4. the Melan- þer is engendrid anoþer substaunce þat is sumwhat stynkyng<sup>2</sup> & is 4  
 cholic humour. clepid malancoli & is engendrid in .ij. maners: oon maner is þis of  
 greet hete þat is brennyng<sup>3</sup> & of greet cooldnes þat wexiþ hard<sup>1</sup>;  
 & þe cause herof ben grete metis,<sup>2</sup> & metis þat engendriþ malancoli /  
 These four And þes iiij. humours Sanguis, Colera, fleumtica & Malancia, & 8  
 humours have different qualities. euery of hem hap diuers qualitees, for blood is hoot & moist, fleume  
 coold & moost, Colre hoot & drie, Malancoli coold & drie // ¶ Also  
 [3 lf. 125, bk.] of þese humouris<sup>3</sup> summe ben kindeli & summe ben vnkyndely, &  
 þerfore in þis chapitre we wolen make mencion of alle, for bi 12  
 gendring<sup>4</sup> of þese humouris enpostyms ben engendrid //

Phlegm is ¶ Of fleume þere ben ij. kyndis, oon is natural & þe toþer  
 either natural or unnatural. innatural / Natural fleume is coold & moist & whit, & goiþ sum-  
 The natural what to swetnes,<sup>4</sup> of which lordschipe<sup>5</sup> þer folowiþ a litil wilnyng<sup>6</sup> 16  
 Phlegm quiets a man's nerves. for to comoun wiþ wymmen, & þe palesie, & [he is]<sup>6</sup> pesible, &  
 loueþ wel for to haue reste<sup>7</sup> / Saue þe moost part of fleume is in  
 a mannes brayn, & in hise lungis, & in his stomac, & in hise guttis,  
 & in hise ioynctes. And þe lordschip of fleume is in þe hynder 20  
 part of a mannes heed, & in þe rigbonys. & fleume doiþ þre pro-  
 fitis, þe .j. is þis: sumtyme a mannes kynde failiþ blood, & þan  
 kinde worchip vpon fleume & makip blood, & of opere humouris þis  
 mai not be do / þe ij. profit of fleume is þis: for fleume goiþ wiþ 24  
 blood for to norische diuers lymes / þe .iiij. profit of fleume is þis,  
 þat it acoldiþ þe ioynctis & makip hem moist, for ellis in greet  
 meuyng<sup>8</sup> þei schulden wexe drie / Of fleume þat is innatural ben  
 [8 lf. 126] .iiij. maners<sup>8</sup> as: fleume dulce, fleuma acetosum, fleuma ponticum, 28  
 fleuma dulce. fleuma salsum // ¶ fleuma dulce is in .ij. maners. þe firste maner

<sup>1</sup> of greet cooldness þat wexiþ hard. Lat. ex frigidityte ingrossante.

<sup>2</sup> grete metis, Lat. cibi grossi.

<sup>4</sup> swetnes, a mistake for whitnes. Lat. ad paucam tendens albedinem. De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 9, *ibid.* fol. 35: "Kyndeliche fleume is coold & moist, & white in colour, and fletinge in substaunce, a litwhat swete in sauour, opir al wcerisch & vnsauoury."

<sup>5</sup> of which lordshipe, Lat. de cuius dominio.

<sup>6</sup> he is, wanting.

<sup>7</sup> *Ibid.*, fol. 35 bk.: "a verray fleumatik man is in þe body lustles, heuy & slow, dul of wit & of þouzt forzetteful, neissche of fleissche and quauy, bloo<sup>a</sup> of colour, whitliche in face, ferdeful of herte, ful of spittinge snyuel & rokeinge, ful of slouthe & of slepinge, & of a litil appetite & of litil þurst."

<sup>a</sup> bloo, MS. bood.



is þis: as whanne fleume is medlid wip blood, or as whanne hete  
 worchip wip fleume to turne it into blood // ¶ **fleuma acetosum** fleuma  
acetosum.  
 is seid in .ij. maners / as whanne ebullitiun<sup>1</sup> comeþ to fleume dulce  
 4 & makip him to rote, & it [is] herto as it bifallip in opere þingis  
 þat ben swete, as to swete winis whanne sournes comeþ þeron it  
 bicomeþ coold, & in þe same manere fleuma acetosum makip fleuma  
 dulce coold // ¶ **fleuma salsum** is moost drie of alle, & þis is fleuma  
salsum.  
 8 whanne þer is ony part of colre medlid wip fleume, þan it is  
 clepid fleuma salsum, for þe hete of þe colre makip it salt / ¶ **fleuma**  
**vitreum** was liquide fleuma, & wip cooldnes it is congild, or sum fleuma  
vitreum.  
 partie of malancolie is medlid & congild it hard // ¶ **Colre** sum  
 12 is natural & sum is innatural / Natural is list & scharp & reed in  
 colour &<sup>2</sup> in substaunce, & þe more hoot þat it is þe more reednes  
 it makip / þanne vertues of colre ben þese / A colerik man schal  
 haue hasti entendement & sotil<sup>3</sup> of witt, & hardi & hasti þouzt, & [<sup>3</sup> ff. 126, bk.]  
 16 hasti answeare, & listly meued to wrappe<sup>4</sup> / Of colre innatural ben .v.  
 maners, as citrina, [vitellina]<sup>5</sup>, adusta, prassina & eruginosa / **Colera**  
**citrina** is medlid wip subtil fleume / **Colera vitellina**<sup>6</sup> is medlid Colera  
innatura is.  
Colera  
citrina.  
Colera  
vitellina.  
Colera  
adusta.  
 wip greet fleume / **Colera adusta** is in .ij. maners; oon is þis, þat  
 20 it is to miche brent in<sup>7</sup> þe lyuer; þan wip þis brennyng þe subtil  
 partie departip fro þe grete parties, & in þis maner it takip a spice  
 of malancoly // ¶ In anoþer manere, partijs of malancoli þat ben  
 brent, [ben]<sup>8</sup> medlid þerwip // ¶ And þer is iij. maner of colre  
 24 adust, & is whanne his blood is adust *id est* brent as it schal be seid  
 here after // ¶ þer is anoþer maner of colre þat is clepid **prassina**,<sup>9</sup> Collera  
prassina.  
Colera  
eruginosa.  
Galien.  
 þat is swipe bittir // ¶ **Eruginosa** is lik þe rust of copur, & þis  
 maner of colre is miche freting & scharp, & G. seiþ þat þis maner  
 28 colre is engendrid of hoot metis & scharpe as oynouns, garlek,  
 mustard, & opere mo // ¶ Of malancoli þer ben .ij. maners—as **Malancoli.**  
 malancoli natural & malancoli innatural / Malancoly þat is natural The natural  
Melancholy.

<sup>1</sup> *ebullitiun*, Lat. *ebullitio*.<sup>2</sup> MS. *colour*, erroneously inserted.<sup>4</sup> De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 10, Add. 27,944, fol. 36: "And so colerik men beþ generalliche wrapful, hardy, vnmeke, list, vnstable, inpetuous; in body long, sklendre & lene; in colour broun, in eer blak and crips, hard and stif; in touche hoot, in puls strong & swift."<sup>5</sup> *vitellina*, wanting.<sup>6</sup> *colera vitellina*, called *yellow colera*, in De propr. rer. *ibid*.<sup>7</sup> MS. & for *in*.<sup>8</sup> *ben*, wanting.<sup>9</sup> De propr. rer., *ibid*. fol. 35 b.: "þe pridde maner of colera hatte *prassina*, & is grene of colour and bittir scharp as an herbe þat hatte *prassium*, & *marubium*, & *porrus* in latyn."



[2 lf. 127] hap þese signis / þe .j. is as it were fecis of blood,<sup>1</sup> 2 & her colour is as it were ledi & blac, & her bodi schal be leene & drie, & þei schulen haue good appetit for to ete, & þei schulen haue good mynde for to kepe þingis in her þouzt, & þei schulen be dredeful & 4  
 The un-  
 natural  
 Melancholy. ful of enuye & gile & sorowe & coueitous / Malancolie innatural comeþ of humours brent & corrupt. Of euery of þese humours ben engendrid diuers maners of enpostyms / & euery maner postyme hap diuers cure as it schal be seid here-after. 8

### A general word of empostyms /

¶ ij. cº. **A** Postyme hap manie diuers names of diuers men, for lewid cirurgians<sup>3</sup> seien, þat þer is noon apostym but þat, þat makip quytture / Saue I seie, & alle auctouris seien þat eueri swellyng in 12  
 Any swelling  
 in a limb is  
 called Apos-  
 tema.  
 Auicen. a lyme, wheþir it be greet or smal, it schal be clepid apostym / For .A. seiþ: litil swellyngis schule be clepid litil apostyms, & grete swellyngis schulen be clepid grete apostyms / þerfore apostym is seid swellyng in lymes, ouþir inflatioun<sup>4</sup> þat chaungip þe lyme oþer 16  
 It arises from  
 the humours,  
 [3 lf. 127, bk.] þan it schulde be; & þe mater herof comeþ of manie diuers þingis; ouþer it comeþ of humouris, or of watir, <sup>5</sup> or of wijnd / If it comeþ of humouris, þan it comeþ of blood, ouþer of fleume, or of colre, or of malancolie // Also enpostyms þat cometh of humours: summe 20  
 comeþ of natural humours, & summe of innatural; & summe of sengle humours, & summe of humouris medlid togidere / And summe enpostyms cometh of causis wipinneforþ, & summe of causis withoutforþ / þe causis wipoutforþ is falling ouþer smiting, or of a 24  
 The exciting  
 cause is either  
 external or  
 internal. wounde, or chaunging of eir / Of þe causis wipinneforþ: as of wickidnes of humours, or to ful of humouris, or to ful of water, or of wijnd / or whanne a man is hurt wipoutforþ: or wip greet hete þat brenneþ, or wip greet cooldnes of eir þat constreineþ, or of 28  
 greet drienes þat constreineþ, for alle þese causis humouris gaderip togidere & makip enpostyms // Also if a man falle vpon a stoon or vpon an hard þing, or if a man be smite wip a stoon or wip a staf, or þoruþ prickyng of a venimous beest: alle þese þingis moun 32  
 [7 lf. 128] engendre venimous<sup>6</sup> enpostyms / In þis maner þou <sup>7</sup> schalt knowe

<sup>1</sup> De propr. rer., *ibid.* fol. 36: "þe kyndeliche malencolie is coole and drye, þat is i-bred in blood as drastes in wyne."

<sup>3</sup> lewid cirurgians, Lat. rurales cyrurgici.

<sup>4</sup> inflatioun, Lat. inflatio, O.Fr. inflacion. *Vigo* l. c. "Inflatus, Puffed vp, swellyng."

<sup>6</sup> a venimous, cancelled.



- diuers enpostyms of what humouris þei comeþ / If superfluite of blood drawe to a lyme, as is clepid flegmon,<sup>1</sup> & þes ben þe signes þerof: þe place wole be reed for lijknes of blood, akyng for þe  
 4 greet replecioun þerof, beting<sup>2</sup> for þe greet depnes of mater, or for greet akyng / He may haue greuance of a feuer<sup>3</sup> / If þe blood be pinne in substaunce & hoot in qualite, þan it makip herisipulam. & þis is þe signe þerof, þat in þe hizest place þerof, it wole be  
 8 moost reed and hoot; & if þou leist þi fyngir þeron, & whanne þou remeuyst þi fyngir, þe skyn wole be whit þere þi fyngir was, & anoon it wole bicom reed azen, for þe mater þerof is subtil, & þe  
 12 substaunce is more gretter & makip more hete, & makip apostym, þat is clepid carbunculus / þis enpostym comeþ to a man whanne he haþ haboundance of greet blood, & þerfor whanne he is replete of mete, he schulde baþe him or traueile him-silf, þat þe blood  
 16 miȝte falle out, & for his greetnes & hardnes it mai not be <sup>4</sup>resolved with hete, & þanne it leueþ in þe skyn & makip apostym.<sup>5</sup> þe signes herof ben þes: þe enpostym is hard for þe þiknes of blood, & þe colour þerof is swart reed for þe greet hete, & þe greet heete<sup>6</sup>  
 20 herof makip a man sumtime to haue a feuer þerwiþ; & sumtyme it makip a man to haue sincopin,<sup>7</sup> & þis is speciali whanne þe matere is brent, & in þis maner þe matere þerof is turned into venym /

Superfluity of blood causes flegmon.

Symptoms.

Poverty of blood causes herisipulam.

Symptoms.

Fullness of blood causes carbunculus.

Symptoms.

[<sup>4</sup> If. 128, bk.]

<sup>1</sup> Halle. Table, p. 84. "φλεγμονή, id est inflammatio uel collectio, απο του φλεγμον, hoc est a sanguine dicta, written moste commonly hither vnto (with muche rudenes) *Flegmon*, is properly a symple tumore (as Galen sayeth) and an affecte of the fleshie partes, comming of a greater fluxe of bloude then they nede or can naturally susteyne."

<sup>2</sup> beting, Lat. pulsatio. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. beat, 13.

<sup>3</sup> De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 59, Add. 27,944, fol. 97 b.: "*And somtyme it comeþ of ventosite & of wind, & hatte bubo; somtyme of a symple humour, as of blood, and hatte flegmon; þe tokenes þerof beþ<sup>a</sup>: rede rednes comeþ of þe colour of blood, hardenesse comeþ of multitude of matiere & of hete þat wastip watry matiere, quappinge & lepinge<sup>b</sup> of ventosite & fumosite, schuftyng & puttinge, sore ache of þe<sup>c</sup> stretchinge of þe place; hete comeþ of hote matiere, & swellinge comeþ of multitude of matiere.*"

<sup>5</sup> 26,106, fol. 52 b.: hoc apostema fit cum homo habundat sanguine grosso, et balneatur post ciborum repletionem aut laborat, ita quod sanguis ad extrema movetur et propter suam grossitiem et duritiem non potest a calore resolui remanens in cuti facit apostema.

<sup>6</sup> heete, in margin.

<sup>7</sup> Halle. Table, p. 122. "Syncope. Συγκοπή, id est animi deliquium, uel præseps uirium lapsus, that is the defecte of the mynde, or a sodeine slyding away of the strengthe of the body, and commonly called swoundyng."

<sup>a</sup> MS. by.

<sup>b</sup> Lat. pulsus i. saltus.

<sup>c</sup> MS. ofte.



Natural  
colre  
causes Ery-  
sipelas.

Natural colre makip herisipulam,<sup>1</sup> & þe signe þerof is hardnes for þe greet drienes of colre. & þe heed of þe enpostym is schape as it were a pyne, for þe grece þat it hap.<sup>2</sup> & þe colour þerof is reed medlid wip ȝelow //

4

Phlegm  
causes  
vdimia.  
(oedema).

An enpostym þat comeþ of fleume, is clepid vdimia<sup>3</sup> or ȝima,<sup>4</sup> & is a neisch enpostym, & þe colour þerof is sumwhat whiȝt. & if þou pressist in þi fyngir, þer wole leue þere a pitt for þe gret neischenes; & whanne þi fyngir is aweie, it wole arise vp aȝen. 8 þis enpostym is wipout akyng, saue it makip a greuance /

Natural  
malancoli  
causes  
Sclerosis.  
[<sup>6</sup> lf. 129]

¶ Natural malancoli makip an hard enpostym, & is clepid Sclerosis.<sup>5</sup> & þe signe þerof is hardnes, & þe colour þerof is as þe colour of malancolie ledi or blac /

12

A watery  
apostema.

Enpostym þat comeþ of blood & watir medlid togidere. þis is þe signe þerof: if þou settist þeron þi .ij. fyngiris of þi .ij. hondis, & first pressist þat oon fyngir & þanne þat oþer, þou schalt fele þe watri mater remeue fro þat oon fyngir to þat oþer //

16

These are  
the simple  
Apostemas.

¶ þese ben þe differencis of apostyms þat ben symple, þat comeþ of oon matere at oonis; & þese ensaumplis ben schewid tofor, for þou schalt þe bettir knowe enpostyms þat comeþ of double matere //

20

Apostemas  
arising from  
more than  
one cause:  
Apostema  
flegmonides  
and  
herisipilades

¶ þer comeþ an empostym of blood & colre; & if þe more partie be of blood, þan þe enpostym schal be clepid flegmonides; & if þe more partie þerof be of colre, þanne he schal be clepid herisipilades. & þe signes herof þou schalt knowe bi þe signes of 24

<sup>1</sup> De propr. rer., *ibid.*: "*herisipila*, þat is *holy fure per antifrasm*, þat is *contrarie spekinge*."

<sup>2</sup> Lat. *propter igneitatē ipsius*.

<sup>3</sup> *vdimia*, οἰδημα, tumour.—Vigo, Chirurgery. The Interpretation: "Undimia is a barbarouse terme, in greke it is called oedema, in latin tumor. For it is softe swellynge wythout payne."

<sup>4</sup> *Zima*. Sinonoma Barth, "*Zima* est apostema flancorum molle sine dolore." From ζῆμα, that which is boiled, decoction. De propr. rer., *ibid.*: "In þe same manere aposteme comeþ of fleume, and hatte zimia opur palus; for riȝt as in mures and in mareys is moche superfluyte of slyme & of wose, so in þis posteme is moche superfluyte; and if þou þurstist þy fyngre þer vpon, hit dyueþ inne, for þe rennyng matiere wipdrawiþ & lettiþ þe vingre entre, & þanne in þe myddel is a putte as hit were þe bore of an hole; & whanne þe fyngre is aweye, þe matiere comeþ aȝen & filliþ al þe place."

<sup>5</sup> Add. 16,106, fol. 53: apostema quod vocatur scliros ab aliis sephiros vel sclirosis. Halle. Table, p. 114. "*Scirrhus* Σκίρρος και σκληρότης, id est durities, writen of old *Sclirosis*, is (as I gat her of Galen in diuers places) a tumore against nature, and an affecte of harde and thicke partes."



- þe symple apostyms // ¶ Also blood & fleume natural [ben]<sup>1</sup> medlid are caused by  
 togidere, & makip an enpostym þat<sup>t</sup> is vdimia. & þe signe herof<sup>t</sup> the blood and  
 [is]<sup>2</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> þe heed of þis enpostym is reed, & þat<sup>t</sup> opere wole be choler.
- 4 whit<sup>3</sup> / ¶ Also blood is medlid wip greet fleume & malancolie, &  
 engendrip glandulas & Scrophulas.<sup>4</sup> ¶ Colre medlid with fleume  
 5 makip fleume rennyng<sup>t</sup>, & makip þat<sup>t</sup> fleume goip wip him into [3 lf. 129, bk.]  
 ioynctis. & herof<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> haue a pleyner teching<sup>t</sup> in þe chapitre  
 8 of ioinctes. ¶ Also greet fleume is medlid with malancoli, & þerof<sup>t</sup>  
 comeþ glandula & Scrophule / Also malancolie & blood, colre & Glandula &  
 fleume ben medlid alle togidere & makip an enpostym þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid Scrophule.  
 antrax; & þe malice þerof<sup>t</sup> is diuers after euery humour. Saue if Anthrax  
 12 blood & colre be feruent<sup>t</sup> togidere & malancolie be malicious, þan is caused by  
 þere fallip manie harde þingis þerto, as quaking<sup>t</sup> of þe herte, & Melancholy,  
 sincopis, & out of hise wittis, & sumtyme deep. & þe signes herof<sup>t</sup> Blood Choler  
 ben greet hardnes of þe enpostym, & þe schap þerof<sup>t</sup> as it were a and Phlegm.  
 16 pyn, & greet akyng<sup>e</sup>, & sumtyme he schal not fele it. And þerfore Symptoms of  
 .G. seip: hote apostyms, if þei be not felid, ben incurable. & Anthrax.  
 veynes þat<sup>t</sup> ben þeron wolen be of diuers colouris, & vpon þe Galien.  
 enpostym þere wole be as it were a litil bladdre,<sup>6</sup> & þe colour þerof<sup>t</sup>  
 20 wole be as aischis, & it semer þat<sup>t</sup> it is drawe ynward wip a þreed.<sup>7</sup>  
 & þis enpostym is seid contagious.
- Of humouris þat<sup>t</sup> ben [in]<sup>8</sup> natural, þese þingis<sup>9</sup> folowip þerof<sup>t</sup> / Anthrax is  
 Of fleume þat<sup>t</sup> is corrupt cometh Boccia & testudines / Of malancolie contagious.  
 24 comeþ scrophule & glandule, as it is aforseid. & of alle þese þou [2 lf. 130]  
 schalt<sup>t</sup> haue propre chapitris / Of colre þat<sup>t</sup> is brent & of opere Boccia &  
 humouris þat<sup>t</sup> ben brent & corrupt þere comeþ manie pustulis, & testudines  
 summe þerof<sup>t</sup> ben ful malicious after þe malice of þe matere / Herof<sup>t</sup> caused by cor-  
 28 comeþ ignis persicus, miliaris, formica, herpes, herpes estiomenus. rupt Phlegm.  
 Diseases  
 arising from  
 corruption of  
 the humours:

<sup>1</sup> ben, wanting.<sup>2</sup> is, wanting.<sup>3</sup> Incorrect translation. Add. 26,106, fol. 53: facit apostema quod videtur vdimia, nisi quia in superficie magis rubet.<sup>4</sup> Halle. Table, p. 115. "Scrophula (so called by Auicenna, Guidone de Cauliaco, Bruno, Theodorico, Lanfranco, and others a Scrophula, a pregnant soowe: because it or the lyke, is a disease common to hogs) is a harde Scirrhus tumore, in the glandules of the share or arme holes, but chiefly in the necke."<sup>6</sup> Compare Guilelm. de Salic., I. 59. Sl. 277, fol. 11: "In þe antrax . . . per been smale bladdres aboute þe copp of it, as þou3 fier hadde touched þe place."<sup>7</sup> De propr. rer., lib. 7, cap. 59, Add. 27,944, fol. 93: "And also it semer þat hit is i-drawe to þe ground þerof wip a maner þrede, i-fastned to þe vttir partye of þe bladder in þe myddel." Not in Guilelm. de Salic.<sup>8</sup> in, wanting. Lat. De humoribus autem non naturalibus.



**ignis persicus.** Ignis persicus is a signe<sup>1</sup> þat þere ben manie pustule þeron & venymous water. & þe pustule ben reed al aboute & 3elow, & occupieþ al þe lyme. & it is wiþ greet brennyngt. & þis comeþ of

**Miliaris.** colre brent and þinne / Miliaris haþ litil pustulis, & haþ not so 4 greet brennyngt, ne þe place þerof is not so reed. & þis comeþ ofte

**fformica.** of fleume medlid wiþ a litil colre // ¶ fformica is a pustula þat is swiþe feruent, & haþ a cruste aboue, & it comeþ of colre brent. & þis is goynge & fretiþ þe lyme aboue, & it hath greet brennyngt // 8

**Pruna.** ¶ þe firste<sup>2</sup> is a pustula þat comeþ of malancolie & is blac or  
[<sup>3</sup> lf. 130, bk.] ledi, & it comeþ of þe venemous mater of malancoli / <sup>3</sup>Herpes

**Herpes esthiomenus.** esthiomenus is as miche to seie as fretyngt him-silf, & þis comeþ in manie maners / It comeþ in medlyngt of colre þat is brent & 12 malancolie innatural & brent & sutil. & whanne þis falliþ into a lyme, it fretiþ þe lyme for þe greet malice þat it haþ // ¶ Also þer is anoþer maner passioun þat haþ manie diuers names, for summen

**Cancrum & lupum.** clepen it cancrum, & summen lupum. & men of fraunce clepen it 16 malum nostre domine<sup>4</sup> / And lumbardis clepen it fier of seint antony, & summen clepen it herisipulam. Of alle þese diuers names is no charge of, saue þe signes of þis sijknes ben þese: fretingt & brennyngt & blac colour & stynkyng, & þat rizt foul 20 stynkyngt. & or þe skyn þerof be to-broke, it wole not stynke, saue þe place þerof wole be ledi. & if þou felist þe place wiþ þi

**Cancer vlceratus** fyngir, þou schalt fynde þe fleisch þerof al corrupt // ¶ Cancer is a postym þat is swiþe corrupt. & is in .ij. maners: as cancer 24 vlceratus, & cancer þat is not vlceratus. ¶ A cankre þat is not

<sup>1</sup> *signe*, probably mistaken for *siknesse*. Lat. ignis persicus est egritudo in qua sunt multe pustule.

<sup>2</sup> Lat. Pruna similiter est pustula. The translator read: prima.—Phillips. "*Pruna*, a burning or live Coal; also a Carbuncle, Plague-sore, or fiery Botch."

<sup>4</sup> *malum nostre domine*; This name, given to *Erisipelas*, is due to the miraculous cures of this disease by intercession of the Holy Virgin. They are first reported by *Hugo Farsitus*, a canon of Saint Jean des Vignes, in Soissons. In his book, *De Miraculis Maria Suessionensis*, he relates the miracles, as seen by himself in the year 1128, and mentions several instances where women suffering from a severe skin-disease have been cured by the help of the Holy Virgin. Further account of a plague known under the name "*mal des ardents*" and of cures by the help of the Holy Virgin, is given by *Gautier de Coincy*. See G. d. C., ed. *Foquet*, p. 138.

The same disease is also called *fuoco di Sant Antonio*. See Tomm. Dict., *Maladie S. Antoine* (Godefr. Dict.). The Saints Germain, Main, Othoine and Verain, have likewise given their names to the *erisipelas*. *Quinte Ess.*, 8. 23: "fire of St. Antony, a brennyng sijknes clepid þe fier of helle."



vlceratus is in .ij. maners: oon comeþ of malancolie rotid, & bi- Cancer non  
vlceratus  
 gynneþ for to wexe in þe mychilnes of a fecche or of a pese. &  
 þanne it<sup>1</sup> wole wexe alwei in a maner brennyng; & eüere as þe [1 lf. 131]  
 4 matere wexiþ, so wole þe brennyng<sup>t</sup> wexe forþ. & it<sup>t</sup> wole haue It has  
variously  
coloured  
veins,  
 veynes of diuers colour. & sum colour þerof<sup>t</sup> wole be ledi, & sum  
 wole be purpur, summe þerof<sup>t</sup> wole be grene. & þan þis is ful of  
 colerik matere corrupt<sup>t</sup>. & it<sup>t</sup> haþ greet<sup>t</sup> akyng, & if þou pressist<sup>t</sup>  
 8 it<sup>t</sup> with þi fyngir, þe malice þerof<sup>t</sup> wole be miche more / þis passioun  
 comounly wole wexe in placis þat<sup>t</sup> ben glandule / þis maner en- and chiefly  
affects glan-  
dulous parts.  
 postym comeþ ofte in a mannes pies & in a wommans brest & in  
 opere placis / Cancer vlceratus. Alle þe signes þerof<sup>t</sup> ben tofore  
 12 seid in his propre chapitre /

Now alle þe signes of enpostyms ben seid, go we to þe curis / Treatment of  
apostema.  
 þou must take kepe, wheþer þe enpostym come of causis wiþout- Nota.  
 forþ or wiþinne / If þe enpostym comeþ of causis wiþinneforþ, When the  
causes are  
internal,  
purge before  
using medi-  
cines.  
 16 þanne þou must purge þe matere or þou leie þerto ony repercussijf<sup>t</sup>  
 or ony maturatif<sup>t</sup> or ony resoluyng<sup>t</sup> þing<sup>t</sup> / forwhi a repercussijf<sup>t</sup> <sup>2</sup> mai  
 not do awei al þe matere, þou; it<sup>t</sup> sumwhat aswage þe akyng in þe  
 firste bigynnyng<sup>t</sup> / neþeles itt<sup>t</sup> makip þe matere hard, & aftirward þe  
 20 patient <sup>3</sup>schulde haue þe more penaunce / A resoluyng<sup>t</sup> in an vnclene [1 lf. 131, bk.]  
 bodi drawip more matere þerto þan it<sup>t</sup> resolueþ. ¶ A maturatif<sup>t</sup>  
 makip þe enpostym to wexe more, if his bodi be vnpurgid, & makip  
 þe matere of þe enpostym feruent / In what maner þou schalt<sup>t</sup>  
 24 purge diuers maters, in þe chapitre of allopuia þou schalt<sup>t</sup> fynde it,  
 & in þe chapitre de doloribus iuncturarum, þat<sup>t</sup> schal be seid here  
 aftir / þou schalt<sup>t</sup> worche in enpostyms þat<sup>t</sup> fallip in a mannes bodi When the  
causes are  
external use  
a contrarious  
medicine, i. e.  
 wiþoutforþ. If þou wost wel þat<sup>t</sup> his bodi is replet, þis schal alwei  
 28 be þin entencioun, for to drawe þe matere awei in þis maner: / If  
 þe enpostym be in a mannes moup, þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> make him no Nota.  
 gargarisme; <sup>4</sup> & if it<sup>t</sup> be in his ers, þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> make him no  
 laxatif<sup>t</sup> medicyn / & if it<sup>t</sup> be in a wommans maris, <sup>5</sup> þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup>  
 32 zeue hir no medicyn for to make menstrie; saue þou schalt<sup>t</sup> alwei a purgative,  
when the  
apostema is  
in higher  
parts,  
 go to þe contrarie herof: as if enpostyms be in partijs aboue, þan  
 þou schalt<sup>t</sup> zeue catarticum / If þe enpostym be bineþe, þan zeue

<sup>2</sup> MS. repercussist.

<sup>4</sup> gargarisme, a gargle. Vigo, Chirurgery. Interpretation: "A gargarisme is when we cause water to bubble in our throtes, not sufferynge it to go downe."

<sup>5</sup> maris, Lat. matrix, O.Fr. marris. Sloane 2463, fol. 194 bk.: "The moder is a skyn, þat þe childe is enclosed in his moder-wombe. And manye of þe sekenesses that women hauen, comen of greuaunces of this moder, that we clepen þe marice."



an emetic,  
when it is in  
lower parts.

[1 lf. 132]

Repelling  
medicines  
must not be  
used in the  
following  
cases:

- 1.
- 2.
3. 4.
- 5.
6. 7.
- 8.
- 9.
- 10.

In case of a  
blood-apos-  
tema use  
a repelling  
followed by

[6 lf. 132, bk.]

a solvent  
medicine.

In case of  
suppuration  
apply a  
maturing  
medicine.

Open the  
abscess when  
it is ripe.

1.  
Take care  
not to cut,  
if the abscess  
is near a  
joint,  
looke  
weH apon  
thes  
Rulles

him medicyns for to caste. ¶ Whanne þe matere is purgid, þan bigynne we curis of hoot enpostyms / þou must<sup>1</sup> be war of reper-  
cussiuis in ten maners. ¶ þe j. cause is þis, if his bodi be replet /  
as it is aforseid. ¶ þe .ij. is, greet fume of humours & venymous. 4  
¶ þe .iiij. is gretnes<sup>2</sup> of humours rotid. ¶ þe .iiij. cause is, if  
apostym wexe in a noble lyme as in a mannes eere, or in a wommans  
tetis, or in þe rigge abouteforþ. ¶ þe .v. cause is: if þe enpostym  
be in þe þrote, or nyȝ þe brayn, or in ony place nyȝ þe herte, or nyȝ 8  
ony lyme þat norischeth / ¶ þe .vj. cause is in a child. ¶ þe .vij.  
cause is, if it be in an oold man. ¶ þe .viij. cause is if it be in a  
man þat risiþ vp of sijknes. ¶ þe .ix. cause is if it be apostema  
creticum.<sup>3</sup> ¶ þe .x. cause is, if an enpostyme be in a noble 12  
membre, & be putt fro þat place to anoper. ¶ In noon of þese .x.  
causis, þou schalt make noon percussif in hote enpostyms as þou  
schalt fynde þe maner in þe antidotarie of percussifs / ¶ To  
enpostyms of blood, þou miȝt do medicyns percussifs & dis- 16  
solutiuis sotilly, so þat þe firste bigynnyng<sup>4</sup> percussifs ouercome  
þe mater of enpostym myche, & in þe stat<sup>5</sup> of þe enpostym lasse, &  
in þe ende þerof þou schalt<sup>6</sup> vse clene resoluyng þingis / If þou  
miȝt not wiþ percussiuis do awei þe enpostym ne resolue him, 20  
saue he bigynneþ to quytture, þan þou schalt do þerto medicyns  
maturatiuis, til it be wel quitturid. ¶ Of percussiuis resolutiuis  
maturatiuis & þe manere of worching þerof þou schalt fynde in þe  
antidotarie. ¶ Whanne þe enpostym is quitturid & sufficiently 24  
rotid, þis þou miȝt knowe whanne þe akynge is al aweie, & whanne  
þe matere is neische þerof, & þan opene þe enpostym, þat þou seest  
moost competent // Saue or þou opene ony enpostyms, þou must  
be war of þus manie þinges: ¶ þe j. is, þou schalt opene noon 28  
enpostym or he be perfitli rotid, but if þe enpostym rotid ony opir  
lyme, or þat he were nyȝ ony noble lyme, or nyȝ ony ioynct // In  
opere causis þou schalt abide til he be perfitli rotid. & in þe  
kuttyng þou schalt loke where þe skyn is most þinne and moost 32  
hangyng, & þere þou schalt opene þe enpostym.<sup>7</sup> ¶ þe .ij. enten-

<sup>2</sup> gretnes, grossities.

<sup>3</sup> creticum, Lat. criticum.

<sup>4</sup> þe firste bigynnyng, determination of time denoted by accusative. Add. 10,440, fol. 20: "and be war, þat þe tyme of chaungynge of þis medycyn þou take it not away with violence."

<sup>5</sup> in þe stat, Lat. in statu. Add. 27,944, fol. 98: "whan þe posteme is in state."

<sup>7</sup> Lat.: facias apertionem ubi materia magis dependet, et ubi pellis est magis tenuis.



- cioun is þis, þat þou schalt be war, whanne þou openest<sup>1</sup> an enpostym, þat þou hurte no senewe, ne no veine ne noon arterie. ¶ þe .iiij. cause is, þat þou schalt not avoide al þe mater at oon tyme, & principali whanne þer is myche matere, & þe enpostym is greet // ¶ þe .iiij. is þis, þou schalt alwei opene þe enpostym in endelong þe lyme & not ouerþwert. Whanne þou hast opened þe enpostym, þan þou schalt cure him vp<sup>2</sup> as it is aforseid in þe cure of 8 vlcus virulentum. þan þou schalt fille þe wounde þerof with oold lynnen cloob þat is whizt, anoon to .iiij. daies [wip] mundificatiuis of 3elkis of eiren & mele, aftir .iiij. daies wip vnguentum apostolorum<sup>3</sup> & oon of þe mundificatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, & 12 wip regendring þingis & drijng þingis. ¶ A colerik enpostym comeþ late to rotyng, but if it be rotid wip ony mater leid wipout-forþ; þou shalt cure þis enpostym in þe same maner as þou schalt enpostyms of blood, saue þis mote haue coldere medicyns / Car- 16 bunculis schulen be curid as antrax, & þe cure herof schal be seid hereafter. <sup>4</sup>Vdimia schal not be smiten yn wip repercussiu<sup>5</sup> saue it schal be waastid awei in þe firste bigynnyng in þis maner. þou schalt purge him with trocis<sup>6</sup> de turbit, or wip anoþer medicyn þat 20 purgip fleume. þan stewe<sup>7</sup> þat lyme wip a decoccioun of absinthij, abrotane, sticados, & squinanti. & take aischis of a vyne or of an ook, & make þerof lie & wete þerinne lynnen clopis & leie hem vpon þe place hoot, & binde hem streite þerto þat it hile al þe 24 enpostym, & in þis maner þe matere þerof schal be drawen awei // If it so be þat þere be ony blood medlid þerwip, or if þer hap be leid þerto ony maturatif so þat þe mater þerof be rotid, þan opene it. Whanne it is opened, it mote haue stronger mundificatiuis þan 28 ony oþer for þe hardnes of þe quitture & þe greetnes þerof / þis is a mollificatif þat rasis made & A. R. bdellij, galbani,<sup>8</sup> opoponac

[1 lf. 133]  
2.  
not to injure  
a blood  
vessel.

3.  
to evacuate  
the pus  
slowly.

4.  
to cut in the  
direction of  
the limb.

R

Choleric  
apostemas  
ripen slowly.

Nota.

Carbuncles

[4 lf. 133, bk.]

Udimia  
(Oedema)  
shall be  
treated with  
purging  
medicines.

Apply com-  
presses.

A softening  
plaster used  
by

Rasis  
Auicenn.

<sup>2</sup> cure him vp. Compare Sloane 277, fol. 1 b.: "be it flesched vp wip poudres & oynementes incarnatifes."

<sup>3</sup> Phillips. "Apostolorum Unguentum, a cleansing Ointment, so call'd, because it is made of twelue Drugs, according to the Number of the Apostles."

<sup>5</sup> Lat. vdimia proprie non repercutitur.

<sup>6</sup> trocisce, Lat. trociscus. Sloane 277, fol. 1 b. (xvth cent.), "a trosce of þe trosces maad azens scrophules." Vigo l. c. "Trochiscos in Greke is a lyttle whele. Amonge the apothecaries, it is a confection made of sondrye pouders and spices, by the meane of some lyquoure. In latine they call it Pastillum."

<sup>7</sup> stewe, Lat. evapora.

<sup>8</sup> "Galbanum, a kind of strong scented Gum issuing out of a Plant call'd Fennel-Giant, which grows in Syria." Phillips.



ana, & make hem neische with oile of lillie in a mortar, & grinde hem wel togidere. & þan do þerto fenigrecum & lynseed as myche as alle þe opere & medle hem wel togidere, & herof<sup>1</sup> leie an enplastre vpon an hard enpostym wiþ þis oonly, or medle þerwiþ fatte <sup>1</sup>figis 4 & leie þis enplastre þerto til it be resolued & maad neische / þis medicyn makip an hard enpostym to bicomne neische & resolueþ him wiþout ony swellynge / þer ben opere manye medicyns þat ben mollificatif & resoluyng þat þou schalt finde in þe antidotarie // 8

a watri  
empostym  
must be  
treated like  
oedema.  
a windi  
empostym

A watri apostym schal be curid as vdimia, saue it schal haue drier medicyns, & þou schalt cure him in þe same maner as it is seid in þe chapitre, whanne a mannes lyme is to gret, for to make it smal // Ventosum apostema, þat is apostym þat is ful of wijnd. þou 12 schalt cure it wiþ medicyns þat consumeþ wijnd wiþinne & wiþoute / wiþinneforþ as of vsyng of comyn & carui, & he mote be war of growel<sup>2</sup> & metis þat swellip; wiþoutforþ wiþ oilis þat consumeþ wijnd, or with þis oile, R̄. rue, cimini, seminis fenicli, anisi, carui, 16 ameos<sup>3</sup>, apij, ana .ʒ. ſ., cold oile li. ſ., do alle þes in a viol of glas, & do þat glas in a vessel wiþ water, & make þe water seþe & kepe wel þe glas þeron þat it breke not, & wiþ þis oile anoynte þe place

Internal  
treatment;  
external  
treatment.  
R

R̄ hoot / Item .R̄. calcem and <sup>4</sup>distempere it wiþ swete wijn, & make 20

R̄ þerof as it were an emplastre & leie þervpon / R̄. olii anetini<sup>5</sup> .ʒ. ij., cere. ʒ. ſ., ysop þat it be drie & poudrid. ʒ. j., & make herof a plastre. ¶ Herisipilades<sup>6</sup> or flegmonides schulen be curid in þe same maner þat ben herisipulam & flegmon / Of glandulis & scrophulis, 24 we wolen speke in her propre chapitre //

Treatment of  
Anthrax.  
First remove  
the evil  
matter by  
bleeding and  
purgig,  
if the patient  
is strong,

¶ Anthrax schal be curid wiþ avoiding of noious matere, & wiþ pinges þat comfortip þe herte & þe vertu. Neþeles at þe firste bigynnyng her vertu failip, & summe þat ben late blood or purgid 28 ben lost / þerfore manie men ben agast for to lete hem blood or ʒeue hem ony medicyn laxatif / Ech mesel<sup>7</sup> if þe pacient be strong, I wole lete him blood adai, & in þe same nyȝt I wole ʒeue him a medicyn laxatif // Saue herof þou schalt take kepe if he be feble, 32 & his herte quake, & his pous falle, þan it is folie for to lete him

<sup>2</sup> growel, Lat. legumina. See *Prompt. Parv.*, "Growelle or grewelle, Ligumen."

<sup>3</sup> ameos. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. ammeos.

<sup>5</sup> oleum anetinum, oil of Fennel.

<sup>6</sup> Phillips. "Erysipelatodes, a Swelling like the former [Erysipelas], the Skin being of a darker Colour, and the Symptoms more gentle: a Bastard Erysipelas."

<sup>7</sup> ech mesel, Lat. ego vero. Compare *selwyllly*, *Prompt. Parv.*



blood or ȝeue him ony medicyn laxatif, saue take þe cure oonly in  
 goddis hand // ¶ I wole telle an ensample þat bifel in þe citee of  
 mediolanensis þat it mowe be ensample to þee & lernyng / þer was  
 4 a man of xxx. wynter oold, <sup>1</sup>& an antrax come vpon him in þe riȝt-  
 side of his necke, & he was so greet woxe aboute his necke & his  
 prote, & he was so swollen, þat þere was but litil difference bitwixe  
 þe gretnes of hise schuldris & his necke. & neþeles I fond his vertu  
 8 strong. & I wiste what sijknis it was bi a bladdre þat satt þer  
 vpon, & was in þe riȝt side of his necke, & þat was þe firste bigyn-  
 nyng of his sijknis / & neþeles þer is manye lechis of greet name  
 þat cowde not knowe þat passioun / Also I lete him blood in boþe  
 12 his armis, & drowe out blood ynow. & þo I dietide him as a man  
 þat hadde a feuer agu. & amorowe I ȝaf þe colature of fruit of  
 mirabolani citrini,<sup>2</sup> þe which þou schalt fynde in þe chapitre of  
 allopucia / Vpon þe enpostym þere þe bladdre was, I leide scabiose  
 16 grounden wiþ grese. I foond neuere bettere medicyns in þis caas þan  
 þese ben / For þe man was al dissolued of his sijknis of þe bren-  
 nyng & of þe akyng, saue þe place þat was to-swoollen, was not  
 þe lasse, & þe man was not þe more feblid for his laxatif, ne for no  
 20 medicyn þat he hadde / & on þe morowe I lete him blood in his  
 oon arm, <sup>3</sup>& ȝaue him a medicyn laxatif in lasse quantite þan I dide  
 rapere, & þan þe swellynge aswagide miche, & in þe place þere þe  
 bl[a]ddre was I fond a maner cruste as it were a þing þat were  
 24 brent with fier & was of þe brede of iiij. ynchis. & wiþinne a fewe  
 daies þe cruste was arerid vp, & þe pacient felide no greet greu-  
 aunce. & in þe same place þere þe bladdre was, þere was a deep  
 vlcus. & þoruþ þe greet hole I siz þe prote & þe gret veines, & I  
 28 putte yn myn hond / & I ȝaf þe pacient good norisching metis, &  
 I made hool vlcus wiþ mundificatiuis, til he was al hool bi þe help  
 of god //

¶ Pustule þat comeþ of humours corrupt as ignis persicus<sup>4</sup> &  
 32 miliaris,<sup>5</sup> & <sup>6</sup>ffornica<sup>7</sup> schal be purgid wiþ medicyns þat purgiþ colre

<sup>2</sup> MS. inserts *hinc*, referring to another chapter.

<sup>4</sup> *ignis persicus*, Herpes zoster (Dunghison). Phillips: "a Gangrene, it is also taken for a Carbuncle or a fiery Plague Sore."

<sup>5</sup> De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 61, Add. 27.944: "*amonge auctoures þis euil is i-clepid herpes milii oþer graunlesus, an euil ful of graynes. But swiche bleyneþ beþ litil and smale as greynes of mylie.*" Phillips: "*Herpes Miliaris, or Pustularis, a sort of yellow Bladders or Wheals, like Millet-Seed, that seize the Skin, cause much itching, and turn to eating Ulcers.*"

<sup>6</sup> MS. ¶ instead of &.

<sup>7</sup> MS. *ffornica*. Vigo Interpret. "Formica is a little excrescence, or

and leave the  
 cure of a  
 feeble patient  
 in the hands  
 of God.

The author  
 relates how

[<sup>1</sup> lf. 135]

he cured a  
 man, who  
 had a big  
 anthrax on  
 his neck;

first he bled  
 him,

then he used  
 several  
 medicines.

Nota

A scab  
 appeared  
 on the part,

and under-  
 neath a  
 deeply-rooted  
 ulcer, which  
 he cured with  
 cleansing  
 medicines.

Ignis per-  
 sicus, Miliaris  
 and Formica



are treated  
with purging  
medicines.

[2 lf. 136]

Strengthen  
the patient's  
heart.

herpes esti-  
omenes cura

Auicē

Apply a  
medicine  
which pro-  
tects the  
limb from  
corruption,  
and cauterize  
the slough.

[7 lf. 136, bk.]

& malancolie. & þat same medicyn schal purge humours þat be  
brent<sup>t</sup>, as fumus terre, cuscute, lappacium acutum, cene,<sup>1</sup> absinthium  
& opere mo / Also þou schalt voide þe matere wiþ medicyns þat  
comforten þe herte, & kepiþ þat þe venym ne smite not to þe 4  
herte; þan þou schalt cure þe place with þingis þat makip cold vpon  
þe place. & whanne vlcus is þeron þan it is no nede, saue drie it  
vp as it is aforseid in þe cure <sup>2</sup>of vlcera. Saue abouteforþ þou  
schalt leie colde þingis til þe cure be perfitli do / & þere come ony 8  
bifalling<sup>t</sup> þerto,<sup>3</sup> þan alwei ȝeue him medicyns for to comforte þe  
herte, þat ben forseid in antrace // Sumtyme tofore alle þinges  
pruna<sup>4</sup> ben good / And formicam þou schalt brenne / fforwhi a  
cauterie drawip out al þe matere þat is corrupt & waastiþ it awei. 12  
¶ Herpes esthiomenus<sup>5</sup> is curid after þe purgacioun of þe matere,  
þat þou schalt algatis take hede for to do / if his vertu be strong<sup>t</sup>.  
& þou schalt algate aboute þe sjuknes<sup>6</sup> leie a defensif of bole &  
terra sigillata & oile of ro. & vinegre / þis defensif, as seiþ .A., & I 16  
haue ofte preued it, þis defendip eueri lyme fro corrupcioun, & þis  
wole not suffre þat þe matere schal make noon vlceracioun ne no  
fretynge. & vpon þe place þat is corrupt & deed, þou schalt leie an  
hoot iren, & do awei alle þe partis þat ben corrupt. & þis þou myȝt 20  
do with a medicyne corosif, saue an hoot iren is bettere / Whanne  
þe rotid matere is aweie, þanne make clene þe place wiþ a mundi-  
ficatif of iuys of ache, & do þerto a litil mirre. & whanne þe place  
is wel clensid, þan do þerto a medicin <sup>7</sup>for to regendre fleisch, & 24  
þanne drie it vp /

### Of empostyms of þe heed //

¶ iij<sup>o</sup> co

**T**How<sup>3</sup> we han maad a general tale of enpostyms, neþeles apostym  
in eueri lyme haþ diuers curis / þerfore I wole make to eueri 28

outgrowynge in the Skynne, somewhat brode aboute the botome, which when  
it is scratched causeth as it were the styngynge of an ante, or pismare, and  
therefore it is also called in greke myrmecia."

<sup>1</sup> cene for sene.

<sup>3</sup> Lat. si praua superveniunt accidentia. . .

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: Aliquando super omnia adiuvat prunam et formicam urere. The  
translator misunderstood *pruna* (name of the disease) for *pruna* (plums).  
Compare page 208, note 2.

<sup>5</sup> Vigo Interpret. "If the substaunce be grosse, and aygre it vlcereth  
the skynne vnto the fleshe, & is called herpes esthiomenos, that is eatynge  
or gnawynge herpes."

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: sed ponendo supra locum sanum iuxta ægritudinem defen-  
suum. . .



- enpostym a diuers chapiter // ¶ I seie þat in þe skyn of a mannes  
 heed ben diuers enpostyms / If þere be<sup>1</sup> enpostym þerof sutil  
 fleume, ful of fleume as it schal be seid heraftir in þe chapitre of  
 4 bocium<sup>2</sup> / þis maner sijknes is engendrid bitwene þe skyn & the  
 fleisch, & it is su[m]what holow<sup>3</sup>, & ben clepid testudines for þe  
 lijknes of a beest þat is clepid so, & ben engendrid of hard fleume,  
 & ben, as it were, hard knottis þat were maad fast to þe scolle, as it  
 8 were hornis / For I seie a man came to me, & he hadde in his heed  
 vij. suche maner þingis in diuers placis, & summe þerof weren as  
 longe & as scharp as it were a gotis horn or þe lenkþe of a mannes  
 pombe, & þei weren greuous to þe man, & I hadde miche wondre  
 12 þat þer were noon vlcers in þe skyn / Whanne I siz wel þat þei  
 hadden her bigynnyng of þe scolle boon, I<sup>4</sup> wolde not entermete  
 þerwith of þe cure, & I counseilide him þat he schulde putte him  
 into no mannes cure for to cure him, for it þouȝte to me impossible.  
 16 ¶ þe curis of al þe enpostyms in þe heed, ben þese / If it be  
 of neische matere or of rotid matere, þan þou schalt not take hede  
 for to drie it wiþ mollificatiuis, þouȝ I seide so in enpostyms of  
 fleume in þe general chapitre; for þat myȝte schende<sup>5</sup> þe scolle wiþ  
 20 liquid mater or corrupt matere. & if þe matere þerof is hard, make  
 it neische wiþ maturatiuis, saue lete þou not it rotie to myche. &  
 or it be rotid to miche, opene it in þe maner of a triangle þus; for  
 þis empostym of þe heed for þe gretnes of þe skyn, and for it is ful  
 24 of pooris, it mai not wel be clensid, but if þe woundis were so  
 miche þat þe mundificatif myȝte come to þe botme. Whanne þe  
 enpostym is kutt in þe forseid maner, þanne avoide þe mater & fille  
 þe place al wiþ pecis wet in oil of rosis, & sugre molten þeron, &  
 28 alym & leie þis in þe botme þerof til<sup>6</sup> þe place be wel maad clene.  
 Aftirward wiþ vnguentum apostolorum & opere þingis þat engend-  
 rid fleisch, cure him as it is forseid in þe cure of vlcers þat ben  
 olde // ¶ Nodus is curid wiþ kutting of þe skyn endelongis vpon  
 32 þe place & drawe him out wiþ alle hise rotis. & if þer leueþ ony  
 rote of him, þan leie þeron þe poudre of affadillorum, or of sum

The Testu-  
dines are  
between the  
skin and the  
flesh, and are  
like hard  
knots.


<sup>3</sup>reta  
mirabilis

A man came  
to Lanfranc,  
with seven  
such knots  
situated on  
his skull.

[<sup>4</sup> ff. 137]

Lanfranc  
thought the  
cure impos-  
sible.

Treatment  
of Apostemas  
on the head.

If the swell-  
ing is hard,  
soften it with  
maturatives,  
open it,  
  
and cleanse  
the wound.

[<sup>6</sup> ff. 137, bk.]

**Nodus.**  
must be  
removed by  
cutting and  
by the use of  
a Corrosive.

<sup>1</sup> be, above line.

<sup>2</sup> This passage is corrupt. Lat.: Nam fiunt ibi apostemata a subtili phlegmate vel ab alia phlegmatis specie ut mucilaginosi et pulmosi et est sicut cancerosi bocii erit dictum.

<sup>3</sup> Vigo Chirurgery transl. Traheron, fol. 5: "The sayde Rhete mirabile is like a nette, and is therefore called Rhete, for thys pannicle is compounded onely wyth Arteries, as Guido hath declared."

<sup>5</sup> schende. Lat.: quia sic posset cranium inficere liquida materia.



Water in a child's head is fatal, when within the skull;

when outside the skull, it may be cured, with ointments, and caustics.

This affection occurs owing to the

[<sup>3</sup> lf. 138]

particular position of the child in the mother's womb.

liȝt corosif<sup>t</sup> or vnguentum viride, þat þe rotis þerof<sup>t</sup> mowe frete awei þerwiþ; & þan regendre & þan drie it vp // Watir þat is gaderid in children hedis,<sup>1</sup> ouþer it is wiþinne þe scolle or wiþoute þe scolle / If it be withynne þe scole, it semeþ to me so perilous, 4 þat I wole bitake þe cure to god / If þe watir be withoutforþ, it mai be curid wiþ anointing<sup>t</sup> of oile of camomille & solfre grounden togidere; & þanne make him .iiij. cauterijs: oon a litil aboue þe forehead, & oon bihinde þe nolle in þe welle<sup>2</sup> þerof<sup>t</sup>, & oon aboue þe 8 hindere celle. þese cauterijs wiþ þe forseid anoyntingis drieþ & waastiþ þe matere of þe watir // ¶ þe water þat comeþ in children hedis, is engendrid in þis manere / whanne <sup>3</sup>þe maris of a womman is watri, & þe child þat lijþ þerine lijþ foldyng<sup>t</sup> adounward his heed 12 vpon hise knees. & þan þe moisture falliþ adoun & fyndiþ a void place in þe childis heed & entriþ þerinne / & þis passion makip a child deed ofte, or he haue ony age for to be holpen /

/ Of enpostyms of þe rootis of a mannes eeris // 16

¶ .iiij. .co

An apostema on the roots of the ear occurs sometimes, when the patient is feeble.

It is often fatal.

[<sup>4</sup> lf. 138, bk.]

Begin the cure with mitigatives,

apply oil of bitter almonds.

**A** Postyme þat comeþ in a mannes eere or in þe rotis of a mannis eeren. & þis comeþ sumtyme in die cretico, whanne þat a mannes kynde is not so miȝti for to putte out þe gretnes of þe mater bi sote ne bi noon oper avoiding<sup>t</sup>, & þan kynde worchip 20 what it mai, & driueþ þe matere an hiȝ to þe heed & abidiþ in þe rotis of þe eeren, & þere it engendriþ apostym. & in þis place it is perilous, for it is so nyȝ þe heed & veynes & arterijs & neruys / þis manere enpostym ofte sleeþ a man whanne þe matere comeþ 24 violently // þe matere of þis enpostym, ouþer it is colre, or blood, or fleume, or malancoli; & alle þe signes herof ben aforseid / þe cure of <sup>4</sup>þis enpostym mai not bigynne with repercussiuis, saue it mote bigynne wiþ mitigatiuis, & with þingis þat puttiþ out þe 28 matere / Waische þe place wiþ a decoccioun of camomille soden þerinne / & þanne aftir þat anoynte þe same place with oile of camomille, & þan wete wolle in þe same oile & leie þervpon, & bi no maner leue þou not þat þou leie in his eere oile of bittir almaundis, 32 for it is a greet help // ¶ If þe mater be deep & it be hard for to drawe it out, þan it were good to sette vpon þe place a drie ventose

<sup>1</sup> Hydrocephalus and its cure is treated at some length by most of the ancient physicians. See *Paul. Aegineta*, ed. Adams, vol. II., p. 250. Our author's description is abridged from *Gulielm. de Salic.*, lib. I., cap. 1.

<sup>2</sup> *nelle*, Lat. *fontinella*.



- for to helpe to drawe out<sup>t</sup> þe matere, & aftir resolute þe matere & leie þerto mitigatiuis for to do awei þe akynge / ¶ If þe matere wole not<sup>t</sup> be resolved in þis maner, saue it<sup>t</sup> bigynneþ to be quittance þeron, If pus is formed, open the apostema, taking care not to injure a blood-vessel or a nerve.
- 4 þan wiþ tempere maturatiuis þat<sup>t</sup> ben not to hote, make þe enpostym quittance / Whanne þe place is wel rotid abide þou no brekyng<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> þe enpostym, saue opene þe place sotilly wiþ an instrument<sup>t</sup> þat is competent<sup>t</sup> þerto / & þou muste be wel war þat þou touche no veyne, ne
- 8 noon arterie, ne no senewe, for þerof<sup>t</sup> miȝt come <sup>1</sup>myche perel, for [1 lf. 139] þere ben nerues in þe same place, if<sup>t</sup> þei were kutt<sup>t</sup> or prickid, þe pacient<sup>t</sup> miȝte lese his vois for euere / & if<sup>t</sup> þere were ony veyne kutt<sup>t</sup> þerof<sup>t</sup>, þer miȝt come greet<sup>t</sup> perel þerof<sup>t</sup>. & whanne þe place is
- 12 opened, þan make þe place clene wiþ mundificatiuis, þat<sup>t</sup> schulen be Then cleanse the wound. seid in þe antidotarie / & whanne þe place is perfitli clene, þanne make þe fleisch wexe & do þe cure perfitli / For bi yuel curyng<sup>t</sup> in þis place miȝt engendre a festre, þat<sup>t</sup> ofte tyme comeþ of<sup>t</sup> an
- 16 enpostym /

### Apostyms of þe necke and of þe þrote /

- A** Postyms þat ben in þis place, or it<sup>t</sup> is wiþoutforþ in þe ¶ v<sup>o</sup>. c<sup>o</sup>. senewis, or in þe braun, or it<sup>t</sup> is wiþinneforþ bi þe place þat<sup>t</sup>
- 20 a mannes mete goiþ down, or bi þe þrote, or it<sup>t</sup> is bitwixe þe .ij. Apostemas of the neck or the throat, are either external or internal. placis in a place þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid ismon.<sup>2</sup> & comounli þe enpostyms þat<sup>t</sup> ben in þis place, comeþ of<sup>t</sup> blood, or of<sup>t</sup> fleume, & ful seelden it<sup>t</sup> comeþ of<sup>t</sup> colre, & more lattere of<sup>t</sup> malancoli. þe humours þat<sup>t</sup> ben
- 24 in þe cause,<sup>3</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> knowe bi signes aforseid / If<sup>t</sup> þe matere be In the former case, an out- in þe braun of<sup>t</sup> the necke wiþoutforþ, þat þou miȝt knowe <sup>4</sup>bi schew- [4 lf. 139, bk.] ing<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> þe enpostym wiþoutforþ. & bi þese signes þou schalt<sup>t</sup> knowe whanne þe enpostym is wiþoutforþ, if<sup>t</sup> þer is no letting<sup>t</sup> in ysophagus
- 28 þere þe mete schulde go adoun, & if<sup>t</sup> wijnd be not<sup>t</sup> stoppid, þan þou miȝt<sup>t</sup> wite wel þat þe enpostym is wiþoutforþ, & also bi þe schew- ward swelling will be seen, but the swallowing and breathing will not be affected. ing<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> is outward / And if<sup>t</sup> þe enpostym is wiþinne, þan þe If the apostema is internal, swallowing and breathing will be difficult. pacient<sup>t</sup> schal not<sup>t</sup> swolowe adoun his mete, ne drawe wel his breek /
- 32 If<sup>t</sup> þe enpostym þat<sup>t</sup> is wiþinne swelle greetly, his ȝen wolen swelle þerwiþ, & he schal not<sup>t</sup> suffre his tunge in his mouþ, & he ne schal

<sup>2</sup> ismon. *Sinonom. Barth.*, p. 26, "Ysinon est inter ysophagum et tracheam arteriam." Read *Ysmon*. From *ισθμός*, neck, narrow passage. See *ισμός* in *Stephanus Thesaur.* De propr. rer., lib. V., cap. 24, Add. 27,944, fol. 49 bk.: "& it happiþ þat þis euil matere is somtyme al i-gedred wiþinne þe skynne þat departiþ þe weye of þe breek from þe weye of þe mete & drynke, þat hatte isophagus & bredeþ squynancye, þat sleep in on day."

<sup>3</sup> See page 194, note 8.



Some physicians  
'break' this  
apostema  
with a piece  
of wood,  
but that is  
dangerous.

First, bleed  
the patient  
either from  
the Vena

[3 lf. 140]

Basilica or  
Mediana,

on the next  
day from a  
vein under  
the tongue,

then give  
a gargar-  
isme,  
mixed with  
the excre-  
ments of a  
sparrow, hen,  
dog, or a  
child.

The patient  
shall drink  
barley-water  
[8 lf. 140, bk.]

R

and eat a pre-  
paration of  
wheat-bran.

not speke, & þer wole go out miche spume of his moup / þanne  
summe lechis þat ben hardi wolen putte a smal tree in his prote &  
breke þe enpostym, & in þat maner þe pacient mai be delyuered ;  
saue þis maner worching is not sure, for in þis maner manie men 4  
dieþ, & þe deep comeþ not of þe sjuknes, saue it is defaute in þe  
leche<sup>1</sup> / þis maner sjuknes þat is so hid wiþinneforþ, it mai be helid  
wel in þe bigynnyng in þis maner<sup>2</sup> / If þe enpostym be hoot, þou  
schalt lete him blood in þe veine þat is clepid basilica, & if þe 8  
patient hap had þe<sup>3</sup> sjuknes longe or þou come to him, þan þou  
schalt lete him blood in þe middil veyne of þe arm þat is clepid  
mediana, & he schal blede so longe til he swoone almoost, & prin-  
cipali if he be strong & ful of fleisch / In þe .ij. dai þou schalt 12  
lete him blood in þe veines vndir þe tunge / & loke þat þou do no  
þing aftir her counseil þat seien þat in þe firste bigynnyng þou  
schalt lete him blood in veines vndir þe tunge, & after þat in þe  
heed veine or in sum oþere place. For in þis manere letting blood, 16  
if his bodi were replet, he miȝt liȝtli be achekid // ¶ Whanne þou  
hast lete him blood as it is aforseid, þan make him a gargarisme  
wiþ a decoccioun of ro., sumac,<sup>4</sup> balaustiarum, lentium, & galla-  
rum wiþ þe which be distemperid þerwiþ diameron,<sup>5</sup> or tordis of 20  
a sparrow, or of an hen, or þe tord of an hound þat etiþ manie  
boonys & noon oþer mete,<sup>6</sup> or a childis tord dried while it is souk-  
yng. ¶ Also take an houndis tord þat etiþ oonly boonis & of  
hennis, satureye<sup>7</sup> ana, & make þerof poudre & distempere it wiþ 24  
water & hony, & make þerof a gargarisme, & he schal drinke water  
of barley, & he schal no þing ete, saue a þing maad of wheete-<sup>8</sup> bran  
in þis maner<sup>9</sup> / Take newe bran of whete & caste þeron hoot water  
& hele it & lete it stonde so an hour, & þanne grinde it in a mortar 28  
wiþ a pestel & cole it, & þanne seþe it wiþ a litil salt & ȝeue it þe

<sup>1</sup> it is defaute in þe leche, Lat. medico imputatur.

<sup>2</sup> Much of our author's treatment is borrowed from *Avicenna*, Lib. III., Fen. 19, Cap. 11, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 188.

<sup>4</sup> *sumac*, Fr. Sumac; Arab. Summāq. "*Sumach* or *Sumack*, a kind of rank-smelling Shrub that bears a black Berry, made use of by Curriers to dress their Leather." Phillips.

<sup>5</sup> *diameron*, διαμώρων. *Vigo* Interpretation, "*Diamoron*, a confection made of mulberries."

<sup>6</sup> By this kind of food the *album græcum*, the white dung of a dog is produced.

<sup>7</sup> *satureye*, savory. Wr. Wül. 609, 30 (xv), sauereye.

<sup>9</sup> Lat.: nihilque comedat nisi candarusium factum de furfure in hunc modum. *Matth. Sylv.*: "*Candarus vel candarusium*—est ordeum cui non est cortex," from χόνδρος, grain, groat.



- pacient / & do þeron penidis.<sup>1</sup> & if he mai not swolowe it adoun,  
 þanne sette a litil ventuse in þe welle of his necke<sup>2</sup> with fier & þan  
 he schal swolowe, & anoynte al his necke tofore & bihinde wiþ oile  
 4 of camomille. & vpon þe anoyntyng leie wolfe vnwaischen,<sup>3</sup> &  
 make a sutil plastre of a nest of irundinis, & is good for þe  
 squinacie,<sup>4</sup> & is maad in þis maner / Take a nest of irundinis &  
 boile it longe in watir, & þanne cole it þoruȝ a seue þat þe grete  
 8 gobetis moun be cast awei / þan take þe rotis of lillie & seþe hem  
 in oper water & rotis of bismalue, & þe rote of brionie & leues of  
 malue & bismalue, & violet, & peritorie.<sup>5</sup> & whanne þei ben  
 boild, grinde hem wel, & medle hem wiþ water of irundinum þat  
 12 is forseid, & do þerto leueyne & mele of fenigreci, & þan do þerto  
 oile or grese, & make herof an enplastre / þis enplastre is good to  
 resolute enpostym & make it quittance, wheþer<sup>6</sup> it be wiþinne or wiþ-  
 oute, & make it abroad upon a cloof & leie it vpon hoot. &  
 16 anointing is good wiþ oile of camomille medlid wiþ butter þat it  
 be oold & not salt, & after þe anoyntyng leie þervpon wolfe  
 vnwaische // ¶<sup>7</sup> If þe enpostym be wiþinne, it is good þat me leie  
 þerto no repercussiuus, saue vse gargarismis maad in þis manere / Rȝ,  
 20 ficus siccas, semen malue, semen lini, seþe þese in water & þan cole  
 hem, & make þerof a gargarisme; or water of figis medlid wiþ  
 butter, þat makip maturatif eueri maner enpostym.

Anoint his neck,

and apply a plaster made from a swallow's nest.

R

Irundines  
id est  
swallowes.How to pre-  
pare this  
plaster.[<sup>6</sup> lf. 141]In case of an  
inward apos-  
tema use a  
gargle.

R

<sup>1</sup> *penidis*, Vigo Interpr. "*Penidie* are made of the Apothecaries wyth suggre wrethen lyke ropes." Fr. *penide*; Lat. *penidium*, from *πενιον*: spool on which the woof is wound.—Compare *diapenidion* in *Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat, 1886, II. p. 77, note.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *tofore* inserted but deleted.

<sup>3</sup> *wolfe vnwaischen*, *vn*, in margin. Lat. *lana succida*. Lewis, *Latin Dict.*, gives a reference from *App. Apologia*: recens lana tonsa succida appellata est.

<sup>4</sup> *squinacie*, Lat. *squintia*, quinsy. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 357, note.

<sup>5</sup> *peritorie*, Lat. *parietaria*; wall-pellitory.

<sup>7</sup> The passage from lf. 141, l. 5 till lf. 141, bk., l. 8 (p. 220. l. 15), is repeated in lf. 143, with some alterations. The corresponding words from the Latin are quoted to show the independent character of the two versions. l. 18, 19. If þe — — manere] It is good if þe enpostym be wiþinne or þe more partie be withynne, & if it mai not be resolued ne do awei wiþ repercussiuus, þan it is good to vse gargarisms, þat ben maturatifs, maad in þis maner. (*Bonum est etiam si apostema fuerit interius, aut maior eius pars, cum tempus prolongatur quod non repercutitur nec resoluitur: uti maturatiuis gargarismatibus ut hoc.*) 20, 21. seþe — — cole hem] putte hem in water & seþe hem in water (*coque in aqua*). 21. or] & medle þerwiþ. 21, 22. medled wiþ butter] & butter & wijn. þat makip — — enpostym] þis wole make enpostym þat is withynne in þe þrote maturatif (*maturat omne intrinsecum apostema siue in gutture siue in stomacho siue in intestinis fuerit generatum*).



If this apostema shows itself outwardly, it must be carefully opened and cleansed.

[<sup>2</sup> If. 141, bk.]

Ranula vnder the toung an apostema that affects the breathing and swallowing.

A Lady had an internal and external swelling on her neck,

Whanne þe enpostym is rotid; þat þou schalt knowe bi þe aswaging<sup>1</sup> of þe akyng, & if þe enpostym schewe wipoutforþ, þanne opene it wip an instrument, & be war þat þou hurte no senewe, ne no veine, ne noon arterie. & whanne it is opened, make it clene 4 wip mundificatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie / And if þe enpostym be wipinneforþ, þan þou schalt not breke it wip þis gargarisme þat is aforseid, saue þou schalt make a gargarism þat haly vside / Take galle, acacie, psidiarum, balaustie, aluminis 8 iamini<sup>1</sup> & seþe hem in water & cole it & make <sup>2</sup>þerof a gargarism, for þis gargarism wole breke enpostym / Whanne þe enpostym is broke, þan þou schalt bringe out þe mater wip hoot water, & dissolue þerinne butter & oile of violets, & make þerof a gargarism, & 12 lete him vse þis gargarism til al þe matere be drawe out, & þan after þat make him a gargarism of liquiricie,<sup>3</sup> yreos & tamarisci / If þe matere be coold, þan þou muste vse hottere gargarism, & þan þou muste vse mundificatiuis þat per be þerinne mirre, sarcocolle,<sup>4</sup> 16 þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie in þe chapter of mundificatiuis. ¶ It falliþ sumtyme þat for reume þat falliþ adoun of a mannis heed, þer wexiþ in þe rote of þe tunge a maner round þing in þe gretnes of an almaunde, & lett iþ a man þat he mai not wel 20 drawe his breeþ ne ete his mete / & in þis maner þou schalt cure him as it is forseid wip þingis þat voidiþ þe matere & wip resoluynge þingis. ¶ I wole sette in þis place a cure þat bifel in þe citee of mediolanensis of a ladi þat was .L. wynter oold, & hadde a squi- 24 nacie of fleume þat occupiede al hir necke tofore wipinne & wipoute,

1, 2. þe aswaging] cesing. and if] if. 2. schewe] be seen. 3, 4. be — arterie] be wel war of veynes & arterijs. 4. whanne it is opened] þan. 5. and] om. 6, 8. wipinneforþ — — galle] al wipinne & wole not breke wip þe gargarism þat is aforseid of butter & figis & water & wijū, þan þou schalt breke him wip a medicyn þat haly þe abbot vside as wip a gargarism of gallarum. (*Si fuerit intra, nec rumpatur: cum gargarismate prædicto de butyro, ficum aqua et vino rumpatur cum ingenio subtili Haly ab. scilicet cum gargarismate stypticorum sicut decoctionis gallarum.*) 9. & seþe — — þerof a gargarism] om. 10. wole breke] brekiþ þe. 11. þan þou schalt bringe out þe mater] drawe out þe quittance. 11, 12. & — butter] & a litil butter þerinne. 12. & make þerof] & herof he schal make. 12, 13. & lete him vse þis gargarism] om. matere be drawe out & þan] quittance be drawen aweī after þat. 14. of liquorice — tamarisci] wip liquoris & thamarisci soden in watir.

<sup>1</sup> *Sinonom. Barth.*, p. 1, "*Alumen iamem, A. scissum, Alimen de pluma, idem.*"—*Matth. Sylv.* "*Iamen est prouincia Iameni uel Aliamen.*"

<sup>3</sup> *liquiricie*, lycoryce, *Pr. Parv.*, p. 303. See *lyquoris* in 2nd version.

<sup>4</sup> *Sarcocolla* "Is the Gumme or liquore of a tree growyng in Persia," *Halle. Table*, p. 109.



- <sup>1</sup>saue wipoutforþ þe swelling<sup>t</sup> was moost<sup>t</sup>, & þe womman miȝte not<sup>t</sup> [<sup>1</sup> lf. 142]  
speke, ne swolowe in no mete. & þis womman was vndir þe cure of she could  
neither speak  
nor eat,  
a ȝong<sup>t</sup> man þat<sup>t</sup> was my scoler, and he cowde not<sup>t</sup> wel fare þerwip,  
4 & þo he was in dispeir of<sup>t</sup> hir lijf<sup>t</sup>, I was sent<sup>t</sup> after & foond hir in  
wickide staat,<sup>2</sup> for sche eet<sup>t</sup> no mete in manye daies tofore, & sche nor sleep for  
fear of  
choking.  
durste not<sup>t</sup> slepe for drede, lest sche schulde be achekid. þan I  
tastide hir pous, & it<sup>t</sup> was wondir feble, & I tastide þe place of<sup>t</sup> þe  
8 enpostym, & I knewe wel þat<sup>t</sup> sche schulde be raþere achekid þan  
þe enpostym wolde breke wipoute or withynne, for þe matere was  
so greet<sup>t</sup> / & þan I took a rasour, & lokide where þe matere was Lanfranc  
opened the  
apostema  
with a razor,  
where it was  
most ripe.  
moost<sup>t</sup> gaderid for to engendre quittance, & it<sup>t</sup> was moost<sup>t</sup> able vndir  
12 þe chyn, & I felide þe place wip myn hond & tastide it<sup>t</sup> aboute þat<sup>t</sup>  
I miȝte be war of<sup>t</sup> nerues & arterijs, & þere I made a wounde, &  
þere I drowe out<sup>t</sup> matere þat<sup>t</sup> was corrupt<sup>t</sup>, & it<sup>t</sup> was foul stynkyng  
matere, & al miȝte I not<sup>t</sup> avoide anon. & þo þe pacient<sup>t</sup> hadde The patient  
could breathe,  
[<sup>3</sup> lf. 142, bk.]  
16 bettere hir breek, & hir pous was confortid,<sup>3</sup> for þe lungis miȝte take  
yn eir, & þerwip þe herte was confortid, & þan I ȝaf<sup>t</sup> hir broþ, &  
þat<sup>t</sup> ȝede out<sup>t</sup> þoruȝ þe wounde þe moost<sup>t</sup> part<sup>t</sup>. þo I studiede how  
I miȝte best<sup>t</sup> do, & I lete make a pipe of<sup>t</sup> siluir, and putte it<sup>t</sup> in at<sup>t</sup>  
20 hir mouþ & passide forþere þan þe wounde was, þat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> miȝte fulfille  
þe place of<sup>t</sup> þe þrote. & þan I leide al aboute hir necke mundifi-  
cativis & maturativis for to quittance þe toþer deel of<sup>t</sup> þe matere, &  
so I kepte it<sup>t</sup> til þer come out<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> þe wounde a greet<sup>t</sup> gobet<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> Lanfranc in-  
troduced a  
silver tube,  
and the gan-  
grenous parts  
were removed  
by suppurati-  
on.  
24 viscous matere & stynkyng<sup>t</sup>, & was schape as it<sup>t</sup> were a greet<sup>t</sup> gutt<sup>t</sup>.  
& þerinne þe firste matere was engendrid, & whanne þis was oute,  
þe stynking<sup>t</sup> wente awei þerwip, & þe womman bigan to be stronger,  
& whanne þe wounde was maad clene I driede it<sup>t</sup> vp & soudide it<sup>t</sup>;  
28 & in þis maner þe pacient<sup>t</sup> was maad hool. ¶ Whanne þou fyndist When cold  
matter sup-  
purates, open  
the apostema,  
before it  
breaks by  
itself.  
coold matere rotid in þe forseid placis, þou schalt<sup>t</sup> not<sup>t</sup> abide til þe  
enpostym breke him-silf<sup>t</sup>, saue þou schalt<sup>t</sup> opene it<sup>t</sup> as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid /  
& if it<sup>t</sup> be not<sup>t</sup> rotid, þan make it<sup>t</sup> more maturatif<sup>t</sup>, & opene it<sup>t</sup> as it<sup>t</sup>  
32 is aforseid / And þis þou muste wite þat<sup>t</sup> þou miȝte <sup>4</sup>not<sup>t</sup> abide to [<sup>4</sup> lf. 143]  
longe wip þe openyng<sup>t</sup>: for þe herte & þe spiritual lymes ne mowe  
not<sup>t</sup> longe endure wipouten eir.

<sup>2</sup> in wickide staat, in statu pessimo.



/ Of enpostym of subcilio /<sup>1</sup>

¶ vjo. co.  
If there is a  
hot apostema  
in the arm-  
pit, bleed  
from the  
Vena nigra  
or basilica.  
If the apos-  
tema is cold,  
use mild  
medicines,

and open it,  
when it is  
ripe.

[<sup>4</sup> lf. 144]

bubo.  
is difficult  
to heal.

Galion.

**T**HIS maner of enpostym hap no nede of repercussiuus for causis  
pat<sup>1</sup> ben aforseid, saue it<sup>2</sup> is greet<sup>3</sup> nede pat<sup>4</sup> he be avoidid wel  
wip purgaciouns / And if<sup>5</sup> þe enpostym be hoot<sup>6</sup>, þou schalt<sup>7</sup> lete him 4  
blood in a veyne pat<sup>8</sup> is clepid vena nigra,<sup>3</sup> or in þe veyne pat<sup>9</sup> is  
clepid basilica in þe arm. & if<sup>10</sup> þe matere be coold, þan avoide þe  
matere wip medicyns maad of turbit<sup>11</sup> or sum oþer medicyn pat<sup>12</sup>  
falliþ þerfore. & as myche as þou miȝt<sup>13</sup> þou schalt<sup>14</sup> take þerto wip 8  
medicyns pat<sup>15</sup> haue not<sup>16</sup> to greet<sup>17</sup> drawyng<sup>18</sup> / For if<sup>19</sup> þou leiest<sup>20</sup> þerto  
þingis pat<sup>21</sup> ben to strong<sup>22</sup> drawing<sup>23</sup>, þan þe enpostym wole wexe þe  
more / þerfore þou schalt<sup>24</sup> anoynte him wip oile of camomille, &  
leie þervpon wolle vnwaischen. & his dieting<sup>25</sup> schal be sotil. & if<sup>26</sup> 12  
þis suffise not<sup>27</sup>, þan leie vpon a maturatif / & whanne it<sup>28</sup> is rotid þou  
schalt<sup>29</sup> opene<sup>30</sup> it<sup>31</sup>, & principali if<sup>32</sup> it<sup>33</sup> be of coold matere. Saue if<sup>34</sup> 5  
þere be glandule þeron, as it<sup>35</sup> falliþ ofte, & it<sup>36</sup> be not<sup>37</sup> ouir al rotid,  
as in oon place hard an oþir place neische, þan þou schalt<sup>38</sup> haue þis 16  
in certein, pat<sup>39</sup> þis passioun schal be clepid bubo, & þe cure þerof<sup>40</sup> is  
hard.<sup>6</sup> For if<sup>41</sup> þou drawist<sup>42</sup> out<sup>43</sup> þe matere pat<sup>44</sup> is neische,<sup>7</sup> þe matere  
pat<sup>45</sup> is hard is yuel to defie. & ofte þer comeþ þerof<sup>46</sup> sclirosis or a  
festre, & it<sup>47</sup> wole make a man yuel disposid & feuerous, as G. seip.<sup>8</sup> 20  
& þerfore aswage þe akyng<sup>48</sup> & þan make rotyng<sup>49</sup> wip maturatiuis;  
for þe matere pat<sup>50</sup> is rotid wole helpe to rotie þe matere pat<sup>51</sup> is hard.  
& whanne it<sup>52</sup> is al neische þanne opene it<sup>53</sup> / If<sup>54</sup> it<sup>55</sup> so be pat<sup>56</sup> it<sup>57</sup> breke  
bi it-silf<sup>58</sup> or it<sup>59</sup> be ful rotid, þan do þerto mundificatiuis, & vpon þe 24  
place pat<sup>60</sup> is hard leie maturatiuis, & kepe wel þe place pat<sup>61</sup> is open  
fro festrynge. Mundificatiuis & maturatiuis þou schalt<sup>62</sup> fynde in þe  
antidotarie pleyulier.

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: De apostemate sub titillico, id est sub ascellis. The translator made *subcilio* out of *sub ascellis*; *titillicum*, arm-pit, from *titillo*, tickle.

<sup>2</sup> is, above line.

<sup>3</sup> Matth. Sylv.: "Nigra uena, purpurea, media communis." V. media = V. mediana.

<sup>5</sup> save if, Lat. hoc saluo, si esset . . .

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: tunc nullam habes viam tutam, quum tunc est bubo, cuius cura est difficilis.

<sup>7</sup> MS. inserts &.

<sup>8</sup> Lat.: "totum corpus in mala tenet dispositione febris et doloris; tamquam qui ad suam salutem, si nisi unam habuerit viam, ut dicit Galienus velit nolit, per eam, etsi mala fuerit, pertransibit." A more accurate translation of this passage is given in Sl. 2463 (xv. cent.) in a treatise on Surgery compiled from various authors, in which several chapters of Lanfranc's work are embodied. Ib. fol. 110 b.: "And as Galyene seith, he that hath but oone weye to his hele allthouȝe þat weye be nat good, he muste holde hit wille he nylle he."



An enpostyme of þe helpers /<sup>1</sup>

- T**His enpostym if it be hoot, þan lete him blood in þe arm  
 aforzens, & not in þe same side in þe veyne þat is clepid  
 4 basilica, & þan þou muste surely leie þerto repercussiuus,<sup>2</sup> & if reper-  
 cussiuus suffisen not, þan resolute it & leie maturatiuus þerto, & þan  
 abide til it be perfitli<sup>3</sup> quitturid, but if þe matere be so violent  
 þat it were in poynt<sup>4</sup> to schende þe lyme, þan opene it & be wel  
 8 war of the braun þat is in þat place / Manie men þat ben vnkun-  
 nyngt & supposen þat place to be fer fro ony noble lyme,<sup>5</sup> makip  
 þeron a deep kuttyngt, & supposip to haue gret worschip þerof; &  
 manie idiotis wolen preise hem<sup>6</sup> wel þerfore. & þan þe lacertis þerof  
 12 ben hurt; & whanne þe lacertis ben soudid azen, þan þe lyme þat it  
 seruede fore schal be contract, wherfore þe mannes arm mai be lost  
 in sum partie or in al / þerfore whanne þou wolt kutte þis en-  
 postym, þou schalt but kutte abouteforþ in þe skyn, & not to depe  
 16 bi no maner wei for drede of þe braun, & of senewis, & of veynes  
 & arterijs, & whanne þe place is opened, þan leie þerto mundifi-  
 catiuus. If þe openyngt be nyȝ þe elbowe, & þouȝ þe enpostym be  
 moost quitturid, þere be wel war þat þou opene not þe enpostym  
 20 aboute þe elbowe .iiij. fyngris brede, neiȝer<sup>7</sup> wiȝinne ne wiȝoute. &  
 also nyȝ þe poynt of þe elbowe it is perilous, for it is gret hap if  
 it be euere soudid. & þouȝ it be soudid, þe mouynge of his arme  
 schal be lost. If þer falle ony enpostym in þis place, & it come of  
 24 greet matere so þat his bodi be replet, þan he mote haue greet  
 avoidyngt wiȝ laxatiuus, & þan resolute þe matere, and worche as it  
 is aforseid in þe general chapter. In þe same maner þou schalt  
 cure þe enpostym of his armis & of hise hondis.
- 28 ¶ Panariciu<sup>8</sup> is an enpostym þat is in þe heed of a mannes  
 fyngir aboute þe nail / & is swiȝe hoot, & greuou, & reed, & ful of  
 fier, & sumtyme it makip a man to haue þe feuere, & sumtyme it  
 fretip awei al þe poynt of a mannes fyngir / þe firste cure of þis  
 32 enpostym is, þat first þou schalt lete him blood, so þat alle þingis

¶ vijo. co/

In case of an  
apostema on  
the arm,  
bleed the  
Basilic Vein,  
[2 lf. 144, bk.]and open the  
apostema  
when it is  
ripe.Unskillful  
physicians,  
in cutting too  
deep, hurt the  
muscles, and  
so the patient  
may lose his  
arm.

[7 lf. 145]

panariciu<sup>m</sup>,  
an apostema  
of the fingers,  
near the  
nails.Treatment:  
First bleed  
the patient,<sup>1</sup> Lat. De apostematibus adiutorii.<sup>3</sup> curid, erased.<sup>4</sup> in poynt, Lat.: nisi materia esset adeo violenta quod esset ad corruptionem membri parata. "And in such poynt the body bilcuth." Wright, *Popular Treatise*, p. 140.—"Engelond & normandie. in god point he broȝte." *Rob. of Glouc.*, 8868. Compare Fr. embonpoint.<sup>5</sup> MS. inserts &.<sup>6</sup> silf, erased. Lat.: & inde laudantur ab aliquibus idiotis.<sup>8</sup> Vigo Interpret.: "Panaritium is an aposteme about the rootes of the nayles, and it is called in Greke Paronichia; in latyn reduuia." See Dufr. s. v. redubiæ.



if his condition allows, then apply a plaster, compresses or an ointment.

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 145, bk.]

falle *perfore* as elde & strenkþe & *custum*. & þan þou schalt make him an enplastre of vinegre & opium, & vpon þe plastre þou schalt leie a lynnene cloop wet in a decoccioun of psillij, or anoynte it wip an oynement þat is coold. & in<sup>1</sup> al maner þou schalt<sup>2</sup> take hede to 4 do awei þe greet hete & saue his fyngir fro corrupcioun / If þe akinge & þe brennyng go not awei in þis maner, & it be in wei for to quittance,<sup>3</sup> þan leie þervpon scabiose grounden wip grese & do þe cure þerto, as þou schalt fynde in þe cure of antrax & carbunculis. 8 & enpostyms þat comeþ in ioynctis þou schalt fynde in her propre place of akyng of ioynctes /

### Apostym wipoutforþ aboute þe spaudis and þe gibbsitees<sup>4</sup> //

12

¶ viij<sup>o</sup>. c<sup>o</sup>.

If there is an apostema on the shoulders, purge the patient,

and open it when it is ripe.

[<sup>6</sup> lf. 146]

If a ripe apostema breaks by itself, a fistula will arise.

Treat this fistula with mundificatives by means of a syringe, after having widened the hole of the fistula by a tent.

A Postym þat comeþ aboute the spaudlis wipoutforþ, leie þou noon *repercussif* þerto, saue it is better to drawe þe matere outward. First þou schalt purge him, for it is greet nede in þis place, & þan þou schalt leie þerto *resoluinge* þingis & *maturatiuis*; 16 & whanne þe enpostym is rotid þou schalt not abide, to it breke it-silf,<sup>5</sup> & *principali* in a coold cause, saue þou schalt opene þe enpostym & drawe out þe quittance, & þan þou schalt leie þerto *mundificatiuis*, & fulfille þe cure as it is aforseid / In þis place þou 20 schalt take<sup>6</sup> hede þat ofte tyme whanne þe enpostym is quitturid & is not opened wipoutforþ, þan it brekiþ inward bitwene þe .ij. ribbis, & whanne it is to-broke, þe pacient felip but litil greuauunce þerof, & þan þe quittance leueþ wipinne, & in long tyme herof comeþ a 24 festre. *perfore* þou schalt not abide til it breke it-silf outward, saue þou schalt opene it whanne it is quitturid, & þan leie þerto *mundificatiuis* & cure it vp, as it is aforseid in opere enpostyms / ¶ If it so be þat þere engendre a festre þeron, or it be maad clene 28 & entre inward, þan he mote vse *waischingis* þat ben *mundificatif*, & caste it in wip an instrument maad in þe maner of a clisterie. & if þe hole þerof be streit wipoutforþ, þan þou schalt putt yn a tente of þe pip of eldre, or of a sponge, or of *malum terre*,<sup>7</sup> or 32

<sup>1</sup> in, above line.

<sup>3</sup> in wei for to quittance, Lat. in via maturationis.

<sup>4</sup> *Gibbositas*, tumour. *Dufr. Gloss.*—"Gibbosity, a bunching or standing out of any part, especially of the Back."—Phillips.

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: non expecta crepationem per se.

<sup>7</sup> "*Malum terre*, ciclamen, panis porcinus id. g<sup>e</sup> dilnote and erthenote." *Alphita*, p. 107. mal. t. = galluc. Wr. Wü., 133. 20.



- brionie, or gencian, & putte into þe hole of þe festre. & þis wole make þe hole of þe festre to wexe more wide þan it was, þat þe ende of þe instrument mowe be putt þat schal be schape in þe  
 4 maner of <sup>1</sup>a clisterie. & þanne þou schalt seþe hony & mirre in <sup>[1 lf. 146, bk.]</sup> watir, so þat þer be .x. partis of water, & of hony .ij. partis, & of mirre .ij. partis, & if þou doist þerto ysope & sauge, it wole be þe bettir / Sumtyme it is good for to do wijn in þe stide of watir, &  
 8 principali if þe place be wiþouten ony hete. & þis decoccioun þou schalt caste into þe festre wiþ an instrument as it is aforseid, & make þat þe pacient turne hidir & þidir, vpward & dounward, þat it mowe waische wel þe place þere þe quittance is. & þan make þe  
 12 patient turne & ligge vpon þe hole of þe festre, & make him cowþe þat al þe quittance mai goon out wiþ þe decoccioun. & whanne it is al oute, þan þou schalt make him a tent & anoynte it in oile þat þe  
 wounde close not togidere. & þus þou schalt worche, til þou se þe  
 16 waisching come out of þe festre withoute ony quittance. & whanne þe festre is al clene, þan þou schalt fulfille þe cure with oynementis þat wolen regendre fleisch & fulfille þe cure as it is aforseid / If it  
 so be þat þe wei of þe festre þat goiþ in & out <sup>2</sup>be bicom hard &  
 20 callous so þat it be a verri festre, þan þou muste hete an hoot yren þat it be as greet as þe hole of þe festre & brenne al þe hardnes þerof, & aftirward make þe cruste falle awei with buttir & opere þingis, & þanne make it clene, & þan drie it & soude it.  
 24 ¶ Also it bifallip þat children han grete bocchis in her brest, & þat comeþ of cowþinge þat puttip out þe matere, & also it comeþ of greet wynd þat puttip out þe matere / þe cure herof in þe firste  
 bigynnyng is in þis maner for to aswage cowþing, as almaundis  
 28 grounden wiþ penidis & temperid with a decoccioun of fenel, & þis he schal vse / Also take swete almaundis .ij. partis, dragaganti,<sup>4</sup> semen citoniorum<sup>5</sup> ana, oon parti, Iulip quod sufficit. & make herof a souping medicyn,<sup>6</sup> þat it be as picke as hony. & whanne  
 32 þe cowþinge is aswagid, þan make him a baþ wiþ rotis of altea, &

Keep the wound dilated until it is perfectly cleansed.

When the passage of  
<sup>[2 lf. 147]</sup>

the fistula is callous, use the hot iron.

Mitigatio<sup>3</sup>  
 Tussis

Children have apostemas in their chest in consequence of coughing and of wind in their body.

Allay the cough,

and apply a lotion.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *Metegacho*.

<sup>4</sup> Vigo Interpr.: "*Dragagantum*. Tragacantha is a brode. & a woddy rote appearyng about the earth, wheroute manye lowe braunches sprynge, spreading themselues al about. There cleaueth to thys rote, a gummy liquour of a bright colour, & somewhat swete in tast, which they cal comunly dragagantum."

<sup>5</sup> *citonium* = *Cotonea malus*, *Cydonea*, "Quince." Wr. Wü., 13, 19. "*Citonium*, goodaepel."

<sup>6</sup> *a souping medicyn*, Lat. *medicina sorbillis*.



leues of<sup>t</sup> malue, & fenigrec, & lyne seed soden in watir, & þis schal  
 be cast<sup>t</sup> vpon þe enpostym wiþ a vessel holden an hiȝe þere from /  
 [1 lf. 147, bk.] þanne aftirward þou schalt<sup>t</sup> <sup>1</sup>dissolue þe matere & make it<sup>t</sup> neische  
 with medycyns þat<sup>t</sup> ben forseid in hard enpostyms, & þan cure it<sup>t</sup> vp 4  
 as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid in þe enpostyms of<sup>t</sup> wijnd. ¶ A greet<sup>t</sup> boch þat<sup>t</sup>  
 comeþ of<sup>t</sup> þe passioun of<sup>t</sup> þe riggeboon, whanne þei ben of<sup>t</sup> þe ioynct,  
 is incurable whanne it<sup>t</sup> is confermed /

Of an enpostym apperinge in þe mouþ of þe stomac / 8

¶ ix<sup>o</sup> c<sup>o</sup>  
 If there is an  
 Apostema at  
 the stomach,  
 the liver, or  
 the spleen,  
 strengthen  
 the affected  
 part,

apply re-  
 solving  
 medicines,  
 but beware  
 of repellents.

[3 lf. 148]

This apos-  
 tema easily  
 gets indu-  
 rated, and  
 causes  
 dropsy.

**W**Hanne þere schewiþ an enpostym in þe mouþ of þe stomac  
 & aboute þe regioun of<sup>t</sup> þe lyuer & of<sup>t</sup> þe splene: þou;  
 summen wollen take hede to þe contrarie, bi my general rule<sup>2</sup> it<sup>t</sup> is  
 good & profitable to comforte þe place wiþ oile of<sup>t</sup> mastic, & oile of<sup>t</sup> 12  
 spica, & oile of<sup>t</sup> lilie, & wiþ cold enplastris of<sup>t</sup> rosis, & of<sup>t</sup> absinthio,  
 squinanto, cipero, citonijs wiþ mele of<sup>t</sup> barli & oþere þingis. & þou  
 schalt<sup>t</sup> be wel war of<sup>t</sup> repercussiuis, whanne þe enpostym is ny; ony  
 principal lyme, saue þou schalt<sup>t</sup> leie þerto resoluyng<sup>t</sup> & maturatif<sup>t</sup> 16  
 þingis. & loke þat<sup>t</sup> þei be not<sup>t</sup> medlid wiþ no þingis þat<sup>t</sup> ben reper-  
 cussif<sup>t</sup>; for if<sup>t</sup> þou leidist<sup>t</sup> repercussiuis vpon þe stomac, or <sup>3</sup>þe  
 lyuere, or þe splene, þei wolde be enfeblid þerwiþ, & to al þe accioun  
 of<sup>t</sup> þe bodi wolde be enpeirid; for þese lymes serueþ principaly for 20  
 to norische al þe bodi / þerfore þou schalt<sup>t</sup> not<sup>t</sup> vse in þis caas pure  
 maturatiuis, ne pure repercussiuis, ne colde þingis / What<sup>t</sup> schalt<sup>t</sup>  
 þou do in þis caas? þou schalt<sup>t</sup> awoide þe matere, & þou schalt<sup>t</sup> com-  
 forte þe place with stiptikis, & tempere attractiuis, & do awei þe 24  
 matere. & if<sup>t</sup> þou miȝt<sup>t</sup> not<sup>t</sup>, þan resolue þe matere, for it<sup>t</sup> is greet<sup>t</sup>  
 perel<sup>4</sup> of<sup>t</sup> þis enpostym, for it<sup>t</sup> wole liȝtli turne in to sclirosym, &  
 þan it<sup>t</sup> wole be hard to resolue, & aftirward it<sup>t</sup> wole be cause of<sup>t</sup> þe  
 dropesie / þerfore if<sup>t</sup> þou seest<sup>5</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> þe enpostym bicomē hard, þan 28  
 þou muste leie þerto mollificatiuis & wiþ comfortatiuis. & þou muste  
 be in þis caas ful wijs. & whanne þe enpostym is maturid, þan  
 opene it<sup>t</sup> as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid, & leie þerto mundificatiuis & cure vp þe  
 enpostym as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid. 32

// Of an enpostym þat comeþ in iguine .id est þe  
 gryndis

¶ x. c<sup>o</sup>/

[5 lf. 148, bk.]

**A**Postym comeþ often time in iguine for vlcera of<sup>t</sup> þe ȝerde & of<sup>t</sup>  
 þe feet<sup>t</sup>, for <sup>6</sup>þe place is discending<sup>t</sup> adoun of<sup>t</sup> humours to þat<sup>t</sup> 36

<sup>2</sup> rule, above line.

<sup>4</sup> perel, above line.

<sup>5</sup> seest, in margin.



- place,<sup>1</sup> & þan it is not so greet drede<sup>2</sup> þerof.<sup>3</sup> Saf if his bodi be ful of wickid humours, þan it is greet drede þerof / þis matere þou muste resolue in þis maner. Take oile of camomille & anointe þer-  
 4 wip þe enpostym, & leie þervpon wolfe vnwaische, & if it resolue not in þis maner, þan leie þerto maturatiuis, as it is aforseide. ¶ If þe matere be hoot, þan lete him blood in þe veyne þat is clepid sophena. & þou schalt sotille<sup>4</sup> his dieting, & leie þerto resoluyng  
 8 þingis þat ben not to strong, & þat þei drawe not to harde. & whanne þe cours of humours ceessip, þan leie þerto stronge resoluyng þingis. & in þis caas þis is good þerfore: lie of askis & of vryne, & wete þerinne stupis & leie vpon þe enpostym, for þis  
 12 makip maturatif & waastip it sotilly & driþ it / If þou myzt not resolue it, þan leie þerto maturatiuis & opene it, & þan leie þerto mundificatiuis & hele it vp as it is aforseid /

Apostemas in the groins are caused by ulcers of the yard or the feet.

R̄

Apply resolving medicines; if the matter is hot, bleed from the Vena Saphina.

R̄

### Of an enpostym of þe haunche & of þe cox.

- 16 **I**N þis place ofte tyme engendriþ an enpostym, & þou schalt fynde<sup>5</sup> þere þe curis þerof in þe chapitre of dolour of ioynctis; saue if þe enpostym be without þe haunche in þe hipe, or in þe leg, or in þe foot, þan þou schalt do þerto þe same cure þat is aforseid  
 20 in þe enpostyms of þe arm. Saf herof þou schalt take kepe, þat oftetyms an enpostym gaderiþ in a mannes hipe al wipinne in þe depnes of it, þat a leche schal not knowe it, but if he be þe more wijs / þerfor ypo[cras] seiþ: in placis þere enpostym is, and þe quit-  
 24 ture schewe not out, it is perilous / þerfor þou muste taste it wip þi fyngris, & loke where it is moost maturid, & opene it, and drawe out þe quittance, þan leie þerto mundificatiuis, & þan fulfille þe cure as it is aforseid /

¶ xj. co.

[3. lf. 149]

Apostema on the legs are treated like those on the arms.

A deep apostema in the hip must be opened.

ypocras.

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: Sæpe prouenit apostema in inguine propter vlcera virgæ et pedum: propterea quod locus est descensus humorum ad illa loca. The translator mistook "descensus" sb. for descensus part.

<sup>2</sup> drede, above line.

<sup>3</sup> Compare Guiliel. de Salic. I. 42. Sl. 277, fol. 5 b.: "This seeknesse is cleped bubo or draguncell,<sup>a</sup> or aposteme of þe grynde, & it is maad as oftest of cold matere whiche is cast out of þe lyuere to þoo places, & oþerwhile it is hoot. It is maad also, when a man is seek in his 3erde for filþehede of women or of oþer cause."

<sup>4</sup> sotille, Lat. attenuare. O.Fr. subtilier. Compare sotilen with the abstract meaning, "argue subtly."—*Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat, Gloss.

<sup>a</sup> Dufr. Gloss.: "Dracunculus, ulceris vel cancri species."



## Apostym of þe 3erde &amp; ballokis /

xij. cº.

A windy  
apostema of  
the yard  
occurs fre-  
quently with  
children.

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 149, bk.]

**R** I3t as enpostyms comeþ in opere lymes, rizt so þei comen in a mannes 3erde & in hise ballokis, of humours hoot or cold, as bi þese signes þou mi3t knowe. Suintyme a mannes 3erde swellip 4 with wynd, þat þou mi3t knowe bi enpostyms of wynd þat ben aforseid. & it fallip ofte to 3onge children,<sup>1</sup> & also þis enpostym þou mi3t knowe <sup>2</sup>in þis maner, if þe place be hard & heuy & þer is no difference bitwixe þe colour herof & of þat oper partie of his 8 hodi.

A hot apos-  
tema of the  
yard and the  
testes is  
treated with  
blood-letting,  
a suitable  
diet,

**R**  
a hot plaster,

**R**  
and dress-  
ings.

[<sup>3</sup> lf. 150]

¶ In an hoot enpostym of þe 3erde or of þe ballokis, þou schalt lete him blood in a veyne þat is clepid basilica in þe same side, & in þe .ij. dai lete him blood in þe sophene / Also þou schalt forbede 12 him wijn & fleisch & al maner swete metis þat engendriþ blood or colre. þan þou schalt leie þerto medecyns to putt awei þe mater, þat ben maad in þis maner. R, cortices granatorum, rosas siccas, & lentes & seþe hem in water til þei dissolue, & þan grinde hem in 16 a mortar wiþ oile of roses & a litil vinegre, & make herof an enplastre & leie it þeron hoot / Also take succi portulace siluestris, & olium rosarum & a litil vinegre, & wete heryn a linnen cloof & leie it aboute þe 3erde & hise ballokis / Whanne þe cours of þe mater 20 ceessip, þan do þerto mele of barley & of benis, or distempere þese wiþ þe 3elke of an ey & wiþ iuys of morel & oile of roses, & leie þeron. & whanne þe enpostym goiþ away, þan leie þeron enplastre of mele of benis <sup>3</sup>& of fenigrec & camomille distemperid with gotis 24 talow / If þis enpostym gadere quittance & vlcera, þan cure it as þou schalt fynde in þe chapitre of vlcers of þe 3erde.

A cold apos-  
tema of the  
testes is  
treated with  
an ointment  
and supposi-  
tories.

**R**  
A plaster for  
an indurated  
apostema.

¶ A coold empostym þat is in þe ballokis schal be curid wiþ anoynting of þe matere wiþ medicyns or wiþ scharpe suppositorijs ; 28 for þis drawip þe mater fro þe ballokis / If it be so þat þe enpostym be woxen hard in þe ballokis, þan leie þerto þis enplastre þat I haue ofte preued / Take bran of whete & grinde it wel in a mortar til it bicomme al poudre, & þan distempere it wiþ oximel 32 maad of .ij. partis of vinegre & oon partie of hony, & dissolue þerinne gum armoniac & make herof an enplastre & leie it on hoot, & þis schal be remeued ofte. þis is auicens medicyns.

**R**

¶ If a mannes 3erde be swollen wiþ wijnd & þe cause be hoot, 36 þan lete him blood ; if it be coold, þan leie þerto enplastris, & in þis caas among alle opere þingis þis is good / Take oile of roses iiij.

<sup>1</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 59 b.: accidit quibusdam iuuenibus calidis.



- partis, of wex o part, melte hem togidere & þan waische hem in coold water til it bicom as it were a whit oynement, & herwip  
A plaster for a cold windy apostema.
- 1 anoynte þe place / If it be hoot, þan þou schalt make him caste,  
[1 lf. 150, bk.]
- 4 & þou schalt 3eue him agnus castus,<sup>2</sup> & seed of rue & comyn & anise & opere þingis þat waastip wijnd, & make an enplaster of þese þingis þat distrieþ wijnd / ¶ An enplaster þat gilbert made for swellng of a mannes 3erde & it is mitigatif. R̄, crummis of  
A plaster for a hot windy apostema.
- 8 whit breed & grinde hem in a mortar & tempere hem wip watir, & þan boile hem til þei bicom picke, & do þerto a litil oile & a litil hony, & þan boile hem togidere & leie it vpon hoot // If a mannes 3erde be swollen wip hete of liggyng bi a womman, þus þou schalt  
R̄. A lenitive plaster of Gilbert.
- 12 helpe him / Take leues of wipi & seþe hem in water & baþe his 3erde herynne & binde þerto þe leues // Also seþe lynseed & leues of malue & grynde hem togidere & make herof a plastre /  
R̄

### The cure of scrophularum & glandulum /<sup>3</sup>

- 16 C Ure of glandularum & scrophularum is almoost oon, saue herof is a difference / Scrophule comeþ þe moost part of malancoli & ben worse to dissolue. & glandule comeþ þe most part of fleume, & ben li3ter to resolue / In boþe causis it is neces-  
¶ xij. Scrophula is caused by Melancholy; Glandula by Phlegm. [4 lf. 151]
- 20 sarie to purge þe matere. & þe medicyn laxatijf maad of turbit is good þerfore þat is aforseid in þe chapitre of allopucia, or in þis maner as .A. makip it / R̄ turbit zinzi,<sup>5</sup> zucare .3 .ij, & 3eue þis ofte, or trociscus de turbit maad wip diarubarbe, & þou must sotile  
These apostemas are treated with purging. R̄
- 24 his dietyng, & he schal not ete to miche, & he schal drinke no water, & he schal holde his heed an hij, & he schal kepe him fro wepinge, & he schal not, whanne he is ful, slepe anoon þervpon, & þou schalt anoynte þe place with oile of camomille, & wip oile of  
The patient shall neither drink water, nor weep, nor sleep on a full stomach.

<sup>2</sup> Besides the names given in *N. E. Diet.*, s. v. Agnus castus, there are: "*Agnus castus*, frutex est, i. bischopeswort." *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 1. "A. c., toutsayne." *Wr. Wü.* p. 562, 24 (xvth cent.). "Chastlambe" in *Maplet*. A greene Forest, fol. 39. *De Propr. Rer.* (Add. MS. 27944, fol. 216 a): "*Agnus Castus* is an herbe hoot and dryue and haþ vertu to kepe men & nommen chaste a plinius seiþ. ¶ Perfore nommen of Rome rsede to bere wip hem þe fruyt of þis herbe in dyrige and service for dede men, whanne þey moste nedes lyve chaste for comyn honestee. ¶ Þis herbe is alway grene as dyascorides seiþ, and platearius also, and þe flour þerof is nameliche y-cleped agnus castus."

<sup>3</sup> Sl. 2463, f. 97 (see p. 222, note 8): "Because þat þe cure of scrophules & glaundules, as who seiþ, is bothe oone, but þer is a difference be as moche as scrophules ben for þe more partie of malancolye . . ."

<sup>5</sup> MS. ZZ.



.R̃. lilie, & wip þis oile þat is apreued / R̃, radices electerij,<sup>1</sup> radices malue visci,<sup>2</sup> & kutte hem smal & leie hem in oold oile of oliuarum & do hem in a vessel of glas, & sette þis glas in a vessel of water, & make þe water to sepe, & be war þat þou saue þe glas fro breking. 4

Use one of the following plasters. One prepared with goat's-dung. & wip þis oile anointe him, & þan leie þeron wolfe vnwaische / And if þis suffise not, make him a plastre of gotis tordis & oximel, or quik lyme & swynys grese þat it be freisch / & oold,<sup>3</sup> or þis medicine / R̃ staphisacre, seminis lini,<sup>4</sup> farini orobi, resine<sup>5</sup> albe & 8

[<sup>5</sup> If. 151, bk.] R̃ make herwip an enplastre wip ole & vinegre / Also another þat is swiþe good. Take radices lilij, & seminis lini, ana,<sup>6</sup> boile hem in wijn til þei dissolue, & þan do þerto of culuer tordis & make it a picke plastre, & þou schalt putte þerto culuer toordis more or lesse 12 as þou seest þat þe mater resolueþ more or lesse, as þou seest þat it nedip. ¶ Also diaculon<sup>7</sup> rasis, & diaculon Iohannes Mesue þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, ben good for to resolue scrophulas / Whanne þou resoluest þe mater & sum þerof goiþ awei, & sum 16 þerof leueþ hard, þan þou schalt do þerto sumtyme mollificatiuis & sumtyme resoluynge þingis //

Glandula and Scrophula must be opened when they are quite ripe. ¶ Glandule & scrophule ben parti of douce fleume or of blood ; it is ful hard to make hem clene, for sum partie þerof wole leue 20 hard & wole not bicomme maturatif. þou schalt [not]<sup>8</sup> haste to opene hem saue þou schalt leue if þou miht, til it be al rotid, & þan open it & leie þerto mundificatiuis / & in þis place it is good to leie þerto vnguentum apostolorum & poudre of affodille & opere 24 lizt corosiuis. & þou schalt in no maner leie þerto realgar,<sup>9</sup> ne noon violent<sup>10</sup> þingis, & leie þeron a mundificatif in which be medlid rotis of lilie wel soden, for þis mundificatif makip clene & also quitturip þe remenaunt of þe matere / þou must take greet dili- 28 gence for to make clene glandulas & scrophulas, for þei ben ful hard

<sup>1</sup> Lat. elaterium, ἐλατήριον. *Alphita*, p. 53, "Elacterium succus cucurbite agrestis idem, sed electerides sunt cucumeres agrestes tam fructus eorum quam ipsa herba." *Vigo Interpret.*: "Elaterium is the iuice of a wild cocomber."

<sup>2</sup> *malua viscum* = *Althæa officinalis*, marsh-mallow.

<sup>3</sup> Some words omitted. Lat. : cum axungia porcina, sine sale antiquo.

<sup>4</sup> MS. *staphisacre seminis. nitri*.

<sup>5</sup> *partes æquales om.*

<sup>7</sup> "Diachylon, a Plaister made of the Mucilages or pappy Juice of certain Fruits, Seeds, and Roots, whose Office is to ripen and soften." Phillips.

<sup>8</sup> not om. Lat. : Non ergo festines in earum apertura.

<sup>9</sup> *realgar*, Arab. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.* *Alphita*, p. 156, *Realgar* vel *risalgar* est uena terre." *Vigo Interpret.*, "Realgar is made of brymstone, vnsulaked lyme, and orpimente. It killeth rattes."



to make clene, & ofte þer engendriþ þerof<sup>1</sup> festris / ¶ If þou desirist<sup>2</sup> to cure glandulas & scrophulas wiþ kuttyng<sup>3</sup>, loke wher glandula or scrophula be neische, & be war of veynes & senewis, & loke þat<sup>4</sup> 4 þer be no veine þere nyȝ. þan take him vp wiþ þi lift<sup>5</sup> hond & drawe him vp as hiȝe as þou miȝt<sup>6</sup> & kutte þe skyn endelongis þe necke, & be war þou touche not<sup>7</sup> þe clooþ þat<sup>8</sup> he is folde þerinne, & þane score<sup>1</sup> him & drawe him out<sup>2</sup> al hool with þe clooþ, & if þer 8 leue ony þing<sup>3</sup> þerof<sup>4</sup>, caste þeron poudre of affodille or sum oþer liȝt<sup>5</sup> corosif<sup>6</sup>, & þanne regendre fleisch & soude it<sup>7</sup> vp / If it<sup>8</sup> so be þat<sup>9</sup> glandula or scrophula be closid with veynes or wiþ arterijs, þan kutte him not<sup>10</sup> in no maner, for þer miȝt<sup>11</sup> come greet<sup>12</sup> perel þerof<sup>13</sup>.<sup>2</sup>

In extirpating the apostema take care not to injure a blood-vessel.

## 12 // Þe cure of þe cancre not vlcerid & his cure /

**C**Ausis & difference þou hast<sup>1</sup> herd of<sup>2</sup> a cankre<sup>3</sup> & in what<sup>4</sup> ¶ xiiij. eo. maner þou schalt<sup>5</sup> cure cancrum þat<sup>6</sup> is not<sup>7</sup> vlceratus / Rasis<sup>8</sup> [3 lf. 152, bk.] seiþ, & it<sup>9</sup> is sooþ, & I haue seen ofte tyme, þat<sup>10</sup> whanne ony man 16 touchiþ a cancre wiþ iren or wiþ ony medicyn corrosif<sup>11</sup>, but<sup>12</sup> if<sup>13</sup> þei kutte him away clene wiþ alle his rotis, ellis þei makip þat<sup>14</sup> þe cancer is vlceratus / & for to make a cancre vlceratum, it<sup>15</sup> ne fallip for no goodnes, saue it<sup>16</sup> makip þe patient haste þe fastere to his 20 deep, & schortip his lijf & bringip him in turment // ¶ þerfore if<sup>17</sup> a cancre be in a place þat<sup>18</sup> he mai be kutt<sup>19</sup> awei wiþ alle hise rotis, whanne he is kutt<sup>20</sup> awei, þan þou schalt<sup>21</sup> brenne þe place wiþ an hoot<sup>22</sup> iren or wiþ gold, & þan þou schalt<sup>23</sup> fulfille þe cure as it<sup>24</sup> is 24 aforseid in þe chapitre of<sup>25</sup> a cancre þat<sup>26</sup> is vlceratus.<sup>4</sup> ¶ If it<sup>27</sup> so be þat<sup>28</sup> þe cancre be perfit<sup>29</sup> & greet<sup>30</sup>, þan þou schalt<sup>31</sup> touche him wiþ noon iren ne wiþ no medicyn corrosif<sup>32</sup>, saue þou schalt<sup>33</sup> kepe þe patient wiþ good dieting<sup>34</sup>, & he schal ofte tymes haue medicyns for 28 to purge malancolie wiþ gootis whey & with epithimo, & sumtyme lete him blood, & þou schalt<sup>35</sup> anoynte þe place wiþ vnguentum rasis

Unless a non-ulcerating cancer is removed thoroughly, it becomes an ulcerating one.

Use the hot iron after cutting.

A large and fully developed cancer shall neither be cut nor cauterized.

<sup>1</sup> score. Lat. discarnare.

<sup>2</sup> Sl. 2463, fol. 98: "But if þe glandule or þe scrofule be intrikes<sup>a</sup> with veynes, arteries oþer synewes, so þat þei cleue oþer be faste knytte to hem, for nothing þou schall nyȝe hem nother with Iren noþer with noone other corosyue medecyne."

<sup>4</sup> A different opinion is expressed in Sl. 2463, fol. 115: "The cure of þe canker is done in two maners. The tone cure is for to kutte away all þe membre þat þe canker is inne, with all þe syknesse; and þis is an yuell cure and may be done, but it is not plesaunt." Ibid., fol. 115 b.: "And yf þer be noon oþer remedie but for to cutte hit away with alle þe rotes, me thenkith hit is moȝe honest to leue hit þanne to do hit."

<sup>a</sup> Lat. intricata.



[1 lf. 153]

Many patients would live a long time if they were not treated by unskilful physicians.

de thutia, þat is <sup>1 2</sup> aforseid in cura cancri vlcerati. & þou schalt leie þeron colde leues, & alwei þis schal be þin entencioun, for to kepe þat þe cancre wexe not ne rotie not / I haue seen ful manye lechis þat hadden greet name in cirurgie þat founden cancris in men, and 4 wexe not, & þe cancris were not vlcerati & miȝte ful long tyme haue lyued if he hadde be kept aftir my teching in þis book; saue vnkunnyng cirurgians wenep þat in kutting of a cancre þei schulde finde quittance & ben disseyued, & so disseyuen hem-silf & also þe 8 patient, & þan whanne þei han kutt þei fynde nouȝt saue fleisch corrupt wiþout quittance in þe maner of a sponge, wherfore þe lippis of þe wounde wole come aȝen worse þan þei were tofore & more stynking. & wiþ þe greet stynkinge þe spirit is schent, & makip þe 12 patient þe rapere drawe toward þe deef / & if þe cancre were not vlceratus þe patient miȝte lyue longe þerwith.

### Bocium þat comeþ of humours corrupt.

¶ xvº cº.

"Bocium" is caused by corrupt phlegm, [3 lf. 153, bk.] or arises from hot apostemas.

**B**Ocium is a postym þat comeþ of humours, & principali it is 16 engendrid of fleume corrupt / Sumtyme it comeþ of <sup>3</sup>hote enpostyms, as whanne þei ben rotid & not opened. & þou þe subtil mater be drawen out, þat opere part bicometh hard & leueþ þere longe tyme / & sumtyme a rume<sup>4</sup> fallip adoun of his heed into 20 his necke & makip þe matere wexe more / þis maner enpostym hap manie diuers signes / Sum maner þerof is lik as it were cley, & summe is lik schellis. Summe is as it were chese, & summe is as it were drastis of oile, & so þis enpostym in his corrupcioun takip 24 manie diuers colouris /

This apostema is treated with drawing and caustic medicines.

.R̄.

A caustic medicine.

þis enpostym schal be helid wiþ drawynge þingis & wastynge þat schulen be taken bi þe mouþ & leid to wiþoutforþ / þou schalt ȝeue him bi þe mouþ a medicyn for to purge fleume, & þan þou 28 schalt ȝeue him a medicyn for to waaste þe matere & is maad in þis maner / R̄ paruum plantam nucis a terra cum suis radicibus extirpatam id est take a litil plauntein of a note & take it vp of þe ground wiþ alle hise rotis, & grynde it wiþ greynes of peper, so þat if þer be 32 of þe notis .ȝ. iiij., þan do þerto of peper ȝ. j, & þis þou schalt boile

<sup>2</sup> In later hand at the bottom of the page: *contra ffetorem cancri. R̄ pulueris corticis quercus ffarine sileginis ana succi appii mell ana succus & mell inspissentur decoque super ynguem cum puluere ffarina. Item decoque puluerem corticis quersini in aqua et inde tepide laua canserem a ffetore paliando.*

<sup>4</sup> rume, rheum, O.Fr. reume.



in a quart<sup>t</sup> of wyn <sup>1</sup>of<sup>t</sup> paris til it<sup>t</sup> come to þe half, & þanne cole it, [1 ff. 154]  
 & herof<sup>t</sup> þe patient schal take euery dai 3 ij. // ¶ Enplastris þat<sup>t</sup> A caustic  
plaster.  
 wastip ben enplastris þat<sup>t</sup> enpostyms of fleume be wastid þerwith /  
 4 If þou desirist<sup>t</sup> for to cure it<sup>t</sup> wip kuttyng<sup>t</sup>, þan þou must loke, wher  
 þe matere þat<sup>t</sup> is wipinne be neische or hard. & wher it<sup>t</sup> be among<sup>t</sup>  
 veynes & arterijs, þou schalt<sup>t</sup> touche it<sup>t</sup> wip noon iren in no maner /  
 If it<sup>t</sup> so be þat<sup>t</sup> þe mater be neische & if þou miȝte kutte it<sup>t</sup> for Inextirpating  
this apostema  
do not injure  
the integu-  
ment wherein  
the tumour  
is situated.  
 8 perels þat<sup>t</sup> ben forseid, þan kutte it<sup>t</sup> & drawe out þe mater, & leie  
 þerto mundificatiuis, & alle þingis as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid in þe general  
 chapitre / If þe mater be hard & þe enpostym be hangynge & be  
 fro veynes & arterijs, þan kutte þe skyn endelongis aboue, & be war  
 12 þat<sup>t</sup> þou touche not<sup>t</sup> þe bagge þat<sup>t</sup> bocium sittip þeron & scarre<sup>2</sup> it<sup>t</sup>  
 al abouteforþ & drawe him out with al his skyn. & if þer leue  
 þeron ony þing<sup>t</sup> of his skyn, þan caste þeron poudre of affodille, &  
 make it<sup>t</sup> clene wip poudre of sum liȝt<sup>t</sup> corrosif<sup>t</sup> þerwip—vnguentum  
 16 viride,<sup>3</sup> & þan regendre fleisch, & þan drie it<sup>t</sup> vp as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid /

#### <sup>4</sup>Of þe akyng of ioynctis.

[4 ff. 154, bk.]

**N**OW it is seid pleyulier of alle enpostyms, now speke we of ¶ xvjo co.  
 passiouns þat<sup>t</sup> comeþ in ioynctis. & þis passioun is myche Diseases of  
the joints are  
similar to  
apostemas,  
 20 lijk to enpostyms in causis & signes & curis, & also it<sup>t</sup> diuersip  
 miche fro opere enpostyms / For þouȝ þe place be greet to-swollen,  
 it<sup>t</sup> comeþ but<sup>t</sup> late or neuere to quittance. Swellynge & akyng of but they  
rarely termi-  
nate in sup-  
puration.  
 ioinctis, þis passioun is vnknownen to manie kunnyng<sup>t</sup> lechis þat<sup>t</sup> han  
 24 greet<sup>t</sup> name. Bi þe cause þat<sup>t</sup> cirurgians ben clepid algate to þis  
 manere passioun, þerfore I haue studied to make a general chapitre  
 of passiouns of ioinctis. & I haue take miche þerof<sup>t</sup> þe bokis of  
 Rasis & of myn owne worching<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> I haue proued. ¶ þe causis Pains in the  
joints are  
caused by an  
evil condi-  
tion of the  
limbs or the  
body,  
 28 þat<sup>t</sup> makip akyng in ioynctis: or it<sup>t</sup> comeþ of yuel complexioun of  
 lymes, or it<sup>t</sup> comeþ of hoot<sup>t</sup> complexioun þat<sup>t</sup> hetip, or it<sup>t</sup> comeþ of  
 coold complexioun þat<sup>t</sup> cooldip / Drie ligaturis of ioynctis con-  
 streineþ & makip akyng,<sup>5</sup> & moistnes makip neuere akyng wip-  
 32 outen oper<sup>6</sup> mater / Mater þat<sup>t</sup> makip akyng of ioyncts is ofte tyme [6 ff. 155]  
 haboundaunce of blood, & ofte tyme it<sup>t</sup> is raw fleume, & moost  
 principali colre or blood medlid with fleume / & it<sup>t</sup> comeþ ful seelde  
 of fleume, but<sup>t</sup> if it<sup>t</sup> be medlid wip ony oper þing<sup>t</sup> as colre / In what

<sup>2</sup> scarre. Lat. scarnare.<sup>3</sup> vnguentum viride. See Notes.<sup>5</sup> Lat. sicca (complexio) ligamento junctarum astringendo dolorem aliquando generat.



and frequently by phlegmatic humour.

The physician can easily be in error, and apply wrong medicines.

[<sup>2</sup> If. 155, bk.]

Treatment, when the illness arises from a bad condition of the body.

If it is caused by the humours, soothe the pain.

Auicen

and Rasis differ in their treatment.



[<sup>5</sup> If. 156]

Apply first a lenitive plaster or ointment, or give a medicine,

then let blood

maner þou schalt knowe which humour be in þe cause of akyng  
of ioinctis, þou schalt finde in þe chapitre of allopecia & in þe  
general chapitre of enpostyms, if þou takist good kepe of þe signes  
of þe forseid chapitris, what humour is in cause of akyng of  
ioinctis / Saue þis þou muste take hede, þat ofte tyme raw fleumatik  
humouris makip akyng of ioinctis as it is forseid, & þan þe colour  
of þe lyme schal be but litil<sup>1</sup> chaungid þerfore / & þan a leche but  
if he be þe more expert þeron mai be bigilid. & sumtyme a litil 8  
quantite of colre wole schewe vpon þe lyme, & þan þe leche wole  
leie þerto coolde þingis, & þan þe mater of fleume wole bicom hard,  
& so þe greuance wole be worse þan it was / þerfore it is greet  
nede þat þe leche be kunnyng<sup>2</sup> & knowe wel þe<sup>2</sup> mater of passiouns 12  
of ioyntis.

¶ þe cure of akyng of ioinctis þat comþ of yuel complexioun  
oonly, þou schalt remeue with þingis þat ben contrarie to þat com-  
plexoun:<sup>3</sup> as if þe mater be hoot, þan þou schalt remeue it with 16  
colde þingis, & if þe mater be coold, þan þou schalt remeue it with  
hoot þingis, & if þe mater be of drieness, þan þou schalt remeue it  
with moist þingis, & with metis & drinkis þat makip fatt, & with rest<sup>4</sup>  
& with gladnes; for as faste as his bodi bicomþ fatt, he schal be 20  
hool of þat passioun / þis passioun þat comþ of humours, is curid  
with mitigacion of þe akyng, & I fynde diuers opiniouns þeron /  
& þerfore I wole schewe hem in þis chapter / Auicen seiþ: þat  
whanne þou wolt worche in þis mater, þi principal entencioun schal 24  
be for to do awei þe akyng / And Rasis forbediþ þat þou schalt  
leie þerto no repercussiuus, ne noon resolutiuus but if þe mater be  
avoidid tofore / For to do away þe akyng: saue avoide þe mater,  
or leie þerto a repercussif or a resolutif. & þan Rasis seiþ þat 28  
þou schalt avoide him, & auicen for<sup>5</sup>bediþ þat / In what maner  
schulen we worche þanne, whanne þou fyndist a man þat haþ greet  
akyng? / First þou schalt leie a plastre to þe lyme þat it be  
mitigatif or an oynement þat be mitigatif, & þe difference herof 32  
schal be aftir þat þe mater is // Also þou miȝt ȝeue him sumwhat  
bi þe mouþ for to aswage þe akyng. & þou schalt fynde greet  
plente in þis chapitre of defensiuus & mitagatiuis to defende þe  
mater / And whanne þe akyng is perfiztli swagid lete him blood 36

<sup>1</sup> A second *litil* deleted.

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: Cura doloris iuncturarum quæ ex mala complexione sola est, non est nisi cum contrariis complexionis malitiam remove.

<sup>4</sup> MS. *rost*.



if þe cause be of blood. & if it be of anoper cause avoide it. & if þou letist him blood, þou schalt do it in a lyme aforzens. & if þou wolt avoide þere matere, loke þat þou knowe þe cause / for þis is ful necessarie for a leche to kunne / Whanne þe mater is avoidid & þe akyngge ceessid, þan þou schalt bigynne wiþ resoluyngge medicyns þat ben forseid. ¶ Also in curis of akyngge in ioyntis be wel war þat þou feble not his appetit, for þis sjuknes cometh moost of humours þat ben vndefied. & þerfore þou schalt in as miche as þou miȝt make him haue good ap<sup>1</sup>petite & good digestioun / If þou fyndist oonly þe mater coold, þat makip ful seelde ony gret akyngge, saue it makip þe lyme heuy. þis þou schalt wite þat in a coold cause þat makip akinge in ioinctis, þouȝ it be hard to do awei, neþeles þou schalt ȝeue him no strong<sup>1</sup> medicyn ne he schal not be purgid hastili as manie men wenep, saue it schal be do wiþ a propre medicyn þat is sure. & it schal ofte be ȝeuen, so þat þou mai algate kepe his appetit, for þer is noon so strong<sup>1</sup> medicyn þat mai avoide þe mater al at oonys / And if þou ȝeuest him a strong medicyn it wole afeble hise vertues. & þerfor þou must chese a liȝt medicyn þat mowe comferte þe stomac & þat it mowe be ȝeue ofte //

¶ Of akyngge of ioyntis þou hast had general rulis; now we mote speke of curis here after. ¶ If þou be sent after to a man þat hap arteticam,<sup>2</sup> þat is as myche to seie as a gout, first þou muste loke wher þe mater be hoot or coold, or wheþer he haue strong<sup>1</sup> akyngge or liȝt akyngge / & if his akyngge be strong<sup>1</sup>, þan <sup>3</sup>leie þerto mitigatiuis / In oon maner þou schalt ȝeue him medicyns bi þe mouþ þat ben mitigatif for to take away þe akyngge, & enplastris þat ben mitigatif, & leie vpon þe place. ¶ A good medicyn þat schal be ȝeue bi þe mouþ: Rȝ, glandes & leie hem in vinegre adai & anyȝt, & after þat drie hem to þe sunne or in an ouene, & þan kepe it / & whanne þou wolt ȝeue it, grynde it & ȝeue þerof ȝ .j. ; þis medicyn makip blood greet & remeueþ þer from / Also take lentes

from the  
sound limb,

or evacuate  
any evil  
matter:

and attend to  
the patient's  
appetite and  
digestion.

[<sup>1</sup> lf. 156, bk.]

Therefore do  
not give a  
strong pur-  
gative,  
but a mild  
one in several  
doses.

Arteticam.

When gout is  
attended with  
[<sup>3</sup> lf. 157]

pain, give  
lenitive medi-  
cines,  
and apply  
plasters.

.R.

<sup>2</sup> artetica, arthritica, gout, *Trevisa De propr. rer.*, Lib. VII, Cap. 56 (Add. MS. 27,944, fol. 96 b.). "Arthetica is ache and evel in fingres and tone wiþ swelling & sore ache / and whanne hit is in þe fyngres, hit hatte cyragra, and in þe toone hit hatte podagra, if hit is in þe whirlebones and ioyntes it hatte sciatica passio, and cometh of colerik blood & of fleumatik humours, & cometh most ofte of reumatik cause." The author of the Treatise on Surgery, preserved in Sl. 1736, mentions this disease as a hereditary one. Ibid. fol. 122 b.: "also yt ys often tymes sene þat þis arthetica passio gese by erytaunce as fro þe [fadyr] to the childur, and so forth to oðyr."



A medicine  
only to be  
given in great  
need.

excorticatas, semen coriandri, succum glandulum, hermodactulis<sup>1</sup>  
wip sugre & coold watir, saue herof þou must take kepe þat þese  
medicyns schulen not be 3eue but in greet nede, & whanne þe  
akyng is so greet þat it mai not be take awei. & þei mai be 4  
moost sotilly 3eue whanne þe mater is subtil & scharp / & if þe  
mater be greet & miche, þan þis medicyn schal not be 3eue. ¶ If  
R þe mater be coold & of greet akyng, þan take hermodactulis, thuris  
ana xx. partis, cucumeri partes .x, & 3eue þerof 3 .iiij. vpon þe 8  
[<sup>2</sup> lf. 157, bk.]  
R place / If þe matere be litil & scharp <sup>2</sup>& subtil / R7, amigdalas,  
camphore ana, grinde hem & tempere hem wip watir of roses /  
R Also anopir in þe same kinde / R7, mirre, panis albissimi & subtilis-  
simi 3 j, opij 3 f, grinde hem wel & tempere hem wip milk of a 12  
R cow, & leie it þeron whanne it is greet nede / Item R7, opij, cortices  
mandragorae ana .3 .v, grinde hem & tempere hem wip þe iuys of  
portulacae & oile of roses & a litil vynegre / Also an oynement for  
R to ceeße þe akyng / R7, olium rosarum 3 iiij, cere 3 j., melte þe oile 16  
An oine-  
ment þat  
sesses  
ache  
& þe wex togidere & waische it with oile of roses, & þan do þerto  
citrini 3 j., opij 3 f / If þe mater be myche & be neiþer more in  
quantite þan in qualite, & þou wolt defende more þe cours of þe  
mater, þan do awei þe akyng.<sup>3</sup> R7, cortices granatoris, sandali<sup>4</sup> 20  
albi, & rue,<sup>5</sup> & roses, boli armenici, ferrugine,<sup>6</sup> opij, confice cum  
succo mirtilorum vel foliorum salicis, or with a decocciun of hem in  
watir wip a litil oile of roses & vinegre & make herof an oynement.  
& whanne þe akyng is aswagid, þan dissolue þe mater of blood wip 24  
letyng blood. & þat suffisþ as it is aforseid. ¶ Colre þou schalt  
dissolue in þis maner / R7, mirabolanorum citrinorum .3 vj., <sup>7</sup>grinde  
R hem & leie hem al anyzt in li f of sirup of viole, & 3 .iiij. of wijn  
[<sup>7</sup> lf. 158]  
of pomegarnates þat ben swete, amorowe boile hem altil & do þerto 28  
zuccare 3 f, hermodactylorum .3 f., & 3eue it him in þe mornyng.  
& if þou wolt make itt more coold, do þerto .3 .ij. of musilaginis

<sup>1</sup> "*Hermodactyla*, crawanleac." Wr. Wü. 137, 3.—"Hermodactylus, a round-headed Root, brought from Syria, which is of an insipid Taste; and gently purges Phlegm." Phillips.

<sup>3</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 63: Si uero materia fuerit multa et times plus de quantitate quam de qualitate, et uis plus prohibere materiae cursum quam extinguere . . .

<sup>4</sup> *sandali albi*, σάνταλον. The d in sandal is explained by influence of Arab. sandal (Devic). Matth. Sylvat. mentions three sorts of Sandal: album, ruffum et citrinum. See *Alphita*, p. 161. *whit saunders* and *reed saunders* are distinguished in Sloane MS. 2463, fol. 155 b (c. c. 1450).

<sup>5</sup> *rue* for *rubidi*.

<sup>6</sup> Lat. *foenugreci*.



- psillij or 3 .j. ¶ This is a good electuarie þerfore .R̄, citoniorum li .R.  
 f̄s., & make hem to gobettis, & leie hem in vinegre adai & anizt / & A good  
 þan wrynge hem & grinde hem smal, & do þerto scamonie þat it be electuary,  
 4 good .3 .j, cardamomi, cubube .3 .iij, spice nardi .3 .j, rosis .3 .v, to purge  
 zuccare li f̄, make herof a letuarie þat purgip wel colre & comfortip choler and  
 þe stomac. þou schalt 3eue herof .3 .ij. & þou miȝt scharpe it to strengthen  
 more if þou wolt with a litil hermodactylis. ¶ þese ben good the stomach.
- 8 pelottis for þe same cause / R̄, aloes .3 .ij, hermodactylos .3 .j, .R.  
 scamonie .5 f̄, rosis .3 .j, make herof pelottis with sirupo violarum, Pills for the  
 & þou schalt 3eue herof .3 .j. Whanne þe passioun bigynneþ to go same pur-  
 awei with þese medicyns, þan þou schalt leie þerto plastris þat ben pose.  
 12 resoluynge: as of malue & bismalue, camomille, mellilotum, absin- Resolving  
 thium, peratorie, semen caulium, aneti, fenugreci, <sup>1</sup>semen lini, [ If 158, bk.]  
 furfuris, & swynys grese, & gandriss grese, & hennis grese, & oile of  
 camfre, & olium aneti. & whanne þe cours of humours ceessip,  
 16 þan þou schalt vse oonly resoluynge þingis & make þerof enplastris /  
 Also to do awaye residue of þe akinge, þis is a good medicyn / R̄, .R.  
 olium camomille 3 .iij, cere .3 .j, seminis aneti & caulium, florum  
 camomille ana .3 .iij. & make herof an oynement / Also in anoþer  
 20 maner / R̄, fenigreci, semen lini, aneti, & tempere hem with iuys of .R.  
 caulium. & herof þou must take kepe, þat as ofte as þou wolt vse  
 clene resolutiuis, þou schalt algate waische þe lyme þat is to-swollen A lotion for  
 wiþ a decoccioun of malue & bismalue, & florum of camomille & the limb.
- 24 melliloti, absinthii & opere mo, & þe lyme schal be waische þerwiþ  
 til it bicomme reed, & þan þou schalt anoynte him / And þis þou  
 schalt wite þat as meuyngt & bapingt greueþ þe passioun in þe firste  
 bigynnyngt, riȝt so þei ben in þe ende riȝt greet helpingt / For Moving and  
 28 to stuwe & baþe doiþ awei þe laste part of þe mater & makip bathing is  
 a mannys lymes haue her meuyngt as þei schulde haue. & also it obnoxious at  
 is good whanne þe patient goiþ out of <sup>2</sup>his stue, if hise iointis the beginning  
 akip, þan frote hem wel wiþ salt grounde / If þe mater be coold þou of the illness,  
 32 schalt diȝte him wiþ diaȝinȝiberis þat is aforseid in allopucia. & but useful at  
 þan þou schalt dissolue wiþ trocisco de turbit wiþ hermodactylis the end of the  
 maad in þis maner / R̄, diaȝinȝiberis predicti 3 .j. & f̄, turbit electi R  
 .3 .j, hermodactulorum alborum solidorum 3 f̄, & viij greines of  
 36 anise, & make þerof a gobet wiþ a litil hony. & þis schal be 3eue  
 in þe mornyngt. & þerafter he schal drinke a litil wijn hoot & a  
 litil water; or wiþ þese pelottis / R̄, hermodactylorum, saturionis<sup>3</sup> R

<sup>3</sup> Saturion, iarus. See *Alphita*, p. 158.



sene ana .3 .v, ierapigre<sup>1</sup> þat entriþ in pululas cochias .3 .x, pulpe coloquintide, centaurie. ana .3 .v, euforbij .3. ij, turbit<sup>2</sup> .3. ð., cassie,<sup>2</sup> sinapis, piperis, castorij ana .3 .j. & make herof<sup>3</sup> pelottis with hony. & þou schalt<sup>4</sup> 3eue herof<sup>3</sup> .3. j. at oonys, & þis medicyn schal be 4 3eue manie tymes. & in daies bitwixe he schal take diazinþiberum of oure makinge þat is forseid. & if it be in winter, þou schalt 3eue him diatrion piperion<sup>3</sup> or anoþer hoot eletuarie // ¶ Anoþer electuarie þat dissoluiþ akynge in ioyntis þat comeþ of raw mater. 8

.R. R̄, camedrios,<sup>4</sup> centaurie minorum ana. 3 .viij, aristologia longa.

[<sup>5</sup> lf. 159, bk.]  
A lectuare  
þat dysolues  
Ache in  
Iunnetes

<sup>5</sup>gencian. ana. 3 .vj, agarici .3 .ij, vtriusque spice ana .3 .j, make hem wiþ hony. þou schalt<sup>4</sup> 3eue herof<sup>3</sup> þe quantite of a note eerli & late. Men þat ben lene schulen not take þis medicyn // Whanne 12 þe patient is purgid sufficiently, þan þou schalt vse enplastris for to

R leie to þe place / R̄, oold swynis grese þat it be freisch li j., &

R medle þerwiþ quyk-lyme & make þerof a plastre & leie vpon þe

R place / Also take stercus caprinum & distempere it wiþ vinegre & 16

R hony ana, & leie it þeron / Also R̄, aristologia, radices yrios, elleborus, & piper, boile hem in oile & do þerto 3elow wex & make þerof an oynement. ¶ Also diaquilon maad of litarge & oile & iuys of mustard seed. & if þou wolt haue mo remedies, go to þe 20

Rasis. book of Rasis, & þere þou schalt fynde in þe chapter of ioyntis, medicyns ynowe þefore. ¶ Also if þou desirist to comforte þe lyme & do awei þe coold mater wiþ repercussiuus, in þe laste chapter of þis book þou schalt fynde repercussiuus & mollificatiuis ynowe // 24

### / Of sciatica passio<sup>6</sup> /<sup>7</sup>

¶ xvij<sup>o</sup>. c<sup>o</sup>  
[<sup>8</sup> lf. 160]  
Pain in the  
haunches

A kynge of haunchis schal be curid wiþ avoidinge of þe mater id est laxatiuis, for repercussiuus ben not þefore, for þe matere<sup>8</sup> is in þe depnes of þe lyme, &<sup>9</sup> ne mowe not come þerto. Resolutiuis 28

<sup>1</sup> "*Hiera Picra*, a purging Electuary invented by Galen, and made of Aloes, Spikenard, Saffron, Mastick, Honey, &c." Phillips. <sup>2</sup> MS. cassif.

<sup>3</sup> *diatrion piperion*, a medicine composed of three sorts of pepper.

<sup>4</sup> "*Chamædrys*, the Herb Germander, or English Treacle." Phillips. Camedreos ance Teterwose. Wr. Wü. 569, 47 (xvth cent.).

<sup>5</sup> MS. *passis*.

<sup>7</sup> *De Propr. rerum*, Lib. VII, Cap. 57 (Add. 27,944, fol. 96 b.): "*Gutta sciatica* is an yuel þat comeþ of humours þat falliþ down into þe grete seneve þat is bytwene þe grete braynes of þe hanche as constantyn seiþ. ¶ And comeþ ofte of gleymy humours i-gadred togedres in þe holouþnes of þe ioyntes & of þe haunche / somtyme of bloody humours i-medlid wiþ colera & alle þese beþ ofte cause of ache þe whiche ache strecchiþ into þe legges & anon to þe hele & also anon to þe litil [too]." <sup>9</sup> The subject is: *repercussivis*.



- ben not þerfore, for þei mai not come to þe depnes of þe mater. & must not be  
for þe mater is so greet, it schulde more drawe to þe place humouris repellent or  
þan dissolue. Saue þou must aswage þe akinge, & þou schalt do resolving  
4 awei þe akyng with oile & hony & fatnes þat doib awei<sup>1</sup> akinge. medicines.
- ¶ If þe mater come of blood, þan lete him blood in a veyne þat is Use blood-  
clepid basilica in þe same side, & in þe secunde dai lete him blood letting, if the  
in a veyne þat is clepid sciatica, & principaly if þe mater descende illness is  
8 adoun wipoutforþ toward þe foot, for þan it mai principaly be caused by  
holpen / If þe mater come of fleuma, þan purge him wip pelottis the blood.  
of hermodactilorum / Saue herof þou schalt take kepe þat bfore Purge, if  
his purgacioun bineþe forþ<sup>2</sup> he schal haue a vomet. For if þou make phlegm is  
12 him a medicyn laxatif bineþeforþ & no vomet tofore, þan it wole the cause,  
drawe more þe mater toward þe place þan awayward / þerfor first and first give  
þou schalt make him a vomet, & aftirward a medicyn laxatif / And an emetic.  
þerfore medicyns laxatiuis summe ben propre for akyng of þe  
16 haunchis, as coloquintida, yrios, sarcocolla, <sup>3</sup>centaurea, agaricus, & [<sup>3</sup> lf. 160, bk.]  
infusioun of aloes. For infusioun of aloes wole make blood passe  
fro him at his sege, & þan þe akinge wole go awei & he schal be  
hool / & whanne he is perfitli maad clene wip medicyns laxatiuis, When the  
20 þan þou miȝt leie þerto enplastris maad in þis maner / R̄, nasturcij,<sup>4</sup> patient is  
peretri,<sup>5</sup> capparis, grinde hem & tempere hem wip lie maad of askis well purged,  
of a fige tree, & make þerof a picke enplaster as it were hony, & apply  
anointe þe place til it be ful of bladdris & þe bladdris ful of water, plasters.  
24 riȝt as þe place were brent wip fier. & þan anoynte þe place wip R  
butter, & leie þeron caule leues þat þe bladdris soude not togideris A blistering  
anoon; for þe lenger þat þei leueþ þeron, þe bettir it wole be. plaster.  
Eiþer anoynte þe place oonli with mel anacardi,<sup>6</sup> & þat makip  
28 bladdris. & what maner þou schalt make mel anacardi, þou schalt  
fynde in þe antidotarie þat techip to make medicyns & cauterijs /  
Saue herof þou must take kepe þat þou schalt not vse þese medicyns  
þat makip cauterijs, but if his bodi be wel avoidid wip medicyns  
32 laxatiuis tofore; for if his bodi be <sup>7</sup>not purgid, it wole drawe more

.Nota.

Purge the patient before applying the blister.

[<sup>7</sup> lf. 161]<sup>1</sup> awei, above line.<sup>2</sup> bineþe forþ, Lat. per inferius. See *N.E. Dict.*, s. v. beneath-forth.<sup>4</sup> nasturtium, a kind of cress.<sup>5</sup> peretrum, Lat. piretrum. Anthemis pyrethrum (Dunglison), "Piretrum . . pelestre."—*Alphita*, p. 145. "Pyrethrum, Bartram, wild or bastard Pellitory, an Herb the Root of which is very biting and hot."—Phillips.<sup>6</sup> "Anacardus. Or after Ruellius *anacardium*: is the frute of a tre, growing in Sicilia, and Apulia, called vulgarly, Pediculus Elephantis. The iuyce wherof is called *Mel Anacardi*, which is a ruptory medicine."—Halle, *Table*, p. 10.



.R.  
A plaster of  
Avicenna.

mater to þe place þan awayward. ¶ Also agens þe sciatica passio here þou schalt haue an experiment preued of *Avicenna*. Take gotis tordis & drie hem, & make hem to pouder, & distempere hem wiþ strong vinegre & made hoot, & make herof a plastre, & leie it vpon as hoot as þou maist suffre, & anoynte þerwiþ his haunche. ¶ Also a medicyn þat is forseid of *camedrios* & *centaurea*<sup>1</sup> is good þerfore, for it wole drawe awei bi vryne / ¶ Item: cauterijs maad in þe nexte welle vnder þe place of þe akinge ben gode þerfor after 8 þe tyme þat his bodi is maad clene with purgaciouns, & tofore þou schalt make him no cauterijs.

Of þe maner of dieting of hem þat han passions in  
iointes /

12

¶ xvij. co  
A patient  
with a disease  
of the joints  
shall abstain  
from wine,

[2 lf. 161, bk.]

and if there  
is hot matter,  
from meat  
and fish;

and if the  
matter is  
cold he shall  
eat only once  
a day.

**I**N what maner þou schalt diete men þat han passiouns in iointis. þou schalt wite þat þer is no þing so greuou to þis passioun as is wyn, & it is principali forbede in an hoot cause, & so it schal be in a coold cause; for whanne it is take, it persiþ liztli to þe iointis, & makip wei to þe mater for to falle þerto / Saue if þe passion be coold, & þe patient mai not wel<sup>2</sup> defie his mete, þan þou schalt graunte him a lital wijn, & not to miche for þe causis þat ben forseid. ¶ In an hoot cause make him drinke þat is forseid in þe chapter of dieting of woundis, or he schal vse *vinum granatorum* wiþ coold water. & þe pacient schal absteine him fro fleisch & fisch & vse *lactucis*, *portulacis* / & if he be gretli feble, þan þou schalt zeue him lital chickenys. & lete þou not him drinke wijn bi no maner if his passioun be hoot / & whoso haþ þe coold passioun herof, he schal holde him wel apaied<sup>3</sup> for to ete oonys adai & not to miche. & lete him drinke ydromel wel soden / for if he mai suffre hungur & þirst he mai soone be hool. & he schal in no maner ete, but if he haue wil þerto.

¶ The firste teching of egritudines of yȝen, ouþer  
passioun & anothami /

32


¶ i. co/

**N**Ow wolen we make a tretice of passioun of lymes þat fallip for no woundis, & curis þerof comeþ ofte to cirurgians

<sup>1</sup> *centaurea*, written above *cauterie*.

<sup>2</sup> he schal holde him wel apaied, Lat. sit contentus. See *N.E. Dict.*, s. v. apaid. O.Fr. apaier. Compare: je m'en tieng bien paiez. (Littre.)



- handis<sup>1</sup> / I wole bigynne of<sup>t</sup> sjuknes of<sup>t</sup> yzen & to speke of anatho-  
miam þerwip þat<sup>t</sup> was not<sup>t</sup> forseid in þe .ij. book / þou schalt<sup>t</sup> fynde  
in summe bokis of<sup>t</sup> auctoritees þat<sup>t</sup> a mannes izen ben maad of<sup>t</sup> .iiij.  
4 humouris & of<sup>t</sup> .vij. cootis. & in sum bokis<sup>2</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> fynde þat<sup>t</sup>  
þe izen ben maad of<sup>t</sup> .iiij. cotis or of<sup>t</sup> .iiij. or of<sup>t</sup> .vij. or of<sup>t</sup> .x., & alle  
þei seien soþ. Saue þe .j. coote þat<sup>t</sup> maketh þe schap of<sup>t</sup> þe izē,  
ben but<sup>t</sup> .iiij. þat<sup>t</sup> scheweth out<sup>t</sup> in þe hole of<sup>t</sup> þe izē, & þerfore me  
8 mai seie .vj. & also þre<sup>3</sup> / And fro þe brain tofore cometh .ij. bind-  
ingis þat<sup>t</sup> ben not<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> nerues, saue þei ben of<sup>t</sup> þe substaunce of<sup>t</sup> brain,  
& þat<sup>t</sup> oon cometh out<sup>t</sup> in þe rihtside, & þat<sup>t</sup> oper in þe liftside, & ben  
schape as it<sup>t</sup> were þe hedis of<sup>t</sup> .ij. tetis, wherbi þe witt<sup>t</sup> is take.<sup>4</sup> &  
12 after þese .ij. cometh out<sup>t</sup> ij. nerues, & ben fast<sup>t</sup> to þe izē, & ben  
schape in þis maner:  þan þat<sup>t</sup> nerue þat<sup>t</sup> wexip in þe  
rihtside of<sup>t</sup> þe brayn, whanne he goip out<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> þe scolle boon & entrip  
into orbitam, þat<sup>t</sup> is þe holow place þat<sup>t</sup> þe yze sitt<sup>t</sup> on, & goip to þe  
16 izē in þe liftside. & bi þes nerues cometh þe spiritis of<sup>t</sup> lijf & of<sup>t</sup> siht<sup>t</sup>  
to þe yzen / Of<sup>t</sup> þe substaunce of<sup>t</sup> dura matris is engendrid rethina,  
þat<sup>t</sup> is þe þinne skyn þat<sup>t</sup> goip without<sup>t</sup> þe izē, þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid þe vilm  
of<sup>t</sup> þe izē. And þis serueþ of<sup>t</sup> greet<sup>t</sup> seruice, & þis vilm was maad  
20 swiþe þinne þat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> ne hurte not<sup>t</sup> humouris, & þat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> lette not<sup>t</sup> þe  
meuyngē of<sup>t</sup> þe izē, and it<sup>t</sup> byndip in al þe izē, & it<sup>t</sup> defendip þe izē  
fro harmyngē of<sup>t</sup> þe boon // <sup>6</sup>

- ¶ þere cometh manye sjuknessis in þe izē, & summe cometh of<sup>t</sup>  
24 causis wipoutforþ, & summe of<sup>t</sup> causis wipinneforþ / Wipinneforþ :  
as of<sup>t</sup> yuel complexiouns, or of<sup>t</sup> yuel humouris; wipoutforþ : as of<sup>t</sup>  
greet<sup>t</sup> hete of<sup>t</sup> þe eir, or of<sup>t</sup> greet<sup>t</sup> cooldnes of<sup>t</sup> þe eir, or of<sup>t</sup> poudre, or  
of<sup>t</sup> fume, or of<sup>t</sup> wynd / And þere ben opere maner sjuknes of<sup>t</sup> þe izē,  
28 & þat<sup>t</sup> ben seid contagious: as obtolmia & blere ized, & alle þese  
sijknessis comen to cirurgians handis. & **obtolmia** is clepid a whit<sup>t</sup>  
welke or a reed poynt,<sup>7</sup> & icchingē & scabbe, sebel, vngula, cataracta,

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: Volentes tractare de passionibus membrorum particularium, que non sunt vulnera, quæ sæpe veniunt ad manus chirurgi . . . incipiemus ab ægritudinibus oculorum.

<sup>3</sup> The passage is corrupt, and the corresponding Latin phrase differs: Tunicae tres quæ in oculi formatione tres præcedunt humores, in ordine causant ex ipsis tres alias, quare dici possunt sex et tres.

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: quibus sensus comprehenditur odoratus.

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: Facta fuit ergo retina valde subtilis, ne læderet humores: et ne motum ipsorum in dilatatione comprimeret. Et facta fuit sclerotica: ut oculum totum cum cornea ligaret: et defenderet ab ossis oculi nocumento. The translator omits the description of the Anatomy of the eye. See Notes.

<sup>7</sup> Lat.: ophthalmia, vlcus, albula, macula simplex, punctus, rubedo. The



Dilatacio  
Pulpe.  
13 Inuersacio  
Palpebra-  
rum.  
Ordellius.  
Grando.  
Nodus.  
Pilus.  
fistula la-  
crimalis  
[<sup>3</sup> lf. 163]  
iiij maner  
obtolmia

1. Mild  
ophthalmia.  
The eyes get  
red, and feel  
burning, but  
there is no  
swelling.

Treatment.

R<sup>y</sup>  
Apply an  
eye-wash,

Nota.

a fomenta-  
tion, and if  
necessary  
bleed the  
patient.

[<sup>9</sup> lf. 163, bk.]

2. Severe  
Obtolmie.

dilatacion pulpe,<sup>1</sup> inuersacion, palpebrarum, ordelus, grando, nodus, & pilus, fistula lacrimalis. ¶ Also þer ben opere manere sijknnessis of þe ize: as blind & hurtinge þat mowe not be curid /

It is forseid what þing is enpostym in þe general capitulo of 4 enpostyms. & it is forseid þat euery þing þat gaderiþ humour to- gidere & makip swellynge,<sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>schal be clepid enpostym<sup>4</sup> / In þe same maner obtalmia<sup>5</sup> is clepid enpostym of þe ize. & þere ben .iiij. maners of obtalmia: as list, & strenger, & alþer strong. List, as whanne 8 a mannes ize bicometh reed & hap brennyng þerinne & prickinge, & þer is no swellynge þeron. & þis mai come of a cause withoutforþ: as of hoot eir or of coold, or of smoke, or of poudre, or of wakinge, or of traueile. & þe cure herof is but list; for þis sijknness mai be 12 curid in þis maner. Take þe white of an ey & scume<sup>6</sup> it, & loke þat þere falle no filþe þeron, & leie it into his ize; for þis is þe best medicyn<sup>7</sup> among alle medicyns þat ben clepid colliries, for it wole make coold his ize & do away þe akyng. & it abidiþ þe lenger in 16 his ize, for it is viscous // ¶ If þe cause be cold,<sup>8</sup> þan þis cure suffisiþ: þanne lete him drynke a litil sutil wijn, & make him a fomentacioun of rosis & flouris of camomille, & fenigrec soden in water. & if þis suffise not, þan <sup>9</sup>þou muste lete him blood, & avoide 20 awei þe humouris. & þou muste caste into his ize a whit collirium, & it is seid in opere spicis of obtolmia.

¶ Obtolmia þat is strong. þese ben þe signes þerof: greet reednes, & þe veynes of þe ize be ful replete, & þe corner of þe 24 ize schal watri, & he schal haue greet akinge & pricking, & sumtyme þere cometh in þe first bigynnyng vlcera þeron, as it were

translator mistook this list of names of eye diseases for a definition of "ophthalmia." On the other hand he took the words "Dilatacio, Pulpe, Inuersatio, Palpebrarum" as names for four separate diseases.

<sup>1</sup> pulpe, for pupillae.

<sup>2</sup> On the bottom of the page: "*contra obtalmia Recipe, the inner rynde off the ceritre, sethe yt in venyger, & hold a sponffulle in thy morth lucke warme, so do oft in þ' day.*"

<sup>4</sup> Sl. 2463, fol. 84 b.: "*As it is sayd of auctores in þe generall Chapter of enpostumes, þat euery flowyng of humore þat swellith a member ouer his kyndely beyng is an enpostume, riht so obtalmia is cleped an enpostume of þe eye.*"

<sup>5</sup> obtalmia, med. Lat. form of οφθαλμία, inflammation of the eye.

<sup>6</sup> scume, despumare. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 450. "*scummyn lycurye, despumo.*"

<sup>7</sup> Lat.: quod non dicitur vilipendi, quia est nobilior medicina. Sl. 2463, fol. 85: "*and sette not listly þerby, for it is þe nobelst medicyne.*"

<sup>8</sup> MS. hoot. Lat. si causa sit frigida. Sl. *ibid.*: "*and yf þe cause be of colde.*"



white prickis or reed, & sumtyme þer ben noon sich pointis þeron  
 þat a man mai se, saue al his iʒe is reed & to-swollen. & he schal  
 haue greet akinge & pricking. & þou; þer be noon vlcera þeron, þe  
 4 cure mai be do al in oon maner. ¶ If þe akyng be swiþe greet,  
 þan acesse þe akyng, & þan lete him blood in þe heed-veyne<sup>1</sup> þat  
 sitt in þe arme & in þat same side þat akip. & if he haue passioun  
 in boþe his iʒen, þan þou schalt lete him blood in boþe his armys.  
 8 & þou schalt lete him blood þe quantite after his elde & after his  
 strenkþe; or sette a ventuse vpon his schuldris, & þat is more better,  
 for þe mater comeþ more<sup>2</sup> of blood þan of colre. & þat þou miȝt  
 knowe bi þe signes of blood þat ben forseid // ¶ And if þe mater  
 12 come of colre, þat þou miȝt knowe bi greet akinge & scharp, &  
 litil swellinge. & þe mater wole be ʒelow aboute hise iʒen. & he  
 schal haue but litil reednes. & þan þou schalt lete him blood in  
 lasse<sup>3</sup> quantite þan<sup>4</sup> if þe mater come of blood. & blood leting is  
 16 good in þis caas, for þe scharpnnes of colre mai be take awei wiþ þe  
 blood leting. & þan þou schalt purge him wiþ a decoccioun of  
 fruitis with mirabolanis þat ben forseid in þe chapitre of allopucia.  
 & if colre be medlid wiþ ony partie of gret mater, þat falliþ ofte  
 20 tyme, þan þer is no medicyn so good as cochie Rasis. & first he  
 schal do þingis þerto for to acesse þe matere / R, a ʒelke of an eij,  
 & as miche of oile of rosis, & as miche of iuys of verueine, & ʒ j.  
 of saffron, & ʒ j. opij; medle þese togidere, & make þerof an en-  
 24 plastre, & leie it vpon a sotil linnen clooþ, & leie it on þe iʒe. & in  
 his iʒe leie collirium album with wommans milk<sup>5</sup> þat noryschip a  
 maide child; for .G. made þis medicyn<sup>6</sup> / Rasis made collirium  
 album in þis maner, <sup>7</sup>& it is good þing, for I haue preued it ofte

The symp-  
toms are  
great pains  
and swelling.

Treatment.  
Soothe the  
pain by  
blood-letting

or by cup-  
ping.

[2 lf. 164]

If choleric  
matter is  
the cause,  
use blood-  
letting and  
purgings.

Purgings  
Pills.  
Cochie Rasis

R  
Mitigatum  
optimum  
contra dolo-  
rem in oculis

Collirium  
album  
Galien.  
Rasis.

[7 lf. 164, bk.]

<sup>1</sup> vena cephalica.

<sup>3</sup> Lat. maiori.

<sup>4</sup> MS. þat.

<sup>5</sup> The use of woman's milk for an eye-salve is mentioned by Galenus *De Compositione Medicamentorum*, Lib. IV. Cap. 3.

<sup>6</sup> The translator has omitted the following prescription preserved in Sl. 2463, fol. 85 b.: and he cleped hit helpyng, for he, þat he made hit fore, was holpen by one leyng therto. ¶ Take iiij. ʒ. of ceruse sarsed, and distemper hit wit water on a marbull stone tenne dayes, and kepe hit euermore couered þat þer falle no poudre þerinne; thanne take ij. ʒ. and an halfe of gomme arabik and putte hit in þe water, to þat hit be molten in þat water, and þanne cole hit and medele yt as well as þou may wit þi forsayd ceruse; and whanne þis medecyne is made liche paste, adde therto these thynges sotilly powdered and sarsed tryes or thryes thoruz a sotyll linnen clothe. Take amidum iiij. ʒ. sarcocolle, safran, opium ana þe iiij. partie of a ʒ. grynde hem all wel togeder longe tyme, and make smale pillules and reserue hem, to þat þou haue nede, and whanne yt ys nede dystempere one of hem with (fol. 86) womannes mylk and administer yt.



R  
A Collyrium  
used by  
Rhasis.

pulus  
citrinus

The patient's  
diet:  
He shall take  
neither meat  
nor wine;

[3 lf. 165]

he shall lie in  
a dark room,

and take a  
bath, when  
the matter  
has gone.

Bathing is  
noxious,  
when there  
is a pustule.  
Maturative  
medicines:

Colirium  
thuris

tyme. Take ceruse waische .x. partis, sarcocolle greet<sup>t</sup> .iij. partis, amidi .ij. partis, draganti<sup>1</sup> .j. parti, opij .j. f / Grinde alle pese togidere & tempere hem wiþ rein water, & make þerof<sup>t</sup> pelottis as gret<sup>t</sup> as it were a pese & kepe hem / & whanne þou wolt worche 4 þerwiþ, tempere oon þerof<sup>t</sup> wiþ wommans milk þat it be as picke as it were must,<sup>2</sup> & leie þerof<sup>t</sup> in hise ize þre siþis in þe dai. þis collirie accessiþ þe akinge. & in sumtyme it curiþ obtolmiam in oon dai as I haue preued itt<sup>t</sup> manie tymes. & whanne he hap slepe, if 8 hise ize cleue togidere, þan he schal waische hise ize wiþ water of rosis hoot<sup>t</sup>, & þan leie in þe corner of his ize puluus citrinus, þat is maad in þis maner / R7, sarcocolle x. partis, aloes, croci, licij ana partes .ij., mirre partem vnam, & make herof<sup>t</sup> sotil poudre, & leie 12 herof<sup>t</sup> a litil in þe corner of his ize /

& whanne þe reednes & swellyng<sup>t</sup> of his ize is aweie, he mote be war of his dieting<sup>t</sup>, for he mai ete no fleisch ne drinke no wijn, saue he mote ete colature of bran wiþ almaunde milk. & whanne 16 he lieþ in his bed his heed mote lie hiþe, & he schal ligge<sup>3</sup> vpon þe hool side & not vpon þe soor side / & if boþe his ize ben soor, þan he mote diþte him as sutilli as he may.<sup>4</sup> & he mote ofte tyme haue þe sauour of water coold, & þe sauour of wiþi & campher, & he 20 mote lie in a derk hous þat he mowe se no lizt<sup>t</sup>. & whanne þe mater goiþ awei faste & his bodi [is]<sup>5</sup> þan clene, þan sette him in a baþ of swete water, & lete him be þerin but a litil while<sup>6</sup> / If it be so þat þe akyng<sup>e</sup> aswage not wiþ blood leting<sup>t</sup> & colliries & laxatiuis, 24 þan it is a signe þat þere is pustula woxe þerinne, & it is nede for to make it maturatif<sup>t</sup>; for þe akinge wole not goon awei, til it be maad maturatif<sup>t</sup>. & in þis caas baþinge is ful noious / For if akinge be go sumwhat awei, it wole come azen wiþ baþing<sup>t</sup>; þerfore thou 28 schalt attende for to make maturatif<sup>t</sup>.<sup>7</sup> & putte in his ize a collirie

<sup>1</sup> draganti, Lat. dragaganthi.

<sup>2</sup> must, Lat. mustum.

<sup>4</sup> Sl. 2463, fol. 86: "and yef bothe eyen be sore he schal lye vþward, his hodes muste be ryde." Lat.: caputia vestium non sint stricta.

<sup>5</sup> is, omitted.

<sup>6</sup> Sl. ibid.: "And yef it be plesauant to hym lete hym abyde therinne, and lete hym foment his eyen and his heuede. And yf he were riþt hoot in þe bathth, lete hym dwelle therin not passyng an houre, but þenne þe pacient schal be purged ayen. ¶ And in þe laste ende of þe obtalmia yt ys good to take hoot salt water, þat rosen haue be enfusyd inne, and lete hit droppe doune fro an hyþe vpon þe hornes of his heued, þat yt mowe passe doune so by the eyen."

<sup>7</sup> thou schalt attende for to make m., Lat.: ergo in tendas ad maturandum. Compare O.Fr. s'attendre à faire qu. ch.



- of<sup>t</sup> thus wiþ al<sup>1</sup> togidere til þe quittance schauwie, for þan þe akinge  
wole acesse / For whanne pustula is to-broke, & quittance is gaderid,  
þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> putt<sup>t</sup> þeron a collirie of leed. & þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> Colirium  
plumbe.  
4 fulfille alle þingis þat<sup>t</sup> schulen be seid wiþ vlceribus / A collirie of  
thus þat<sup>t</sup> is maturatif for <sup>2</sup>pustulis is maad in þis maner / R̄, thuris [<sup>2</sup> lf. 165, bk.]  
albi gummosi grossi, partes .x, antimonij, sarcocolle ana. partes .v, R  
croci partes ij, & tempere hem wiþ muscilage of fenigrec; & make  
8 þerof pelottis, & kepe hem for þin vss. & whan þou hast<sup>t</sup> nede  
herof, þan tempere a pelot<sup>t</sup> with þe forseid licour, & make it moist  
& binde it vpon his ize, & lete þis ligge til þe akyng go awe; &  
putte in his ize colirium de plumbo, þat<sup>t</sup> is maad in þis maner / R̄, .R.  
12 plumbi vsti, antimonij, zucare, eris vsti, gummi arabic, draganti  
ana partes .viii, opij partem ð., & make herof a sutil poudre, &  
þan tempere it wiþ reyn-watir & wiþ water of rosis, & make þerof  
pelottis. & whanne þou wolt<sup>t</sup> vse hem, distempere oon þerof or  
16 tweyne wiþ water of rosis, & binde it vpon his ize; for þis collirie  
soudiþ & gendriþ fleisch / Aftir þe tyme þat<sup>t</sup> it is soudid, if þere  
leue a litil ampulle,<sup>3</sup> þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> cure it as þou schalt<sup>t</sup> fynde  
in his propre place. ¶ fleumatik mater makip ful seelden ony  
20 enpostym in þe ize, & malancolie myche latter; neþeles we wolen  
telle curis of hem. ¶ Signes of <sup>4</sup>fleum ben þese: greet swellynge  
& manie teeris, & litil reednes ouþer noon; & þe cure herof is to  
purge him wiþ cochijs or wiþ trocisco de turbit, saue cochie ben  
24 more better. & þou schalt<sup>t</sup> putte in his eere muscilaginem<sup>5</sup> fenigrec, In this case  
purge and  
apply a  
plaster.  
R  
& putte in his ize zelowe poudre þat<sup>t</sup> is forseid. & vpon his ize þou  
schalt<sup>t</sup> leie enplastre maad of aloe, mirra, acacia, & croco ana, &  
distempere hem wiþ mussilagine fenigreci. & in þis caas good wijn  
28 wole do him good, drunken in mesure / If it come of malancolie, Treatment of  
an apostema  
if Melancholy  
is the cause.  
þou schalt<sup>t</sup> knowe bi blaknes of al þe bodi<sup>6</sup> & leene, & bi drienes of  
hise izen, & ful litil reednes or noon in hise izen. & þe cure herof  
is for to purge wel malancolie, & baping<sup>t</sup> & fomentacion wiþ rosis &  
32 violet, & flouris of borage & buglossa. & þis þou schalt<sup>t</sup> wite þat<sup>t</sup> Nota.  
in euery maner of obtalmia, in þe ende þerof baping<sup>t</sup> ben good.

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: cum coto, donec super cotum sanies apparebit. The translator read "toto." Sl. 2463, f. 86: "with cotoun, to þat þe quytture schewe vpon þe cottone."

<sup>3</sup> ampulle, a tumour in the skin of the hands or the feet. See Tomm. Dict., s. v. ampolla. The Lat. has *albula*. Matth. Sylv.: "*Albule id est macule oculi albe.*"

<sup>5</sup> MS. & inserted.

<sup>6</sup> Sl. 2463, fol. 87: "All þe body of þe pacient ys blakkyssh."



If pain and swelling follow an injury, apply blood drawn from a living dove.

¶ If þat reednes of þe ize come of smyting<sup>1</sup> & akyng<sup>2</sup>, & swellynge come þerwip, þan it is necessarie for to haue a 3ong<sup>3</sup> culuer quyk, & lete hir blood in a veyne vndir hir wyng<sup>4</sup> wip a nedle, & putte it in his ize as hoot<sup>5</sup> as it comeþ fro þe culuer.<sup>1</sup> þis 4

[<sup>2</sup> If. 166, bk.]

doip awei <sup>2</sup>þe akyng<sup>2</sup>, & þe reednes & þe brennyng<sup>2</sup>.

de vlcibus  
oculorum.

These ulcers are accompanied with continual pain.

vij maner  
vleus

The symptoms of an ulcer are pain and a red point in the eye.

¶ Vlcera ben engendrid in a mannes ize. & þan þer comeþ greet<sup>6</sup> akinge þerwip & abydyng<sup>6</sup>, & þis mai not be doon awei wip collirium album, ne wip noon mitigatif / And þere ben vij. maner 8 vlcera, & of alle we wolen telle her curis schortli & profitabli, of curis þat I am expert<sup>3</sup> of<sup>3</sup> longe tyme. ¶ The signes of vlcera þat pustula comeþ þerof ben þese: grete akingis þat mai not be swagid wip collirium album, & þer wole in his ize appere a reed poynt<sup>4</sup> or a 12 corn. & if al his ize be reed, þan þe poynt<sup>4</sup> or corn wole be more reed, & þat point<sup>4</sup> wole make greet<sup>6</sup> agreuance, & greet<sup>6</sup> swellinge, & greet<sup>6</sup> betyng<sup>6</sup>, & manie teeris / It is greet<sup>6</sup> nede in þis passioun for to sotille his dietyng<sup>6</sup>, & do þerto þingis for to make mitigatif, as 16 collirium album, & lete him blood, & do al þe cure as it is aforseid / If þou miȝt<sup>4</sup> not defende þe mater wip alle þese remedies ne aswage þe akyng<sup>2</sup>, or þer wexe a corn þeron or vleus, & collirium de plumbo ne wole suffise for to soude vleus, þan þou schalt<sup>4</sup> leie þerto mitiga- 20 tiuis for to do awei þe akyng<sup>2</sup>. & do in his ize collirium <sup>4</sup>eliser,<sup>5</sup> for þat wole defende þat þe enpostym schal not wexe, þat is maad in þis maner / Rȝ, antimonij, emathitis,<sup>6</sup> ana partes .x., acacie partes .iij., aloes partem .j., grinde hem sotilly & tempere hem wip iuys of 24

Treatment:

Apply  
Colirium  
album  
to relieve  
pain;

and if this is  
insufficient,

[<sup>4</sup> If. 167]

Colirium  
Eliphur.

R

<sup>1</sup> The use of blood taken from a vein under the wings of a dove is mentioned by Galen: De Simplicium Medicamentorum medicamentis, Lib. X., Cap. II. 3. Trevisa translation of *Bart. de Propr.*, Lib. VII., Cap. 16, (Add. 27,944, fol. 84), "Also philosophres telleþ as Constant, seiþ þat þe blood i-drawe out of þe poynt of þe riȝt wyng<sup>4</sup> of a culcer, oþer of a swalone, oþer of a lepwink, & i-doo in þe byggyng<sup>2</sup> vpon þat mole, clensiþ hit miȝtyly / for þe blood of þese foules hetep and dissolceþ strongliche."

<sup>3</sup> of curis þat I am expert of, Lat. curam quam sum expertus.

<sup>5</sup> MS. *elifer*, Lat. *elisir*, the form of Arab. *eliksir* as preserved in Ital. *elisire*. It means in its pharmacological sense an alcoholic liquor, in which aromatic substances are dissolved. Devic (*Dict. Ét.*) states, that the Arabic word is merely a transcription of Greek *ξηρόν*, dry. Lanfranc gives a curious explanation of the word in the present passage, which has been omitted by the translator: *collyrium elesir: quod est dicere penetrativum, quod egressum uveae prohibet*. Sl. 2463, f. 87 b.: "*colirium eleser þat is þe seyne persyng, þe whiche defendith þe egression of vnea.*"

<sup>6</sup> *emathites*, hæmatites, bloodstone. Mentioned as a stiptic and an eye-medicine in *Galen* (ed. Kühn, vol. X., 330); in *Bart. De Propr.*, Lib. XVI., Cap. 39 (Add. 27,944, fol. 199 b), "*Emathites is a reed stoon . . . & is good aȝeins þe flux of þe bladdre and to sore yhen.*"



corigiole,<sup>1</sup> & make þerof polottis; & dissolue herof wip watir of  
rosis, & binde it faste to his ize. þis collirium fasteneth his ize, &  
makip þat þe enpostym may wexe no ferþere / ¶ Macula<sup>2</sup> is a wem Macula is a  
white spot on  
or near the  
pupil of the  
eye.  
4 in a mannys ize, & summe be white þerof & sittip vpon þe sizt<sup>3</sup> of  
þe ize,<sup>3</sup> & summe bisidis þe sizt. & þis cometh of an oold obtalmiam.  
& herto principali is good collirium album of .G. þat is forseid. & Galien  
þis collirie is good þerfore / R̄, aloes, croci. ana partes viij, eris vsti Colirium  
album  
8 waischen, gummi arabici, opij, ana partes vj., mirre xij. partis,  
climie<sup>4</sup> partes iiij., thurus partes .iij, grinde alle þese sotilly & tem-  
pere hem wip swete wijn, & make þerof pelottis, & kepe hem : &  
wip þis collirie I temperid collirium album. Galien & I haue curid Galien  
12 wip þese .ij. colliries, & wip cauterijs, & kuttingis of veynes, manye  
men / & I curide þerwip a man þat was clepid sir Reynold Manesyn. A nobleman  
who had lost  
his eye-sight  
[<sup>5</sup> lf. 167, bk.]  
was treated  
by Lanfranc,  
& he hadde obtolmiam id est postym in his ize longe tyme tofore,  
& þerof came manye wemmys in his ize; summe þerof weren white  
16 & summe þerof weren reed, & maden þat he miȝte not se, &  
anoþer man ledde him. & þouȝ þer were leid mete tofore him vpon  
þe boord, he miȝte not se þerof / & þo I lokide to him; & wiþinne and after a  
month he  
could play  
backgam-  
mon.  
a monþe he miȝt se to pleie at þe tabler.<sup>6</sup> & I dide awei alle þe  
20 wemmys of his izen, so þat he miȝte se as wel as euere he dide  
tofore / & þere tofore he hadde manie opere lechis, & leiden in his  
izen stronge collirijs, & algate his sijknes was more & more : & so  
his sizt<sup>3</sup> was binome him þre ȝeer. ¶ Collirium .G. is good for Colirium  
Galien.  
24 obtolmiam, as I haue apreued manie siþis; & it is good for vlcera  
þat ben newe & not olde, & for wemmis.

& sumtyme sich a maner pricke cometh of smytynge, or of greet  
crijnge, or of blood as þoruȝ brekyng of a veyne, & makip a poynt<sup>7</sup>  
28 in a mannes ize, & þerfore blood letyng is good. & do in his ize If a 'point'  
in the eye  
is caused by  
an injury,  
use blood-  
letting,

<sup>1</sup> *Corrigiola*. So called of the Apothecaries, and of the Frenche men Corrigiole, is oure common knottgrasse, called in Greke polygonon, in Latine Seminalis and Polygonum mas." Halle, *Table*, p. 29.

<sup>2</sup> *macula* as a name for an eye-disease is not used by the Latin authors. It occurs in *Bart. de Propr. rer.*, and is translated by *webbe*, *mole*. See p. 248, note 3.

<sup>3</sup> *þe sizt of þe ize*, Lat. cornea. "The sight of the eye, that is, the hole of the skinne called Ragoides, out of which the vertue visible worketh his operation." Cooper. Compare O.E. *sêo*, f., O.H.G. *seha*, f., the black of the eye.

<sup>4</sup> *climie*. Matth. Sylv. "Klimia, Cadimia. alkimia Auicenna'. est fumus seu fuligo adherens superioribus fornacis in purificatione cuiusque metalli. sioria vero est fex descendens ad inferiora."

<sup>6</sup> *tabler*. Lat. : vide ipsum ludentem in vesperis ad tabulas cum taxillis. "*Tabler*, or table of pley or game." *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 485.



and apply the  
blood of a  
dove and a  
woman's  
milk.

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 168]

Redness of  
the eyes  
causes itch-  
ing and vice  
versa.  
Both occasion  
scab and  
vngula.

Galien

Scabies.  
The eye-lids  
are full of  
pimples.

Colirium  
rubeum  
R

[<sup>5</sup> lf. 168, bk.]

Colirium  
viride  
R

blood of a culuer, & waische his ize wip wommans milk warm, as it comeþ out of þe tete.<sup>1</sup>

¶ Rubedo id est reednes, pruritus id est icchinge, sebel, sca<sup>2</sup>bies, & vngula, goiþ al in oon cours.<sup>3</sup> & oon herof is cause of anoþer / 4 For of long<sup>4</sup> reednes tofore comeþ icchinge, & sumtyme icchinge is cause of reednes, & of þese .ij. comeþ scabbe in þe ize liddis; & if it gadere togidere in þe corner of þe ize, þan it is clepid vngula / þerfore þou must first cure hastily þe reednes & þe icchinge of his 8 ize, lest þer come ony oþer sijknnes þerof / Reednes may be curid wip þe white of an ey & with collirium album / Galien seiþ: icchinge may be curid wip whit wijn, in which be grounden aloes, & leid in his ize wip soft linnen clooþ, & bounden þerto. ¶ Scabies 12 is whanne þe ize liddis ben reed & to-swolle, & ful of reed pinplis. & þis passioun makip greet icchinge & brennyng, & manie teeris / þe cure herof is þis: waische hise ize wip wijn in which be resolved grene coperoze, þat is clepid vitriolum romanum.<sup>4</sup> & if 16 þis suffise not, þan þou schalt make collirium rubeum in þis maner / R̄, emathitis, vitrioli adusti ana partes tres, eris vsti partes duas, mirre, croci, ana partes x., piperis longi partem ʒ; tempere alle þes wip old <sup>5</sup>wijn, & make þerof pelottis, & kepe hem; and whanne 20 þou wolt vse hem, distempere hem wip oold wijn, & do it in his ize / If þe mater be greet & strong, þan þou muste vse collirium viride, þat is maad in þis maner / R̄, floris eris partes tres, vitrioli vsti partes .vj., arsenici rubei, baurac, spume maris, ana partes .ij, 24 armoniacum dissolued in iuys of rue; & grinde alle þe oþere sotilli, & medle hem þerwip also & make þerof pelottis, & dissolue oon

<sup>1</sup> Trevisa l. c., Lib. VII., Cap. 17 (Add. 27,944, fol. 84 a), "Also it happip þat blood wooseþ out of veynes & of pipes & comeþ to þe yzen, & veynes brekeþ or be i-hurt in þe kertil þat hatte coniunctivæ, & þan suche enhiztnes of þe yze comeþ of blood þat comeþ so to þe yze. ¶ Culnir blood or turtill blood dissolveth & departeth þis blood þat is so i-ronne as constantinus seiþ, & so doþ womman melk wip ensens, & so doþ freisch chese i-medlid with hony wip-oute salt, if it be laide þerto."

<sup>3</sup> Trevisa l. c., Lib. VII., Cap. 16, "De lippitudine albugine de panno siue de macula. Another evel of þe yzen þat we clepiþ a webbe, & Constantinus clepiþ it albugo, & brediþ in þis manere. ¶ fferst a rewme renneþ to þe yzen, & þerof comeþ an ycel þat hatte obtalmia, a schrewed blereynes & ache & aposteme; & if it is evel i-kept þerof leveh a litil mole & infection, & longtyme turneþ & growiþ into a webbe & picke, & occupieth more place þan al þe blacke of þe ize. ¶ This webbe turneþ into clooþ by more picnes & occupieth more place, for it occupieth al þe blake of þe yze, & at þe last it turneþ into þe kynde of a naile of þe honde."

<sup>4</sup> Vitriolum Romanum. "The one growyng of it-selfe in the earth by concretion, and is vulgarly called Coppa rosa." Halle, Table, p. 139.



þerof in watir of rue distillid & leid in his ize // ¶ **Sebel**<sup>1</sup> is seid, Sebel, an inflammation of the veins of the eye.  
whanne þe veynes þat ben ioyned togidere in þe ize,<sup>2</sup> ben ful of blood & wexiþ greet, & sumtyme a cloop þat is in a mannes ize. For

4 to cure þis passioun collirium rubeum is good þerfore, or collirium viride þat ben forseid // ¶ **Vngula** sittip in þe corner of þe ize þat Ungula, a web in the eye, sometimes covering the whole eye-ball.  
is next þe nose, & goop forþ vpon þe ize til it hile al þe ize; & sumtyme it cometh of a superfluite of fleisch þat wexiþ in þe corner

8 of a mannes ize, & wexiþ forþ abroad as it were a cloop. & þer ben manie maners þerof, & oon is sotil & þinne, & goiþ ouer þe ize. & of sum men þat is clepid a cloop, & þat oþer maner is more fleischi & picke, & is clepid vngula / þe cure<sup>3</sup> herof ben collirium viride & [<sup>3</sup> lf. 169]

12 rubeum, þat ben forseid: & if þis suffisiþ not, þan it mote be kutt away wiþ instrumentis as miche as me mai kutte awei þerof, & If Collyriums prove insufficient, cut away the growth.  
aftirward cure him with collirijs / In þe kuttinge of vngulam be

war þat þou kutte not þe fleisch in þe corner of þe ize to depe; for  
16 if it were kutt to depe, his ize schulde watre, & be ful of teeris al þe while he lyueþ. ¶ Also in scabbe, sebel, & vngula, purgacioun is good, & blood leting; & þe patient schal absteyne him fro alle swete þingis & scharp, for al þese forseid passious comeþ of blood

20 corrupt. ¶ **Cateracta**<sup>4</sup> is water þat falliþ doun bitwixe þe .ij. skynnes of þe ize & abidiþ tofore þe place þat is clepid pupilla, þat is þe poynt of þe ize. & þan it defendiþ þat a man mai not se; & it is clepid cataracta, bi þe liknes of an instrument þat is a Cateracta. Cataract is a water between the two skins of the eye.

24 mille / & sumtyme þis passioun bigynneþ, & sumtyme it is conformed / Signes of þe bigynnyng ben þese / It semeþ to þe patient þat he seeþ brizt þingis tofore him, & him þinkiþ þat oon þing is .ij. þingis or þre / & sumtyme it semeþ to him þat þing þat he seeþ At the beginning of the disease the patient sees double.

28 to be ful of holis / & sumtyme þese þingis<sup>5</sup> mowe come of yuel [<sup>5</sup> lf. 169, bk.]

<sup>1</sup> "*Sebel* idem quod *Serasif* i. vene rubee que sunt in albo oculorum." *Sinonima Serapionis*, ed. Venet. 1497. Arab. Pers. zabēl, Dung, a dried gourd, basket. (Johnson.) Fr. sébile, basket.

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: *Sebel* dicitur quando venæ conjunctivæ et cornæ, quæ sunt in earum superficie — — replentur sanguine. The translator mistook 'conjunctivæ' for 'conjunctæ.'

<sup>4</sup> *Cataracta*. The Latin authors used this word for 1. waterfall, 2. flood-gate, sluice of a river (*Scheller Dict.*). In its pathological meaning, it is first found in *Platearius*, xiith cent. (*Practica*, Lib. II., Cap. VII., fol. 209 b, Lugd. 1525, quoted by Hirsch, *Klin. Monatsbl. f. Augenheilkunde*, 1869, p. 284). The explanations vary according to the above-mentioned Latin significations. Lanfranc adopts the meaning 'gate.' Lat.: "et dicitur cataracta per similitudinem illius instrumenti, quod est apud molendina: quod quando eleuatur, currit aqua per canalem: quando deponitur nihil currit." *Molendinum*, "*a mylle*." Wr. Wü., *Voc.*, 596, 27.



This irregularity may arise from a disordered stomach, and then it is easily cured.

When the Cataract is developed, a spot on the pupil of the eye is discovered.

[1 ff. 170]

The Cataract can be cured by medicines at its early state.

Regulate the patient's diet, purge and apply a Collyrium prepared with the gall of several animals.

R

R  
A Collyrium prepared with lye.

[4 ff. 170, bk.]

Cure of Cataract by operation: Dilate the pupil of the

disposicioun of þe stomac, & þan it is not so greet drede þerof; for whanne þe stomac is curid, þese signes wolen go awei / In þis maner þou schalt wite wher it come of þe stomac or of þe ize / If þese signes comen whanne þe stomac is ful, & whanne he is fastynge 4 & þei come not, it is a signe þat it comeþ of þe stomac / And if it is in hise izen contynuelli, þan it comeþ not of þe stomac, but it is sjuknes of þe izen / ¶ Also purge him oones wiþ pululas cochias, & if it is neuer þe bettir, þan þou miȝt wite for certeyn þat þe 8 passioun comeþ of þe stomac. And if þis passioun haþ longe durid in a man, & if þou miȝt no þing se in his ize, þan þou schalt wite for certeyn þat it is a bigynnyng of cataracta / Whanne cataracta is confermed, it schal not be hid to a mannes witt þat is vsid in þe 12 craft. & in þis manere þou schalt knowe it: þou schalt se a maner colour vpon þe poynt of þe sizt of þe ize, þat wole sumtyme be whit, & sumtyme in þe colour of askis, & sumtyme a litil grene: & þis stoppiþ al a mannes sizt // 16

þis maner siknes schal be helid wiþ phisie or it be confermed. & whanne it is confermed, it mote be curid wiþ a mannes hand. þe patient mote absteine him fro sopers<sup>2</sup> & fro al maner fatte potagis, & from al maner moiste fruitis, & fro al maner fruitis þat 20 engendriþ moistnes / saue he schal vse hote pingis, & he schal ofte be purgid wiþ pillis cochie rasis, þat is þe beste þing laxatif þat mai be for izen, & þan make a collirie of gallis of beestis þat is maad in þis maner. R, fellis grue, fellis stelionis, fellis hirci, fellis 24 anticipitris,<sup>3</sup> fellis aquile & perdicis, & alle þese gallis ben drie, & take herof .x. partijs, euforbie, colloquintide, ana. partem .j, grinde alle þese & tempere hem wiþ þe iuys of fenigreci & make þerof pelottis. & whanne þou wolt worche þerwiþ, resolue oon þerof wiþ 28 water of fenel distillid, & leie it in his ize twies on þe day ./

¶ Anoper lizt medicyn þat is preued / Take askis of vynes & sarce hem & make þerof lie with good whit wijn, & lete it stonde in a glasen vessel, & lete it clarifie þerinne. & þis is a good collirie 32 þerfore, for þe more cold þat cataracta is, þe bettir þis medicyn is þerfore / And if cataracta be <sup>4</sup>so confermed þat it stoppe al þe lizt, þan it is incurable wiþ medicyns, & also þer ben manie opere incurable. ¶ And if it so be þat he se not, þan make him close 36 his izen togidere, & frote al softe vpon þe ize lid þat is soor; & if it be in boþe his izen, þan serue so boþe, & þan lete him opene his

<sup>2</sup> *soper*, *cœna*. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. *supper*.

<sup>3</sup> *anticipiter*, med. Lat. for *accipiter*. Dufr. Glass.



- izen sodeinli anoon, & loke if þe poynt of þe ize bicomē whit,<sup>1</sup> & if it bicomē not whit, þan it is of .ij. þingis; ouþer it is opilacioun of þe nerue, þat cometh fro þe brain & is holow & defendiþ þe siȝt, eye by rubbing the eyelid.  
 4 or it is cataracta þat is greet & stoppiþ þe nerue, & stoppiþ þe weie of þe spirit þat it mai not come to þe poynt of þe siȝt þat is It will not dilate, if there is an obstruction in the nerve.  
 clepid pupilla / If þou frotist his ize as it is forseid, þan lete him do vp his ize hastili, & þou schalt se þan vpon his ize a whit þing In the dilated pupil a white spot like a pearl is seen.  
 8 as it were a peerle, þan þou miȝt sureli worche wiþ instrumentis of cirurgie<sup>2</sup> / First þou schalt make þe pacient sitte vpon a stool tofore þee, & þou schalt sitte a litil hiȝer þan he, & his ize þat is hool þou schalt bynde faste þat he ne mowe no þing se þerwiþ, & þan þou Then bandage the sound eye,  
 12 schalt haue in þi mouþ a fewe braunchis<sup>3</sup> of fenel, & þou schalt breke hem a litil wiþ þi teef, & þan þou schalt blowe in his ize .ij. sipis or iij. þat þe fume of þe fenel mowe entre into his ize / þan and pass a silver needle through the eye-ball until it reaches the white corn and the cataractic water.  
 16 þou schalt haue an instrument of siluir, schape in the maner of a nedle, and it schal sitte in a greet hafte þat þou mai þe bettir hold it wiþ þin hand, & þan þou schalt bigynne aforȝens þe lasse corner of þe ize, & þou schalt putte in þin instrument anoon to þe corn þat is in þe ize, & whanne þou seest þe point of þe instrument  
 20 vndir þe corn,<sup>4</sup> þan lete þe point of þin instrument goon anoon to þe water þat is gaderid tofore þe ize / And whanne þou hast broken þe place þat þe water was ynne, þan presse it adounward, & drawe out al þe watir þerof clene,<sup>5</sup> & if þer come more watir þerto, When you have pressed out this water,  
 24 þan þou must reherse þis werk aȝen. & if þer come no more watir þerto, þan þou schalt leie vpon his ize a plastre maad of þe zelke of an eij wiþ þe white, & bole leid vpon lynnen cloof & binde vpon his ize, & lete þe patient be in a derk place, & he schal heere no apply a plaster to the eye, and let the patient be in a dark room,

<sup>1</sup> *whit* for *wid*, Lat.: vide si pupilla dilatatur.

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: quod cum videris manum ullatenus non apponas. This method of testing, whether a cataract is fit for operation or not, has already been proposed by Galen, as mentions *Paulus de Aegina*, Lib. VI., Cap. 21. We find the same in *Hali Abbas*, Lib. IX., Cap. 28, fol. 279, ed., Lugd. 1523. See Magnus H., *Geschichte des grauen Staars*. Leipzig, 1876.

<sup>4</sup> *corn*, a mistake; the translator did not know the meaning of "cornea." Lat.: et impellas instrumentum usque ad corneam: quia tunc videbis illum. Cum autem instrumentum videbis sub cornea illum impellas vsque ad aquam quæ est coram pupilla.

<sup>5</sup> & drawe out al þe watir þerof clene, an insertion of the translator. The operation which he describes is the dislocation of cataract by depression. A fuller and more accurate account of it is given by John Vigo, who begins his description with the following words: "And yf the cataractes cannot be healed, when they are confirmed, then we must turne to handy operation. And though we counseyled to leave it to y<sup>e</sup> tothdrawers, yet we wyl declare y<sup>e</sup> maner therof." Traheron, *Vigo*, fol. 136<sup>b</sup>.



and in perfect rest,  
for 8 days.

[<sup>1</sup> lf. 171, bk.]

An obstruction of the pupil from internal causes is difficult to cure.

*pigra Rasis*

If the obstruction arises from external causes, let blood

and apply a plaster.

R

*Hordeolum* is a swelling in the eye-lids,

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 172]

and affects new-born children.

*Grando.*  
A knot in the eye-lids.

If medicines fail to effect absorption, extirpate the growth.

*fistula lacrimonalis*

greet noise, & he schal not traueile wipinne .viij. daies, & he mote be kept so pat he cowze not<sup>1</sup> & fro wrappe / Sumtyme þe poynt of þe ize sizt is stoppid wipinneforþ, & þan he schal neuere be curid þerof; ouper it wole be greet maistrie for to cure it. & if it mai be curid, þis is þe cure þerof: þou muste purge him with pigra rasis, & wip pululis cochijs pat rasis made, & þei muste be ofte zeue, & þou muste do in his izen drijnge collirijs & opere driyng medicyns / Ouper it mai come of causis withoutforþ as of smitynge & pat mai liztli be curid / First þe patient schal be lete blood, if age mai suffre it & opere partiellis pat be forseid, for blood letyng wole helpe for to awoide awei þe enpostym, & þan þou schalt make him an enplastre wip oon of þese medicyns, & it schal be bounden þerto softli / R̄, mele of beenis pat be sotil & grinde it wip wipi leeuës smal / Also take mele of beenys & flouris of camomille & þe rote of altea .3. ij., & also biteine .3. j., absinthium .3. j. & seþe hem in water & make þerof an enplastre & lete þe patient reste, probatum est. 16

¶ Ordecilus is a litil swellinge, & is long & smal & comeþ to a child whanne it is bore, & þis passioun wole sitte in<sup>2</sup> his ize liddis / þe cure herof is for to lete hem blood & purge him of humours corrupt, & do þerto þis medicyn: medle aloes with licio<sup>3</sup> & make þerof a poudre / Also þou schalt anoynte him wip storax liquida & anointe him þerwip / ¶ Also resoluë a litil opoponac in water, and make an enplastre þerof & leie vpon the place, & þe same þing doip diaquilon, & or þou leie ony plastre þervpon, þou schalt make a fomentacioun wip hoot water. 20

¶ Grando & nodus. Grando is as miche to seie as an hail stoon, & nodus is a knotte, & þus comeþ in þe ize liddis, & sumtyme it wole schewe wipinneforþ, & sumtyme wipoute. & whanne it schewip wipoutforþ, opene it & leie þeron diaquilon & opere þingis for to consume þe mater. & if þis suffise not, þou schalt take it wip þi .ij. fyngris & drawe it harde, & þan kutte þe skyn þeron & drawe him out, & þan þou shalt soude it wip þe white of an eij & opere þingis pat ben soudinge // 32

¶ fistula lacrimonalis,<sup>4</sup> pat is as miche to seie as a feestre wip

<sup>3</sup> "Lycium. Is the Juice of a thorny tree, growing chiefly in Capadocia and Lycia, of three cubites heygth." Halle, *Table*, p. 63.

<sup>4</sup> Sl. 2463, f. 90: "A ffystule in þe wyke of þe eye, hit comyth of concours of rennyng of humores to þe corner of þe eye besyde þe nose, & because of her multitude & gretnesse þey may nat passen out but abyden there & maken an emynence, as hit were a lupyne; & therfore of sume hit is cleped lupinus."



- teeris / þis cometh in þe corner of þe ize next þe <sup>1</sup>nose, & engendriþ <sup>[1 If 172, bk.]</sup>  
 þere & makith a þing<sup>a</sup> as greet<sup>a</sup> as it were a pese. & if þese humours <sup>At the inner  
angle of the  
eye a growth  
begins, which  
ulcerates,</sup>  
 leue þere longe þei wolen rotie & þei wolen make vlcus þere, & þer  
 4 wole come manie teeris þerto, and þei mai not be maad drie, & þis  
 mai leue þere so longe þat þer wole engendre a feestre þerof. & <sup>gives rise to a  
fistula and  
finally affects  
the bone.</sup>  
 but if þat feestre be curid while it is freisch, it wole rote þe boon,  
 & þe lenger þat it wexiþ oold, þe worse it wole be for to cure.  
 8 ¶ þe firste bigynnyng of þis cure is for to avoide þe heed wiþ <sup>Apply a  
powder,  
R  
pulis contra  
fistula  
lacremali.</sup>  
 cochijs & wiþ pigra, þan do þeron þis collirium / R, aloes, thuris,  
 sarcocolle, sanguinis draconis, balaustie, antimonij, aluminis, ana,  
 floris eris a litil, as miche as wole be þe fourþe part of oon of þe  
 12 forseid. & make of alle þes sotil poudre & distempere hem wiþ  
 reyn water or wiþ water of roses, & caste it in þe corner of his ize,  
 but þe place schal be maad drie first. & þan þou schalt do þerto <sup>a cleansing  
ointment.</sup>  
 oon of þe mundificatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, or  
 16 þis medicyn þat is aproued / Take clene mirre .3 .ij. & make þerof <sup>R</sup>  
 poudre & make it picke wiþ þe galle of a boole, þat it be as picke  
 as it were an oynement, <sup>2</sup>& leie it vpon linnen cloof & leie þis þer- <sup>[2 If 173]</sup>  
 vpon, for þis wole soude þe place & make it clene / ¶ If it so be  
 20 þat it be not curid with þis medicyn, þanne it is a signe þat þe <sup>If the disease  
has affected  
the bone,  
use the hot  
iron repeat-  
edly until the  
diseased part  
of the bone is  
removed.</sup>  
 boon is rotid, & þan þou muste opene þe skyn & vnhile þe boon,  
 & touche þe boon wiþ an hoot iren as fer as it is rotid / & þanne  
 leie þervpon buttir or grese þat þe scar þer mowe falle awei, & þan  
 24 þou muste reherse þe cauterie azen. & þanne leie þervpon buttir,  
 & þus þou muste do til þe boon be clene, & þan leie þervpon oile of  
 rosis hoot medlid wiþ 3elke of an ey til al þe brennyng falle away.  
 & þan drie þe place with drijnge medicyns, & þan regendre fleisch &  
 28 soude it, & þou schalt wite þat þer is noon so good maner medicyn  
 as þis is / For if þou wolt leie þerto ony corosif water, þat wole  
 brenne forþere þan it schulde / & also it were greet perel for þe ize  
 & þerfore it is good for to worche as it is aforseid / <sup>3</sup>

<sup>3</sup> The end of this chapter, omitted by the translator, is given in Sl. 2463, fol. 90 b.: "¶ Also he<sup>a</sup> seyth þat yf þe bone be schauen with Instrumentis þat all þe corrupcion is seldome taken awaye, wherefore þe corrupcion comyth aye bycause of þe partie whiche lenyth behynde corrupt. ¶ He seyth also þat alþouȝ the corrupcion be taken away neuer so well, yet nature departith a litell follikell þerfro aforne þat þe flessch mowe be faste knyt other soudid to þe bone and what tyme þe bone is touchyd with an hoot Iryn, þanne all þat is corrupt disseuerith fro þat ys hoole, and þe complexion of þe place is tempered.

<sup>a</sup> Lanfrank.



## Of þe passioun of eeris.

¶ ij<sup>o</sup>. co.  
Nerves go to  
the ear from  
the brain.  
[1 lf. 173, bk.]  
The sound is  
conveyed to  
the brain  
through the  
ear passage.

This passage  
is curved.

The ear is  
made of  
cartilage,  
that it may  
both sustain  
itself and be  
pliable.

The diseases  
of the ear  
belong partly  
to Surgery,  
partly to  
Physic.  
[2 lf. 174]

All these dis-  
eases may be  
comprised  
under "ach-  
ing of the  
ear."

Simple ach-  
ing arising  
from a hot  
complexion is  
treated with  
oil of roses,  
and some  
opium.

If caused by  
a cold com-  
plexion it is  
treated with  
hot oil of  
lilies.

AS it is aforseid þat nerues comen fro þe brain to þe izen / in  
þe same maner nerues comen from þe brain & goiþ into þe  
eris & makip heerynge & ben instrumentis of witt. <sup>1</sup>þe hoolis in a 4  
mannes eeris ben maad in a deep holowe boon, & it was bi þis  
skille þat it schulde vndirstonde sownynge, & þat þe sowne schulde  
not come into þe brayn anoon, but alitil & alitil bi degree, & also  
for þis skille þat þe coold eire ne þe hoot eire schulde not sodeinly 8  
entre yn; & þe wei þat goiþ into a mannes eere, ne goiþ not rizt  
forþ, but hidir & þidir, for if þe weie were riztforþ, it wolde þe  
rapere be hurt of al maner þing / þe eere was maad of cartilaginis  
þat is hardere þan fleisch & neischer þan boon, þat it miȝte be 12  
pliaunt. & if þei schulde be maad oonly of fleisch, þei schulde  
haue noon sustentacioun for to bere hem vp. & if þei hadden be  
maad oonly of hard boon, þei miȝten not haue be meued, & þerfore  
it was moost nede þat þei weren cartilaginous: þat is as miche to 16  
seie as maad of gristle þat is neischer þan boon & hardere þan  
fleisch. To þis lyme þer comeþ manie sijknensis, & summe þerof  
fallip for cirurgie as apostimes & vlcera, & summe fallip to phisik  
as greet sownynge in þe eeris & sibillus, & <sup>2</sup>defaute of heeringe & 20  
deefnes.<sup>3</sup> Akyng of þe eeris sumtyme is an yuel, & sumtyme  
harme fallynge þerto / & þerfore it is mi purpos for to speke boþe  
of sirurge and of phisik in þis chapitre. ¶ Alle þe sijknensis of  
þe eeris moun be take in þis maner, as akyng of eeris. Ouper it 24  
is apostym & without vlcera, or it is wiþ enpostym & vlcera; þan  
it is of yuel complexioun & hoot; <sup>4</sup> þat þou miȝt knowe bi scharp  
akyng & reednes of þe place. & þan þou schalt cure it wiþ cast-  
ynge into þe eere oile of rosis, boylid hoot as he mai suffre, wiþ þe 28  
.iiij. part of vinegre / & if þe akyng go not awei in þis maner,  
þan þou schalt do þeron a litil of opium / And if it come of yuel  
complexioun þat it be coold, as coold wynd or of coold eire entrid  
þeron, þis þou miȝt knowe bi greet cooldnes in þe place, & þan þou 32  
schalt cure him wiþ þingis þat schal be cast into þe eere, watir of  
maiorana, or oile of lilie, þat þou schalt fynde þe composicioun in  
þe antidotarie. & in þis maner hoot oile schal be putt in his eere &

<sup>3</sup> MS. *desires*.

<sup>4</sup> The translation is corrupt. Lat. : aut est sine apostemate vel ulcere aut cum apostemate et ulcere. Si sine apostemate et ulcere: tunc aut est propter malam complexionem calidam — — aut propter malam complexionem frigidam.



no coold ping<sup>t</sup>, & þou schalt<sup>t</sup> stuwe þe pacient<sup>1</sup> / Sumtyme it<sup>t</sup> comeþ [<sup>1</sup> If. 174, bk.]  
of sum ping<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> falliþ in his eere as a worme or a corn or a stoon, Aching caused by a foreign body in the ear:  
or watir; þis þou schalt<sup>t</sup> knowe bi þe tellinge of þe pacient<sup>t</sup>; for if<sup>t</sup> If it is a stone, cast hot oil into the ear;  
4 þer be ony ping<sup>t</sup> wiþinne, me mai se it<sup>t</sup>. If it<sup>t</sup> so be þat<sup>t</sup> þer be falle yn ony stoon, þan caste into his eere oile of rosis, or oile of if it is a grain use an instrument,  
almaundis, & if<sup>t</sup> þer be falle yn ony corn, þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> do noon oile in his eere; for it<sup>t</sup> wole make þe corn waxe greet<sup>t</sup>. Make a  
8 litil instrument<sup>t</sup> of tree or of sum oþer ping<sup>t</sup> & wete it<sup>t</sup> in terbentyn or try the cupping-glass.  
& putte it<sup>t</sup> into his eere, & touche þerwiþ þe stoon, oupir þe greyn, & þan it<sup>t</sup> wole cleue þerto, & þan drawe it<sup>t</sup> out / ¶ Also smite his eere If it is a worm, apply warm water.  
wiþ þe pawme of þin hand, & bi hap it<sup>t</sup> wole falle out<sup>t</sup> þerwiþ / Also  
12 sette a ventuse wiþ fier vpon þe hoole of his eere, for þis sumtyme wole drawe out a corn ouþer a stoon.<sup>2</sup> ¶ If þer entriþ ony worme  
into a mannes eere, þan fille his eere ful of flat watir,<sup>3</sup> & þan drie it<sup>t</sup> / And if þis suffisiþ not, fille his eere ful of oile of almaundis If the pains are caused by an apostema,  
16 þat<sup>t</sup> ben bittir; & if þis suffisiþ not, þan do in his eere iuys of calamynthe.

¶ If þe akyng come of humouris gaderid to apostym, þat<sup>t</sup> þou  
4 miȝt<sup>t</sup> knowe bi greet<sup>t</sup> akyng, & akyng of his pous,<sup>5</sup> & bi þe [\* If. 175]  
20 swellynge of þe place, þan þou muste bigynne for to aswage þe akyng wiþ oile of rosis, & lete him blood in þe heed veyne in þe  
same side. If it<sup>t</sup> so be þat<sup>t</sup> he mai not be lete blood, for sum cause bleed the patient from the Vena Cephalica, or scarify his shoulders;  
þat<sup>t</sup> lettiþ, þan garse him vpon his schuldris, & putte in his eere oile  
24 of rosis wiþ a litil vinegre. If þee þinkiþ þat<sup>t</sup> þe mater comeþ of colre, þat<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> knowe bi signes þat<sup>t</sup> ben forseid, þan purge  
him wiþ a decoccioun of mirabolanorum / If þe mater be not if this fails to soothe the pain, apply a poultice and a plaster, until supuration begins.  
aswagid, ne þe akinge do awei, þan bigynne for to leie mussillaginis  
28 of fenigrec & of lynseed, & rotis of altea, wiþ wommans milk, & do it<sup>t</sup> flat<sup>6</sup> into his eere / & vpon þe eere leie an enplastre þat<sup>t</sup> it  
hile al þe eere, maad of lynseed, & barli, & rotis of altea, & of lilie, & medle hem with gandriss grese & grese of an hen. & þis cure  
32 þou schalt<sup>t</sup> contynueli do, til þe quittance come out of his eere, & þe

<sup>2</sup> The translator has omitted the case when water is in the ear. Sl. 2463, fol. 83 b.: "And yef þe water enterid into þe ere, doo Galyenys experyment. ¶ Take a rodde of wilowe othyr a twigge of þe ryne and putte þe tone ende in þe patientis ere, & lappe wex aboute þe tother ende and sette hit on fyre, ffor by þe vertu of þe fyre þe water schal be clene dried vpe."

<sup>3</sup> *flat wātir*. Lat. flaccidus. O.Fr. flaccide. N.E. flat water. Compare flaccid. Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, and *flaisch*, p. 265, note 1, *flasch*, p. 266, note 3. O.Fr. flasque, Lat. flaccidus, another form of flaccidus.

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: per fortem dolorem et pulsationem.

<sup>6</sup> *flat*, Lat. tepidus. See above, note 3.



If the matter  
is caused by  
cold,

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 175, bk.]

purge,

instil oil of  
lilies into  
the ear,

apply  
A fumiga-  
cioun ffor the  
eere

and a garlic-  
plaster.

[<sup>3</sup> lf. 176]

If the pain  
arises from  
wind in the  
ear,

instil oil of  
rue.

If the pain  
is caused by  
ulcers in the  
ear,  
a stinking  
pus will be  
discharged.

The mundi-  
ficatives.

.Galien.

A noxious  
ointment.

.Galien.

[<sup>6</sup> lf. 176, bk.]

akynges acesse.<sup>1</sup> & þan þou schalt cure it riȝt as vlcera of þe eeris  
ben curid, þat schal be seid here aftir / Also if þe mater þat makip  
þe enpostym come <sup>2</sup>of cooldnes, & þat fallip ful seelde, but if it  
come in an old man, & þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe akynges & bi þe  
cooldnes of þe place, þan þou schalt bigynne to avoide him wip  
pillulas cochie & wip a clisterie. & caste into his eere oile of lilies,  
& resolute in þe same oile <sup>3</sup>.ß. euforbij ouþir .3. j. de turbit, &  
anoynte al aboute his eeris wip þe forseid oile of lilies, & leie þer-  
vpon wolfe vnwaischen, & make him a fumigacioun to his eere wip  
hoot water in which schal be soden maiorana & calamynte. & if þis  
suffisip not, leie þer-vpon an enplaster or an oynement, & of garleke,  
& rotis of lillie soden to-gidere & grounden wip butter, & do þerto  
leuayn, & do þerto oile of lillie or of camomille, & a litil vinegre, &  
make an enplastre and leie vpon his eere, for þis enplastre rotip  
coold mater & drawip it out, & if þou miȝt se ony place in þe eere  
þat quittance is gaderid on, þan it is good to opene þat place &  
drawe out þe quittance as it schal be seid hereaftir. & þan þou schalt  
cure it riȝt as þou schalt cure vlcera þat schal be seid hereafter.

Sumtyme akynges of eeris comeþ of gret <sup>3</sup>wynd & sound in þe  
eere, & noise & wynd þat comeþ of þe heed & fallip into þe eeris.<sup>4</sup>  
þis þou miȝt knowe listly, for wip þe akynges he schal haue a maner  
noise in his eeris & piping / & þe cure herof schal be avoiding of  
gret humours, & þou schalt caste into his eere oile of rue, & in  
þe same oile schal be dissolued a litil castor, & he mote kepe him  
fro al þing þat engendrip wynd.

¶ Also akynges of þe eeris comeþ of vlcera þat ben wipinne in  
þe hoole of þe eere, & sumtyme þei comen of an enpostym goinge  
tofore. & þe signes herof ben akynges & cours of quittance þat  
stynkip. & þe more stinking þat þe quittance is & þe more departid  
fro whit colour, þe worse it wole be to cure / first þou schalt make  
clene his heed with cochijs & wip pigra, & þan þou muste do mundi-  
ficatiuis to his eere & drijng þingis. & be war þat þou worche not  
as .G. seiþ þat summe worchip: þei leide þerto an oynement þat  
was good for woundis, & alwey þe patient hadde þe more penaunce,<sup>5</sup>  
& þe sijkenes woxe more & more / & þerfore .G. axip what is good  
þerfore / And .G. seiþ: who þat seiþ þat it schal be curid wip

<sup>1</sup> *accesse*, O.Fr. *acesser*.

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: Fit etiam dolor auris propter grossam ventositatem ad aures de capite descendentem.

<sup>5</sup> *penaunce*, Lat. *dolor*; *penaunce* usually means "penitence."



drijnge þingis, he seiþ fals; for drijnge þingis constreineþ, & apostym One must not apply drying remedies.

is constreynyngt / And summen han now newe rulis: þat wiþ contrarijs contrarie þingis schulen be curid / In þis maner þou schalt

4 worche. Make poudre of mirre, & of aloe, & olibani, & sanguis R̄  
draco ana, & take oon tent & wete it in hony, & folde þe tent in ffor vlcers in þe eere

þe poudre, & putte þe tent in his eere anoon to þe botme / & if þe A powder that is applied to the ear by a tent.  
tent mai not come to þe botme þerof, þan dissolue þe forseid poudre

8 wiþ watir & hony, & caste it yn / If it so be þat vlcus be swiþe cold, þan þou schalt cure him in þis maner / Take þe rust of iren, R̄

& grinde it smal, & leie it in an erþen vessel with vinegre, & boile hem togidere, til þe rust bicomme drie. & þus þou muste do ofte tyme. A preparation of rust heals the ulcer, dries the moisture and allays the pain.

12 & þan þou muste poudre it azen, & seþe it in vinegre azen til it bicomme picke as hony, & þan do þis in his eere, for þis wole hele

vlcera, & þis wole drie þe moistnes þerof, & þis wole do away þe akynge / And take hony .3. .x., vinegre 3. viij., & boile hem listly R̄

16 at þe fier til it be wel skymed,<sup>1</sup> & þan do þerto 3 .ij. of vert de grece, and <sup>2</sup>medle hem wel togidere, & wete herynne a tent, & putte it in his eere, & þis is good for vlcera þat ben oold. An application for old ulcers. [2 lf. 177]

¶ If a man be deef, þan it cometh of summe of þe forseid causis,

20 & principali of longe akynge; also it cometh of child beringt, & þanne it is incurable / Also if it cometh of humours þat stoppiþ nerues, & þe cure herof is for to purge him wiþ cochijs & pigra, & caste in his eere oile of bittir almaundis & opere medicyns þat ben Deafness resulting from child-bearing is incurable.

24 openynge. & oon þerof is þis / Take pulpe colloquintide .3. .j., castor, aristologia rotunda, succi absinthij ana 3. f, euforbij .3. j, costi grana .xv, & make herof smale pelottis, & dissolue oon herof wiþ oile of almaundis þat ben bittir, & do it in his eere; saue þou If it is caused by the humours, purge and instil opening medicines into the ear.

28 schalt make him a fumigacioun tofore wiþ a decoccioun of sanbuci, absinthij, sticados / Also take whit oile .3. .j., & grynde hony & oile togidere / If þe passioun cometh of defaute of spiritis, þanne a ffumygacio.

putte herof in his eere, & þanne he schal be bapid & haue reste, & R̄  
32 vse metis þat engendriþ good blood, & he schal heere sotil voicis for to make him haue heerynge / & summe seien þat þe fatnes of grene If deafness arises from a weakness of the spirit, strengthen the patient, [3 lf. 177, bk.]

<sup>3</sup>froggis, þat lyuen amongt trees; <sup>4</sup>take hem & seþe hem, & gadere þe fatnes of hem & caste in his eere, for þis hap vertu for to make and apply the fat of green frogs.

36 men heere. ¶ Also take a litil garlek & make it clene, & do þerto þe .iiij. part of tartre, & grinde hem smal togidere, & boile hem in vinegre, & whanne it is coold þan coole it, & of þis vinegre leie

hoot to his eere /

<sup>1</sup> skymed. Compare *scume*, p. 242, note 6.

<sup>4</sup> Some words like *is good* are wanting.



## Of þe passioun of þe nose &amp; anothamia.

¶ iij. co.  
The nose has  
two holes  
through  
which the  
brain is  
purged.  
Air is  
gathered in  
the "cola-  
torium,"  
and there is  
the seat of  
smelling.  
The nose has  
two bones,

**A**S we haue bifore seid þat þer ben .ij. hoolis in þe nose þat þe  
brayn is purgid þerbi of superfluite. & þe nose is not neruous,  
& þe nose is a propre instrument for to smelle. & þese .ij. hoolis in 4  
þe nose ben maad fast in þe scolle. & in þat place is ordeyned a  
þing þat is clepid colatorium,<sup>1</sup> & eir is gaderid þerinne þat makip  
vertu of smellynge. & þoru þat place þe superfluitees of þe brayn  
ben purgid, & þer is oon hoole þerof þat goip toward þe mouþ. & 8  
þe nose is maad of .ij. boones in þe maner of a triangle in þis  
maner. Δ Δ. þe scharpe eendis þat ben aboue ben ioynyng wip þe  
boones of þe ize. & þe boonyes of þe nose þat ben bineþe ben  
cartilaginous for þe causis þat ben forseid.<sup>2</sup> 12

## Latin Original.

and three  
cartilages.

[In parte vero inferiori vnum quodque illorum duorum ossium  
habet quandam cartilaginem propter iuuamenta que sciisti. In medio  
vero habet aliam cartilaginem, quæ nasum in duas partes diuidit, 16  
quæ durior et fortior est duabus aliis, quæ sunt in nasi fine. Iuu-  
amentum vero illius medie cartilaginis est, ut si vni parti nasi nocumen-  
tum acciderit, pars alia totius suppleat iuuamentum. Duo autem ossa  
nasi coniunguntur ad inuicem: & fit nasi forma, quæ cum his quæ 20  
dicta sunt, plures habet vtilitates. Prima, vt sit tutamen & cooper-  
torium superfluitatibus: quæ de cerebro diriuantur. Secunda, vt  
aerem recipiat, qui est ad receptionem odoratus necessarius mediator.  
Tertia, quod quamuis maior pars aeris que attrahitur vadat ad pul- 24  
monem: tamen aliqua eius pars per nasum tendit ad cerebrum.  
Foraminis autem quod est inter nasum & os, iuuamenta sunt tria.  
Primo vt cum os clauditur, possit aeris fieri attractio ad pulmonem.

The nose  
provides the  
brain with  
air.  
The nasal  
cavity com-  
municates  
with the  
mouth,  
i. that one  
may breathe  
through the  
nose,

<sup>1</sup> *os colatorium*. I could not find this name in the ancient authors, but  
it occurs frequently in the Latin translations of the Arab authors. The idea  
that it is the function of the nose to purge the brain is an old one. Compare  
A. C. Celsus de Medicina Lib. IV. Cap. V., ed. Daremberg: "Destillat autem  
humor de capite interdum in nares, quod leve est, interdum in fauces, quod  
pejus est; interdum etiam in pulmonem, quod pessimum est." Avicenna men-  
tions the "*os colatorium*" in connection with this theory in his Canon Lib. I.  
Fen. I. Doctr. V. Cap. 1., ed. Venetiis, 1527, fol. 9. "Ossa autem porosa  
facta fuerunt . . . propter additionem necessitatis causa, rei alicuius, que  
necesse est ut in ea penetret sicut odor, qui cum aere attrahitur in osse, col-  
latorio simili, et cerebri superfluitates, que per ipsum expelluntur." We find  
the same theory in the French name for a cold: "rhume de cerveau," and  
for the same reason "Hellebore" is called "brain-purging." *N. E. Dict.*,  
s. v. brain.

<sup>2</sup> Three leaves or four are wanting, and I insert the Latin text from the  
*Editio Argellata Ven.*, 1546, f. 239, bk., and Add. 26,106, f. 71.



Secundo, vt per illud cerebri anterior ventriculus expurgetur. Tertio, ad intercisionem adiuuet literarum, & voces melius explicandas : quoniam cum in loquendo sit necessarium vocem temperare : literas

2. to purge the brain ;  
3. it helps in the articulation of words.

4 incidere: syllabas solidare: ad hoc saepe labia clauderentur & dentes: si non esset alia via, per quam posset aer superfluus exalare apud literarum incisionem totus conculcaretur aer, qui literarum incisionem & syllabarum prolationem sua multitudine impediret: & vocem etiam 8 generatam non claram emitteret: facit ergo in verborum & vocis prolatione foramen hoc quod facit foramen fistulae superius,<sup>1</sup> quod in vocum et tonorum modulationem remanet absolutum: quare voces & toni inde magis exeunt absoluti.<sup>2</sup>

12 In naso vel naribus plures concurrunt egritudines. Nam ibi fiunt pustulae, vlcera, caro superflua, polypus, cancer, fluxus sanguinis, feter, & olfactus priuatio.

**Pustulae** fiunt vt plurimum ab adustis humoribus, et sunt cum 16 punctura & ardore. Et cura est phlebotomia & corporis euacuatio, et iniectio albuminis oui cum oleo ros. in simul agitatis. Pustulis fractis, fiat vinctio cum vnguento albo Rasis.

Pustulas and Ulcers are treated with bloodletting and an ointment.

**Vlcera** quoque si calida fuerint, curantur eodem modo. Si 20 frigida, cum lauatione vini et mellis, & cum vnguento apostolorum, et cum vnguento viridi dicendorum.

**Caro superflua** remouetur cum instrumentis chirurgicis; si non potest tota cum instrumentis remoueri: remouetur residuum cum 24 puluere asfodillorum & cum vnguento viridi, & apostolorum, & cunctis mundificantibus: & remotis superfluis cum unguentis solidantibus compleatur.

Proud flesh is removed with an instrument.

**Polypus** dicitur a polypo pisce: cuius malitiosa est astutia: quia 28 quando vult piscibus saturari, ascendit saxum quod est in litore maris: & ipsi multum assimilatur, pisces fatigati videntes saxum, non aduertunt de polypo propter similitudinem: sed volentes quiescere, sallunt de mari: polypus illos absorbet: & in eius conuertit 32 nutrimentum. Sic iste morbus cum naso magnam habet affinitatem: quoniam eius materia est catarrhosa frigida grossa descendens a capite: & in via propter eius grossitiem & tenacitatem haeret naso seu substantiae nasi inuiscata: et humores capitis agitatione moti naturae 36 volentes descendere, & exire, materiam ibi recipiunt congregatam:

The polype is a disease, so called for its similarity with the animal.

<sup>1</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 71 b., on margin: gallice flaute.

<sup>2</sup> The whole preceding passage about the utilities of the nose, and especially the utility of the "nares posteriores," i. e. the communication between the nasal cavity and the pharynx, is taken from *Avicenna*, l. c. Cap. 4.



There are  
two kinds of  
polype:

1. The incur-  
able one has  
the nature of  
a cancer.

2. The cur-  
able one may  
be treated  
like proud  
flesh.

quæ humores illos in suam conuertit malam naturam: et ex ipsa  
quotidie augmentatur. Differentia vero est inter polypum & carnem  
superfluam: quoniam caro superflua, non habet profundam tenacita-  
tem cum nasi substantia: nec cum ipso naso nimis assimilatur: 4  
immo potest de facili segregari: polypus vero firmiter adheret cum  
naso: & non sine violentia separatur. Quorum scilicet polyporum  
aliquis est curabilis: aliquis incurabilis. Curabilis est substantiæ  
mollis & tractabilis: nec nasum reddit durum: nec in colore nigrum 8  
seu fuscum: nec est multum supra circa cerebri confinia inuiscatus.  
Incurabilis vero nasum reddit durum, liuidum seu nigrum: &  
magnam profunditatem tenet, quam quanto magis videris maiori  
nigredine maioriq̃ue participari duritie, maioremq̃ue profunditatem 12  
occupare, tanto plus ab eo existima fugiendum: quoniam naturam  
tunc tenet canceri: quanto plus eum curare niteris tanto plus videbis  
eius malitiam augmentari.

Curabilis vero cura est secundum quod diximus in cura super- 16  
fluæ carnis quæ ibi consurgit cum ablatione sive cum instrumentis  
& cum vnguentis mundificativis: & aliis quæ nouisti: præcedente  
semper corporis et capitis purgatione: sicut multoties est ostensum.  
Cauteria quoque secundum quod audies, multum valent ad polypi 20  
materiam consumendam. Eius vero quem incurabilem diximus,  
non assumes curam. Si tamen rogaris nimis, palliatiuam curam  
adhibe: sicut in cura canceri recolimus ostendisse.

### De anatomia oris, & contentorum in ore, & passionibus doctrinæ 24 tertiæ tractatus tertii Cap. iiii.

The mem-  
brane lining  
the mouth is  
continuous  
with the in-  
tegment of  
the stomach.

The organ of  
voice is com-  
posed of three  
cartilages.

**T**otam vero oris concauitatem interius circundat panniculus qui  
continuus est cum meri, & cum stomacho: quare accidit quod  
multæ res tangentes palatum prouocant vomitum. Ad oris concaui- 28  
tatem duæ perueniunt viæ: quarum anatomiam superius habuisti;  
in earum summitate est epiglottis: quæ est creata ad perficiendum  
vocem: et ut seruet aliquid de aere attracto ad anelitum. Hæc  
epiglottis ex tribus est composita cartilaginibus: vna est eminens 32  
ante & dicitur clypealis & a laicis dicitur guttur vel nodus gulæ: alia  
est posterius cum osse laudæ continua et uocatur nomen non habens.<sup>1</sup>  
Tertia vocatur cymbalaris siue cooperturalis:<sup>2</sup> & continuatur cum  
nomen non habente: & cooperit clypealem: et ista cymbalaris 36  
mouetur per eius musculos: quare cum homo comedit, viam claudit

<sup>1</sup> Cartilago cricoidea.

<sup>2</sup> Cartilagines arytenoideæ.



- canne pulmonis: & viam aperit oesophagi. Cum autem homo loquitur, aperit viam canne pulmonis: & claudit viam oesophagi. Quare multoties accidit, quod si homo comedens dicere vellet  
 4 aliquid ignoranter: quod aliquid viam intraret canne pulmonis: quare natura moueretur ad tussendum: nec cessaret, donec quod cannam intrauerat, esset ad extra expulsum.] <sup>1</sup>til þat mete be out <sup>[1 lf. 178]</sup>  
 of his þrote, saue algate he schal couze til it be oute. & þan aboue  
 8 þis instrument is vuula þat is þe palet<sup>2</sup> of þe mouþ & helpiþ for to make soun / For þe wynd þat comeþ of þe lungis reboundiþ<sup>3</sup> azens þe palet & makip þe more soun. In þe holownes of þe mouþ is maad fast þe tunge, þat is maad of whit fleisch, & neische, & of  
 12 nerues, & veynes, & of arterijs, as it is necessarie þerfore / And in þe þrote of þe tunge ben .ij. wellis þat spotil is gaderid þeron, & holdip alwei þe tunge moist / Also in a mannes mouþ ben .xxxij.  
 teep, & þerof sittip .xvj. in þe cheke boon,<sup>4</sup> & summen han but  
 16 .xxvij. / And for to hile a mannes teep ben ordeined lippis, & ben as it were þe dore of an hous, & helpiþ forto speke & to pronounce wordis / Now to alle þese lymes þat ben forseid: as þe palet of þe mouþ & a mannes tunge & þe teep & þe gomis & þe lippis, alle  
 20 þei han diuers passiouns.

The mouth contains the epiglottis, the uvula, which helps to make sound,

the tongue, made of white flesh, nerves and blood-vessels,

32. teep.

and the lips, by whose help words are pronounced.

Diseases in these parts.

- ¶ **Vuula** sumtyme wiþ cours of humouris sumtime gaderiþ an enpostym, & sumtyme vuula wexiþ to long,<sup>5</sup> & sumtyme apostym of þe  
 þe <sup>6</sup>palet comeþ of hoot cause, þat þou schalt knowe bi þe reednes  
 24 of þe place & bi brennyng; & þanne in þe cure herof þou schalt bigynne for to lete him blood in þe heed veyne, & purge colre wiþ a decoccioun of fretis.<sup>7</sup> & herof þou schalt make him a gargarisme, & þerwiþ he schal ofte waische his mouþ: R̄, lentes, balaustias,  
 28 psidias, gallas, rosas, sumac, & boile þese wiþ .ij. partis of water, & oon part of vinegre, & herof make a gargarisme / Also þou schalt leie to his palet poudre of rosis, & sandalis,<sup>8</sup> & balaustiarum & a litil of camphre / þis is a good help þerfore whanne þe palet is  
 32 woxe long wiþ hoot humouris. ¶ If þer come an enpostym of coold humouris, ouþer þat þe palet wexe long wiþ coold humouris, & þat þou miȝt knowe whanne þe place is not reed, & if þer be

Vuula.

[<sup>6</sup> lf. 178, bk.]

In case of a hot apostema on the palate (uvula) bleed, purge and use a gargle, Gargarismus.

R̄

If cold humour cause the apostema,

<sup>2</sup> *palet*, palate. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.* The erroneous identification of uvula and palatum is not in the original.

<sup>3</sup> *rebound*, O.Fr. rebondir. See later references in Skeat, *Et. Dict.*

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: XVI in utraque mandibula.

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: Vuula namque propter humorum decursum aliquando apostematur aliquando solum elongatur.

<sup>7</sup> *fretis*, fruit.

<sup>8</sup> MS. inserts & rosis.



purge and use  
a gargle.

R

[<sup>3</sup> lf. 179]

A powder  
applied by  
a Funnel.

If the uvula  
gets too long,  
remove a  
portion.

Be ware  
not to cut too  
deep.

the tong<sup>t</sup>  
suffers from  
many dis-  
eases.

Ranulam.

In case of an  
apostema in  
the tongue,

[<sup>5</sup> lf. 179, bk.]

bleed from  
the head-vein  
and use a  
wash.

miche spotil in his mouþ, first þou schalt purge him wiþ cochijs & pigra, & þan make him a gargarisme wiþ þis decoccioun: R̄, aceti partes duas, mellis partem vnam, boile hem togidere & do þerto poudre of mirtillorum<sup>1</sup> & þe seed of rosis & peletre<sup>2</sup> & zinþibere, & 4 þan make him poudre of pepir<sup>3</sup> & sal armoniac, & make herwith a fumigacioun wiþ enbotum.<sup>4</sup> & if it be greet to-swolle, & þan þou muste make consumynge þingis as diameron & sappa michum<sup>5</sup> / If þe palet be recchid along, & if it be so long þat it lie vpon þe 8 tunge, þan þou muste kutte awei as miche þerof as þee þinkþ good, so þat it be nomore þan it schulde be; & be war þat þou kutte not to myche þerof, for þer miȝte come greet perel þerof: as his vois miȝte be apeirid þe while he lyuede, & contynuely couzinge, & his 12 lungis miȝte be þe worse þerfore & also his piys.<sup>6</sup> & þerfore it is greet perel for to kutte a mannes palet.<sup>7</sup>

¶ The tunge suffriþ manie sijknessis as pustulas and swellynge & kuttynge, & ofte tyme a mannes tunge bicometh schorter þan it 16 schulde be. And þer is anoper passioun þat is clepid fili ranulam<sup>8</sup> & spasmus, & sumtyme a mannes tunge wexiþ to long.<sup>9</sup> ¶ The curis of pustulis & vlcera schulen be seid heraftir / If þer come an enpostym or ony swellynge to a mannes tunge, & it come of hoot 20 humours, þanne þou schalt bigynne þe cure þerof in þis<sup>10</sup> maner / ffirst lete him blood in þe heed veine, & þanne make him a decoccioun & a waisching as it is aforseid in apostym of þe palet: & he schal holde in his mouþ þe iuys of letuse. & in þe same maner þou 24 schalt cure swellynge of a mannes tunge / If þer come apostym or

<sup>1</sup> MS. over mirtillorum is written mirtelberys.

<sup>2</sup> pelletre, Lat. pyrethrum. "Pyrethrum, Bartram, wild or bastard Pellitory, an Herb the Root of which is very biting and hot." Phillips. See Pelleter Cath. Angl. and Note ibid.

<sup>4</sup> enbotum, Lat. embotum. See Duf. = infundibulum. Fr. embut, a surgical instrument, a funnel.

<sup>5</sup> sappa michum, Lat. saramitum.

<sup>6</sup> piys, Lat. pectus. O.Fr. pis.

<sup>7</sup> Gulielmus de Saliceto, Lanfranc's teacher, uses a cautery instead of cutting. I give the quotation from an English translation, MS. Sloane 277, fol. 1 (beginning of 15th cent.): "Be þe grape cutt wiþ a brennynge yren keruyng, & be it putt in by a pipe to þe grape, þe mouþ holden open. Be þe grape receyued in þe hole of þe pipe. Whiche receyued, be putt in þere þe brennyng yren in þe pipe, & be þe grape cauteried."

<sup>8</sup> Ranula, a tumor, which forms under the tongue. (Dunglison.) See Vegetius, De re veterin. 4, 5, 1. Gr. βάρπαχος. Fr. grenouillette.

<sup>9</sup> The passage is corrupt. Lat.: Lingua quoque multas patitur ægritudines, pustulas, inflationem, scissuram, breuiationem fili, ranulam, spasmus et relaxationem.



- ony swellynge of coold humouris, þan purge him with pillulis þat be forseid of .G[aliens]. makinge. ¶ Ther was a man þat his tunge was so swolle þat it miȝte not be conteyned in his moup. & first
- 4 I made him purgaciouns & waischingis, & þan I made him consumynge þingis; & in þis maner he was curid. ¶ **Scissure** is a passioun in a mannes tunge þat is as it were kutting. & þat schal be curid wiþ þe iuys of malue soden wiþ psillium & medlid wiþ
- 8 sugre & sode, & herwiþ he schal waische his moup. & he schal drinke water of barli, & his mete schal be hoggis feet wel soden, & wiþ þe nerues of þe feet he schal frote wel his tunge. ¶ Also þer is a þreed<sup>1</sup> vndir sum mannes tunge þat he mai not put out his
- 12 tunge as he schulde, & also it lettith him to speke. þe cure herof is for to kutte þat þreed, <sup>2</sup>& þan brenne him. & it is better for to make an instrument of goold & brenne it þerwiþ, & kutte also wiþ þe same instrument / ¶ Also þer cometh an enpostym vpon a mannes
- 16 tunge of fleume<sup>3</sup> & also of malancolie, saue of malancolie an enpostym cometh but selden / þese ben þe signes if it come of malancolie: þe place wole be ledi ouþir blak. & þan do þou no cure þerto / If it come of fleuma, þanne frote wel his tunge wiþ
- 20 salt, til þe blood come out þerof. & if þis suffise not, þan frote it wel wiþ vitriol / If þe spasme come in a mannes tunge þat wole constryne þe tunge inward, þe cure herof is for to holde oile of anete in his moup & of camomille hoot as he mai suffre, & make an
- 24 enplastre herof medlid wiþ hoot water, & leie it vpon his heed & vpon his nolle hoot / If his tunge bicometh neische, þan þou muste purge him wiþ pillulis fetidis,<sup>4</sup> or with trocisco de turbit. & þan do þerto þis medicyn: R̄, grana vij. numero, recentis & lucidi
- 28 euforbij,<sup>5</sup> & take vij. figis & pare awei þe ryndis þerof & grynde hem wel togidere, & do þerto as miche raw hony <sup>6</sup>& medle hem togidere, & make herof þe maner of a letuarie; & herof he schal take as miche as a bene, & leie it vndir his tunge, whanne he were

If the apostema is caused by cold humours use the purging pills of Galien.

"Scissure" is a fissure in the tongue.

Use a wash, and let the patient feed on barley-water and hog's-feet.

When the "frænum linguæ" extends too far, cut it with a golden instrument.

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 180]

When the apostema is caused by melancholy,

try no cure;

if it is caused by phlegm, rub the tongue with salt or vitriol.

Against cramp in the tongue use anet-oil and a plaster.

If the tongue becomes soft, use purging pills and an electuary.

R̄

[<sup>6</sup> lf. 180, bk.]

<sup>1</sup> *þreed*, Lat. *filum*. Usually *filetum*. Fr. *filet de la langue*.

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: *Ranula quoque fit sub lingua*. Sl. 2463, fol. 93: "*Ranula is an emynence vnder þe tunge toward þe forther teth in maner of an enpostume, & whane þe tunge is lift vp þer schewith as it were a nother tunge vnder þe tunge.*"

<sup>4</sup> *pillulæ fetidæ*, pills composed from fetid things.

<sup>5</sup> Halle, *Table*, p. 35. '*Euphorbium*, *Ευφόρβιον*: is the gum or teares of a tree called Euphorbia growinge in Lybia, found out (by the testimonye of Dioscorides) in y<sup>e</sup> time of Iuba: and was called by that name (as saith Ruellius) of his Phisicien."



fastynge / Wip þis medicyn þe abbot of seint victor was maad hool ; for he miȝte not speke, & herwip his speche come aȝen.<sup>1</sup>

Toothache

¶ Akinge of teep : sumtyme it comeþ of vijs of þe teep,<sup>2</sup> & sumtyme of þe gomis, & sumtyme it comeþ of vijs of þe stomac, & 4 sumtyme it comeþ of hoot mete, & sumtyme of coold mete. & if it come of hoot mete, make him holde coold watir in his mouþ, & þat wole cure him anon. & if it come of coold mete, þan he schal holde in his mouþ hoot oile. & if a mannes teep akip for sour 8 pingis, þan he schal ete chese & portulacas, or he schal gnawe wip his teep hoot wex<sup>3</sup> / If it come of vicis of þe heed or of þe gomis, and þe cause come of hete, þat þou miȝt knowe bi reednes of þe place & bi þe hete þerof, & þan þou schalt lete him blood in þe heed 12 veine, & þan þou schalt lete him blood in þe veine þat is vndir his tunge ; & þan he schal holde in his mouþ oile of rosis, medlid wip watir, <sup>4</sup>ouper coold watir & vinegre / If þe akyng be so greuous þat it mai not be take awei, þan aswage his akyng wip þis 16 medicyn : R̄, seminis iusquiami albi<sup>5</sup> opij ana ʒ .j, seminis apij ʒ .j, grinde hem togidere & tempere hem wip vinegre, & make þerof pelottis in þe greetnes of a pece, & leie oon herof vpon þe toop, & þis wole do awei þe akinge þerof. & after þe fourþe dai lete him 20 holde in his mouþ oile of rosis, in which is dissolued masticis.

caused by hot meat is treated with cold water, by cold meat with hot oil, by sour things with cheese and purslane.

If it arises from the head or gums let blood.

[<sup>4</sup> If. 181]

To soothe the pain,

R̄

apply to the tooth a preparation of hyoscyamus and opium.

If the pain is caused by cold humours, purge, use an electuary and instil a medicine into the ear.

R̄

¶ If þe akyng come of coold humouris, þat þou miȝt knowe if þe place be not reed ne to-swollen, þan purge him wip cochijs or wip pigra. & aftir þis he schal holde in his mouþ tiriacam diatesseron.<sup>6</sup> 24 ¶ Also do þis medicyn in his eere in þe same parti þat akip / R̄, olium oliuarum .ʒ ij., aceti .ʒ j., colocintidae, piperis ana .ʒ .j.,

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: cum hac medicina fuit restituta loquela dominæ abbatissæ sancti victoris ad ultimum, quæ propter linguæ mollificationem non poterat uerbum intelligibile bene loqui ; dedi ei hanc medicinam, et cito locuta est expedite.

<sup>2</sup> of viis of þe teep, dentium vitio. viis is used synonymously with defeate. Sometimes both expressions are used. Sloane 277, f. 12 b.: "These seknesses be maad of vice or defeate of þe norischinge strengþe."

<sup>3</sup> This is evidently a way of filling the hole of a tooth.

<sup>5</sup> Halle, Table, 52. "Hyoscyamus. Henbane is called in Greeke 'Υοσ-κνᾶμος ; in Latin: Hiosciamus, Apollinaris, Faba suilla et Altercum ; of Apuleius: Symphoniaca ; of others also Fabidum and Fabilonia, and of some Cassilago or Caniculata ; of the Apothecaries Iusquiamus. Of Henbane there are three kyndes: the blacke, the yelow and the whyte."

<sup>6</sup> diatessaron, an electuary into the composition of which entered four medicines. "Among Farriers Diatessaron is taken for Horse-treacle ; — —. Also an Electuary made of Gentian, Bay berries and Birth-wort, of each two Ounces, all beaten to a very fine Powder, and work'd in like manner with two Pounds of Honey in a Stone-mortar."—Phillips.



- & boile hem in a double vessel, & distille it in his eere flaisch<sup>1</sup> /  
 Sumtyme a mannes teef ben frete & ben holow, & þis comeþ of If the teeth  
 humours corrupt þat falliþ to þe teef. & in þis maner þou schalt<sup>R̄</sup> are hollow  
 4 cure it / R̄, olium .ʒ j., sansuci<sup>2</sup> sicci,<sup>3</sup> seminis sicute ana ʒ ʒ. cauterize the  
 boile hem togidere, & þan þou schalt haue <sup>4</sup>a cauterie wiþ .ij. hole with the  
 pointis, & þou schalt haue þe schap herof heraftir, & þou schalt hot iron.  
 make þe same instrument hoot in þe fier, & þan putte it in þe for [4 lf. 181, bk.]  
 8 seid oile, & þan putte it in þe hole of his toof, & be war þat þou  
 touche not his gomys wiþ þe iren ne his lippis: & þis medicyn þou  
 muste reherse ofte tymes / þis medicyn wole bringe water out of  
 þe teef, & it wole do awei þe akyng. ¶ If þou desirist to drawe To draw  
 12 out ony mannes toof wiþouten iren: R̄, cortices radicum mori & teeth without  
 piretrum ana, distempere hem wiþ vinegre & grinde hem wel using the  
 togidere, & drie hem in þe sunne, & departe liztli þe toof & þe iron.  
 fleisch of þe gomis & leie of þe medicyn bitwixe þe toof & þe R̄  
 16 fleisch / Also lac titimalli<sup>5</sup> distemperid wiþ flour of amidum / Also  
 make poudre of peletre & lete it lie in vinegre in þe somer tyme, &  
 kepe it; þis makith neische, þat þe toof mowe be drawe out wiþ-  
 outen ony iren / If a mannes teef ben blac, in þis maner þou schalt<sup>R̄</sup>  
 20 make hem whit / R̄, farinam ordeï, sal ana, & leie hem in hony, & A powder to  
 make þerof past & folde it in paper <sup>6</sup>or in linnen cloof, & brenne make black  
 it in a furneis. & þan brenne schellis of eiren, & ciperi, aluminis teeth white.  
 ana partes duas, corticum citri siccorum, camfer ana partem vnam, R̄  
 24 make herof poudre, and frote þerwiþ his teef & hise gomis, & þis [6 lf. 182]  
 wole do awei þe blaknes of a mannes teef /

### Of þe passioun in wommen brestis /

- 28 **G**Od almiȝti made in a womman tetis for þe norischinge of a ¶ v. co.  
 child. & a wommans tetis ben maad of fleisch þat is glandu- A woman's  
 lous, & of veines, & of arterijs, & of nerues, & ben but veines þat breasts are  
 comen fro a wommans lyuere to hir tetis & þe maris, as it is seid made of  
 here tofore, & in what maner blood turneþ into milk it is forseid.<sup>7</sup> glandular  
 flesh, blood-  
 vessels and  
 nerves,  
 and the blood  
 is turned to  
 milk in them.

<sup>1</sup> *flaisch*, tepidus. See p. 255, note 3.

<sup>2</sup> "*Samsucus*, maiorana," et cet. *Alphita*, p. 161.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *succi*.

<sup>5</sup> *lac titimalli*. τριθύμαλος, euforbia.

<sup>7</sup> Lat.: et ad ubera veniunt venæ concavæ a matrice, per quas, ut scivisti, pars sanguinis attrahitur menstrualis, et sicut chylus camellinus veniens a stomacho, cum a hepate recipitur, colorem recipit rubeum: sic sanguis a matrice veniens rubeus albescit. Compare *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. XII., Cap. 1, f. 209. "Nam epar rubificat chilum album et facit ipsum sanguinem. Et mamilla albificat sanguinem rubeum et facit ipsum lac."



Egidius.

Apostemas  
are caused  
by blood in  
the breast,  
which cannot  
be turned into  
milk.

Treatment  
of a hot  
apostema.

[<sup>1</sup> If. 182, bk.]  
Use blood-  
letting and  
cupping.

In case of  
retention of  
the menstrual  
blood,  
bleed from  
the Saphena:  
use an oint-  
ment  
and a com-  
press,  
which must  
be lukewarm.

If suppu-  
ration is  
imminent,  
apply matu-  
ratives,  
and if they  
fail there is  
danger of  
Mania.

Shave her  
head,

[<sup>5</sup> If. 183]

and let her  
abstain from  
wine and  
meat.

A woman  
with an apos-  
tema in her  
breast was  
treated by  
an unskilful  
surgeon,  
with matu-  
ratives,

in three days  
she fell into  
Mania and  
frenzy, as I  
prognosti-  
cated.

If it suppu-  
rates, open it.

¶ In a wommans tetis comeþ manie passiouns / ffor, as Egidius  
seip, þat sumtyme þer comeþ þerto apostym of milk, & sumtyme  
vlcera / And comounly enpostyms comeþ of blood þat is drawe to  
þe tetis & mai not turne into milk, or if a womman haue to miche 4  
blood, & it comeþ of febilnes of vertu as it is aforseid in þe general  
chapitre of enpostyms. ¶ þe cure of an hoot enpostym in þe  
tetis / first þou schalt lete hir blood in Basilica, or sette a ventuse  
vpon hir schuldris. & if þe cause come of retencioun of menstrie, 8  
þan þou schalt zeue hir medicyns for to bringe out þe menstrie, or  
þou schalt lete hir blood in þe sophene, & anointe þe place wip oile  
of rosis, & þe fourþe part of vinegre. & if þis suffise not, þan  
wete a linnen cloob in þe iuys of solatri,<sup>2</sup> & whanne þou hast 12  
anoyntid þe place wip oile & vinegre, þan leie þis cloob þervpon.  
& loke þat alle þingis þat þou leist þerto be flasch hoot;<sup>3</sup> for þer  
schal no coold þing be leid þerto for þe place is neruous, for coold  
þing wolde greue it. If alle þese medicyns suffisen not, saue þe 16  
mater bigynneþ to drawe to quittance, þanne leie þerto maturatiuis.  
& if þou miȝt not do it awei wip repercussiuus ne wip resoluynge  
þingis, & þou ne miȝt not make it maturatif, þan it is drede lest þe  
womman bicomme in a passioun þat is clepid Mania.<sup>4</sup> þan hir heed 20  
mote be schaue, & zeue hir confortif þingis for hir heed, & zeue hir  
sotil dietynge, & sche schal drinke no wijn ne ete <sup>5</sup>no fleisch. &  
þou muste worche ful sotilli, ffor I say a womman þat hadde an  
enpostym in hir brest & come of blood, & so I tauȝte hir for to do<sup>6</sup> 24  
as it is aforseid, & þo þer come a lewid cirurgian & repreuede me,  
& he leide þervpon maturatiuis: & þe more þat he leide þervpon  
maturatiuis, þe more þe mater wexide greet & þe more breunynge.  
& þe same cirurgian wolde not heere my counseil / & þe wommans 28  
freendis took more hede to þe lewid cirurgian þan to me, & wipinne  
.iiij. daies Mania come to hir and was oute of hir witt, & so þe  
frenesie fil on hir / & þis pronosticacioun I seide in þe bigynnyng,  
but þei wolde not leue mi wordis<sup>7</sup> / If it so be þat it make quittance, 32  
þan opene it & do out þe quittance, & þan leie þerto a mundificatif,

<sup>2</sup> Halle, *Table*, p. 119. "Solanum hortense, which doubtlesse Lanfranke meaneth by Solatrum, doth Galen also call Esculentum."

<sup>3</sup> flasch hoot, tepidus. See p. 255, note 3.

<sup>4</sup> De propr. rer. lib. V. cap. 34. Add. 27,944, fol. 53 b.: "ypocras seip þat in wommen in þe whiche superfluyte of blood turned to þe pappis, it bodeþ madnes."

<sup>5</sup> do, above line.

<sup>7</sup> Lat.: mea tamen prognosticatio multum exaltata extitit.



- & be wel war þat þou putte þerinne no greet tent ne long, as manie foolis doon; for a wommans tetis ben ful of nerues, & if þe nerues were pressid wip ony tent, it wolde make gret akyng, & wolde
- 4 lette þe cure þerof. ¶ Also þer ben manie foli lechis, whanne þei fynden <sup>1</sup>in a wommans tetis fleisch þat is glandelous, þan þei wene þat it be wickid fleisch, & ben þerabout for to drawe it out, & þan þei schendip al þe substaunce of þe brest. þou schalt worche
- 8 wisely & þou schalt remeue noon herof, for as it is aforseid, al þe fleisch of þe tetis is glandelous. & whanne þat is clensid wip mundificatiuis þan þou schalt regendre fleisch, & þan þou schalt drie it / If it be so, þat coold mater gadere to enpostym in a wommans
- 12 brest, & þat comeþ ful selde, loke if þis mater come of fleume, & þan anoynte þe place wip oile of camomille, & oile of lilie, & oile of anete, & a litil vinegre medlid þerwip. & if it be ony nede first make hir a purgacioun, & if it resolue not, þan leie þerto matura-
- 16 tiuis, & þan do as it is aforseid / & if it so be þat þe mater turne to hardnes & blak or ledi, þan þou muste be war þat þou leie þerto no medicyns þat ben to hoot, for þer mai engendre a cancre þerof ful listli. & if it be so, þan be þou not þerabout for to make it
- 20 maturatif, & do þou no cure þerto. & summen seien þat a womman mai be curid for <sup>2</sup>to kutte off al þe brest, & þat is al fals. Saue þou schalt kepe þe place wip vnguentum de tutia, & sche mote ofte be purgid, þat sche mowe lyue þe lenger. ¶ I-leue þe wordis þat I
- 24 seie; þou; I haue curid manie men of diuers empostyms, I miȝte neuere cure a verri cancre, but it were in a fleischi place þere I miȝte kut al awei wipouten ony hurtyng of senewis & of veines<sup>3</sup> /
- & a wommans brest is ful of senewis & veynes & arterijs. ¶ Vlcers
- 28 þat ben in a wommans tetis schulen be curid as it is aforseid in þe general chapitre, saue herof þou muste be war þat þis lyme may not suffre so harde corosiuis for þe greet tendirnes þerof, saue þou schalt do þerto medicyns þat ben mundificatif & drynge / It fallip
- 32 to summe wommen þat þe point of hir tete ne goip not out, but ben al hid in þe tete so þat a child mai not take it in his moup for to souke / In þis maner þou schalt helpe it / Take þe cuppe of an
- 36 acurne, & þat is lyk to þe point of a wommans tete, & do þeron terbentyn or pich, & make it hoot & leie it vpon þe point of hir tete & binde <sup>4</sup>it þerto faste, & þis wole drawe out þe point of hir

Be ware  
not to use a  
great tent,  
as many  
fools do.

Many foolish  
physicians  
[<sup>1</sup> If. 183, bk.]  
remove the  
glandular  
flesh, mis-  
taking it for  
corrupt flesh.

If cold matter  
gathers into  
an apostema,

apply an  
ointment

and matura-  
tives.

If the matter  
becomes  
hard, it may  
easily become  
a cancer.  
In case of  
cancer,

[<sup>2</sup> If. 184]

operation  
does not help:  
but apply an  
ointment  
and purge  
to prolong  
the patient's  
life.

I have only  
cured a true  
cancer in a  
fleshy part.

Ulcers in a  
woman's  
breast are  
treated with  
mundificative  
and drying  
medicines.

If the nipples  
are hid in the  
breast draw  
them out with  
an acorn-cup.

R7

[<sup>4</sup> If. 184, bk.]

<sup>3</sup> There is no condition mentioned in the Latin original, under which the operation might be performed. Roy. 12. C. XIV. fol. 54 b.: de uero cancro nunquam curare potui, licet pluries cum meis uiribus laborauerim.



In case of  
enlargement  
of the breast  
apply

R<sup>7</sup>  
the powder of  
a whet-stone  
and vinegar,

or a plaster  
of cumin with  
honey and  
vinegar.

If the milk  
becomes  
hard, anoint  
the breast  
with oil  
and apply a  
solvent.

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 185]

R<sup>7</sup>

tete. ¶ Also it bifallip to maidenen þat her tetis bicomēþ more þan  
þei schulde be bi resoun, & þou schalt helpe hem in þis maner /  
Take stonys þat me whettip knyues on, & frote þese .ij. stones  
togidere in vinegre longe, til þe vinegre bicomē þicke þerof, & make 4  
it hoot & anoynte þer wip hir tetis, & þan binde hem / þis medicyn  
defendip þat þei schulen not wexe, & make hem bicomē litil til þei  
come to her owne propre schap. ¶ Also take comyn & make  
poudre þerof, & medle it wip hony & vinegre; and it worchip þe 8  
more strongli if þou medle þerwip bole armoniac & terra sigillata;  
grinde hem & tempere hem wip vinegre, & make a plastre þerof &  
lete it lie þeron .iiij. daies, & þan þou schalt waische it wip coold  
water / And a womman be war herof þat sche haue no sich 12  
medicyn, if hir brest schal wexe ony more.<sup>1</sup> ¶ If þat milk be  
gaderid hard in a wommans brest for hete, þanne þou schalt anointe  
hir brest wip oile of rosis & vinegre, & þou schalt make an en-  
plastre as <sup>2</sup>of solatri, portulace, for þese herbis han propirte for to 16  
dissolue. ¶ þis is a plastre þat wole dissolue mylk þat is congelid  
hard, and it wole make þe mater of an enpostym maturatif /  
R<sup>7</sup>, mice panis, farina ordeï, fenigreci & seminis lini ana. ʒ j, radicis  
malue visci & herbe veruce.<sup>3</sup> ana. ʒ .j.; seþe wel þese .ij. laste, & 20  
þan stampe hem wel alle togidere & tempere hem wip oile, & make  
þerof a plastre & leie it vpon flasch hoot /

### ffor brekyng of þe siphac & of his laxyng.

¶ vj<sup>o</sup> co/

If the  
"siphac"  
protrudes at  
the navel or  
the groins,

use a ligature  
and a plaster.

[<sup>4</sup> lf. 185, bk.]

If the siphac  
is broken a  
gurgling  
sound is  
heard, on the  
application  
of pressure.

**A** Nothamia of þe siphac is aforseid / & sumtyme siphac is kutt, 24  
& sumtyme it recchip along, & sumtyme it to-brekip wip lep-  
inge, & sumtyme for greet wepinge, & sumtyme for greet crijnge, &  
sumtyme for greet traueile. ¶ If siphac be recchid aboute þe nauele  
ouper aboute þe heeris, þat þou myȝt knowe in þis maner: þe place 28  
wole be to-swolle an hiȝ as it were an enpostym. & whanne þou  
touchist it wip þi fyngir, it wole goon yn aȝen. & sumtyme it wole  
come aȝen, & it wole make noon gurgulacioun / þe cure herof is but  
lizt, & is wip a ligature & wip enplastre þat schal be seid in þe brek- 32  
inge <sup>4</sup>of þe siphac. & if siphac be to-broke, þou miȝte knowe bi þe  
greet noise, whanne þou lest þin hond þervpon for to putte hem yn

<sup>1</sup> The translator has omitted the following passage: *Caueat etiam illa quæ non vult suas ingrossare mamillas: ne illas tangat vel tangi permittat.*

<sup>3</sup> *herbe veruce*, Lat. *herbæ erucae*. *Brassica eruca* L., white mustard. The translator mistook it for *Verrucaria*.



azen.<sup>1</sup> ¶ þe cure herof is hard in an oold man. þan make him a braccal<sup>2</sup> id est a boond þat it be þe brede of .iiij. fyngris. & it mote be maad of linnen cloþ maniefoold,<sup>3</sup> & þou muste make a plate of iren, as brood as þe brekyng is, & þat mote be fooldid manie foold in þe forseid ligature, & it schal not be round, but plain. & þou muste ordeyne þerfore fastnyngis tofore & bihinde & in hise flankis, þat it mowe be holde algate in oon place, and þou schalt make an enplastre for to leie vpon þe same place vndir þe bindinge in þis maner / R̄, glutinum piscium vel carte .ʒ. .iiij, picis grece .ʒ. .iiij, picis naualis armoniaci ana. ʒ ij, kutte þese alle to smale gobetis, & do hem in ʒ. ij. of vinegre, & ʒ. .iiij. of oile of masticis & lete hem lie þeron adai & anyzt, & þan melte hem in a panne & cole hem. & heron medle poudre mastic & thus, & boli armoniaci, mummie, sanuinis, draconis, dragaganti, farine fenigreci ana ʒ ʒ. medle hem longe togidere / Oupir take <sup>4</sup>scropholarie<sup>5</sup> þe rynde þerof & grinde it wip grese, & make þerof an enplastre, & of þe same rotis make poudre, & ʒeue him þerof eueri dai .ʒ .j. & ʒ. wip wijn / Also ʒeue him euery dai .ʒ .j & ʒ of poudre maad of þe rotis of valarian temperid wip wijn. ¶ And if hise guttis falle adoun into his ballok lepir,<sup>6</sup> þe cure þerof schal be seid in þe nexte chapitre //

Apply a bandage and a plate of iron firmly fastened on the place;

and beneath the bandage apply a plaster.

R̄

[4 ff. 186]

### Of hernia<sup>7</sup> of þe ballokis //

This siknes mai be seid in manie maners / In oon maner whanne a mannes bowels fallip into his ballokis leperis, & þan it is clepid hernia intestinalis / Or þer fallip watir into þe same place as

¶ vij. c<sup>o</sup>/

Scrotal hernias

<sup>1</sup> The distinction made between a simple protrusion and a rupture of the siphac is, in fact, one between a less or more developed hernia. The "gurgling sound" has already been noticed by *Avicenna Canon*, Lib. III., Fen. 22, Tract. 1, Cap. 3.

<sup>2</sup> *braccal*, Lat. *brachale* = *cingulum coriaceum* Dufr., from med. Lat. *bracæ*. See *breeches*, *N. E. Dict.* The use of the "brachale vel lumbare" is mentioned by *Gulielm. de Salie, Chirurgia*. Lib. I., Cap. 43. De crepatura in inguinibus. Engl. transl., Sl. 277, fol. 6 b. "Wipoute cuttynge moost children & opere in whiche þe guttes comen not down to þe ballock codd, & whiche þat hadde but litel schewynge wip a lumbare or a bawdrike, & oure plastre & powdre manye in my tyme I curede þe lumbare or bawdrike oweþ to be maad of linnen cloþ þrefold." Sl. 2463, fol. 123 b. says: "The cure without inscicion . . . is don with a gyrdell made for þe rupture, þe whiche a man may fynde to sylle."

<sup>3</sup> *maniefoold*, Lat.: multis duplicationibus facta.

<sup>5</sup> *scropholarie*, *scrophularia*, water betony, *medewort* written above. See *Wr. Wül. medwurt*.

<sup>6</sup> *ballok lepir*, *testiculorum bursa*.—*Cath. Angl.*, p. 211. *Ledyr*; *birsa*. Sl. 2463, f. 123 b.: þe purs of þe ballokes.

<sup>7</sup> MS. *hernio*.



Hernia  
intestinalis,  
hernia  
aquosa,  
hernia  
ventosa,  
hernia  
carnosa,  
hernia  
varicosa.  
1.

Either the  
Zirbus or the  
[<sup>1</sup> If. 186, bk.]  
bowels fall  
into the  
enlarged  
Didymus.

2. They fall  
through a  
rupture of  
the Siphac  
into the  
Scrotum.

This latter  
case can only  
be cured by  
operation.

Many unskill-  
ful men dare  
to try these  
cures,

[<sup>2</sup> If. 187]

whereas some  
wise men are  
afraid of  
doing so.

These two  
kinds of  
Hernia must  
be dis-  
tinguished.

1. The bowels  
fall out sud-  
denly  
through the  
broken  
Mirac.

2. The bowels  
descend  
slowly,  
with a gurg-  
ling sound.

[<sup>3</sup> If. 187, bk.]

it were a dropesie, & þan it is clepid hernia aquosa / Oupir þer  
comeþ wijnd into þe same place, & þan it is clepid hernia ventosa.  
And sumtyme þer wexiþ fleisch aboute & is greet, & þan it is clepid  
hernia carnososa / And sumtyme þer ben veynes þereaboute ful of <sup>4</sup>  
malancolious blood & wele be gret as it were notis, & þan it is  
clepid hernia varicosa / The firste cause comeþ in þis maner: Din-  
dimus, þat anathomia þerof is <sup>1</sup>forseid, wexiþ wide for sum moistnes  
þat falliþ þerto, so þat zirbus, ouþer þe bowels falliþ adoun in þe <sup>8</sup>  
same place; and þis maner is ofte seen. Oupir siphac is to-broke  
in þe flank wiþ oon of þe forseid causis in þe chapitre tofore / &  
þoruþ þe same breking þe bowels falliþ adoun ouþir zirbus, & bitwixe  
dindimus & mirac þei fallen adoun into þe ballok leþeris. & þis <sup>12</sup>  
maner falliþ ful selden. þis laste maner is incurable wiþ ony  
medicyns, but wiþ kuttinge it mai be curid & sewid. & who þat  
vsiþ sich maner boondis aforseid, but if it be in children & in newe  
causis, it is al traueile in idil, & þe patient haþ greet penaunce þerwiþ <sup>16</sup>  
wiþouten ony profit. ¶ The firste may be curid / & þe .ij. maner  
is ful hard for to cure, & þerfore it is ful necessarie for a cirurgian  
for to knowe alle þe maners herof & anathamiam as it is forseid  
lest he falle in errour. ¶ þer ben manie men þat ben hardi for to <sup>20</sup>  
entermete of þese curis þat knowen not þe maner of þe sijknes ne  
þe diffence þerof, & þerfore þei falliþ aldai in errour. & þe lasse  
good þat <sup>2</sup>þat þei kunne, þe rapere þei wole entermete of sich an  
hard cause. & þis cause is ful perilous / I haue seen manie wise <sup>24</sup>  
men þat coude do þis cure ful wel, & 3itt þei wolde not entermete  
þerof / þerfore þou muste take consideracioun sotilli, where þe  
bowels falliþ adoun þoruþ þe brekyng of siphac ouþir þoruþ dindi-  
mum, & þat þou schalt knowe in þis maner: ¶ In þe firste caas þe <sup>28</sup>  
bowels or zirbus falliþ doun sodeinli wiþ agreuance, & þan þou  
miȝt fele his bowels or zirbum in þe botme of þe ballok leþir, & þan  
þer is but oon skyn to-broke, & þat is mirac. & whanne þou wolt  
putte yn þe bowels aȝen, þou miȝt fele in what place þei goon in. <sup>32</sup>  
& whanne hise bowels ben ynne, þan lete þe patient stonde vp, &  
hise bowels wolen falle out sodeinli aȝen, & þan þou miȝt fele in  
what place þei comeþ out / In þe .ij. caas zirbus or þe bowels, or  
boþe comen adoun alitil & alitil, & makiþ miche gurgulacioun, & þe <sup>36</sup>  
wei þat þei comeþ out is algate sumwhat greet in dindimo, & þat  
wole not be put yn whanne þe bowels ben putt yn, saue <sup>3</sup>wiþ greet  
penaunce & in longe tyme. & whanne þe bowels falliþ þoruþ dindi-  
mum, he makiþ þe ballok leþir neuere þe lengere, & þis is a good <sup>40</sup>



- knowinge: whanne þou hast take kepe of alle þese priuitees, þan þou miȝt wite wherof þe cause is. ¶ Whanne þe bowels falliþ adoun þoruȝ a fissure, *id est* þoruȝ a brekyng, þan þou schalt not 4 traueile forto worche wiþ plastris & wiþ boondis þat ben forseid, but if it be in children & in causis þat ben newe. & if þe brekyng be but litil, þan þou miȝt make .v. cauterijs vpon þe skyn wiþoutforþ, so þat þe cauterie perse mirac, for þat wole make an 8 hard drowing vpon þe brekinge / & it wole not suffre þat þe bowels schulen not falle adoun þoruȝ þat place, so þat þe brekinge be but litil. If it so be þat þe bowels falle adoun þoruȝ dindimum, þan men haueþ diuers curis. Summen leien a corosif vpon þe ers wiþ 12 dindimum, a medicyn corosif, til þe skyn wiþout be frete, til þou mai se dindimum, & þan aftirward he fretiþ dindimum; & summen drawiþ awei a mannes ballokis, and <sup>1</sup>summen drawiþ not awei, but bi þe wei of þe corosif þe ballokis wolen rotie afterward / ¶ Also 16 summen maken punctual cauterijs in þe maner of a cros vpon dindimum, & þan aftirward heliþ it vp / Summen kutten þe hiȝer skyn wiþ a cauterie,<sup>2</sup> & þei streyneþ dindimum, & þei bindiþ it wiþ spago<sup>3</sup> / Sum worchith in anopir maner: first, þei kuttiþ þe skyn 20 aboue, & þan þei makिþ cauterium aboue vpon dindimum in summe partie, & in sum parti þei leeueþ hool. & þis maner is lasse worse þan þe toþer þat ben forseid / Summen ficchiþ .ij. nedlis in dindimum wiþ double þreed & crossiþ þe nedlis togidere, & þan þei takiþ 24 þe þedis & leiþ þervpon martencium,<sup>4</sup> til al þe skyn þat was take wiþ þe nedelis be rerid an hiȝ. & oþer men han diuers werkis þat I hadde not certeyn, for alle maners þat I heere þerof ben disseyn- 28 þat he haþ do brekiþ aȝen, & þan it wole be worse þan it was raþer. & among alle þe maners þat ben, þat is worst þat is doon wiþ medicyn caustica, for medicyns caustica for þe grete venym & malice 5 þat it haþ, makिþ greet akyng, & is cause to make an enpostym in 32 dindimo, and þoruȝ þe agreuance þat dindimo haþ, siphac mai be agreued & diafragma. & fro diafragma it mai go<sup>6</sup> to þe brayn, þat is þe welle of alle nerues, & so þe man mai falle in a spasme, & þan he is but deed. ¶ O þou wrecchid leche, þat for a litil money

When the bowels fall through a rupture apply bandages only in case of children.

If the rupture is small, cauterise the skin above the **Mirac**.

If the bowels fall through the "Didymum," different ways of treatment are proposed.

Some physicians use a Corrosive, [1 ff. 188]

some remove the testicles, some use cauteries, some tie a string round the Didymus.

All these cures are uncertain, **Nota.** a relapse may occur.

Caustics are dangerous,

[5 ff. 188, bk.]

they may affect the Diaphragm and the brain.

A bad leech, for a little sum

<sup>2</sup> *wiþ a cauterie*, error for *wiþout cauterie*. Lat.: *Alii sine cauterio superficiallem cutem incidunt*.

<sup>3</sup> *wiþ spago*, cum spago; med. Lat. spacus, thread. See Diez. s. v. spago.

<sup>4</sup> *martencium*, Lat. martentinum. Name of a cautery?

<sup>6</sup> *go*, above line.



endangers a man's life, which is worth more than any gold or silver.

The author's advice is, not to cut, but apply the above mentioned bandage and plaster.

He treated in this way a patient who was sixty years of age.

[<sup>3</sup> lf. 189]

He wore the bandage during two years in perfect health.

Another patient who was forty years old, was cured by similar treatment.

The patient shall always [<sup>4</sup> lf. 189, bk.] wear his bandage, shall abstain from vegetables and new wine,

shall not leap, cry, or run,

puttist a mannes lijf in perel of deef / for þe lawe seiþ, it is better þan ony gold or siluer, for þou for a litil money makist him in perel of deef / For a man mai lyue vn-to þe tyme of his ende for þis passioun. & þerfore I wole counseile to kutte no man / Saue bi my 4 counsel þei schulen make a ligature as it is aforseid in þe brede of .iiij. fyngris of lynnene cloof or of sendel,<sup>1</sup> as I haue tauzt hertofore. & make þat enplastre þat is forseid, & teche him good regimen & good dietyng / & þou he be not curid wiþ þis medicyn he schal 8 lyue neuere adai þe lenger, ne þe lasse while þerfore / ¶ I say .ij. men þat hadden þe passioun, & þat oon was .lx. winter oold, & his bowels fel out as it is for seid, & it was ful hard<sup>2</sup> to bringe hem in 12 3azen, & I made him sich a boond as it is aforseid & a plastre, & tauzte in what maner he schulde diete him-silf. & I seide to him if he louede his owne lijf he schulde go to no man to kutte him. & he was glad of my counsel, & he bar þe forseid bond & þe enplastre .ij. 3eer contynueli, dai & nyzt, & wiþinne þat tyme he was hool, & 16 3itt I wiste not wher he schulde be hool or no / & þat opir man was .xl. wintre oold, & þer fel so greet plente out at his bowels, þat þei miȝte not be putt in azen, til þe pacient were sett in a baþ. & þo I putte hem in azen / & I toolde of þe perel of kuttinge, & 20 he bad me make sich a boond, & I made him oon & þe enplastre þat is forseid. & I tauzte him how he schulde kepe him-silf, and how he schulde diete him-silf. & wiþinne a litil tyme he come to me, & seide þat he was almost hool, & þat he wolde were his boond no 24 lenger. & þo I repreuede him, & seide þat he schulde not be hool, but if he weride it lenger / In þis maner þou schalt teche him for to kepe him-silf: he schal algate were his boond & his plastre, saue if he haue greet penaunce 4þerwiþ whanne he goiþ to his bed an- 28 euen he mai vndo it / And he schal in<sup>5</sup> no maner ete no growel ne raw fruit, ne no mete þat makiþ inflacioun / And he schal drinke no newe wijn, & he schal ete no greet saule,<sup>6</sup> and whanne he haþ ete þan he schal reste him-silf. & he schal not arise, but if his 32 ligature be faste bounden, & he schal not lepe, & he schal not crie ne renne, & he lepe vpon an hors softli. & whanne he sittip at

<sup>1</sup> *sendel*, Lat. *sinclon*, *σινδών*, a fine Indian cloth, muslin; *sendel*, O.Fr. *cendal* is derived from *sinclon*. See Diez, s. v. *zendale*. See *sendalle*, *sendylle*, in *Cath. Angl.*, p. 329, and note *ibid*.

<sup>2</sup> *hard*, in margin.

<sup>5</sup> *in*, above line.

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: ne comedant ad plenam saturitatem. *saule*, O.Fr. *saoulée*, from *saoul*, Lat. *satullus*.



priuy he schal not streyne him-silf to harde, & he schal ete no mete þat wole make him costif. & if he wole ony þing traueile, he schal do it þe while he is fastynge. & if he wole holde alle þes  
 4 preceptis he mai be hool / & þis medicyne is certeyn, for he schal herfore lyue neuere þe lasse while.

¶ If **hernia** be watri, þis is þe signe þerof, þat his ballok wole be heuy & schynynge, & if þou pressist it wip þi fyngir þou schalt  
 8 fele watrynes þeron / first þou must loke wher it be lital or myche<sup>1</sup> — — & þan medicyns þat ben consumynge & drynge súffisiþ / þerfore þat þou schalt fynde here aftir in þe chapitre of þe dropesie.  
 ¶ If the <sup>2</sup>mater be greet, þan awoide awei þe mater wip kuttinge &  
 12 wip cauterijs. But if þou make cauterijs, þe watir wole come azen þerto, & þe cauterijs wolen lette þat þer schal no more mater come þerto. ¶ If þe mater be of wynd: þat þou myzt knowe bi inflacioun þat is not ledi colour<sup>3</sup> & bi felynge wip þi fyngir, if þou felist  
 16 no watrynes þeron, ne heuynes; þe cure herof is with electuari maad of greynes of lauri & opere þingis þat schulen be said in þe chapitre of þe dropesi in tympanido.<sup>4</sup> ¶ If it be superfluite of fleisch, þat þou mizte wite wip þi fyngir, it wole be hard,<sup>5</sup> þe cure herof mai not be  
 20 do, but if þou kutte þe skyn þat is wipoute & drawe out þe mater, & þan soude it, & if it be in þe oon part hard & callous, & in þat oper part neische, þan it is better þat þou sette noon hand þeron, & principali if it be blac & ledi. ¶ Varicosa schal be curid wip  
 24 gotis whey, & with epithimo, & wip purgaciouns of malancolious blood, & þan leie þerto þingis þat ben wastynge /

and avoid constipation.

Nota

Watery hernia.

The scrotum is heavy and shining, the water is felt on pressure.

Use drying medicines,

[2 lf. 190]

or evacuate the matter with cutting and cauteries.

Hernia ventosa

is treated with an electuary.

Hernia Carnosa.

Cut the skin and remove the matter.

Varicosa.

¶ Of a stoon in þe bladdre & reynis /<sup>6</sup>

28 A stoon in a man is engendrid of plente of grete humouris wipinne a man, as we moun se an ensample wipoutforþ of opere þingis, in þe maner þat men brennen tilis in a furneis. þei maken first þe tilis of strong cley þat is viscous, & whanne þei han schape it as þei wolen, þan þei leie it in þe sunne to drie / &  
 32 þan þei doon hem in a furneis wip fier. & þe stronger fier þat þe

¶ viij<sup>o</sup>. co.

[7 lf. 190, bk.]

A stone in the bladder or the reins arises from a superfluity of the humours and great heat, as tiles get hard in the fire.

<sup>1</sup> Some words are wanting. Lat.: *quæ si sit parua, sufficit tibi medicamen consumens.*

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: *Ventosa cognoscitur per tumorem non lucentem.*

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: *in hydropisi tympanite.* See p. 282.

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: *Signum hernie carnosæ est . . . quod sentis, cum tangis, testiculos dura carne circumvolutos.*

<sup>5</sup> Compare *Celsus Medicina*, lib. VII., cap. 26. The later authors followed more or less closely.



tilis han, þe stronger þei wolen be, & riȝt so in a mannes bodi, whanne a man haþ miche viscous matere in his bodi & mai not be putt out for febilnes of expulcioun, & þan scharp hete specialy in þe reines falliþ to þat mater & makith it hard, & in þis maner 4 engendriþ þe stoon in þe reynes. ¶ Also in children a stoon engendriþ in her bladdre; for þe reynes of a child ben not so hote as a mannes / In þis maner þou schalt knowe wher þe stoon be in a mannes bladdre or in his reynes<sup>1</sup> / If þe grauel of his vrine be 8 whit: þan þe stoon is in þe bladdre / And if þe grauel be reed, þan it is in his reynes<sup>2</sup> / ¶ Summen þat ben hardi wolen asaie for to cure a man wiþ kuttinge þat haþ þe stoon in his reynes; for þei knowiþ<sup>3</sup> not þe perel of woundis þat falliþ in þe reynes þat I haue 12 aforseid, & þan þei doiþ no more saue bringe þe pacient to his deef. ¶ Now I wole teche in what maner a man schal kepe him þat is disposid to haue þe stoon, he schal ete no metis þat ben viscous ne to scharpe, & tofore alle þingis hard chese gaderiþ viscous 16 mater & hard. & he schal ete no beef, ne no fleisch of a goos, ne no grete briddis þat swymmeþ in þe water, & he schal ete no fleisch of an hert, & he schal ete no swete breed,<sup>4</sup> & al maner mete þat is maad of swete past, & he schal ete no whete soden, & he schal ete 20 no maner þing þat is maad of milk saue þe whey, & he schal drinke no coold watir, & he schal ete no fruitis þat ben of greet substaunce, as applis, peris, & he schal drinke no newe wijn, ne no wijn of greet substaunce, & he schal ete no þingis þat is to myche 24 salt, & he schal absteyne him fro alle þingis þat engendriþ scharpe humouris & grete, & he schal not ete to greet sauly<sup>5</sup> / In þis maner he schal diete him-silf, he schal ete breed þat is wel leueyned / &

**Nota**

The position of the stone is detected by the colour of the urinary sediments.

[<sup>3</sup> H. 191]

Rules of dieting for a man, who is disposed to get a stone.

He shall abstain from sweet things, milk, cold water, apples, pears,

new wine, salted things.

He shall take well-fermented bread,

<sup>1</sup> Barth. *De propr. Trevisa*, lib. VII., cap. 54, indicates another symptom. Add. MS. 27, 944. fol. 96. "And if þe ston is in þe reynes hit is i-knowe by slepinge of þe fote and in þe ioyntes of þe lift side, and if it is in þe bladder þe ache is in þe schare and þe twist bitwene þe genetras and þe hole at þe rigge bones ende."

<sup>2</sup> The translator omits the passage about the causes of stone in general, about the stone in the reins and its treatment. The following sentence, *þat I haue aforseid*, refers to this omitted part. The author says that he will speak about the causes and treatment of the stone in the reins, although it does not properly belong to surgery. Lat.: Ego vero, licet liber iste meus de cirurgia dicatur, et ad instrumentum cyrurgicum de lapide renum tractare non pertineat, tamen quoniam multum assimilatur in causis et curis, quamvis dissimiletur in signis et curis. Et quum ad curas lapidum renum multotiens sum vocatus, propter gratiam scholarium modum quo usus sum in utriusque lapidis curatione, causas, signa, et differentias ponere non postponam.

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: a pane azymo. ἀζυμος, unleavened.

<sup>5</sup> Compare p. 272, note 6.



- his breed wole be þe<sup>1</sup> bettir for him if it be medlid wiþ poudre [<sup>1</sup> lf. 191, bk.]  
 maad of fenel-seed & persil, & he schal drinke sutil wijn & cleer, mild wine,  
 medlid wiþ fair cleer water / And if his reynes & his bowels weren  
 4 hote, þan he mai drinke coold water þat be fair & clene, & he mai  
 ete fleisch of capouns & hennes & chickenes, & partrichis, & of meat of  
capons,  
chickens,  
 alle opere maner of briddis þat mouen in feeldis, & of hem þat pork, mut-  
ton, gelded  
beasts and  
veal.  
 woneþ in watir he schal not ete. & he mai ete pork & motoun &  
 8 principali of beestis þat ben gildid, & he mai ete fleisch of .iiij.  
 daies poudringe,<sup>2</sup> & he mai ete feel,<sup>3</sup> & he mai ete eiren þat ben  
 neische soden; fisch þat hap no schellis & þe substaunce of him be  
 greet & hard, he schal not ete þerof / Alle maner fisch þat hap Fishes with  
scales are  
better than  
those with-  
out.  
 12 manie schellis, is better þan he þat hap no schellis / And of erbis:  
 he schal ete fenel, ache, persil, sperge, attriplicem,<sup>4</sup> spinochia &  
 boraginem, erucam, melones, cucumeris, & he schal be war þat he  
 ete no substaunce of caul, & he schal ete no mustard / And he mai The herbs  
and the kind  
of fruit he  
may take.  
 16 ete þese maner fruits: almaundis, auellanes, figis, notis, vuas bene  
 maturas. & he schal not<sup>5</sup> traueile to miche<sup>6</sup> aftir mete, & he schal [<sup>6</sup> lf. 192]  
 bere noon heuy birþuns, ne he schal not be girt to streite, & he  
 schal not slepe vpon his reynes. & if his reynes ben to hote, þan  
 20 he schal anoynte hem wiþ oile of rosis, medlid wiþ vinegre, & he  
 schal anointe his reynes wiþ a lynnene cloof wet in iuys of colde  
 erbis, & he schal absteyne him fro wommen, & he schal touche no  
 womman to make him haue appetit þerto / for greet medlynge wiþ  
 24 wymmen wiþ greet traueile achaufit a mannes reynes & consumeþ  
 her natural moistnes / Who so euere vsip þis regimen, he schal haue  
 no drede of engendringe of þe stoon / Who so vsip þis regimen<sup>7</sup> &  
 is disposid for to haue þe stoon, with medicyns he schal do it awei If a stone be-  
gins to form,  
use a diuretic  
syrup.  
 28 or it be confermed. He schal vse sirupis duretikis<sup>8</sup>: as oximel  
 diureticum & squilliticum,<sup>9</sup> or he schal vse a sirup þat auicen  
 made / R, aquæ li. x, aceti li. ß, medle hem togidere & boile hem R  
 wiþ ʒ. iiij of rotis of ache, & rotis of fenel ʒ. iiij, and fenel-seed &

<sup>2</sup> fleisch of iii daies poudringe. Lat.: porcos trium dierum salitos. Compare *Liber Cure Coc.*, p. 6. To powder befe within a nyȝt.

<sup>3</sup> feel, vitulus. O.Fr. veel.

<sup>4</sup> Attriplex, *Chenopodium vulvaria*. *Alphita*, p. 16. "Attriplex agrestis, crissolocanna idem ang. mielde." O.E. melde, Leechd. III. Gloss. Compare Germ. Molten, Milten. Dessen.

<sup>5</sup> not, above line.

<sup>7</sup> Lat. Qui vero tali non utitur regimine.

<sup>8</sup> Traheron translation of Vigon's *Chirurgery*. Interpret.: "Diuretike. Diuretyke prouokynge vrine, or that hath vertue to prouoke vrine."

<sup>9</sup> Traheron, *ibid.* "Squyllitike vinaygre is made with the rootes of the greate oynion, called sqylla, or Scylla dryed, and with vynaygre."



ache ana ʒ. j, sepe hem alle togidere til þe .iiij. part be consumed  
 awei, & þan cole hem & do þerto li. x of sugre, & þan clarifie it &  
 [1 lf. 192, bk.] sepe it<sup>1</sup> & kepe it for þin vss // The vss of þis sirip wole suffise for  
 to do it awei; but if þe mater be þe more greet, & þan þou miȝt do 4  
 þerto if þou wolt oximel squilliticum, or þou miȝt ordeine þe sirip  
 wip modicis<sup>2</sup> erbis diureticis. ¶ þer is no þing so good for to  
 The best way  
 to purge the  
 kidneys is  
 vomiting.  
 R̄ purge mater of þe reines as is castynge / for whi castynge curip  
 vlcera of þe reynes / In þe somer þou schalt make him oonys in þe 8  
 R̄ moneþe sich a maner of vomet / Take þe seed of raphani & make  
 it clene & kutte it ouerþwert in rollis, & lete þis lie in þe forseid  
 sirup .ʒ. iiij. adai & anyȝt / & þan lete þe pacient ete diuers metis,  
 Let the pa-  
 tient take  
 salted meats,  
 wine,  
 and first a  
 preparation  
 of radish with  
 syrup,  
 then put  
 compresses  
 on his eyes  
 as chese, oynouns, salt fisch & þingis þat mai make him drinke 12  
 wel; & lete him drinke diuers wyne, saue the while he is fastinge,  
 lete him ete 3 notis of þe forseid rollis of raphani þat lay in þe  
 forseid sirup, & whanne he hath ete his saule & drunke, þan binde  
 vpon his ȝen neische lynet or flex, & streyne þou not it to harde 16  
 but meneli. & þan take watir in which has been soden anetum  
 til it bicomereed, & take þerof li. j., & medle it wip þe sirup þat  
 [3 lf. 193]  
 and give an  
 emetic.  
 radix raphani lay þerinne, & make him<sup>3</sup> drinke vp al togidere, &  
 þan he schal caste vp al his mete & al his drink, & manye wickede 20  
 humours þerwip. & þan make him gadere out þe foul mater of his  
 nose, & waische his mouþ & his teep; þis medicyn wole do awei þe  
 mater of þe stoon & purge wel his reynes, þis is þe best medicyn  
 þat mai be, for to kepe a man fro þe stoon. 24

¶ If þe man be not hool in þis maner, saue þe stoon is con-  
 fermed fast, þan þe cure þerof mai be in .iiij. maners: þat oon is for  
 to aswage þe akyng, & þat oper is for to breke þe stoon & putte  
 him out // Whanne a man hap greet akyng in his reynes & in his 28  
 bladdre, & þou wotist wel it ben signes of þe stoon, first þou schalt  
 make him a clisterie wip a decoccioun of herbis þat ben mollificatif  
 & dretik: as malua, violae, bismalue, fenigreci, paritaria, apij,  
 R̄ fenicli, petrosilij scolopendrie, spergi, brusci,<sup>4</sup> sauine, ebuli, sambuci. 32  
 decoction of  
 herbs,  
 & if it be in winter do þerto calamentum, pulegium, origanum, se-  
 men fenicli, apij, petrosilij, carui, aneti, leuistici,<sup>5</sup> dauci, milij solis,<sup>6</sup>  
 [7 lf. 193, bk.] eruce, quatuor semina frigidorum, & impone mel, <sup>7</sup>sal, oleum camo-

<sup>2</sup> MS. *modiu's*.<sup>4</sup> *brusci*, *Ruscus aculeatus*, wild myrtle.<sup>5</sup> *Alphita*, p. 98: "Leuisticus, keisim idem angl. loueache."<sup>6</sup> MS. *solus*. *Alphita*, p. 117, "*Milium solis*, granum solis, cauda pecorina idem. g°. et a°. gromel." Phillips: "*Milium solis*, the Herb Gromwell."



- mille, & scharpe it<sup>t</sup> wiþ benedicta,<sup>1</sup> and make þerof<sup>t</sup> a clisterie, & þe pacient<sup>t</sup> schal holde it<sup>t</sup> wiþinne him longe tyme, & after þis clisterie do him in to a particular baþ, & lete him sitte þeron anoon to þe  
 4 nauele, & in his baþ schulen be soden leeuës of<sup>t</sup> malue, peritorie, put the patient into a bath  
 viole, senacion, scutella panici pistati & cortice mundati; þis maner baþ as I haue ofte preued, it<sup>t</sup> aswaged akinge / & whanne he goiþ out<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> his baþ, make an enplastre of<sup>t</sup> mele, oile & watir, as þou  
 8 schalt<sup>t</sup> fynde in þe antidotarie in þe c<sup>o</sup>. of<sup>t</sup> maturatiuis, & leie vpon þe place þere þe passioun is / If<sup>t</sup> þou knowist<sup>t</sup> wel þat<sup>t</sup> þe stoon  
 falliþ adoun of<sup>t</sup> þe reynes toward þe bladdre bi þe weie of<sup>t</sup> þe vrine, sette þan vndir þe place þere it<sup>t</sup> akip,<sup>2</sup> sichiam<sup>3</sup> wiþ fier wiþout<sup>t</sup> ony  
 12 kuttinge, for þis wole drawe adoun þe stoon. & as þe stoon discendiþ adoun to sichiam to sette it<sup>t</sup> lower til he come anoon to þe bladdre, & þan al þe akyng wole go awei. ¶ Tofore alle þingis  
 fildonium<sup>4</sup> is good, þat<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> fynde in þe antidotarie of<sup>t</sup> auicen, The best medicine is the Philonium.  
 16 for þat<sup>t</sup> is a sure medicyn in þis caas. ¶ Anoþer medicyn þat<sup>t</sup> auicen made, & I haue preued it<sup>t</sup>, and it<sup>t</sup> <sup>5</sup>doiþ awei akyng þat<sup>t</sup> is in vlceribus renum. R̄, seminis iusquiami albi .3. ű, opij, grana  
 .iiij, seminum citruli, lactuce, portulace, ana .3. j., medle al togidere Another medicine of Avicenna.  
 20 & 3eue herof<sup>t</sup> .3. ij. wiþ sugre. ¶ And þis þou muste wite þat<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> 3eue þe pacient<sup>t</sup> no þing<sup>t</sup> for to make him pisse whan his akinge is strong<sup>t</sup>, & whanne his vrine is stoppid; for þat<sup>t</sup> wole make þe more akinge / It<sup>t</sup> is perel of<sup>t</sup> þis passioun, for þe akyng is so  
 24 greet<sup>t</sup> sumtyme þat<sup>t</sup> þe pacient<sup>t</sup> haþ þe spasme þerwiþ & is deed þerwiþ, saue þou schalt<sup>t</sup> do awei his akyng wiþ baþinge & enplastris & anoyntyngis, & þane aftirward þou schalt<sup>t</sup> make him medicyns for to breke þe stoon & putte him out<sup>t</sup> wiþ þe vryne / R̄, cretani  
 28 marini,<sup>6</sup> scolopendrie, capillis veneris, spice celtice, ana .3. ij., radix fenicli, apiij, petrosilij, spergi, brusci, cicore, graminis, filipendule, genciane, saxifrage, squille, asse, ana .3. j., iiij<sup>or</sup> semina frigidorum, seminum fenicli, apiij, coriandri, scarirole,<sup>7</sup> granorum iuniperi, nucleum

<sup>1</sup> benedicta. Lat. cum benedicta Nicolai.

<sup>2</sup> MS. makip. Lat. sub loco doloris.

<sup>3</sup> sichiam. Lat. syciam G. σίκυος, the common cucumber. "A figura vel formæ similitudine Cucurbitæ vel cucurbitulæ medicis dicuntur vascula illa, quæ cuti cum flamma affigi solent, cum vel sine scarificatione." Castelli, Lex. medicum.

<sup>4</sup> fildonium. Lat. philonium romanum. Matth. Sylv.: "Filonium i. nouus amicus & est confectio quedam sic uocata." Galen, ed. Kuehn, vol. xvii. B. 331, φάρμακον φιλόνηιον. An electuary with Opium, so called from Philo of Tharsus.

<sup>6</sup> Crithmum maritimum, L.

<sup>7</sup> Sin. Barth.: "Scariola, lactucella, lactuca agrestis idem, an. sowe-thistel."



[1f. 194, bk.]

R̄  
A medicine  
made of  
Avicenna.

R̄  
The ashes of  
a hare burnt  
alive.

The medicine  
shall not be  
too strong,

[\* 1f. 195]  
as it might  
hurt the  
kidneys.

A medicine  
of Rasis.

R̄

The patient  
suffers from  
strangury,  
if the stone  
is in the  
neck of the  
bladder.

Remove the  
stone with  
the finger as  
with a  
syringe.

cerasorum, milij solis, ana .ʒ. ʒ. fiat sirupus cum duabus partibus  
ꝛucari, & *tercia mellis squillitici*, & it̄ schal be take wiþ a decoccioun  
of *tribulorum* & *cicerum rubeorum*, þis eletuarie is <sup>1</sup> of auicen  
makyng / R̄, cineris vitris, caulis, cineris leporis combusti, cineris 4  
scorpionis, cineris testi oui,<sup>2</sup> lapidis spongie, lapidis iudaici, sanguinis  
hirci sicci, gummi nucis acori, ana .ʒ. j. seminis petrosilij, dauci,  
pulegij, gummi arabici, seminis albi piperis ana .ʒ. j., auri .ʒ. iiij.,  
balsami .ʒ. ʒ., muscati .ʒ. j., make alle þese wiþ good hony þat̄ it̄ 8  
be whit̄ & clene, & þou schalt̄ ʒeue .ʒ. iiij. þerof̄, & .iiij. tymes in  
þe woke. ¶ Also a good medicyn for þe stoon þat̄ is comen to a  
mannes reynes & in his bladdre / Take a litil hare þat̄ bledde  
neuere blood, & do him in an erþen vessel<sup>3</sup> wel glasid wiþinne wiþ a 12  
couercle of þe same mater, & stoppe it̄ faste, þat̄ þer mowe come out̄  
þerof̄ no fume, wiþ good lute or wiþ past̄, & sette þis vessel in a  
furneis til þe hare be bcome al aischis, & þan grinde it̄ & kepe it̄,  
& ʒeue him þerof̄ .ʒ. j. whanne he goiþ out̄ of his bapinge þat̄ is 16  
forseid, wiþ a decoccioun of *tribulorum*, & hony. I have preued  
þat̄ þis medicyn is good, & also þou miȝt̄ medle wiþ þis poudre,  
triacle / And þis schal be þin entencioun for to ʒeue him medicyns  
þat̄ ben not̄ stronḡ for to breke þe stoon, as saxifrage & cantarides 20  
& op̄ere stronḡ medicyns þat̄ piliþ þe reynes. & if þe pacient̄  
haue drie reynes & he be leene of bodi, þan in þis caas .ʒ. j. of  
Rasis makyng is good / R̄, semina melonum mundatorum .ʒ. xxx,  
seminis citruli, seminis portulace, seminis cucurbite, seminis papau- 24  
eris albi ana .ʒ. iiij, seminis iusquiami albe .ʒ. ij., ꝛucari pondus  
omnium,<sup>5</sup> saue I do þerto þe double weiȝte of sugre /

If þe stoon be in his bladdre, þan þou schalt̄ worche in þis  
maner / First̄ þou schalt̄ take kepe wher he haue stranguria. þat̄ 28  
þou miȝt̄ wite if he makiþ watir droppynli & a litil at̄ oonys, &  
hap greet̄ penaunce in his bladdre. þan þe stoon is in þe necke of  
þe bladdre; þan þou schalt̄ make him a clisterie mollificatif̄ þat̄ þou  
mowe auido his bowels, & þan þou schalt̄ frote his noseþrillis with 32  
watir,<sup>6</sup> & þou schalt̄ presse listly þe place of his ars þereabout̄ þat̄  
þou supposist̄ þat̄ þe stoon sittip̄. & if he remeue not̄ in þis maner,  
þan þou schalt̄ putte in siryngam listli in þe condijt̄ of his ʒerde til  
he come to þe stoon. & if þou myȝt̄ not̄ putte it̄ awei in þis maner, 36

<sup>2</sup> *testi oui.* Lat. *testæ oui.*

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: pone ipsum vinum in olla terrea.

<sup>5</sup> Lat. ad pondus omnium.

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: faciendo egrum leuare nates. The translator read: lauare nares.



- þan putte þi fyngir in <sup>1</sup>his ers, & þere þou schalt fele þe stoon, & [1 ff. 195, bk.]  
 helpe wiþ þi fyngir for to putte it away. Whanne þe stoon is  
 remeued, þan þe pacient mai make watir, þan his akinge wole ceesse,  
 4 & þan þou schalt go to þe cure. First þou schalt make him a When the  
stone is  
removed into  
the bladder,  
try to break  
the stone  
with an  
internal  
treatment,  
a bath,  
 clisterie of duritikis / in which schulen be medicyns þat haue pro-  
 priete for to breke þe stoon, & þan sette þe pacient in a baþ þat is  
 forseid. & a litil tofore or he go out of his baþ, ȝeue him of þe  
 8 poudre of þe hare þat is forseid. & whanne he comeþ out of þe  
 baþ, leie þis enplastre vpon þe place þat is clepid pectinis.<sup>2</sup> R̄, foli-  
 orum nasturcij aquatici,<sup>3</sup> & foliorum apij .ana. ℞ j, & grinde hem and a plaster.  
R̄  
 wel wiþ grese. & whanne þei ben medlid togidere in þe morter, þan  
 12 hete hem a litil ouer þe fier & leie it vpon, & eueri dai in þre daies  
 contynuely þou schalt sette him in þe forseid baþ, & leie vpon þe  
 forseid plastre, & ȝeue him of þe forseid poudre. þis cure is good  
 & I haue preued it //
- 16 If alle þese medicyns availiþ not, þan þou muste drawe out þe If these  
medicines  
do not avail,  
operate.  
[5 ff. 196]  
 stoon wiþ kuttinge or þe patient falle into etikis.<sup>4</sup> & if þou wolt  
 drawe <sup>5</sup>out a stoon of þe bladdre wiþ kuttinge, þan þou muste ap-  
 paraile<sup>6</sup> alle þingis þat ben necessarie for þee: as sirupis & ligaturis,  
 20 & þan þou schalt binde his hipis & his leggis faste, þat he mowe  
 not meue, for to lette þee whanne þou wolt kutte him. & þanne  
 þou schalt anoynte þi longist fyngir of þi lift hond & þi pombe wiþ  
 oile, & þou schalt putte hem in þe pacientis ers, saue first þou schalt Prepare the  
things neces-  
sary for the  
operation,  
and bind the  
patient fast.  
 24 avoide him wiþ a clisterie mollificatif, & þou schalt sette<sup>7</sup> þi riȝt  
 hond vpon his ers, and grope softli, where þe stoon be, & putte him First use a  
Clisterie,  
feel for the  
stone,  
hold it be-  
tween the  
fingers,  
 to þe hedis of þi fyngris. & whanne þou myȝt take þe stoon wiþ þi  
 .ij. fyngris, þan þou schalt putte him to þe necke of þe bladdre  
 28 toward þe ballokis as myche as þou myȝt. & þan þou schalt fele þe  
 hardnes of þe stoon bitwixe his ers, & þe ballokis þat is in þe necke  
 of þe bladdre. þan þou schalt wiþ þi riȝt hond take a rasour, & then cut out  
the stone  
with a razor.  
 kutte faste by þe þreed þat goiþ bitwixe þe ers & þe ballokis ende-  
 32 longis, saue þou schalt take þe stoon wiþ þi .ij. fyngris þat þe stoon  
 mowe come out. & þanne ioyne wel þe lippis of <sup>8</sup>þe wounde to-  
 gidere, þan þou schalt sewe [not]<sup>9</sup> oonly þe skyn aboue, but þou [8 ff. 196, bk.]  
and sew the  
wound.

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: supra locum pectinis. Os pectinis, the share-bone.

<sup>3</sup> Nasturtium aquaticum, watercress.

<sup>4</sup> etikis, Lat.: antequam æger incurrat hecticam. O.Fr. étique. Med. Lat. Ethica uel Ethica febris. Dufr.

<sup>6</sup> appaile. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. apparel, v. 1., to make ready, prepare.

<sup>7</sup> sette, above line.

<sup>9</sup> not, wanting. Lat.: et labia vulneris optime jungas non solum in superficie.



**Nota**  
Children who  
are fourteen  
years old, are  
most fit for  
this treat-  
ment.

Younger  
children and  
old men are  
not fit,

although  
some people  
say the con-  
trary.

If the stone  
cannot be  
brought to  
the neck of  
the bladder,

you must  
first break  
it before  
cutting.

**Beware.**

Do not cut,  
if the stone  
is small.

[<sup>3</sup> lf. 197, bk.]

schalt<sup>t</sup> sewe al þe depnes of þe wounde togidere, & þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> springe þeron poudre þat<sup>t</sup> is aforseid to woundis. & þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> binde it<sup>t</sup> with boondis & lynt<sup>t</sup> til þe wounde be perfitli hool / In þis caas þou muste take kepe of manye þingis / First<sup>t</sup> þou muste take 4 kepe of þe age of þe pacient, for children þat<sup>t</sup> ben xiiij. wintir oold ben moost<sup>t</sup> able for þis cure,<sup>1</sup> for her lymes ben tendir ynow<sup>3</sup>, & in þat<sup>t</sup> elde þei ben strong<sup>t</sup> ynow<sup>3</sup> for to be maad hool, & her complexioun is hoot<sup>t</sup> & moist. 3onge children & olde men ben not<sup>t</sup> able 8 to be kutt<sup>t</sup>, for in þe kuttinge of hem enpostyms wolen engendre hastili, & þat<sup>t</sup> wole lette þe vrine & make more akyng, & so þei miȝten falle in-to þe spasme, & so wiþ þe spasme þei miȝt<sup>t</sup> be deed / Summen seien þat<sup>t</sup> olde men ben able to be kutt<sup>t</sup>, for her blood is 12 miche laskid<sup>2</sup> & her hete, & þerfore þei ben not<sup>t</sup> able to take an enpostym; þerfore þei ben moost<sup>t</sup> able to be kutt<sup>t</sup> of þe stoon / Summen seien þat<sup>t</sup> her lymes ben to drie & her vertues ben to feble / 3 & þerfore þei ben not<sup>t</sup> able to be kutt<sup>t</sup>, & herwiþ I acorde / þese .ij. 16 þingis: engendrynge of an enpostym, & if þe place þat<sup>t</sup> is kutt<sup>t</sup> wole not<sup>t</sup> soude, þese .ij. bringiþ perel of deep / Also þou muste take kepe of þe schap of þe stoon, & what<sup>t</sup> quantite þat<sup>t</sup> he be, for if þe stoon be .ij. forkid<sup>4</sup> or cornerid, or so greet<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> he may not<sup>t</sup> 20 be brouȝt into þe necke of þe bladdre, þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> in no maner kutte him, but<sup>t</sup> if þou miȝt<sup>t</sup> first<sup>t</sup> wiþ þin hond breke þe stoon. & þan if þou miȝt<sup>t</sup> not<sup>t</sup> bringe it<sup>t</sup> out at oonys, þan in diuers tymes þou schalt<sup>t</sup> gadere him out.<sup>5</sup> ¶ And if þe stoon be so greet<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> he 24 mai not<sup>t</sup> be brouȝt into þe necke of þe bladdre, þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> in no maner kutte him, forwhi he mai not<sup>t</sup> be brouȝt out, but<sup>t</sup> if þou woldist<sup>t</sup> kutte þe substaunce of þe bladdre & þat<sup>t</sup> were mortal; but<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> put<sup>t</sup> him to þe botme of þe bladdre wiþ instrumentis, & 28 teche þe patient for to kepe him in þat<sup>t</sup> maner þat<sup>t</sup> þe stoon falle not<sup>t</sup> into þe necke of þe bladdre / Also if he be so sutil þat<sup>t</sup> he mai not<sup>t</sup> be felid wiþ þin hond, þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> not<sup>t</sup> kutte him neiþer. & if þe patient mai be hool in ony<sup>6</sup> maner, [n]or kutt<sup>t</sup> wiþouten passioun, it<sup>t</sup> 32

<sup>1</sup> De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 96: " & somtyme þey schal be take to surgerye and namelich children and þan ȝongelinge. For in elde keruyng is perilous, for aftir forty ȝere þis euil is incurable as it is i-said in amphor.: \* aftir fourti ȝere he þat haþ þe ston is nouȝt i-saued."

<sup>2</sup> *Celsus* Lib. VII. Cap. 26, ed. Daremberg, p. 307: "As neque omni tempore, neque in omni ætate, neque in omni vitio id experiendum est: sed solo vere; in eo corpore, quod jam novem annos, nondum quatuordecim excessit."

<sup>4</sup> *ij forkid*, diffurcatus.

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: "pluribus vicibus educatur."

\* Rhazes, Aphorismi.



- is better þat<sup>1</sup> he be nouȝt kutt þan he be kutt.<sup>2</sup> for men þat ben so kutt schulen neuere gete children, but if it be þe more hap<sup>3</sup>; & also it is perilous for to kutte / & þerfore I rede þee take þat wyn-  
 4 nunge<sup>4</sup> to opere cirurgians. ¶ Ful ofte tyme men leie me to scorn, for I wolde not entermete me of sich curis, & seide þat I lefte sicke maner curis, for I coude not do it, & þe same þei seide of men þat weren filme broke,<sup>5</sup> & of men þat weren in þe dropesie. & I lefte  
 8 þe curis þerof for perels þat miȝte folowe / ffor if a kunnyng man entermetid him of sich a cure, & if þer fil ony yuele happis to þe patient, þan wolen vnkunnyng lechis seie þat þei han do þat cure ful ofte, & so he mai be brouȝt into an yuel looss þerbi; for blame  
 12 & for perels I wolde not vse kuttingis / þese ben yuele happis þat falliþ to a man þat is kutt: as greet akyng vndir þe nauele, & hise lymes bicomith coold, & atach of þe feuere,<sup>6</sup> & greet akinge in þe place þat was kutt, alle þese signes ben signes of deef / Good signes  
 16 herof ben þese: strenkþe of vrine, & þat he mowe go to priuy wel<sup>7</sup> & þat he haue good appetit to mete. ¶ Sumtyme it falliþ bi strenkþe, þe stoon is putt into þe ȝerde. & þat I say [in] a man, þat his vryne was stoppid .v. daies in þe same maner, & I drowe  
 20 him out wiþ instrumentis wiþouten ony kuttinge. & if þe stoon sitte in þe canel of þe ȝerde, & þou maist not bringe him out wiþ þi fyngris, þan þou schalt binde his ȝerde bihinde þe stoon, þat þe stoon mowe not go into þe bladdre aȝen. & þan grope þe stoon softli  
 24 wiþ þi .ij. fyngris, & kutte endelongis, as it is aforseid, a litil hole, as miche as þou miȝt drawe out þe stoon, & þane cure þe wounde as it is aforseid /<sup>8</sup>

People who are operated upon, never get children.

I was often scorned because I would not undertake these cures.

A good physician may get a bad reputation by some mishap.

Fatal symptoms after operation are: great pain, coldness of the limbs and fever.

Good symptoms are a [7 lf. 198]

strong urine, a good appetite. Sometimes the stone is removed through the Urethra.

ffor to drawe out watir of men þat han þe dropesie /<sup>9</sup>

- 28 **T**Houȝ þis book be maad oonli of cirurgie, ȝitt it is myn entencion to speke of þe dropesie, & principaly þat ben wrouȝt ¶ x<sup>o</sup>. co.

<sup>1</sup> MS. þan.

<sup>2</sup> & if þe patient . . . þan he be kutt, an insertion.

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: "Considera quoque quod sæpe per loci nominati incisionem generatio prohibetur."

<sup>4</sup> þat wynnynge, Lat.: sed aliis cupidis chirurgis dimitte illa lucrari. *Cath. Angl.*, p. 420, "Wynninge. Emolumentum, lucrum."

<sup>5</sup> of men þat weren filme broke, Lat. de ruptorum incisura.

<sup>6</sup> atach of þe feuere, attack of fever. See later references in *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. attach, sb.

<sup>8</sup> The translator has omitted one chapter: De clauso hermaphrodito & additione panniculi mulieris doctrinæ tertie, tractatus tertii, Cap. IX.

<sup>9</sup> The four kinds of dropsy are mentioned in *De propr. rerum*, Lib. VII., Cap. 52, Add. 27,944, fol. 94 b.: "þe firste dropesye hatte leucofleuma, and



The dropsy is a compound disease, caused by superfluity of matter.

[I. ff. 198, bk.]

The men of Salerne distinguish four kinds of dropsy.

The Arabs only three:

yposarca,  
Aschites,

Tympanites.

There is cold matter in all these kinds of dropsy, the exciting cause may be heat or coldness.

When the liver is diseased, cold phlegmatic matter is produced.

[3 ff. 199]

The Salernitans say that dropsy is caused by a debility of the liver, the stomach, or other organs.

Some physicians say that the urine will be red if there is a hot cause,

wiþ mannes hond. ¶ I seie þat þe dropesie is a sijknes compound in which superflue mater þat is coold swellip þe body / Men of salerne seiden þat þere weren .iiij. maner spicis of dropesie, & .iiij. maner dropesies. But auctours of arabie acorden alle at <sup>1</sup>oonys,<sup>2</sup> 4 & seien soop þat þer ben but .iiij. maner dropesies,<sup>3</sup> & þat oon comeþ of rawe blood, of raw fleume medlid wiþ blood, & is bore into al þe bodi, & swellip al þe bodi, & is clepid yposarca. þat oþer is of mater of 3elow3 water & fallip into þe holownes of þe wombe, 8 & is clepid aschites / þe .iiij. is engendrid of greet wynd resolved of coold mater, & fallip into þe holownes of þe wombe, & is clepid tympanites / Of þis ydropesie summen iugip liztli, & seien þat yposarca comeþ of coold alwei, & tympanites comeþ sumtyme of 12 wynd & of hete, but moost comounli of cooldnes / Aschites comith moost of hete, & ful selden of cooldnes / but for to seie þe soþe, alle þe spicis ben medlid with coold mater, & þerfore he seiþ soop þat clepiþ eueri ydropesie coold mater,<sup>4</sup> for euery spice of þe dropesie 16 mai come of hete or of cooldnes goynge tofore. ¶ þer is no þing þat defendip, þat whanne þe lyuere is hoot out of hir propir hete, or if al þe bodi is distemp[er]id in hete, as in feueris, þe patient mai so miche be feblid þerwiþ, þat it may engendre coold mater & fleu- 20 matik / Ful ofte I haue had þis caas / <sup>5</sup>þerfore auctouris seien þat þe dropesie comith of þe febilnes of þe lyuere / þerfore men of salerne seien þat it comeþ of defaute of digestioun of þe lyuere. & it comeþ of takinge of yuele metis & drinkis, & of febilnes of 24 oþere lymes, as of þe stomak, & of þe reynes, & of þe maris, & of þe lungis, & of diafragma. & whanne þese lymes ben enfeblid, þan þe lyuere enfebliþ // Therfore it is necessarie for a leche to wite<sup>6</sup> wher it comeþ of causis goinge tofore hoot or coold / And summe 28 lechis halden hem paid for to haue a sizt of þe vrine, & iugip þe dropesie hoot & coold bi þe sizt of þe vryne / for if þe vrine be reed, þei wolen iuge þat þe cause is hoot, & in þis maner þei ben

*comeþ of distemperaunce of coldnesse and drinesse, & haþ þat name of white fleume for leucos is white. ¶ Þe secounde hatte yposarca oþir anasarca, and comeþ of distemperaunce of coolde and of drynes. The þridde hatte aschites and comeþ of distemperaunce of hete & moisture. Þe ferþe hatte tympanytes & comeþ of distemperaunce of hete & drinesse."*

<sup>2</sup> acorden alle at oonys, Lat. in una conveniunt. Comp. Reliqu. Antiqu. I. 233, accorde in one. (N. E. Diet., s. v. accord v. 5.)

<sup>3</sup> Lanfranc follows Avicenna, Lib. III, Fen. 14, Tract. 4, Cap. 4, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 238 b.

<sup>4</sup> Lat. : omnem egritudinem ydropicam appellant materialem frigidam.

<sup>6</sup> to wite, above line.



- disseyued / ¶ Forwhi, in what maner so þe lyuere be enfeblid of  
 coold cause or of hoot, it wole make his vrine reed / For sumtyme  
 a man mai not 3eue a discrecioun<sup>1</sup> of blood fro vrine, for a litil  
 blood colourid miche vrine, riȝt as a litil saffron colouriþ miche  
 water / þerfor of what cause so it be þat his lyuere be enfeblid,  
 his vrine mai schewe reed. ¶ Also þe signes of yposarcha & aschites  
 & tympanite ben open ynow<sup>3</sup>. <sup>2</sup>In þis maner þou schalt knowe hem / <sup>[2 lf. 199, bk.]</sup>
- 8 In yposarcha al þe bodi swellip, as his face, & his armis, & his rigge- <sup>Signys of</sup>  
 boon, & his necke, & alle his lymes, so þat in what partie of his <sup>yposarca</sup>  
 bodi þat þou pressist þi fyngir þere wole be a pitt. & whanne þe <sup>are a general</sup>  
 fyngir is aweie it wole arise aȝen / & it is a greet maistrie for to <sup>swelling of</sup>  
 12 knowe wheþer yposarcha come of coold cause tofore goynge or of <sup>the body.</sup>  
 hoot cause / If it comeþ of coold goinge tofore, þan his ȝen wolen  
 be discolourid as it were þe colour of askis, or pale<sup>3</sup> / If it come of  
 hete goinge tofore, þan his ȝen wolen be ȝelow<sup>3</sup> or sumwhat reed / <sup>If the cause</sup>  
 16 & þou muste wite, wheþer he had a feure tofore or haue þe feure <sup>is cold, the</sup>  
 fortis þerwiþ / or if he hadde þere tofore an hoot enpostym þerwiþ, <sup>eyes will be</sup>  
 ouþer he haue enpostym þerwiþ / þese ben þe propre signes of <sup>pale;</sup>  
 aschites, þat his face, & his necke, & his brest, & his armis <sup>they are</sup>  
 20 bicomith smal, & his vois schal bicom smal, & his wombe schal <sup>yellow or red,</sup>  
 oonli swelle. & sumtyme in þe firste bigynnyng his feet & his <sup>if there is a</sup>  
 leggis wolen swelle in þe firste bigynnyng, for þe greet strenkþe of <sup>hot cause.</sup>  
 þe mater þat makip it falle adoun. & if þou <sup>4</sup>smite his <sup>5</sup>wombe, he <sup>[4 lf. 200]</sup>  
 24 wole sowne as it were a touȝt leþer ful of wynd<sup>6</sup> / þese ben þe <sup>Signes of</sup>  
 propre signes of tympanites: his wombe & þe regioun of his stomac <sup>tympanites.</sup>  
 schulen oonly be to-swolle, & alle his opere lymes, boþe his feet, & <sup>They are the</sup>  
 his leggis, & his necke, & his armis wolen bicom smal, & if þou <sup>same as in</sup>  
 28 smitist him vpon his wombe, it wole soune as it were a tympan / <sup>ascites, but</sup>  
 & in þis passioun þer is lasse agreuance þan in aschite & more <sup>there is less</sup>  
 swellynge. & if þou pressist his wombe, þou schalt fynde it streite <sup>pain and</sup>  
 as it were a corde. & þou schal fele no meuyng of water, whanne <sup>more swell-</sup>  
 32 þe pacient turneþ him from o side to anoþer / Curis herof þou schalt <sup>ing.</sup>  
 fynde ynowe in bokis of phisik / For I nyle telle but fewe medicyns  
 þerfore, I haue longe tyme vsid.

¶ Whanne þou wolt ordeine regimen on yposarcha, ȝeue him

<sup>1</sup> ȝeue a discrecioun, discernere.

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: coniunctiva oculi est valde discolorata, cinericia vel pallida.

<sup>5</sup> MS. *his*, twice.

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: auditur quasi sonus vtris de corio vino pleni.



Make the patient who suffers from Hyposarchia sweat, in summer in hot sand or on a sunny hill, [3 lf. 200, bk.] in winter in a hot-house.

R̄

Prescription, how to make the decoction.

R̄

How to make the troches.

R̄

The Agaric-pills.

Treatment of Ascites.

The disease is almost fatal, if the cause is hot.

[8 lf. 201]

If there is a cold cause, and if the patient is strong,

give him rhu-barb-pills;

trociscus de lactea<sup>1</sup> cum apozimate<sup>2</sup> de radicibus fro þe firste dai to þe .iiij., & 3eue him pelottis de agarico. & whanne þe swellinge bigynneþ to go away, if it be in somer, þan þou schalt hele al his bodi in hcot gravel þere þe sunne mai 3eue greet hete, or lete him sitte vpon an hiȝ hil þere þe <sup>3</sup>sunne schineþ hoot, þat he mai swete wel, & þat his bodi mai wexe hoot wipoute & wipinne. & if it be in winter, putte him in a drie stewe, so þat þe watir come not niȝ him. þus þou schalt make apozima of rotis / R̄, corticis fenicli, 8 apij, [ana drac.]<sup>4</sup> .x., seminum [apii] squinantum, ameos, ana. 3 .v., rosarum rubiarum, spicenarde ana .3 .iiij, seþe hem in li .ij. of watir til þei come to li .j., cole hem & kepe þe colature. & if þou doist þerinne a litil hony it wole be þe better / Trocisci de lacte ben maad in þis maner / R̄, rubarbe, lacte, ana [drac iii.], seminis apij, spice, ameos, amigdalum amarum, masticis, squinante, seminis iunip[er]i, costi amari,<sup>5</sup> rubee succi, eupatorij,<sup>6</sup> aristologie rotundæ, gencian ana .3. ß, make herof gobetis, þe weiȝte of 3 .j., & he schal take oon þerof wip .3. iiij. of þe forseid pelottis de agarico / R̄, agarici .3 .x., succi eupatorij, rubarbarum, aristologia rotundæ ana 3 .ij, ȝucare albe .3 .v, & make herof pelottis. & þou schalt 3eue herof .3 .ij.

20

If þou seest þat þe cause þat ȝede tofore þis passioun was hoot, & he make litil vrine & reed, & if his vertu be feble of þe hete, & þou hast dispeir of him,<sup>7</sup> & if he haue þe feuere þerwip, it is so <sup>8</sup>myche þe worse // If his vrine schewe þat þe cause is coold, & if þe patient be strong ynow, loken if his wombe be hard. & þan make him vse sirup acetose maad wip seedis & sugre, & 3eue him þe pelottis of rubarbe þat ben maad in þis maner / R̄, rubarberi, succi eupatorij, seminis endiuie ana. 3. iiij, agarici 3. v., make þerof

28

<sup>1</sup> *lactea*, Lat. *lacta*. "Lacca, a red transparent Substance made as some say, by winged Arts; as Hony by Bees, and gather'd from a Tree of that Name, in Bengala, Malabar &c. Also a kind of red Gum issuing from certain Trees in Arabia, of which the best Sealing hard Wax is made; often us'd in Painting and Varnishing." Phillips.

<sup>2</sup> *Apozima*. "Apozeme, a Physical Decoction, a Diet-Drink made of several Roots, Woods, Barks, Herbs, Drugs, Flowers, Seeds, &c., boil'd together." Phillips.

<sup>4</sup> MS. ß.

<sup>5</sup> Two kinds of *costus* are mentioned in *Alphita*, p. 46: c. indicus, and c. arabicus.

<sup>6</sup> *eupatorium*. Add. 15,236, fol. 3 b. (cc. 1300), "*Eupatorium. salvia agrestis idem. G. eupatorie. A. wyldeſage. i. hyndeſale.*"

<sup>7</sup> þou hast dispeir of him, Lat. de tali ægri salute desperes. Comp. þou schalt neuere þe lattere be in despeir of canteriis. Lat. nec propter hoc desperes, p. 311, note 3.



pelettis wiþ þe iuys of endiue. þou schalt 3eue him herof at  
oonys .3 .ij, & euery wike þou schalt 3eue it oonys / If it so be þat <sup>if the patient</sup>  
he be feble, & if he mai not take so miche, þan in þe place of þese <sup>is feeble,</sup>  
<sup>gobbets,</sup>

4 pelottis he schal take gobetis þat ben maad in þis maner / R̄, *seminis* R̄  
endiue 3 .x, esule,<sup>1</sup> succi eupatorij, agarici, ana. 3 .ij, & .ḡ .j,  
*rosarum, seminis citrulorum*, ana 3 .ij, & make herof .x. gobettis  
wiþ a decoccion of fenel in water: 3eue him oon þerof wiþ sirupo

8 acetoso de seminibus. Enplastre<sup>2</sup> his wombe wiþ enplastre maad <sup>and apply a</sup>  
wiþ .ij. partis of oxis dounge, & oon part of gotis dounge, boli <sup>plaster on his</sup>  
<sup>belly.</sup>  
*armoniaci, sulphuris, & salis, & distempere hem wiþ strong vinegre /*

þis is þe cure of tympaniti þat is ful selde curid / & specialy <sup>Treatment of</sup>  
<sup>Tympanitis.</sup>

12 whanne it is entrid into diafragma & is confermed þere / ffirst þou  
<sup>3</sup>schalt make him electuari de baccis lauri, & þou schalt make him <sup>[3 lf. 201, bk.]</sup>

suppositorijs for to distrie<sup>4</sup> wynd, & he schal suffre hungir as  
miche as he mai, & he schal absteyne him fro þingis þat engendriþ

16 wijnd, & þou schalt frote his wombe ofte wiþ a scharp cloob / <sup>Give an</sup>  
*Electuari de baccis lauri / R̄, foliorum rute .3 .x., ameos, seminum,* <sup>electuary</sup>  
<sup>R̄</sup>

*nigille,*<sup>6</sup> *leuistici,*<sup>7</sup> *petrocilij macedonici,*<sup>8</sup> *origani,*<sup>9</sup> *carui, amigdal-*  
*rum amarum, piperis longi, mentastri,*<sup>10</sup> *dauci, acori, baccarum lauri,*

20 *castore ana .3 .iiij., serapini .3 .iiij., appoponac .3 .iiij.,* make herof a  
lectuarie wiþ .iiij. so miche of hony, þis electuarie wiþ consumeþ.

¶ þus þou schalt make suppositorijs for to distrie wijnd / R̄, *cimi-* <sup>and supposi-</sup>  
*num, foliorum rute viridis*<sup>11</sup> ana. Ṿ .j., *radicis brionie, radicis mali* <sup>tories.</sup>  
<sup>R̄</sup>

24 *terre, radicis rafani ana .3 .ij., sal nitri .3 .j.,* & make herof supposi- <sup>Supposito-</sup>  
torijs wiþ hony. ¶ Whanne þou knowist wel þat þe dropesie is of <sup>rijs.</sup>  
hoot cause, þan þou schalt not forgete to helpe þe side þat is hoot;  
& also if þe mater be coold, þou schalt helpe him wiþ hote þingis.

<sup>1</sup> "Esula, quedam species est titimalli, gallice yesele." *Alphita*, p. 50.

<sup>2</sup> *enplastre*, Lat. venter enplastretur. O.Fr. emplastrer. Sl. 277, fol. 1:  
"þe þe place emplastred wiþ a plastre maad þus." Comp. plasteren, Prompt.  
Parv.

<sup>4</sup> *distrie*, Lat. dissoluere, destroy.

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: cimini.

<sup>6</sup> *nigilla*. Add. 15,236, fol. 10, "*Nigella i. lolium. G. neel. A. cokel*,"  
fennel flower.

<sup>7</sup> *Ibid.*, fol. 4 b., "*Leuisticum. G. lunache*," lovage. See *E. P. N.*, p. 43,  
*luvestiche, luvesche*.

<sup>8</sup> *Alphita*, p. 108, "*macedonia vel macedonicum, petrocillinum idem,*  
*g<sup>e</sup> alisandre, a<sup>e</sup> stamerche*."

<sup>9</sup> Add. 15,236, fol. 5 b., "*Origanum. G. Origane. i. pulgium. A. puliol*  
*reale*." See *Alphita*, p. 150, "*Pulegium. gallire puliol, a<sup>e</sup> Brotheruurt*."

<sup>10</sup> *Ibid.*, fol. 7 b., "*Sisimbrium. mentastrum. G. mentastre. A. hors.*  
*mint*."

<sup>11</sup> *Ibid.*, fol. 7, "*Ruta bissara. puganum vel pucanum. hermola idem. G.*  
*Rue. A. smalrede*."



If the cause  
is hot,

[1 ff. 202]

give a decoction  
with  
chickens,  
and a syrup.

R<sup>7</sup>

Prescription  
for the syrup.

To be given  
twice a week.

A plaster is  
put on the  
region of the  
liver.

Finally use  
a bath.

[3 ff. 202, bk.]

Take care in  
using drying  
medicines  
that the  
patient does  
not get con-  
sumption.



Operation  
should not  
be performed  
on all sorts  
of people;

patients  
who are not  
strong, and  
old men, are  
not fit.

One cannot  
trust in the  
strength of  
an old man.

[4 ff. 203]

¶ His ping<sup>t</sup> is necessarie for to zeue a man þat<sup>t</sup> haþ þe hote dropesie,  
a decoccion of solatrum & endiue; & in þat<sup>t</sup> watir he <sup>1</sup>schal seþe  
chikenys for to ete, & first<sup>t</sup> he schal drinke sirupum acetosum wip  
seedis / And I wole telle þee a cure, þat<sup>t</sup> I curide in my tyme .ij. 4  
men þat<sup>t</sup> weren in aschite of hoot<sup>t</sup> cause, þat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> mowe be ensauple  
to þee / I made hem a sirupe of platearie<sup>2</sup> in þis maner / R<sup>7</sup>, succi  
scariole li .ij., succi apij & petrosilij, ana. li .j., & boile hem wip  
.3. iiij. of esule, masticis, seminis fenicli, apij, ana. 3. f3, seþe hem in 8  
watir til þei come to .li. .ij., & þan cole hem & do þerto .li. .j. zucare,  
& boile hem til þei be perfit. & whanne þow doist<sup>t</sup> adoun fro þe  
fier, do þerto rubarbe .3. f3., & lete it<sup>t</sup> boile a litil, & þan kepe it<sup>t</sup> for  
þin vss. & þou schalt<sup>t</sup> zeue it<sup>t</sup> him in þe morowe wip a decoccion 12  
of fenel seed, .ij. in þe wike. & þou schalt<sup>t</sup> enplastre al his wombe,  
saue þe regioun of his lyuere, wip þe forseid plastris & dounge &  
vinegre. & vpon his lyuere leie an enplastre maad of .3. .ij. of  
barli mele, & rosis, & sandalis albi & rubei ana. 3. f3, camphore 16  
.3. .ij., & distempere hem wip water of rosis & wip vinegre. & if  
he haue not<sup>t</sup> þe feure, þan zeue him gotis milk fasting<sup>t</sup>. And whan  
þe patient bicometh smal in his wombe, þan sette him in a bath, þat<sup>t</sup>  
be soden þerinne sulphur <sup>3</sup>& salt, & he schal be þerinne but<sup>t</sup> a litil 20  
while. ¶ Herof<sup>t</sup> þou muste be war: whanne water is dried in a  
man wip drijnge wip medicyns, þan his lymes leueþ swiþe drie;  
wherfore þei falliþ in etik & dien. þerfore þou muste in alle þes  
þingis be wel war / 24

þe cure þat<sup>t</sup> is wip iren falliþ oonli in aschite, þat<sup>t</sup> manie men  
doon hardili, & takiþ no kepe of þe particuleris þerof<sup>t</sup>, for þei  
knownen not<sup>t</sup> þe science, for þei doon al oon maner to 3onge & to  
olde, to stronge & to feble; þei kuttiþ þe skyn vnder þe nauel, & 28  
alle men þat<sup>t</sup> þei kutten ouþer þe mooste weren perischid / Saue þou  
schalt<sup>t</sup> take kepe of kunnyng, & worche bi resoun / for þow schalt<sup>t</sup>  
take kepe wher he be strong<sup>t</sup> or no; & if<sup>t</sup> he be not<sup>t</sup> strong<sup>t</sup>, þou  
schalt<sup>t</sup> do no cure to him. ¶ Also þou schalt<sup>t</sup> do no cure to olde 32  
men þat<sup>t</sup> ben to-broke, for þou schalt<sup>t</sup> not<sup>t</sup> leue þe strenkþe of an  
oold man, for it<sup>t</sup> is impossible for to fynde an oold man strong<sup>t</sup>,  
whanne þe dropesie is confermed on him / If<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> so be þat<sup>t</sup> he be  
3ong<sup>t</sup> & strong<sup>t</sup>, þan þow schalt<sup>t</sup> haue good trust<sup>t</sup> for to helpe him. 36  
¶ Thanne þou muste enquere sotilly wher <sup>4</sup>þe principal vijs be of

<sup>2</sup> Matthæus Platearius belonged to the school of Salerno about the middle of the 12th century. He wrote: "Liber de simplici medicina," commonly called "Circa instans."



þe lyuere, for þan þou muste kutte him in þe splene side / And if it  
 so be þat þe splene be þe principal of þe dropesie, þan þe kuttinge  
 muste be in þe riȝt side. And if þe cause come of lymes aboue, as  
 4 of þe stomac or of diafragma, þan þou muste kutte him vpon  
 pecten. & if it be in a womman, & come of þe vijs of þe maris,  
 þan þou schalt kutte hir aboue þe nauele. Whanne þou knowist in  
 what place þou schalt kutte þe pacient, þan þou schalt opene þe  
 8 place of þe pacient, & þou schalt presse his wombe adounward as  
 miche as þou miȝt, & make him ete a litil of breed tostid<sup>1</sup> vpon  
 coolis, & wet in wijn; & þan lete him sitte tofore þee bitwene a  
 strong mannes armys, þat mai holde him faste, þat he mowe not  
 12 meue in þe tyme whanne þou wolt worche. And þan þou schalt  
 take þe skyn þat is clepid mirac, wiþ þi lifthond in þe place þere þou  
 wolt make þi kuttinge, & þat skyn þou schalt peerse endelongis  
 wiþ an instrument þat is competent þerfore / And be wel war þat  
 16 þou touche not siphac in no maner; and <sup>2</sup>whanne þou hast kutt þe  
 skyn aboue & mirac, þan opene þe place þat þou mowe se siphac.  
 & þan þou schalt peerse a litil hole in siphac & sette þerto a canel,<sup>3</sup>  
 & drawe out þerof as miche watir as þou seest good for to saue his  
 20 vertu / & þan drawe out þe canel, & lete þe skyn þat is clepid  
 mirac goon ouer þe openyng of siphac, for þat wole suffre no þing  
 to go out / In þe morowe opene þe same skyn aȝen þat was kutt  
 first, & putte in þe canel, & kepe his vertu as miche as þou miȝt.  
 24 & þus þou schalt do til þou haue drawe out þe watir; saue þou  
 schalt not drawe out al, for þou schalt consume it afterward with  
 propre medicyns / Herof þou schalt take kepe in þe tyme, þe whilis  
 þou drawist out þe water, as it is forseid: þe pacient schal ete good  
 28 metis, & drinke good drinkis & swete, þat mowe engendre in him  
 good spirits & good blood: as good broþis maad of hennys & of  
 capouns. & diȝt wiþ swete þingis, for eueri avoidinge laskiþ miche  
 þe spiritis; & whanne þe spiritis falliþ, þan a mannes vertues  
 32 failen /

The place of  
the incision  
depends on  
which organ  
—the liver,  
spleen, sto-  
mach, or  
uterus—is  
affected.

Let the  
patient be  
held by a  
strong man;

cut the skin,  
called *Mirac*;

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 203, bk.]  
pierce the  
siphac,  
and draw out  
the water by  
a cannula at  
repeated sit-  
tings.

Strengthen  
the patient  
during this  
treatment  
with good  
food.

<sup>4</sup>Of ficus, & cancre, & vlcer in mannes<sup>5</sup> ȝerde / [<sup>4</sup> lf. 204]

**F**icus is a maner wexyng þat arisiþ vpon a mannes ȝerde tofore.  
 & sumtyme it wole be neische, whanne it is engendrid of  
 36 fleume / & whanne it is engendrid of malancolie, it wole be hard;

¶ xj<sup>o</sup>.co.  
Ficus is a  
growth on a  
man's yard;  
it is either  
soft or hard,

<sup>1</sup> breed tostid, Lat. panem tostum. *Prompt. Parv.*

<sup>3</sup> canel, Lat. cannula. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. canal 1.

<sup>5</sup> MS. manner.



and may  
become a  
cancer.

Ulcers arise  
either from  
hot pustules

or from inter-  
course with  
diseased  
women.

The ficus  
must be  
removed by  
a thread or  
with cutting,

with mollifi-  
catives;

[4 lf. 204, bk.]  
the surest  
way is the  
hot iron.

A cancer  
must be re-  
moved with  
all its roots.

**Nota.**  
If there are  
ulcers in the  
fore-skin,  
remove the  
growth.

R̄  
þe gren  
water

[6 lf. 205]

& if it rotie, it wole turne into a cancre. ¶ A cancre comeþ in a mannes 3erde, ri3t as in opere lymes of a man, & vlcera comeþ of hote pustulis þat comeþ þeron, & aftirward þei brekeþ it.<sup>1</sup> Ouþer þei comeþ of scharpe humouris, þat makip vlcera in þe same place; 4 ouþir it mai come of a womman þat a man, þat hadde þe same passioun,<sup>2</sup> hadde leie by hir tofore<sup>3</sup> /

þis is þe cure of ficus þat comith of fleume: þou schalt binde him wiþ a þreed, ouþer kutte him al awei; & þan þou schalt soude 8 it as it is aforseid in opere placis / If it come of malancolie, it mai be curid or þat it rotie, wiþ tempere mollificatiuis, as it is forseid in þe cure of sclirosis in þe general chapitre of enpostyms: þat whanne he is maad neische, þan þou schalt take him awei wiþ 12 alle his rootis / saue it is more sure take awei it wiþ <sup>4</sup>an hoot iren, & þan leie þervpon butter, & 3itt þou muste touche him wiþ an hoot iren a3en; & þan leie buttir þervpon. & þus þou schalt do oftetyme litil & litil til it be al wastid awei / If it be a cancre, it 16 wole not be curid but if it be kutt awei wiþ alle his rotis. And þer is no wei so sure to take him awei as fier / Alle þe rotis of him musten be brent awei, & þan leie þervpon a mundificatif of apium, & aftir þis þou muste leie þerto drijnge þingis / & in þis place þou 20 schalt not for3ete to leie a defensif vpon þe place þat is hool, for þis defensif schal defende þe place þat is hool fro swellynge. ¶ Vlcers þat comeþ in a mannes 3erde: as whanne þe skyn þat is tofore in a mannes 3erde bicomith greet, & þis mai not be curid 24 but if þat greetnes be doon awei. & þis medicyn is good þerfore / Take whit wijn, & of verte grece .3 .j, auripigment .3 .ij; grinde þes .ij. sotilli, & leie hem in þe whit wijn, & meue hem ofte, & kepe hem for þin vss. & þe more cold<sup>5</sup> þat þis medicyn is, þe better it 28 wole be. & þan þou schalt wete a linnen cloof in þis medicyn, <sup>6</sup>& leie vpon þe 3erde / For þis þing wole soude woundis & defende þat

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: que postea crepantur.

<sup>2</sup> MS. inserts þat.

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: Ulcera veniunt . . . ex commixtione cum feda muliere, que cum egro talem habente morbum de novo coierat. *Hæser*, III, p. 230, gives a list of references, showing the early knowledge of venereal diseases in the mediæval ages. The earliest quotation is from Richardus Anglicus, *Micrologus* MS., xiith cent.: "Ulcerantur utraque, virga scilicet et testiculi, tempore menstruorum, ex coitu ex salsis humoribus et acutis et incensis, quod satis ex colore cutis et pustularum vel saniei, et ex pruritu et punctura et ardore perpenditur." Richardus gives the same preventative, which is mentioned by Lanfranc: "Ablutio cum aqua frigida et continua abstersio — et maxime si post ablutionem cum frigida aqua fiat roratio loci abluti cum aceto."

<sup>5</sup> MS. cold. Lat.: quanto plus antiquatur tanto melius.



þer mai wexe no cancre / If it so be þat a mannes 3erde be skynned, & be noon oþer passioun þeron saue þat, þan þou schalt leie þer vpon vnguentum album, ouþer leie þervpon a linnen cloof wet in watir of rosis. Also poudre maad of cucurbita & aloes is good þerfore / If a man wole saue þis lyme algate fro corrupcioun, whanne he haþ leien bi a womman, & he haue ony suspeciou of vncleennes, þan he schal waische his 3erde wiþ coold water medlid with vinegre /

In case of a simple excoriation, apply an ointment or compresses.

### Of Emeroidis & fistule in þe ers /

- E** Moroides ben veines þat endiþ in a mannes ers & ben .v.<sup>1</sup> þese veines sumtyme openeþ & sumtyme þei ben enpostymed.
- 12 Whanne þe blood þat is in þe same veines falliþ adoun & mai not out, þan it engendriþ apostym. & if þe blood is gret & fleumatik, þan it wole engendre ficus, & if þat blood be greet & colerik, þan it wole engendre moralem.<sup>2</sup> And if þe blood be greet & malan-
- 16 colius, þan it wole engen[dre] condilomata / Sumtyme þer comeþ þerto <sup>3</sup>so manie diuers humouris, & makiþ diuers enpostyms in þe same maner as it falliþ in opere lymes, & ofte tyme of þis enpostym comeþ a festre, but if it be þe bettir holpe; þe blood þat comeþ to
- 20 a mannes ers bi veynes þat ben clepid emoroides is grettere blood þan ony blood of his bodi / & if it so be þat a man haue þe flux of blood of þe emoroidis, þou schalt not stoppe it, but it blede so myche þat it make þe pacient feble, saue þou schalt kepe him wiþ
- 24 good regimen, & he schal vse no metis ne drinkis þat engendrith scharp blood & greet // For bi þe flux of blood a mannes bodi mai be kept from malancolious blood, & it wole kepe a man fro lepre & fro mania, & fro al sijknes þat comeþ of malancolie / Also if a
- 28 man is woned to haue hem & þei be stoppid, þan þou muste 3eue him medicyns for to bringe hem out / And if it so be þat a man haue so greet flux of hem þat his lyuere be enfeblid þerwiþ, þan he myȝte falle in a dropesi þer þoruȝ, for to miche flux of blood
- 32 mai be cause of a dropesie / þerfore if þou <sup>4</sup>seest þat þe flux be to greet, þan þou schalt constreine blood wiþ medicyns þat ben constrictif, & þou schalt fynde medicyns þerfore in þe ende of þis chapitre / Wexingis þat ben clepid **emoroidis**, summe þei falliþ

¶ xijo. co.

There are five hæmorrhoidal veins, they are sometimes open, sometimes they form tumours.

[3 If. 205, bk.]

The blood in these veins is the thickest in the body.

**Nota**

Hæmorrhoidal flux shall not be stopped,

as it keeps a man from leprosy mania and other diseases.

Too great flux causes dropsy.

[4 If. 206]

Emeroides

<sup>1</sup> *De propr. rer.*, Lib. VII., cap. 54. Add. 27,944, fol. 95 b.: "*Emorydis ben fyve reynes þat streccheþ oute at þe ers, of þe whiche reynes comeþ diuers passiouns and euelis, as boluyng & swellinge, withholdinge and flux.*"

<sup>2</sup> *moralis*, a mulberry form of tumour.



(piles) are  
internal or  
external.

*ficus*  
can be tied  
away.

*Moralis*  
consists of  
many small  
swellings,  
like a mul-  
berry.

[<sup>3</sup> lf. 206, bk.]  
Bleed from  
the Basilica  
and the  
Saphena,

relieve the  
pains with a  
medicine,

R̄

apply an  
ointment,  
or tent.

R̄

An ointment  
to ripen an  
apostema.

[<sup>6</sup> lf. 207]

R̄

wiþoute þe hole of a mannes ers, & summe wiþinne / Also summe  
wexiþ in þe for side of þe ers, & summe in þe hyndir side. Sum-  
tyme it wexiþ in þe forside toward þe rote of þe ballokis, & þan þei  
makip greet akinge / for sumtyme þei letten þat a man mai not 4  
make vrine. If it be *ficus*, þat þou miȝt knowe, for it wole be  
wiþoute hete<sup>1</sup> & neische, & þe cure herof is but liȝt. þou schalt  
take a strong þreed & knitte þere aboute, & euery dai þou schalt  
streine it more & more, til he falle awei, & þan wiþ dryng medi- 8  
cyns þou schalt drie it vp. ¶ *Moralis* makip greet akinge & hap  
manie smalle swellingis as it were mora celsi, & þe colour þerof wole  
be reed & sumdel<sup>2</sup> purpur, & but þis haue help for to acese þe  
akinge, it wole engendre an enpostym. þe cure herof is to lete him 12  
blood in þe veyne þat is clepid <sup>3</sup>basilica & saphena al in oon dai,<sup>4</sup>  
& in þe same side þat þe passioun drawiþ mooste þerto. If he is  
wont to haue þe same passioun, þan make him haue þe same flux  
of blood. & if he is not wont to haue it, þan þou schalt ȝeue 16  
him no medicyns for to make him haue þat flux, & þan þou schalt  
acese þe akyng wiþ þis medicyn, & is good for thenasmon<sup>5</sup> & for  
alle þe passiouns of þe ers / R̄, thuris, mirre, licij, croci, ana partem  
.j, opij partes duas, grinde hem & medle hem with ȝelke of an eij 20  
& wiþ þe iuys of psillij, & ole of roses, & make þerof an oyne-  
ment / & if þe akyng be wiþinne in his ers, þanne anointe a tent  
& putte into his ers, & if it be wiþoutforþ, þan leie vpon linnen  
cloob & leie it vpon þe place. ¶ Also a medicyn of Haly þe 24  
abbot / R̄, ceruse .ʒ. v., litarge .ʒ. iij., iusquiami albi .ʒ. ij., mas-  
tisis, grynde hem & tempere hem wiþ þe ȝelke of an ey & oile of  
violet & make herof an oynement. & þis oynement is good  
whanne þe akinge is wiþ an enpostym, for þis wole resolute & make 28  
it maturatif, & doiþ away þe <sup>6</sup>akinge / R̄, foliorum malue, florum  
camomille, Melliloti<sup>7</sup> ana .ʒ. j., fenigreci, seminis lini ana .ʒ. iij.,  
lenticularum excorticarum .ʒ. x., seþe alle þes in water til þei  
resolute & þe water consume awei, & þan putte hem in a morter & 32  
grinde hem wel, & þan do þerto .ij. ȝelkis of eiren & oile of violet,

<sup>1</sup> Lat. : sine colore. The translator read "calore."

<sup>2</sup> *sumdel*, altered in a different coloured ink from *sumdei*.

<sup>4</sup> Lat. : cura est flebotomia basilice lateris eiusdem in uno die, in alio de saphena eiusdem lateris.

<sup>5</sup> Vigo, Traheron Interpret. : "Tenesmos is whan a man hathe greate pro-  
uocation to the seege, but can do nothyng. It commeth of tissein, whych  
signifieth to stretch."

<sup>7</sup> Add. 15236, fol. 5 : "*Mellilotum. Corona regia. idem. G. mellilote. A. hunisoke vel redclaure.*"



& make herof an oynement. ¶ If it so be þat in þis place of þe  
 forseid þingis come an enpostym & gadere to quittance, þou schalt  
 not abide til it breke him-silf, for þan it wole make a greet hole

When an  
 apostema be-  
 gins to sup-  
 purate, open  
 it quickly.

4 ynward toward þe guttis. þerfore þou schalt opene it hastili, or it  
 wexe to miche ynward / If þe place of þe emeroide make no greet  
 akyngne ne noon enpostym, & if þou wolt drie hem & waste hem,  
 þan þou miȝt worche in .ij. maners, do þerto mel anacardi &  
 8 vnguentum ruptorium,<sup>1</sup> or touche hem wiþ an hoot iren þat is  
 bettere / If he be a delicat man or a feble, drie hem with fumy-  
 gaciouns maad of pulpa coloquintida & seed of mirtillorum, & þe  
 leeuës & þe ryndis of capparis, mirra, nux cipressi, & gallis, & make  
 12 him a decoccoun of þese þingis in water <sup>2</sup>&<sup>3</sup> lete him sitte þeron, [<sup>2</sup> lf. 207, bk.]  
 for alle þese þingis maketh þe emeroidis blak & makip hem falle  
 away / I nolde neuere leie in þat place corosif medicyn /

Nota

To dry hæ-  
 morrhoids,  
 use a corro-  
 sive oint-  
 ment, the hot  
 iron,  
 and for a deli-  
 cate patient a  
 fumigation.



If þer be greetnes of veynes ful of blood wiþout ony enpostym,  
 16 & þe patient haue gret akyngne þerwiþ, & principaly if he was wont  
 to haue þe flux of emeroidis wiþ blood, & he hadde it not longe  
 tyme tofore, þan þou schalt ȝeue him medicyns to haue þe flux of  
 blood, & þat þou schalt do in þis maner anon, wiþ þe iuys of a  
 20 strong oynoun, or wiþ ius of lekis, ouþer if þou makist supposi-  
 torijs of hem & frotist þerwiþ þe place, & þis wole opene þe veynys  
 of þe emeroidis / Also þe rotis of maluis wet in þe gall of a bole /  
 Also take hony .ij. partis, & vert de grece oon part, & medle hem  
 24 togidere, & herwiþ anointe a suppositorie maad of linnen cloof &  
 putte it yn / If it so be þat þe patient blede to miche & he bicometh  
 feble þerwiþ, þan helpe him with trociscus de carabe<sup>4</sup> þat ben gode  
 for to restreine flux of blood of emeroides. & it is good for to

If the veins  
 are replete,  
 provoke flux  
 of blood.

28 restreyne menstrues. R̄, carabe, gummi nucis, balaustie, lacte, succi  
 barbe yrcine<sup>5</sup> ana .3. v., thuris .3. ij., opij .3. iij., make herof  
 gobettis wiþ muscillagine psillij, & make euery dai a gobet þe  
 weizte of .3. ij., & þou schalt ȝeue oon þerof wiþ sirupo stiptico,  
 32 & þou schalt make fumigaciouns of driynge þingis: as gallis,  
 balaustie, psidiorum & opere mo þat ben forseid / R̄, nuces cipressi,

If the patient  
 loses too  
 much blood,  
 stop the flux.

R̄

[<sup>6</sup> lf. 208]

Use a fumi-  
 gation.

R

<sup>1</sup> vnguentum ruptorium. Vigo Interpret.: "Ruptorie: that, that hath  
 strengthe to breake."

<sup>3</sup> At the bottom of the page, in later hand: *contra emeroides vell bubo  
 vell tenassmoun: R mer 3 ij, olibani, ameos ana 3 j, oppij 3 f3, gosium  
 gres et [?], fiat decoctio cum mell vell cum pestello ellido et nido, fformetur  
 suppositorum.*

<sup>4</sup> Matth. Sylv.: "Caraba i. Karabe. Electrum." Fr. carabé Arab.  
 Kahrabà Devic Dict. Amber.

<sup>5</sup> Alphita, p. 20: "Barba yrcina . . . a° buckestonge."



A wash.

cupularum glandulum, corticas granatorum, kutte hem a litil & seþe hem in good wijn. & wiþ þis wijn waische þe place an euen & a morowe / Also a fumigacioun maad of tapsi barbati<sup>1</sup> is good þerfore /

4

The great bowel is often pierced by an apostema and a fistula is formed.

It falliþ ofte tyme þat after þe flux of þe emeroidis, ouþer if enpostym be to longe maturatifi in þat same place vnopened, þan it falliþ ofte tyme þat þe grete bowel<sup>2</sup> is peersid. & sumtyme it makip a greet hole<sup>3</sup> in þe same place, & þoruþ þat hole comeþ out 8 wijnd & sumtyme egestioun,<sup>4</sup> & þis hole is cleped a festre of þe ers.<sup>5</sup> Of þis cure manye men ben hardi & knowen not þe perels þerof, & makip þe same medicyns in þis place for a festre as þei doon in oþere placis / But þou schalt take good hede of þis maner 12 enfestre; þou schalt asaie if þe hole of þe festre go to hiþe þat it touche þe place of þe lacertis of þe ers, þan þe festre is incurable, & þan a man schal not holde his egestioun, þat it nyle go out alwei / Also þou muste loke wher þere go out miche quittance ouþir 16 litil of þe hole of þe festre, or wheþir þe quittance þerof be whit or reed / Also þou muste take kepe wher he haue greet penaunce þerof or no / And aftir alle þese diuers þingis, þou muste diuerseli worche. For as it is aforseid, first þou muste acese þe akyng & þe swell- 20 ynge, þan þou schalt asaie wher þe festre go to þe lacertis; þat þou schalt knowe in þis maner / Putte þi fyngir as fer as it wole go, into his ers, & þan putte a pliaunt tent in þe feestre. & loke in what place þe tent mette wiþ þi fyngir, & þan say þat þe patient streyne 24 his ers, & þan þou miȝt wite wheþer þe festre go aboue þe braun or no. If þe festre go aboue þe braun, þan þe patient schal lete go out wijnd & egestioun at þe hole of þe festre. 7 þan þou schalt in no maner touche þe festre wiþ no medicyn corosif ne wiþ noon 28 hoot iren; but þou schalt teche him for to vse a waisching wiþ water & hony & mirre, & wiþ sum mundificatif, and in þis maner he schal kepe him þat þe malice of þe festre wexe nomore. ¶ O mi briþeren, manye lewid lechis haue I seen þat coude on ruptorie, 32 & þei supposide þerbi for to cure cancris & festriss, & al maner crepa-

[6 lf. 208, bk.] This wants careful treatment.

Look whether the fistula passes the muscles of the buttocks, whether there is much pus

and great pain.

Try with a probe and the finger, how far the fistula reaches.

If the fistula passes above the brawn,

[7 lf. 209] apply no corrosive, but only a wash.

Many unlearned surgeons,

<sup>1</sup> *Alphita*, p. 182: "Tapsus barbatus—g<sup>e</sup>. molayne, an. catesteyl, uel feldwrt."

<sup>2</sup> *intestinum*, inserted in later hand.

<sup>3</sup> *callid ffestula testium*, inserted in later hand.

<sup>4</sup> "*Egestion*, a casting forth, avoiding: In the Art of Physick, the discharging of Meat digested through the Pylorus, or lower Mouth of the Stomach, into the rest of the Entrails." Phillips.

<sup>5</sup> *ffestula*, inserted in later hand.



- turis, & þei supposiþ bi þis maner ruptorie<sup>1</sup> for to surmounte *Galien* knowing only  
 in worchinge / And men þat han þis opinioun, in þe mo errouris one corrosive  
 þat þei falliþ, þe more wroop þei wolen be, & þe more þei wolliþ vse *Galien*.  
 4 her ruptorijs / And þerfore þis mai be ensauple to þee : if a man They do like  
 haue no drinke but eysel, and haþ indignacioun for to fecche ony a man who  
 oper but halt him þerto, & 3eueþ þerof to men þat ben apirst. & has no other  
 if þe drinke agreue hem, & þei speke ony þing þerof, he wole be drink but  
 8 wroop þerfore, & he nyle noon oper drinke fecche, but algate 3eueþ vinegar,  
 hem of þe same til her spirituals bicomme drie / And if þe same <sup>2</sup>man [2 lf. 209, bk.] and gives it  
 hadde wijn ynow; & knew wel þe vertu þerof, he wolde 3eue no to thirsty  
 man eysel for to drinke nomore / þerfore þou schalt vse medicyns people;  
 12 þat ben appreued, & do awei al medicyns þat ben false, & holde  
 þee apaid of þe medicyns þat ben aforseid /<sup>3</sup>

### Of þe cancre<sup>4</sup> and þe mormole /

- 16 **C**Ancrene ben rounde vlceris þat falliþ in a mannes leggis, & ¶ xiiij. c. /  
 malum mortuum also, & þei falliþ boþe in oon place, þerfore I  
 wole make difference þerof / ¶ Cancrene ben round vlcera & ben Gangrene is a  
 foule & comeþ of dedinge of þe skyn,<sup>5</sup> for þe natural spiritus comen mortification  
 not þerto, & þerfore þe place is corrupt / & if þe corrupcioun go of the skin.  
 20 anoon to þe boon, þan it schal not be clepid cancrenum, but it If the bone is  
 schal be clepid aschachiles.<sup>6</sup> & if þe corrupcioun ocupie al þe affected it is  
 lyme, þan it schal be clepid herpes estiomenus, þat is as miche to called  
 seie as etyng him-silf. ¶ þe signes of cancrenarum ben blac aschachiles  
 24 vlcera, & þe fleisch þerof wole be foule & of ledi colour, & þe lippis if the whole  
 þerof wolen be gret, & þe fleisch þat is in þe middil <sup>7</sup>of vlcera wole limb is  
 be corrupt. & it be miche lijk to a cancre þat is vlceratus, but affected  
 þis is þe difference þerof þat a cancre comeþ of corrupcioun of herpes es-  
 tiomenus.  
 The symp-  
 toms of Gan-  
 grene are  
 black ulcers  
 [7 lf. 210]  
 similar to an  
 ulcerated  
 cancer.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *ruptorie*.

<sup>3</sup> The translator omits a short passage about "Fissure of the Anus."

<sup>4</sup> *cancre*, a mistake. Lat. De cancrenis. Med. Lat. cancrenum, cancrena, is derived from Lat. canceroma, cancroma, canchrema, and has very early been confounded with Lat. gangræna, γάγγραινα. Vigo. Interpret. "Cancrena. Gangrena is when some parte of the body thorow great inflammation dieth, but is not yet perfittly dead; when it is perfectlye dead, and wythout felyng: it is called sphacelos in greke, whyche they have turned to aschachillos, sideratio in latine. Some saye, that Gangrena is whan a membre is apte to putrefye. Aschachillos, when it is putrified, but hath not all partes of putrefaction. Esthiomenas, when a membre hath al degrees of putrefaction."

<sup>5</sup> of dedinge of þe skyn. Lat.: de cutis mortificatione.

<sup>6</sup> *aschachiles*, the Arab. corruption of σφάκελος. Fr. sphacile.



It is caused  
by general  
debility.

malancolie, & þis comeþ of lesynge of þe spiritis of lijf / Also þe lippis of þe cancre ben more reuersid and more grene, & a cancre fretiþ more / And þerfore þis passioun is clepid of summen a deed cancre /

4

Treatment of  
Gangrene:  
Purge the  
body from  
melancholic  
matter,

þe cure of þis passioun is in þis maner / first þou schalt avoide his bodi of malancolie, & þou3 it be not his principal cause as it is of a cancre / 3itt þe mater þat falliþ to þe place is greet / þerfore it is good for to clense his blood of malancolie; for it is good þing in 8 vlcera þat ben olde, & principali whanne þei ben in parties bineþe-forþ / & whanne he is clensid, þan lete him blood in þe veyne þat is bitwixe þe leeste too of his foot & þe too next þerto, in þe same leg þat þe passioun is on. & vpon þe place þou schalt caste pouder 12 of affodillorum, ouþer remeue awei al þe deed fleisch / If þou wolt worche more surely & bettere, make him a cauterie, þat 1it be myche & long as þe place is þat [is] corrupt, & wiþ an hoot iren make a cros vpon þe middil of þe passioun as depe as þe deed fleisch 16

bleed from a  
vein between  
the last two  
toes,  
use daffodil-  
powder.

[1 lf. 210, bk.]

The best  
method is,  
to cauterize  
the place with  
the hot iron.

Then apply a  
plaster,

is. & þan þou schalt leie þeron a plastre maad of whete mele & iuys of ache, & þan cure it vp as þou doist ouþer vlcera, as it is forseid / And in þis caas þou schalt not forȝete in no maner for to leie aboute þe place a defensif of bole & terra sigillata; for þat 20 wole suffre no wickide mater to renne to þe place, & it defendiþ þe hool place fro corrupcioun. ¶ Malum mortuum is a maner scabbe, & comeþ of grete humouris brent, & falliþ to þe place. & sum part þerof leueþ in a mannys flank, & engendriþ glandulas & 24

and a defen-  
sive.

Malum  
mortuum  
is a kind of  
scab,

and is treated  
with purging,

blood-letting,

and an oint-  
ment.

[2 lf. 211]

R̃  
an ointment  
of tithymal.


R̃  
An ointment  
of soap.

swelliþ / þe cure herof is to avoide his bodi of greet humouris, þat ben brent; & lete him blood in basilica, in þe same side; & lete him blood in þe foot, as it is forseid / & þou muste dissolue glandulus, as it is forseid in þe chapitre of glandulus & scrophulis; 28 & þan þou muste anointe þe place wiþ drijnge medicyns. þou 2schalt anointe al þe place with psilatro,<sup>3</sup> til al þe heeris falle awei wiþouten ony violence / Take þe grete titimalle & þe smale, & boile hem in vinegre & in oile, & do þerto a litil sope, & make þerof þe 32 maner of an oynement; & wiþ þis oynement þou schalt anointe þe place harde aȝen þe fier / R̃, olei aceti ana. 3 .ij., saponis mollis & saponis duri ana. 3 j.; medle hem togidere, & do þerto iuys mali terre ouþer brionie .3 .ij.; boile hem alle togidere, & anointe 36 þe place þerwiþ, & þou schalt fynde oynementis in þe antidotarie þat ben gode in þis caas //

<sup>3</sup> Sinon. Barth., p. 35: "Psilotrum, depilatorium idem."



Of varices, þat ben veynes, and elephancia.<sup>1</sup>

- U**Arices ben clepid veynes, þat ben grete, & grene, & purpur, & ¶ xliij. c./  
 sittip aboute a mannes leggis. and þei comen of greet Varices are enlarged veins in the legs.  
 4 malancolious<sup>2</sup> blood, þat falliþ adoun. & also it cometh of grete  
 metis & of greet traueile, or it may come of greet fleume; & it  
 wole make a mannes feet & his leggis al grete, & sumtyme his feet Elephantia attacks the feet.  
 also<sup>3</sup> // þe <sup>4</sup>cure of varicium is in þis maner: þou schalt purge him [4 lf. 211, bk.]  
 8 wiþ gotis whey & wiþ epithimo, for þis purgacioun is propre in þis The general treatment consists in purging, and in bleeding from the Basilic vein.  
 caas, or purge him wiþ pelottis of epithimi. & lete him blood in  
 þe veyne þat is clepid basilica, of þe arme in þe same side, & also  
 in his foot. & he schal absteyne him fro metis þat engendriþ  
 12 malancolie / þis passioun þow myȝt cure in þese maners<sup>5</sup> / þis is þe Local treat-  
ments:  
1. Apply a double liga-  
ture on the  
popliteal  
vein,  
 first maner: loke in his hamme, vnder his knee. þere þou schalt  
 se a greet veine; & alle þe grete veynes, þat ben bineþe in his leg,  
 cometh out þerof. þan þou schalt take vp þe same veyne wiþ a  
 16 nedele. & loke þat þou peerse not þe veyne, & knytte hir wiþ a   
 preed. & þe brede of þi fyngir aboue þat place, putte yn þi nedele  
 aȝen, vnder þe veyne as þou hast do heretofore, & knitte in þe same  
 maner wiþ a preed; & þan þou schalt kutte þe skyn ouer þe veyne  
 20 endelongis; & þan take vp þe veyne & kutte hir bitwixe þe .ij.  
 bindingis, & þan þe ende of þe veyne þat is aboue schal be brent  
 wiþ an hoot iren, & þe neþir side <sup>6</sup>of þe veyne schalt be vnknit. cut the vein  
between the  
two ligatures,  
[6 lf. 212]  
 & presse out þe blood bineþeforþ of þe veyne, as myche as þou and press the  
blood out  
from the  
lower part of  
the vein:  
after removal  
of the liga-  
ture.  
 24 myȝt. & þanne þe remenaunt þou schalt drawe wiþ medicyns þat  
 ben consumynge. & þe fleisch þere þou madist þi wounde, þou  
 schalt touche wiþ an hoot iren also; & þan þou schalt leie to þe  
 place mundificatiuis, & þan soude as it is aforseid.<sup>7</sup> ¶ Also anoper 2. Use blood-  
letting and  
purging.  
 28 maner cure: lete him blood oonli in þe same veyne, & take out of  
 þe blood as miche as þou miȝt, & purge him ofte, & make him

<sup>1</sup> Lanfranc follows the description given by *Avicenna*, Lib. III, Fen. 22, Tract. 1, Cap. 15, ed. Ven. 1527. *Avicenna*'s list of the occupations that are predisposing to this illness reminds us of the fact that he was a courtier himself. *Ibid.*: "Et plurimum quidem accidunt cursoribus, & viatoribus, & onera portantibus & coram regibus astantibus."

<sup>2</sup> MS. *humour*, deleted.

<sup>3</sup> Incorrect translation. Lat.: "Elephantia dicitur quedam carnis augmentatio, in qua crus ultra mensuram debitam augmentatur cum pede toto, et fit ex grosso fleumate vel ex grossa melancolia non corrupta."

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: *Locus autem tribus curatur modis.*

<sup>7</sup> This mode of operation is the same as has been described by *Paulus Aegineta*, Lib. VI, 82, ed. Fr. Adams 1844, 2nd vol., p. 406, and by *Avicenna* l. c., Cap. 18.



3. Do not try a perfect cure, but purge and bleed several times a year.

[1 lf. 212, bk.]

Elephancia can be cured at the beginning of the disease.

Use purging, blood-letting,

keep the legs bandaged before an exertion, use an ointment.

enplastris aboute his leggis wiþ drijnge þingis, & diete him as it is aforseid. ¶ þe .iiij. maner is þis: þou schalt go to no perfit cure þerof, but þou schalt lete þat blood falle adoun, & þan a fewe tymes in þe 3eer þou schalt purge him; & þou schalt laske his greet 4 blood wiþ blood-letyngis, þat ben forseid, & leie enplastris vpon þe place þat ben drijnge. & þus þou schalt do til al þe swellynge be goon away / & þis laste medicyn is þe beste for hem þat haue had þis passioun longe, & for hem þat ben olde / For if þou kutte a 8 veyne in hem, <sup>1</sup>þan þer wole engendre manie sicknessis aboue, & make þe pacient deed þe rapere / For I siz men þat her veynes weren so kutt þat weren algate sijk aftirward, & wiþinne a litil time aftir þat þei diede. ¶ Elephancia<sup>2</sup> is incurable whanne it is confermed; 12 but bfore þat it is confermed, it mai be curid for to purge þe humouris þat ben in þe cause wiþ blood-leting, þat ben aforseid. & he schal absteine him fro grete metis, þat engendriþ greet humouris; & þan he schal not go ne ride, but if his leg & his foot be bounden 16 wiþ a boond faste, & speciali in þe ioynct / But first þou schalt anoynte his leggis wiþ epithimo maad of acacia, mirra, aloe, ipoquistidos,<sup>3</sup> & alym with vinegre. & whanne þe swellynge bigynneþ to goon awei, þan make him a stuwe, & lete his leggis be þerinne 20 longe; & be it maad of askis of vines & caul-seed, sticados arabici, lupinorum, mirre, stercus caprini, fenigreci. Also anointe him, & binde him, as it is forseid. & in þis maner I haue curid men, þat ne weren not confermed þeron //

24

### Of wertis in handis and in feet /

[4 lf. 213] ¶ xv. c. /

<sup>4</sup> Porri<sup>5</sup> ben engendrid of fleume þat is greet, & ben white; veruce<sup>6</sup> comeþ of malancolie, & ben blake, & han mo rotis / Scissure<sup>7</sup> comeþ of malancolie brent, & makip as it were kuttynge; 28

<sup>2</sup> The disease which Lanfranc describes is the Elephantiasis Arabum, commonly known as Barbadoes leg, quite different from the Elephantiasis of the Greeks, a general term for severe leprosy.

<sup>3</sup> *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 25: "Ipoquistidos est succus fungi qui nascitur ad pedem rosæ caninæ." ὑποκιστίς, ἴδος, ἡ, a parasitic plant which grows on the roots of the κιστός, *Cytinus hypocistis*. (= Holly Rose, *Gerard*, p. 1281.)

<sup>5</sup> "Porrus, a Leak, also a kind of Wart." Phillips.

<sup>6</sup> "Verruca, (Lat.) a Wart, a little hard brawny Swelling, which breaks out of the Skin, and breeds in any part of the Body." *Ibid.*

<sup>7</sup> "Scissure, a Cut or Cleft, a Rent or Chap." *Ibid.*



- & if þei comeþ of cooldnes, þan þei schulen be clepid muge.<sup>1</sup> ¶ þe  
 cure of *porrorum* is for to clense his bodi wiþ trocisco de turbit, &  
 þan frote þe place wiþ medicyns þat ben consumptif; & frote hem  
 4 wiþ poudre maad of a gotis toord, & tempere wiþ þe iuys of mirti  
 & wiþ þe ryndis of capparis / Veruce schulen be curid wiþ a  
 purgacioun maad of epithimi & gotis whey, & wiþ summe opere  
 medicyn þat is *proprid* for malancolie, & þan þou schalt vse stronge  
 8 oynementis / as *vnguentum ruptorium*, ouþer mel anacardi or sum  
 opir corrosif, ouþer in þis maner is better / garse it al aboutforþ &  
 binde it wiþ a stronge þreed, & streine wel þe þreed & drawe him  
 awei wiþ þe þreed, & þanne touche þe rotis of him wiþ a cauterie  
 12 punctual. ¶ Scissure. It is nede in þis passioun for to purge his  
 bodi of humouris þat ben brent, & make <sup>2</sup>him a bath of swete  
 water. & þan þou schalt waische his lymes wiþ a decoccioun of  
 bismalue in watir, & a litil oile þerwiþ; & lete him vse metis þat  
 16 makip moist & engendrid good blood, & þan anoynte him wiþ þis  
 oynement / R̄, *olium rosarum*, *cere citrine*, *adipis anatis colatus*,  
*Isopi humide*,<sup>3</sup> *muscellagine seminis citoniorum*, *amilum*, *draganti*,  
 ana, make herof an oynement / ¶ Muge schulen be curid wiþ oilis  
 20 & oynementis / ffirst þou schalt aswage þe akinge wiþ oile, & þan  
 leie þerto a mundificatif þat schal be seid in þe antidotarie, & þan  
 soude it wiþ mirre / If þou seest it at þe first bigynnyng, þan  
 make an enplastre of armoniaco, for þat wole resolue þe enpostym.  
 24 & þou schalt make þat he vse [not]<sup>4</sup> streit schoon, & he schal  
 anoynte his feet, & principali hise heelis wiþ þis oynement / R̄,  
*olium de lilie* ʒ .vj., *cere* ʒ .ʒ., *resine* ʒ .ij., *armoniaci* ʒ .j., *farine*  
*fenigreci* ʒ .ʒ., *thuris*, *masticis*, ana ʒ .ij., & make herof an  
 28 oynement /<sup>5</sup>

Treatment of  
*porrorum*.  
 Apply a cau-  
 stic medicine.

veruce.  
 Use purging  
 and a strong  
 ointment,

or tie the  
 growth.

Scissure.  
 Use purging,  
 [2 lf. 213, bk.]  
 a bath,  
 a wash,

an ointment.

R̄

Muge.

Relieve the  
 pain;  
 apply a mun-  
 dificative,

a plaster,

and an oint-  
 ment.

R̄

<sup>1</sup> *Matth. Syluat.*: "Perniones vel rasulæ, sunt excoriationes quæ fiunt in nimio frigore in calcaneis, quæ *Mugæ* vulgariter dicuntur," probably allied to *mucus*, *ungere*, *μύζα*.

<sup>3</sup> *isopus humida*. Sloane 2463, fol. 159 bk.: "The fyfte, whiche is nother properly oynement nor enplastre, but atwix two, & is cleped ysopus humida. Take wolle that is bytwix the thyes and the iowes of schepe, as moche as þou wilt, and put as moche water therepon as may covere hit, and lete hit stonde so aday and anyzt, and þanne boile hit with a lente fyre, and lete hit waxe cold, and coile hit; and thanne boile hit eftesones in a tymed panne with a list fyre, and thanne lete hit waxe cold, and coile hit: butt loke thou sterve hit evermore with a spatule of tre till þat it be thikke as oynement."

<sup>4</sup> not, wanting. Lat.: iube ne calciamenta portet stricta.

<sup>5</sup> Gulielm. de Saliceto, *Chirurgia*, Lib. I, Cap. 57. Sloane 277, fol. 19: "For cold in wynter þe leche may haue two consideraciouns to þe heelynge



## Of blood-letyng //

¶ xvj

[1 lf. 213\*]

Blood-letting belongs to a surgeon's craft.

Nota.

Learned physicians leave it to unlearned men and women.

One ought to be both a physician and a surgeon.

Blood-letting is used to keep a man's health, and to remove sickness.

[\*lf. 213\*, bk.]

Bleed those who eat and drink much, and have little exercise.

Bleed in order to prevent a disease.

**B**lood-letyng<sup>1</sup> is a craft<sup>2</sup> for to laske a mannes blood þat<sup>3</sup> is in his veynes / <sup>1</sup>And þis þou schalt<sup>4</sup> wel wite, þat<sup>5</sup> it falliþ for oure craft, þouȝ we for pride take it to barbouris & to wommen; & <sup>4</sup> blood-letyng falliþ principali for cirurgians / O lord, whi is it so greet<sup>6</sup> difference bitwixe a cirurgian & a phisician, but<sup>7</sup> for philosophis bitoken þe craft into lewid mennes hondis / or as manie men haue dedignacioun for to worche wiþ her hondis / & ȝitt<sup>8</sup> mani men wenep þat<sup>9</sup> it is impossible þat<sup>10</sup> oon man to kunne boþe þe craftis<sup>2</sup> / But<sup>11</sup> þou schalt<sup>12</sup> knowe wel þis, þat<sup>13</sup> he is no good phisician þat<sup>14</sup> can no þing<sup>15</sup> in cirurgie / And also þe contrarie þerof<sup>16</sup>: a man mai be no good cyrurgian, but<sup>17</sup> if he knowe phisik. ¶ Blood-letyng is vsid <sup>12</sup> bi cause for to kepe a mannes bodi hool, & to remeue awei sickness fro a mannes bodi / But<sup>18</sup> þus manye þingis þou muste take kepe in blood-letyng<sup>19</sup>: tyme, & hour, & eir, & disposicioun of þe sike man / & þou muste take kepe þat<sup>20</sup> þou lete no man blood but<sup>21</sup> if he mowe <sup>16</sup> endure itt // ¶ First<sup>22</sup> a man schal be lete blood for to kepe him-silf,<sup>5</sup> & principali hem þat<sup>23</sup> etiþ good fleisch <sup>4</sup>& drinkiþ good wijn, & etiþ metis for to engendre myche blood, & traueiliþ but<sup>24</sup> litil, & principali þe while a man is ȝong<sup>25</sup>, & also in eelde if he be myche vsid <sup>20</sup> þerto / Also þou schalt<sup>26</sup> lete hem blood þat<sup>27</sup> ben wont to haue akyng<sup>28</sup> in her ioyntis, ouþer a feuere þat<sup>29</sup> is clepid sinocha<sup>5</sup> or þe squinacie, ouþer pleureses / Alle þese, tofore þe tyme þat<sup>30</sup> þei ben woned to haue her passioun, þou schalt<sup>31</sup> lete hem blood or her <sup>24</sup> passioun come, þat<sup>32</sup> it mowe go away þerwiþ: & þis maner is clepid preuisiuus. ¶ þe iij. maner: whanne a man haþ greet<sup>33</sup> akyng<sup>34</sup> in

*of swiche maner seknesses: oon of partie of defense þat it come not, & another of þe partie of remeyng of þe seknesse i-made. By þe reson of defence that it come not, leue þe patient wiþ all his witt streit schoynge, & haue he dowble schoos & large, & anoynte he euery nyȝt þe heele with an oynement þus maad."*

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: "aut quum operari ut dicunt quidam cum manibus dedignantur, aut, quod magis credo, quum operationis modum quod apud scientiam est necessarium non nouerunt; et hæc abusio tantum valuit propter antiquam dissuetudinem, quod apud quosdam de vulgo credatur impossibile, quod unus hoc possit scire magisterium utriusque."

<sup>3</sup> Lat. pro sanitate conseruanda.

<sup>5</sup> Lanfranc, *Chirurgia Parua*, Cap. X, Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 25<sup>a</sup> (xvth cent.): "blood þerfore, ȝif it ouer haboundeþ vpon al þe body, & it is hett with hete enflammyng<sup>35</sup> or brennyng<sup>36</sup> þe herte, & is corrupt, & neþeles it is not roten, þerof is maad a feuere clepid **synocha continua**. And ȝif he is roten, þenne is maad þerof a feuere clepid **synochus continuus**."



- his heed wipouten<sup>1</sup> a feure, or a squinantes plureses, periplumonia, apostema calida, & eueri sijknes þat comeþ of to miche blood. In alle þese causis þou schalt lete him blood; & þis maner is clepid
- 4 curantes.<sup>2</sup> ¶ Now I wole telle alle maners in what maner a man schal be leten blood / first, who schal lete þee blood / þe .ij., whanne it is necessarie for to be lete blood / þe .iiij., in whiche veynes a man schal be leten blood for diuers passiouns, & in what maner þe
- 8 veyne schal be kut. ¶ A man þat schal be letere blood schal be 3ong<sup>3</sup>, & he schal be no child, ne noon oold man, ne he schal not quake, & he schal haue a good scharp siȝt; & loke þat he kunne knowe veines, & þat he kunne knowe hem from arterijs; & he schal haue
- 12 manie diuers tool<sup>4</sup> for to lete blood þerwip, & þei schulen be clene and cleer, & not rusti; & summe of his tool schulen be longe, & summe schorte, for to peerse aftir þat þe veyne is greet þerto / Also children schulen not be lete blood, but if it were greet nede, & he
- 16 were so replet of blood þat he schulde be achekid þerwip; þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe streitnes of his breeþ & fulnes of his veynes, & bi reednes of his face. þan it is necessarie þat he be leten blood; but it is ful greet drede for to lete a child blood, þerfore I wyle
- 20 ȝeue no counseil þerto. & if it so be þat he be in perel of deef, þan lete him blood / Now þou art war of þis perel, do as þou seest þat it is to do; & þou schalt warne þe childis fadir & his modir of þe perels þat ben aforseid, & saue þee fro blame. ¶ Also olde men
- 24 schulen not be lete blood, & ȝitt summe olde men ben strengier of vertu þan summe ȝonge men; & þan þou schalt take hede to þe rule in þis maner: þat þou schalt not lete hem blood whanne þei arisiþ out of her sijknes / ¶ Also wommen wip childe schulen not
- 28 be lete blood, & speciali not in þe .iiij. firste moneþis, ne in þe laste monþe / Also ȝonge men þat ben white & pale, & haueþ fewe heeris in her browis, & haueþ smale veynes & priui, ne ben not couenable to be lete blood; ne men þat han manie humours & litil blood, for
- 32 blood þat is in hem is tresour. ¶ Ffrench men doon hem-silf miche harme in þis caas; whanne þei ben ful of coold humours & corrupt þei letiþ hem-silf blood, & þan þei seen her blood corrupt &

Bleed in those diseases which are caused by abundance of blood.

1.  
2.  
3.

1. The operator must have the proper age, know the blood-vessels, and have good instruments.

2. Children ought not to be bled except in urgent cases;

it is always dangerous,

and the parents must be warned.

Do not bleed old men, [3 lf. 214, bk.]

nor pregnant women,

nor young men who are pale and have spare hair and small veins.

Much harm is done in France by too much blood-letting.

<sup>1</sup> The Latin editions of Lanfranc read: "Tertio cum dolor fortis adest capitis siue febres fortes squinantes pleureses," ed. Ven. 1498, fol. 201 bk., Ven. 1546, fol. 249, but Add. MS. 26,106 (xivth cent.), fol. 88, shows the correct reading, which corresponds with the translation: "Tercio cum dolor fortis adest capitis sine febre, cum fortes squinantes, pleureses."

<sup>2</sup> Lat. curatiuus.

<sup>4</sup> tool, a survival of the O.E. tól, N.A. plur.



foul, & þan þei supposen þat þei han wel doon þat þei haue lete out  
 þat blood, & þe barbour wole seie þat he mote hastili be lete blood  
 azen / It were wel better to him þat he hadde kept his blood, &  
 þat þe corrupt humours hadde be voidid awei in oþer maner / 4  
 ¶ Blood-letynge is not good for a man at þe firste bigynnyng of  
 cataracta, ne noon ventuse is not good for him / but in causis as it  
 is forseid, blood-letynge is good // And <sup>1</sup>if a man etip miche fleisch  
 & drinkip miche wijn, for þis wole engendre miche blood / And 8  
 þan but if a man lete him blood, þan þere wole engendre diuers  
 sijknis þerof, & ofte tyme sodeyn deef / Also men þat haue þe  
 goutte of blood, he schal be lete blood tofore þe tyme þat he  
 supposip to haue his passioun; for ofte tyme þis wole take away 12  
 his akyng. & in alle sijkniss þat comeþ principali of blood, it  
 is good for hem to be lete blood / Also men þat haueþ synocham,  
 blood-letynge is ful necessarie to hem, til þei swowne. & þis wole  
 do awei þe feuere, or it waastip so miche þe mater; & þan he muste 16  
 be holpen wiþ oþere medicyns, þat þou schalt fynde in bokis of  
 phisik<sup>2</sup> / If he be not lete blood, þan þe blood þat is in him wole  
 boile vpward to þe brest, & gadere togidere in the brest, þat þe  
 patient schal be ful nyȝ stoppid.<sup>3</sup> & sumtyme a veine wole breke 20  
 in þe piyse or in þe lungis, & þan þat veine mai not be streyned ne  
 stoppid, & þan þe patient schal die þeron. ¶ In þis chapitre it is  
 myn entencioun forto speke oonly of openynge of veines <sup>4</sup>þat ben  
 in us,<sup>5</sup> & what vertu þer is þerinne. In boþe armis of a man þer 24  
 ben .iiij. veines þat ben in us for to be lete blood þeron / þe .i. is  
 clepid cephalica, & is þe hiȝeste veine of þe arme, & sitt next þe  
 elbowe<sup>6</sup>; & þis veine mote be kut large, & not to depe / If þat  
 veine be kut streit, þan ofte tyme it makip an enpostym / & also 28  
 þou muste be wel war þat þou touche no synewis / For þe same  
 cause þou miȝt lete a man blood vpon þe hond, bitwixe his þombe  
 & þe nexte fyngir þerto // Basilica sittip adoun aforȝens þe elbowe,  
 vnder þe arme, & þis veine sittip ful nyȝ þe gret arterie: & þerfore 32  
 a man mote be wel war þat he touche not þe arterie veyne. & for  
 þe perel of þe arterie it is good for to lete him blood bitwixe þe  
 litil fyngir & þe fynger next þerto. & þis blood-letynge is good for

**Nota**  
 Do not bleed  
 at the be-  
 ginning of  
 cataract.

[<sup>1</sup> lf. 215]  
 Blood-letting  
 shall be used,  
 if a man eats  
 and drinks  
 too much,  
 in case of  
 gout—before  
 the illness  
 is quite de-  
 veloped—

in case of  
 synocha,

else the blood  
 may boil into  
 the breast,

and a vein  
 may break.

**Nota**

[<sup>4</sup> lf. 215, bk.]

The veins on  
 which phle-  
 botomy is  
 practised are  
 1. **Cephalica.**

which is cut  
 either near  
 the elbow,  
 or between  
 the thumb  
 and the first  
 finger.

2. **Basilica.**  
 is cut either  
 in the fold  
 of the arm,

or between  
 the little  
 finger and the  
 ring finger.

<sup>2</sup> & þan he muste be holpen—bokis of phisik, inserted. Lat.: “aut omnino phlebotomia febrem tollit, aut adeo materiam minuit, quod in putridam de cetero non mutatur.”

<sup>3</sup> Lat. quod patiens suffocatur.

<sup>5</sup> Lat. quæ sunt in usu.

<sup>6</sup> Lat. prima cefalica que in duobus minuitur locis prope cubiti plicaturam aliquantulum supra.



- alle þe placis vndir þe brest, & for þe lyuere. ¶ Of þis veine þat is  
clepid Basilica, & of þe veine þat is c[l]epid Cephalica, comeþ a  
veine þat is clepid Mediana / And whanne a man is lete blood in  
4 þis veyne, it is perel of ij. grete synewis þat liggiþ in boþe sidis <sup>1</sup> of  
þe veyne. And whanne þou þinkist to avoide al a mannes bodi,  
þan þou schalt lete him blood in þis veine, & principali for þe herte  
& for þe brest. ¶ In Basilica, in þe riȝt hond, þou schalt lete a  
8 man blood for passioun of þe lyuere, & in þe lift hond for passioun  
of þe splene,<sup>2</sup> & in þe liftside of þe forheed<sup>3</sup> it is good to lete  
blood for akyng of þe heed,<sup>4</sup> & principali whanne sijknis is con-  
fermed in a mannes heed. & þis I apreuede misilf / for sumtyme  
12 it doiþ awei þe frenesi. & I siȝ a womman þat hadde akyng in  
hir heed, þat it miȝte not be take awei, & I lete hir blood in hir  
hond as it is forseid & purgide hir, & þe veine in hir forheed þat  
was gretter þan ony oþer veine in hir bodi; & I openede þat veine,  
16 & anoon riȝt sche was hool / But whanne þou wolt lete a man  
blood in þat place, þou schalt streyne þe necke & kutte þe veine  
endelongis; & þis blood-letyng is good for tynea, þat is in a  
mannes heed, & for Saphati.<sup>5</sup> & for demigrania þou schalt lete  
20 blood in þe templis of his heed. & þe same blood-letyng is good  
for passion <sup>6</sup> of a mannes iȝen / I hadde a ȝong man in my kepinge  
þat hadde demigrayn<sup>7</sup> of hoot cause, & I purgide him ofte & lete  
him blood, and I knytte þe arterie þat was in þe same side of his  
24 heed, & þo he was cured for euermore / Also letyng blood in þe  
veynes bihinde hise eeris is good for þe dimigrayn & for tineam /  
Also letyng blood in þe tunge is good for þe squinacie, & for  
enpostyms, þat ben as it were almaundis, & for brancis;<sup>8</sup> but he

3. Mediana  
is selected  
for general  
bleeding.  
[1 ff. 216]

A vein in the  
forehead is  
cut against  
headache and  
frenzy;

as the author  
did in the  
case of a  
woman.

Blood-let-  
ting on the  
temples is  
good against  
megrin,  
[6 ff. 216, bk.]  
and an eye  
disease.

Cut the veins  
behind the  
ear against  
megrin:  
bleed the  
tongue  
against  
squinacy.

<sup>2</sup> *Regimen sanitatis Salerni*, transl. by T. Paynell (1530), fol. h. iiii.: "*Saluatella* is þat veyne betwene þe myddell fynger and the ryngge fynger, more declynyng to the myddell fynger. Hit begynneth of *Basilica*. This veyne is opened in the ryghte hande for opilation of þe lyuer, and in the lefte hande for opilation of the splene. There is no reason why it shuld be so, as Auicen saythe, but experyence: whiche Galen founde by a dreame, as he saythe. He had one in cure, whose lyuer and splene were stoppe, and he dreamed that he dyd let him blud of this veine, and so he dyd, and cured the pacient."

<sup>3</sup> MS. inserts *for*.

<sup>4</sup> Lat. in capite flebotomatur vena frontis propter capitis egritudines.

<sup>5</sup> MS. *sanaci*. The editions of Lanfranc read *saphati*, Add. MS. 26,106, fol. 89: *saffira*. *Matth. Sylv.*: "Saphiros, Sephiros idest apostema durum cui non associatur sensus." *Vigo Interpr.*: "Sephiros is an arabike word, and it is called in Greke scirros, in latyne durities, that is hardenes."

<sup>7</sup> *demigrayn*, Lat. emigranea. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. megrim.

<sup>8</sup> *brancus*, med. Lat. Dufr., a throat-disease. *Isid.*, Lib. 4, Cap. 7: "branchos est præfocatio faucium a frigido humore." The editions of Lanfr. read: brachiiis.



Bleed from the jugular vein against suffocation, from a vein in the lower lip,

from the 3 veins in the leg,

1. a vein under the knee,

[<sup>4</sup> lf. 217]

2. a vein in the hollow of the foot called

Sophena.

3. the sciatic vein.

If you intend to let blood more than once from the same place,

make a larger incision.

[<sup>5</sup> lf. 217, bk.]

If by blood-letting, you wish to draw the matter to the opposite part of the body, bleed repeatedly.

schal be lete blood tofore in þe heed-veyne. & it is good for þe 1  
 1gen, & it is good for icching & for pustulis in þe nose, & for  
 scotomia þat cometh of blood / Sumtyme a man is lete blood in  
 veynes in þe necke, þat ben clepid gwide,<sup>1</sup> for drede of suffocacioun<sup>2</sup> 4  
 of blood; & sumtyme in leprous men, þat schulen be lete blood in  
 her lippis bineþe.<sup>3</sup> & þis is good for hote enpostyms in þe mouþ, &  
 for hote passiouns of þe gommys. ¶ In a mannes foot ben .iiij., þat  
 ben profitable to be lete blood for manie passiouns / And þer is oon 8  
 veyne in a mannes hamme vndir his knee, þat is good to be lete  
 4 blood for passiouns of þe maris, & for to bringe out menstrue: &  
 it avoidith al þe bodi. ¶ Also þer is another veine, þat sittith bitwixe  
 þe holowe of þe foot wiþinneforþ, & is clepid Sophena; & in þis 12  
 veyne wommen ben leten blood for passiouns of þe maris, & men  
 ben lete blood in þe veine of þe same place for enpostyms of þe  
 ballokis. ¶ þe veine þat serueth for þe scie, is wiþoute bitwixe þe  
 heele & þe holowe of þe foot wiþoutforþ, & blood-letynge in þis 16  
 veine is good for scia[t]icam passionem, as it is aforseid in þe cure  
 of sciatica. ¶ Herof þou schalt take kepe. If þou pinkist for to  
 lete a man blood in .ij. diuers times, & not al at oonys, þan þou  
 schalt do in þis maner; & in þis caas, whanne þou wolt lete a man 20  
 miche blood, and ne darist not do it al at oonys; þan whanne þou  
 letist him blood, þou schalt make þe inscicioun of þe veine þe more  
 long, þat it soude not hastili; & þan þou schalt binde his arme, &  
 smite þe place þere þou wolt lete him blood wiþ þi fyngir, & make 24  
 him blede more, as myche as þou seest þat good is / <sup>5</sup>¶ Also  
 whanne þou wolt wiþ blood-letynge make þe mater go to þe place  
 aforzens; whanne þou hast lete out þe .iiij. part off blood þat he  
 schal blede, þan þou schalt sette þi fingir vpon þe wounde, & make 28  
 him stonde vp & remeue<sup>6</sup> him-silf, & lete him sitte adoun, & do  
 awei þi fyngir & lete him blede more. & þus þou schalt do .iiij.

<sup>1</sup> Lat. vene guidegi.

<sup>2</sup> Phillips: "*Suffocation*, a suffocating, stifling, etc., a Stoppage."

<sup>3</sup> This statement is due to a wrong interpunctuation in the Latin original. Add. 26,106: "Aliquando flebotomantur uene guidegi colli cum suffocatio ex sanguinis timetur multitudine. & aliquando in quibusdam leprosis uene quæ sunt in labiis inferioribus interioribus minuantur propter acola calidum in ore — —." A full stop ought to be between leprosis and uene. Compare *Liber Rasis ad Almans*, Tract. VII, Cap. 21, ed. Ven. 1506, fol. 32 bk.: "Sed due vene que dicuntur guidegi sunt flebotomande, cum anhelitus in lepre principio maxime angustatur." "Vene itidem, que in labiis sunt inciduntur cum in aliquo multiplicantur alcola et ulcera in ore et gingivis."

<sup>6</sup> *remeue him-silf* has the sense of M.E. remuen, O.F. remuer, to move, stir.



- sipis or .iiij., for in þis maner þe blood drawiþ more to þe partie  
 aforzens, & þe vertu of þe pacient schal þe better be kept. ¶ Also  
 if a man is wont to swowne in blood-letynge ouþer falle down, þan  
 4 lete him lie & be lete blood / Also or he be lete blood, lete him ete  
 a schiuer of breed toostid & leid in wijn of *granatorum*. ¶ Alle  
 maner veynes in blood-letinge schulen be kutt endelongis / And  
 whanne þou wolt lete a man blood in þe partijs aboue þe necke, þan  
 8 þou muste binde þe veine,<sup>1</sup> til þe veyne arise þat þou wolt lete him  
 blood on / And whanne þou wolt lete a man blood in his arme, þan  
 þou muste binde his arme þe brede of foure fyngris aboue þe place;  
 & þou muste <sup>2</sup>be wel war þat þou streyne not to faste, as manie [2 lf. 218]  
 12 men doon / Manie men binden so faste a mannes arm, þat he mai  
 not fele his arm / Veynes of a mannes feet & in his hondis, if þou  
 wolt lete a man blood þeron, þan þou muste sette hem in hoot  
 water, & lete hem achaufe þeron an hour; & þan þou muste binde  
 16 his foot ouþir his hond aboue þe ioinct wiþ a boond, & algate his  
 foot or his hond mote be in þe watir as longe as he schal blede /

Give the  
 patient a slice  
 of bread and  
 wine before  
 the operation.

Before oper-  
 ating cause  
 the vein to  
 swell, by  
 bandaging  
 the limb,

and by a  
 warm foot-  
 bath.

### Of kuttingis and bledyngis //

- S**iccia is sett sumtyme for kuttinge & sumtime wiþoute kuttinge, ¶ xvij<sup>o</sup>. co.  
 20 and sumtyme wiþ kuttinge.<sup>3</sup> Wiþout kuttinge as vpon a mannes  
 wombe or wommans / ffor akyng þat comeþ of wijnd, & it is good  
 for to waste wijnd / Also it is sett vpon þe wei of þe stoon þat  
 falliþ adoun of þe reynes, & þan it schal be sett a litil bineþe þe  
 24 akyng þat it mowe drawe þe stoon lower & lower til it come to þe  
 hole of þe bladdre / Also it is sett vnder a wommans tetis for to  
 restreyne þe blood of þe nose & of þe maris / Also it is sett vpon  
 þe region <sup>4</sup>of þe wombe for fallinge of þe maris, þat is clepid dislo-  
 28 cacioun of þe maris: as if the maris falle adoun in þe rihtside, þan  
 it schal be sett in þe liftside / And if þe maris falle in þe liftside,  
 þan it schal be sett in þe rihtside / Also it is sett vnder a mannes  
 eere for to drawe out a greyne or a stoon of þe eere þat is falle yn /  
 32 Also it is sett vnder a mannes ers to drawe out þe emeroidis þat  
 sittip hid fer yn / And it schal be sett in eueri place þere þou wolt  
 make a greet attraccioun / Also it is good for to be sett vpon þe  
 bitynge of a wood hound, & vpon þe biting of a venymous beest.

The Sycia is  
 used against  
 flatulence,

to draw the  
 stone from  
 the kidneys  
 towards the  
 bladder,

to restrain  
 flux of blood  
 in case of  
 falling of the  
 womb,  
 [4 lf. 218, bk.]

to draw a  
 stone out of  
 the ear,

to draw out  
 internal piles,

on the bite of  
 a mad dog.



<sup>1</sup> Lat. opus collum stringi donec appareant.

<sup>3</sup> Add. 26106, fol. 89, bk.: "Siccia aliquando ponitur sine incisione aliquando cum incisione." The printed editions omit this passage.



Cupping with previous scarification is used instead of blood-letting, if the patients are either very old or very young.

[<sup>2</sup> If. 219]

Scarify on the head, for eye-disease, skin-diseases, and tooth-ache.

Scarify between the shoulders for swooning.

watir lechis

Bad leeches have big heads and live in foul water.

Good leeches have red wombs, small heads, live in pure water.

Keep them fasting before use.

[<sup>5</sup> If. 219, bk.]

It schal be sett<sup>t</sup> peron wiþ scarificacioun, also in causis þere þou lettist<sup>t</sup> for to drawe blood for febilnes, or for elde, or in children; & hem after .iiij. 3eer oold we moun garcie, whanne blood leting<sup>t</sup> is forboden hem, & speciali whanne we purposen for to drawe awei mater 4 þat<sup>t</sup> is vndir þe skyn / Also we moun garse a man bihinde in þe nol of þe heed — —<sup>1</sup> & for greuaunce of þe i3en, & vpon þe .ij. corneris of þe heed for tinea & for pustules þat<sup>t</sup> ben in þe heed vnder <sup>2</sup>a mannes chyn, for wennys of þe face & for vlcera þat<sup>t</sup> ben in þe 8 mouþ & in þe lippis & for akyng of þe teep / Also if it be sett<sup>t</sup> bytwixe þe .ij. schuldris for swownynge & for quakinge of þe herte, & for hem þat<sup>t</sup> han to miche blood in þat<sup>t</sup> place. þis maner letynge blood avoidid a mannes bodi miche & makip him feble<sup>3</sup> / 12

Also watir lechis<sup>4</sup> drawip more blood þan þese / In þis maner þou schalt<sup>t</sup> knowe whiche ben gode watir lechis & whiche ben nou3t<sup>t</sup>. þei þat<sup>t</sup> han blac colour medlid wiþ diuers colouris, & þei þat<sup>t</sup> haueþ grete hedis & ben in foule styngynge watris & han miche spume on 16 hem ben nou3t<sup>t</sup> / And in þis maner þou schalt<sup>t</sup> knowe whiche ben gode : þei þat<sup>t</sup> han reed wombis & litil reed rewis in þe rigge medlid wiþ grene, & whanne þei haueþ litil hedis & smale tailis, & whanne þei ben in good watir þat<sup>t</sup> ben manie froggis yn. & or þou sette 20 hem vpon a man, þei schulen be kept<sup>t</sup> al adai fastynge. & þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> 3eue him a litil scharp blood for to ete, & þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> waische hem wiþ cleer water; & þan vpon þe <sup>5</sup>place þat<sup>t</sup> he schal be

<sup>1</sup> Some words are wanting. Lat. : propter grauedinem capitis.

<sup>2</sup> The sentence to which this statement refers is omitted. Lat. : "Que vero in poplitis plicatura valent ad egritudines renum, et matricis, testiculorum et omnium membrorum nutritiuorum ex sanguine."

<sup>4</sup> Rhasis, Continens, Lib. XV. Cap. 6, ed. Brix, 1486, fol. CC. 3, bk., gives an interesting description of different kinds of leeches : "Sanguisugarum vna est venenosa, que est nigra vehementer ad modum antimonii, habens caput magnum & squamas ad modum piscium quorundam & habens medium viride, etiam alia, super quam sunt pili, habet magnum caput et colorem diuersum ad modum iris, in cuius colore sunt linee ad modum lazuli : que quotiens mordet, inde accidet apostema cum sincopi, febre, ebrietate, et laxitudine articulorum ; tamen bona ipsarum est, que assimilatur colori aque in qua erit viriditas, habent super se duas lineas ad modum arsenici ; sed blonde rotonde & ad colores epatis apte, que veloces sunt ad attrahendum sanguinem subtilem & que assimilantur caude muris, habentes odorem horribilem & similes locuste parvule et tenui & habentes ventrem ruffum cum nigrore & dorsum viride, sunt meliores ; sed peiores erunt in aqua mala valde stabili, in qua sunt ranule multe, tamen bone sunt in aqua bona & optima." This account is copied by Avicenna, Lib. I., Fen. 4, Cap. 22, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 62, bk. He differs in one point : "illas elige, que in aquis colliguntur, in quibus morantur rane. Neque attendas illud quod quidam dicunt, quod si sunt in aquis vbi morantur rane, sunt male."



sett, þe place schal be wel frotid tofore, þat it bicomē reed, & þan sette þervpon a ventuse for to drawe þerto blood. & þan anoynte þe same place wiþ blood, & þan sette þervpon þe watir leche. & 4 whanne he is ful & þou wolt do him awei, blowe vpon þe place baurac, ouþer askis maad of paper. & whanne he is falle awei, þan sette þervpon a ventuse aȝen to drawe more blood to þe plase. & þan sette þervpon anoþer watir leche, if þere gaderiþ þerto miche 8 mater. & þis maner is good for al maner blood þat is rotid, for it draweth it out /

Draw the blood to the place with cupping, before the leech is set on,

and use again cupping, when the leech has dropped.

### Of cauterium or brennyng of large & streite.<sup>1</sup>

- 12 **C**Auterium is seid in ij. maners, þat is to seie large & streit. & cauterium is seid propurli a brennyng wiþ gold or wiþ sum oþer instrument þat is hoot, ouþer wiþ watir or wiþ oile, ouþer wiþ medicyn caustica, ouþer wiþ herbis / And þer ben manie medicyns for to make cauterijs, whiche þou schalt fynde pleyulier in þe anti-dotarie / A cauterie is clepid streit,<sup>2</sup> whanne it is maad wiþ an hoot yren, wiþ gold, or wiþ siluir // Cauterijs þat<sup>3</sup> ben maad wiþ medicyns þat han vertu for to brenne / þer is seid a cauterie po[tentia]le whanne it is not hoot in felinge / & þat cauterie preuailiþ wiþouten brennyng as herbis / þer is anoþer maner cauterie: actual, for so miche as it brenneþ in dede / Of þis cauterie auicen<sup>4</sup> spekiþ & seiþ, þat it is a medicyn, miche helpinge for to defende, þat mater schal not departe into al þe lyme; & it wole comferte þe lyme, & bringe it into good complexioun aȝen, & it wole dissolue mater þat is corrupt, & it wole streyne flux of blood. & auicen seiþ, þat a cauterie is oon of þe beste pointis of cirurgie / for þingis þat mowe not be fulfillid in long tyme, wiþ cauterie þei ben fulfillid / As it is seid phisicians leueþ þis craft to cirurgians. & þerfore it is greet wondir if þer be ony good cirurgian founde, for þei ben alle lewid men. & if a lewid man schal worche with cauterijs, þan he knowiþ not þe difference bitwixe a cauterie þat is clepid actual & potencial. & also þei knowe not in what place of a mannes bodi þei schulen make hem. & þis is so repreued þat it is almoost out<sup>5</sup> of vss / Also summen maken cauterijs in vnclene bodies þat ben ful replet of

¶ xvij co

A Cautery is any substance used for burning.

In a narrower sense it is the hot iron, gold or silver.

[3 lf. 220]

A caustic medicine is called potential cautery.

The actual cautery is really burning.

The effects of cauterization.

Auicen praises the cautery.

The physicians leave its use in the hands of surgeons, who are all unlearned, and cannot distinguish the

Cauterium actuale

[3 lf. 220, bk.] and

Cauterium potenciale.

<sup>1</sup> The translator misunderstood the meaning of the Latin, "large et stricte," in the following passage: Cauterium dicitur duobus modis, large & stricte.

<sup>2</sup> See the preceding note.

<sup>4</sup> Lanfranc mentions Avicenna, who has a short chapter about cauterization, Lib. I., Fen. 4, Cap. 29; yet he chiefly follows Gulielmus de Salic., Lib. V., Cap. I., but with many additions and alterations.



Some cauterize a patient, who is full of bad humours, wherof a cancer may ensue.

Some use Cantarides.

Auicē says, the cautery is the best consuming medicine, if properly applied, and if there is not too much matter.

[<sup>1</sup> lf. 221]

As a little fire has no effect on a large quantity of wet wood, so the cautery is inefficient, if the patient is too full of humours.

The patient shall not bear the cautery longer than three months.

Particulars about cauteries, [<sup>4</sup> lf. 221, bk.] and the shape of the instruments:

1. *Nodulum*, an iron plate with a hole,

through which the red-hot iron is applied.

yuele humours, & þan cauterijs wolen do litil profit to passiouns þat<sup>t</sup> ben forseid, but<sup>t</sup> þer wole falle þerto so manie humouris, & make þe place of<sup>t</sup> þe cauterie to swelle, & liztly engendre a cancre. & þan men þat<sup>t</sup> ben vnkunynge ben agast<sup>t</sup> herof<sup>t</sup> & ben not hardi for to 4 make no mo cauterijs. & if<sup>t</sup> þe patient hadde be purgid of grete humours tofore, þan it<sup>t</sup> wolde not<sup>t</sup> haue fare so. ¶ And summen vsen cantarides for to make cauterijs þerwip, & leggen it<sup>t</sup> vpon men þat<sup>t</sup> han hote complexioun & drie; & þis is contrarious & falliþ 8 greet<sup>t</sup> agreuauunce þerof<sup>t</sup>, & þan þei seien þat<sup>t</sup> cauterijs ne ben nouzt<sup>t</sup> worþ / But<sup>t</sup> auicē seiþ, þat<sup>t</sup> a cauterie is good tofore alle medicyns for to waaste & consume mater / if þe cauterie be sett<sup>t</sup> in place þere it<sup>t</sup> schulde be, but<sup>t</sup> if<sup>t</sup> the mater be so miche þat<sup>t</sup> þe cauterie mai not<sup>t</sup> 12 consume it<sup>t</sup>, as þou miȝt<sup>t</sup> se an ensample herof<sup>t</sup>: þat<sup>t</sup> fier ouercomeþ alle þingis / but<sup>t</sup> if<sup>t</sup> þou doist<sup>t</sup> a litil fier among<sup>t</sup> miche wet<sup>t</sup> wode, þer wole come smoke þerof<sup>t</sup>. & the fier <sup>1</sup>mai not<sup>t</sup> ouercome to waaste þe wode, for water þat<sup>t</sup> is in þe wode is more þan þe fier / In þe same 16 maner it<sup>t</sup> fariþ of<sup>t</sup> a cauterie þat<sup>t</sup> is in a mannes bodi, if<sup>t</sup> he be ful of humouris, þanne þe cauterie mai not<sup>t</sup> worche. & þerfor þou schalt<sup>t</sup> purge him wip laxatiuis tofore þe cauterie as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid / Also þou schalt<sup>t</sup> make no cauterijs in a man þat<sup>t</sup> is ful of gode humours 20 as of<sup>t</sup> blood, for þan oonli blood-letyng<sup>t</sup> suffisiþ / but<sup>t</sup> if<sup>t</sup> þe patient be strong<sup>t</sup> & þe mater on him be coold & moist<sup>t</sup>, þan a cauterie is good for to driue awei þe mater. & a man schal not<sup>t</sup> bere a cauterie, but<sup>t</sup> .ij. moneþis ouþer .iij. at<sup>t</sup> þe mooste. ¶ Now I wole telle þee 24 a good rule / If<sup>t</sup> þou fyndist<sup>t</sup> in a mannes body a lyme in wei of corrupcioun<sup>2</sup>: as herisipula, or herpes estiomenus, ouþer formica, or in yuel disposicioun of<sup>t</sup> a wounde þat<sup>t</sup> bigynneþ to encancre,<sup>3</sup> & for al oþer corrupcioun, þan sette a cauterie in þe nexte welle to þe place, 28 for þe cauterie wole defende þe place fro corrupcioun. ¶ Now speke we of<sup>t</sup> particlis of<sup>t</sup> cauterijs þat<sup>t</sup> falliþ in diuers placis of<sup>t</sup> a mannes bodi, & wip diuers instrumentis þei schulen <sup>4</sup>be maad, whiche þou schalt<sup>t</sup> se portraied<sup>5</sup> tofore þe, & her signis forþwip. ¶ þe .i. instru- 32 ment<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> is comoun & moost<sup>t</sup> in vss, is clepid *nodulum*,<sup>6</sup> & is an instrument<sup>t</sup> maad in þis maner / Take a brood plate of<sup>t</sup> iren & make þeron an hole, & leie þat<sup>t</sup> plate þere þou wolt<sup>t</sup> make þi cauterie. & þan þou muste haue an iren maad long<sup>t</sup> & smal & maad hoot, & 36 putte it<sup>t</sup> in þat<sup>t</sup> hole of<sup>t</sup> þe plate / þis plate wole saue þe place þat<sup>t</sup> þe

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: si membrum inuenis in via corruptionis.

<sup>3</sup> *encancre*, med. Lat. *incancrere*; Dufr., Ital. *incancherare*.

<sup>5</sup> The figures are omitted.

<sup>6</sup> Lat. *anodulum*, *adnodulum*.



- cauterie schal be nomore but as þou wolt / & þat iren þat þou schalt make þi cauterie þerwiþ, schal haue a litil round knap tofore. & þat iren schal be maad hoot til it bicomē reed / & þerwiþ þou
- 4 schalt make þi cauterie, & whanne þou doist awei þin iren, þere wole be vlcus. & þan þou schalt leie þeron butter or oold grese, or grese stampid wiþ caul-leues, & þat is þe best of alle, & leie it þerto, til þe cruste falle awei þat þe hoot iren made. & þan þou
- 8 schalt do þerto a litil pelot maad of linnen cloop round & hard. & þat pelot schal be anoyntid wiþ oile, & vpon þe place leie a caul-leef, or an yue-leef, or a vine-leef, & in þis <sup>1</sup>maner þou schalt holde it open as longe as þou wolt. ¶ The .ij. cauterie is clepid **round**, &
- 12 haþ no knap at þe ende, but it is schape long, & whanne þou makist þi cauterie, þou muste be war þat þou touche no nerues ne veynes. & þis instrument schal be maad in þis maner, þat it make a cauterie in boþe endis, after þat þou desirist, greet or smal. ¶ The
- 16 .iiij. cauterie is clepid **punctuale**, & is ful necessarie whanne þou wolt make a streit cauterie. & is maad in þis maner. ¶ The .iiij. is clepid **radiale**, & is smal & scharp, & is good for children, & is maad in þis maner<sup>2</sup> / ¶ The .v. cauterie is maad in þis maner, & is swiþe
- 20 comoun & is clepid **calcellare**.<sup>3</sup> & þis wole make a long brennyng as ouerþwert þe heed, & whanne þou wolt make vlcera long þat ben rounde, þan þou schalt worche wiþ þis cauterie. ¶ The .vj. is clepid **subtile**, & is good for festrīs þat sittip in þe corner of a mannes iþe,
- 24 & it is good for yuel fleisch þat growip in a mannes iþe, & is maad in þis maner / þis sotille <sup>4</sup>cauterie schal be maad hoot & putt in a canel in þis maner // The .vj.<sup>5</sup> is clepid **dactilare**, for it is schape as it were þe stoon of a date. & herwiþ þou schalt make cauterijs in þe
- 28 haunche. & þere schal be an instrument schape as a table, & schal be leid to þe haunche in þis maner, & haþ .vj. arisyngis þeron as haþ a stoon of a date.<sup>6</sup> & oon þerof is in þe myddil, & .ij. aboue, & .j. bineþe, & oon in boþe sidis in þis maner / Whanne þis instrument
- 32 is hoot, it schal be putt vpon a mannes haunche, & a table bitwixe maad of iren. & þis table schal be coold, & þer schulen be .vj. holis

After this operation an ulcer is left, on which cabbage-leaves are applied.

[<sup>1</sup> If. 222]

2. The round cautery can be used at both ends.

3. **punctuale**.

**Radiale** is used for children.

4. **Calcellare** makes long burns.

5. **Subtile**, used for a fistula in the corner of the eye.

[<sup>4</sup> If. 222, bk.]

6. **Dactilare**, used to cauterize the haunch, is an iron instrument of two parts, one a table with five holes, the other with five eminences fitting into the holes.

<sup>2</sup> The description of the Cauterium radiale is an insertion of the translator. Lat.: "tertium cauterium punctuale, seu radiale, & est necessarium ubi valde strictum uolueris facere cauterium, & est sic factum." Gulielm. de Sal. Sloane 277, fol. 45, bk.: "þe fifþe is clepyd cauterium minutum, or radiale or viduale þat is a comoun instrument to children."

<sup>3</sup> Add. 26106, fol. 98, bk.: "cutellare," printed ed. "cultellare."

<sup>5</sup> The translator, forgetting that he counted the "radiale" as a separate cautery, follows again the numbers of the original.

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: et habet v. eminentias sicut ossa dactilorum factas.



7. Triangu-  
lare.

8. Actuale  
is like a  
needle, and  
[<sup>2</sup> lf. 223]  
used for the  
eye-brows.  
linguale.  
Ceton.

The skin is  
lifted up with  
pincers, a  
hole is burnt  
through, and  
some threads  
of wool put  
in.

[<sup>6</sup> lf. 223, bk.]

When all  
other medi-  
cines are  
inefficient to  
remove a  
chronic head-  
ache and  
other diseases  
arising from  
the head,

use the  
Cauterium  
Cultellare.

peron, schape after þe cauterie þat haþ .vj. arisingis out as it is afor-  
seid. And þou schalt make .v. cauterijs vpon a mannes haunche,  
& .ij. þerof schulen be aboue þe ioynct, & .ij. bi þe sidis, & oon  
vpon þe ioynct, & .j. tofore þe ioynct. ¶ Þe vij. is clepid triangu- 4  
lare, & þerwiþ þer mai be maad .iiij. at'oonyis. & þis cauterie is good  
for þe haunche also, & is maad in þis maner / ¶ The .viij. cauterie  
is clepid actuale,<sup>1</sup> for sumtyme it is maad wiþ a nedle, & it is good  
<sup>2</sup>for to make cauterijs þerwiþ in þe browis, & is maad sutil as a 8  
nedele. ¶ The .ix. cauterie is clepid linguale, & it is schape as it  
were a tunge of a litil brid in þis maner. & it is good for to make  
cauterijs vpon a mannes browis / ¶ The .x. cauterie is clepid ceton,<sup>3</sup>  
& is maad triangulis holowid.<sup>4</sup> & in þe hole þerof þere may entre a 12  
scharp instrument þat haþ a fenestre<sup>5</sup> as it were a nedele, & it  
schal be holde with coold tenaculis, also þe place þat þou wolt  
make þi cauterie on. þou schalt take vp þe skyn wiþ tenaculis, &  
putt in þin hoot iren þoruþ þe hole of þe tenaculis, & brenne þe skyn. 16  
þan þou schalt make a corde of wollen þerne & wete it in blood, &  
drawe it þoruþ þe holis, & þan þou schalt knytte þe .ij. endis to-  
gidere, & in þis maner þou schalt holde it open as longe as þou wolt.  
þis is a comoun cauterie, & þis cauterie mai be maad in þe mouþ of 20  
þe stomac, & vpon þe lyuere & þe splene, & vpon þe ballocke-leþeris /  
Now þou knowist alle þin instrumentis, for to make cauterijs with, &  
her names / Now telle we in what maner & in what place þou schalt  
make hem / In oold heed-akyng, <sup>6</sup>whanne purgaciouns & laxatiuis 24  
& gargarismis & snesyngis<sup>7</sup> & clisterijs & opere maner of avoid-  
yng, & wiþ enplastris & wiþ anoyntyng, whanne þe akyng of a  
mannes heed wole not go awei wiþ alle þese, ne þe epilencie,<sup>8</sup> ne  
noon passioun þat comeþ of þe heed, ne passiouns of þe izen, & 28  
passiouns of þe eeren, & of þe noseþrillis, & oold couze, & flux of  
þe wombe þat comeþ of þe reume. ¶ For alle þese passiouns þou  
schalt make cauterie þat is clepid cultellare in þe welle of þe heed<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *actuale*, a mistake for *acuale*.

<sup>3</sup> *ceton*, med. Lat. seto, sedo; Fr. séton; Ital. settone, "seton." Add. 26,106, and the printed ed. read: *dicetur ad sectionem*.

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: *fit cum tenaculis perforatis*.

<sup>5</sup> *fenestre*, Lat. fenestra; "la fenestre de la cannule," Paré; see *Littre Dict.*

<sup>7</sup> *snesyngis*, Lat. sternutationes.

<sup>8</sup> *epilencie*, O.Fr. epilence. Plinius: epilepticus. See Dufr. Matth. Sylv.: *Epilensia* .i. morbus caducus.

<sup>9</sup> Lat. in capitis fontinella. Phillips: "Fontanella, or Fonticulus, a little Well, or Spring: In Surgery, an Issue, or little Ulcer, made in sound parts of the Body, to let out bad Humours, and to Cure, or prevent Diseases. In



- bihinde. & first<sup>t</sup> schauē awei þe heeris, þere þou wolt<sup>t</sup> make þi cauterie as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid with an hoot<sup>t</sup> iren, & herof<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> be ware þat<sup>t</sup> þou lete not<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> iren be þere to longe, but þou schalt<sup>t</sup> hastili make it<sup>t</sup>, & hastily do awei þe iren, & þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> do  
 4 awei þe cruste þerof<sup>t</sup> wiþ butter, or wiþ oold grese, or wiþ leeuēs of caul, as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid. ¶ þis cauterie schal be holde open wiþ litil pelottis as it<sup>t</sup> is forseid as longe as þou wolt<sup>t</sup>, til þe patient be hool / But<sup>t</sup> or þou make þi cauterie, þou muste be wel ware, as it<sup>t</sup> is afor-  
 8 seid, þat<sup>t</sup> þin iren lie not<sup>t</sup> to longe, <sup>1</sup>but<sup>t</sup> hastili take it<sup>t</sup> awei, for if<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> were þere longe his brayn myȝte be harmed þerbi. ¶ Wiþ þis cauterie I helide a womman þat<sup>t</sup> hadde passiouns in hir heed manie diuers, & I miȝte not<sup>t</sup> make hir hool with no purgaciouns, ne wiþ  
 12 noon anoyntingis, & wiþ þis cauterie I made hir al hool. ¶ Also þou muste make a round cauterie & touche oonly þe skyn þerwiþ, & do þerto seto. þis cauterie is good for passiouns of þe iȝen, & for epilenciam, & for opere sijknnessis of þe heed; but<sup>t</sup> þis cauterie is not<sup>t</sup> so good as þat<sup>t</sup> oper tofore. ¶ Also þou miȝt<sup>t</sup> make a cauterie  
 16 in a mannes necke bytwixe þe boonys & þe skyn aboueforþ<sup>2</sup>; þis cauterie is good for þe spasme. ¶ Also whanne a man is woundid in þe heed, þis cauterie is good for drede of þe spasme; for herwiþ  
 20 þe mater schal be consumed, þat<sup>t</sup> nerues ben redi for to take.<sup>3</sup> ¶ Also in þe welle vnder þe eeris & bihinde þe eeris þou schalt<sup>t</sup> make cauterijs for passiouns of iȝen and for akyngē of þe teep.  
 ¶ Superfluite of fleisch þat<sup>t</sup> is vpon a mannes browis, þou schalt<sup>t</sup> do  
 24 awei wiþ a cauterie þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid lingual, <sup>4</sup>schape as it<sup>t</sup> were a tunge of a brid. & þou schalt<sup>t</sup> make þerwiþ cauterijs vpon his browis, but<sup>t</sup> þou muste be war þat<sup>t</sup> þou touche not<sup>t</sup> þe natural sub-  
 stance of þe browis. & þou schalt<sup>t</sup> make cauterijs þervpon with  
 28 cauterium punctuale, & for to do awei superfluite of fleisch þat<sup>t</sup> is in þe corner of a mannes iȝe. ¶ Superfluite of fleisch þat<sup>t</sup> is in a mannes nose, it<sup>t</sup> mai be remeued awei wiþ cauterium acutum ouper  
 punctuale, for to touche þerwiþ þe fleisch a litil & a litil til al þe  
 32 superfluite be take awei. & if<sup>t</sup> þis superfluite be fast þeron & be fer yn, þan þou muste vse a sutil cauterie, & putte it<sup>t</sup> in þe nose-þril

The iron must not be too long on the head.

[1 lf. 224]

The round cautery is good for passiouns of þe iȝen.

A cautery applied on the neck is good for spasm.

The cauterium linguale [4 lf. 224, bk.] is used to remove a growth on the eye-brows.

A growth in the nose is removed with the Cauterium acutum.

Anatomy, the mould or root of the Nose." It was further a name for the place where these ulcers were produced, especially for a place between the sutures of the skull. Compare *Sowd. of Babyl.* 2951: [he smote hir] ouer the founte throughout the brayn.

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: cutem superficialiter tangendo.

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: nam materia per hoc consumitur, per quam neruorum inhibitiō expectatur.



The round  
cautery is  
applied  
beneath the  
chin for skin-  
disease.

A cautery  
applied on  
[2 lf. 225]

the arms is  
used against  
lethargy.

A cautery on  
the fingers is  
used for  
chiragra.

Cauteries  
are used for  
asthma,

empyema,

for diseases  
of the rig-  
bone,

the stomach,

[8 lf. 225, bk.]

the liver, and  
the spleen,

they are best  
made with a  
Seton.

þoruþ þe canel, þat þe hete ne mowe not harme þe substaunce of  
þe nose, but oonly brenne þe superfluite of þe fleisch. ¶ Also þou  
schalt make a round cauterie vndir a mannes chyn. & þis cauterie  
is good for wennys þat ben in þe skyn of his face, & for þe place,<sup>1</sup> 4  
& for þe palet, & for sijknys in a mannes moup, & in þe gomys, &  
in þe teep. ¶ Also þou miȝt make .ij. cauterijs in boþe a mannes  
armys, wiþoutforþ þe arme, in þe welle þat is vpon þe grete braun a  
litol<sup>2</sup> bineþe þe schuldre. & þis cauterie is good for sijknys þat ben 8  
in þe partie bihinde of a mannes brayn as for þe litarge,<sup>3</sup> & also it  
purgip wel þe nerues of þe necke / Also þou miȝt make anoþer in þe  
welle vndir þe grete braun, and is good for þe brayn wiþinneforþ as  
for scotomia & vertigine, & for water þat fallip adoun fro a mannes 12  
heed to hise izen, & it is good for al passiouns of a mannes izen /  
Also þou schalt make a cauterie cultellaria<sup>4</sup> bitwene a mannes  
fyngris / And þese cauterijs ben gode for passiouns ciragra / Also  
þou schalt make cauterijs in þe brest wiþ a round cauterie, and is 16  
good for asma<sup>5</sup> / Also þou miȝt make a cauterie toward þe forke of  
þe brest aboue for disma<sup>6</sup> / Also þou miȝt sumtyme make cauterijs  
in þe brest, þat ben clepid cultellaria, bitwixe þe ribbis, & þese  
cauterijs been good for empima,<sup>7</sup> *id est* apostyme wiþinne / Also þou 20  
miȝt make cauterijs punctualia in þe rigboon for gret akinge þat a  
man haþ in þat place / Also þou miȝt make cauterijs wiþ a round  
instrument vpon þe regioun of þe stomak, for long febilnes þat a  
man haþ had in his stomak / Also þou miȝt<sup>8</sup> make cauterijs vnder 24  
þe nauele & vpon þe lyuere & vpon þe splene, ffor colicam passi-  
onem & for þe sijknys of þe lyuere & vpon þe splene & for dropesie.  
And alle þese cauterijs wolen be maad best wiþ seton / Also þou  
miȝt make .ij. cauterijs in þe haunchis as it is aforseid / Also þou 28

<sup>1</sup> place for *plage*? Lat.: saphati et pustulas.

<sup>2</sup> *litarge*, lethargy. Compare *Leechd.* I., p. 200: "wiþ þa adle ȝe man  
*litargum hateȝ, þat ys on ure geþeode ofergytulnys cwenen.*"

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: "Fiunt cauteria cutellaria superficialia inter digitum et digitum  
in cyragra. De propr. rer. Lib. VII., Cap. 29, Trevisa, Add. 27,944, fol. 87 a:  
"Difficulte & hardnesse of breþinge hat asma & comeþ of double cause of  
*drynes þat streyneþ þe lungen.*"

<sup>5</sup> *asma*, med. Lat. *asma*, ἀσθμα.

<sup>6</sup> *disma*, Add. 26106, fol. 89, bk.: "propter disimiam." Dufr., "dyspnia,  
δύσπνοια." Simon. Barth., p. 18: "Disma est species asmatis, sed disma fit  
ex siccitate, asma ex humiditate."

<sup>7</sup> *empima*, Lat. *empimia*. Simon. Barth., p. 19: "Empima, i. sputum  
saniosum ex pulmonis infeccione proveniens." De propr. rer. Lib. VII.,  
Cap. 30, Add. 27,944, fol. 87 a: "*empima is a passioun, whan me spetiþ  
quittir.*"



- miȝt make .ij. cauterijs vndir þe knee, for þe akyng of þe knees & of þe ballokis & of þe maris. Also þou miȝt make .ij. cauterijs vndir þe kne, wiþoutforþ for remedie of al þe bodi, for it avoideþ  
 4 wel alle partijs of a mannes bodi / & I haue seen manie men þat han maad cauterijs in þat place, or his bodi were purgid, & humouris fel so myche þerto þat his leggis & his hipis to-swollen al greet. & if he hadde be purgid tofore, he schulde not haue fare  
 8 so. & aboue þe ancle ben maad cauterijs for sijknes of þe ballokis. & also it is good for wommen / Also bitwixe þe toos ben maad cauterijs for þe potagre<sup>1</sup> / Also if þou purgist a man or a womman wiþ medicyns laxatiuis, & þan makist a cauterie as it is aforseid.  
 12 & if þe passioun go not awei at þis oon doinge, þan þou schalt neuere þe lattere [not]<sup>2</sup> be in dispeir of cauterijs,<sup>3</sup> but þou schalt bigynne to purge<sup>4</sup> him aȝen & make him a cauterie aȝen. & if it so be þat he be miche feblid herwiþ, þan þou schalt restore aȝen wiþ  
 16 gode metis & drinkis þat engendriþ good humours. & whanne he is restorid aȝen, þan þou schalt bigynne & purge him aȝen, & þan make hise cauterijs aȝen, & in þis maner þou schalt worche wiþ þi cauterijs. ¶ ffor manie men makip oon cauterie or .ij., & if þei seen  
 20 þat it profitip not, þan þei leueþ of & worchip nomore. & manie men contynuede þeron til þe pacient be brouȝt al doun & liȝtli deed / & in þis maner ne schulde not a leche worche / ffor G. seiþ : it is a feble leche, þat can not helpe þat is able to be holpen. &  
 24 defaute herof is þis : þat manie lechis ȝeueþ medicyns, & ne makip no space to bringe þe patient into good staat aȝen<sup>5</sup> / Alle þese rulis þat G. seiþ þou schalt attende in þis maner : if þe patient be maad feble wiþ medicyns laxatiuis & wiþ cauterijs, þan þou cesse of þi  
 28 medicyns & ȝeue him comfortatif metis & drinkis for to releue him aȝen, & þan þou miȝt worche wiþ þi medicyns aȝen. & þus þou miȝt do perfitly þe cure / And heron manie men erriþ þat ben holden ful kunnyng / & þerfore I haue sett it in þis place þat it mowe be  
 32 ensaumple to þee / Also þou schalt make a cauterie vpon rotid fleisch, til þou haue take awei al þe corrupcioun þerof. & in þis caas we mowen vse hoot feruent oile for to springe vpon þe corrupcioun,

Cauteries on the knee are used for the genital organs of men and women.

The patient must be purged before being cauterized.

If the disease is not cured at once,

[\* If. 226] repeat the purging and cauterizing.

Many surgeons use the cauteries wrongly.

Galien. Allow the medicine time to work.

Galien.

[\* If. 226, bk.]

Cauterize corrupt flesh with hot oil.

<sup>1</sup> *potagre*, Lat. *podagra*. *Hamp.* 2984 : "for sleuthe als þe potagre and þe gout." De propr. rer., Trevisa, Add. 27,944, fol. 96, bk. : "Arthetica is ache and evel in fingres and tone wiþ swellinge & sore ache, and whanne hit is in þe fynGRES hit hatte cyragra, and in þe toone hit hatte podagra."

<sup>2</sup> *not*, omitted. Lat. : nec propter hoc desperes.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 284, note 7.

<sup>5</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 93 : si plus dant, non interponunt spacium nutriendi.



so þat it ne touche noon hool<sup>1</sup> place, & þis maner is ful good to take awei corrupcioun of fleisch, & it is bettir þan medicina caustica / Whanne þou wolt worche with medicyns caustica, þan do as it schal be seid in þe antidotarie of þis book /

4

Of þe cure of brennyng wip fier ouþer with hoot watir or with oile.

¶ xix<sup>o</sup>. c<sup>o</sup> /  
Burns and  
scalds are  
treated with  
cold medi-  
cines,  
before blisters  
are formed,

with styptics  
in case of  
ulceration.

[3 lf. 227]

Simple medi-  
cines applied  
in the first  
case.

Medicines ap-  
plied in the  
second case.

R<sup>7</sup>

**A** Mannes lymes ben brent wip fier, watir, ouþir wip oile / In þis caas þis is þe firste entencioun : or þe place bigynne to 8  
bladdre,<sup>2</sup> þou muste haue medicyns þat ben colde / And if it so be þat þe place be vlceratus, & þou were not at þe firste bigynnyng, or if þe brennyng be so miche þat þou miȝt not defende, þat vlcera ne come not þeron, & þan þou must haue medicyns þat ben 12  
lasse coold, & medicyns þat ben clepid stiptica not fretynge / þese ben symple medicyns <sup>3</sup>in þe firste caas / Take marbil stoon & grinden smal, & alle þe sandalis,<sup>4</sup> & solatrum, & watir of rosis, & watir of cucurbita, & water of virga pastoris, & of alle þese þingis make 16  
a þing for to leie þeron / Also oile of rosis, & þe ȝelke of an ey ben good þerfore / Also bole armoniac temperid wip vinegre is good þerfore. And it muste ofte be remeued & ofte leid to aȝen, for þe cooldnes of ofte remeuyng schal defende it fro bladdring / 20  
Naturel medicyns þat ben gode in þe secunde caas : / But vnguentum de calx maad in þis maner / R<sup>7</sup>, calcis viue bene cocte þat ben maad of an hard stoon, and waische it wip coold watir til it lete al his scharpnes, & þan wip oile of rosis & wex make an oynement / 24  
Also vnguentum album Rasis þat is maad in þe antidotarie is good þerfore / I nyle for þis cure sette no mo medycyns. þoruȝ þe grace of god almiȝty þe þridde tretis is fulfillid //

Here endiþ þe þridde book, and bigynneþ þe fourþe 28  
book // Of brekyng of boonis,<sup>5</sup> & sumtyme of brusyng of boonys, and a general techyng for alle //

<sup>1</sup> MS. *hoot*, Lat.: quod loca sana ulterius non attingat.

<sup>2</sup> *bladdre*, vesicari.

<sup>4</sup> Lat. omnes sandali.

<sup>5</sup> MS. *bookis*.

<sup>6</sup> Lat. heading: "Explicit tractatus tertius huius libri. Incipit quartus, qui est de algebra, et continet duas summas. Summa prima tractatus quarti septem continet capitula. Capitulum primum summæ primæ tractatus quarti, de fractura ossium sermo generalis." The translator has kept the heading of the first chapter, but left out the chapter itself. His first chapter,



- 1 **A** Mannes nose is sumtyme to-broken,<sup>2</sup> & sumtyme pressid adoun. & if he be hastili holpen his nose mai be restorid  
 4 schal be maymed for euermore<sup>3</sup> / If þou comest at þe firste bigynnyng þou schalt do in þis maner / putte yn þe fingir of þe lifthand anoon to þe brekyng, þi leeste fyngir or what fyngir wole best yn, & wip þi riȝthond presse vpon þe brekyng, & arere  
 8 vpward wip þi fyngir withinneforþ, & presse wip þin hond wipoutforþ & bringe it as it schulde be. þan make a strong tent & so longe þat he mowe passe aboue þe brekyng, & þan þis tent schal be diȝt wip a litil wex hoot & a litil sotil poudre of mastik &  
 12 sandal, & schape þerof in þe maner of a candel, & þan putte it into his nose, wipoutforþ leie of consolidatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, & abouteforþ þou schalt leie a defensif, & þou schalt binde his nose wip boondis,<sup>4</sup> & leie sutil linnen cloof in boþe sidis  
 16 of his nose as it is aforseid in þe chapter of woundis in a mannes face / If þou miȝt not putte yn þi fyngir in his noseþrel, þan make a tent of tre & hile it wip linnen cloof þat it be oold & neissche, & þan anointe þis tent wip oile of rosis, & putte þis in his noseþrel  
 20 in stide of þi fyngir, & þerwip arere vp his nose wipinneforþ,<sup>5</sup> & wip þin hond wipoutforþ make his nose euene til þe boon be brouȝt in his propre place þat is to-broke. ¶ Of his dietyng, & blood-letyng, & ventusis, & clisterijs, ouþer suppositorijs, do as þou seest  
 24 þat it is to do, & as it is aforseid.

¶ If a manes cheke-boon<sup>7</sup> in þe liftside be to-broke, þan putte

which has no heading, is Lanfranc's second one: *Capitulum secundum summe prime de fractura ossium faciei.*

<sup>2</sup> Compare: *Paul. Aegin.*, Book VI., Sect. xci., ed. Adams, vol. II., p. 443, and *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. v., Tract 3, Cap. 3, ed. Venet. 1527, fol. 365 b.

<sup>3</sup> Gul. de Sal., Sloane 277, fol. 34: "*Thow schalt wite þat þe boon of þe nose is oþerwhile depressyd & oþerwhile broken, & ȝif soþely it be depressyd, þat is to sey born down or broken withoute wounde, anoon in þe firste visitacion, be þe seknesse restoryd, whil it is newe, for ȝif it were hard, ouþer þer schal dwelle euermore fnattydnesse or euel schapp.*" *fnattydness*, translates med. Lat. *simitas* *σιμότης*, snubbiness. <sup>4</sup> MS. *broondis*.

<sup>5</sup> Gul. de Sal. Sloane 277, fol. 34: "*And ȝif þou may not do þat wip þi fynger, putte in þe hole of þe nose on þe hurt syde a softe rownd sticke maad euene & semely, & anoynted with oyle of rosis . . . and þou maist also lappe þilke sticke in a clene linnen clout & anoynte þe clout wip þe same oile, & þanne þe sticke schal be þe more trefable.*"

<sup>7</sup> *Avic.* Lib. IV., Fen. v. Tr. 3, Cap. 2, *ibid.*: "*Si frangitur mandibula dextra, tunc intromitte indicem, et medium manus sinistre in os infirmi, et cet.*" Gul. de Sal. Lib. III., Cap. 2. Sl. 277. fol. 34 b: "*ȝif soþely þe boon of þe vppere chawel or of þe neþere were maad withoute wounde, putte þi ryȝt hond in þe moup of þe seeke.*"

<sup>a</sup> Sl. 6. fol. 115 b, broken.

[1 lf. 227, bk.]

¶ i.e. eo/

A broken nose, unless soon re-adjusted, remains deformed.

Restore the nose by manipulation.

Plug the nostrils with a strong tent.

[3 lf. 228]

Take care of the general treatment.

If the cheek-bone is broken,



re-adjust it by manipulation, and hold it in position by tying the teeth together,

[<sup>1</sup> lf. 228, bk.]

and by applying a bandage.

The patient shall only take meat fit to be sipped.

yn þi strongist fyngris of þi lifthond tweyne & bringe þe boon into his propre place azen, & presse wiþ þi ri3thond wiþoutforþ; & if þe cheke-boon be to-broke in þe ri3tside, þanne putte yn .ij. fyngris of þi ri3thond, and bringe þe boon to his propre place azen, as it is afor- 4  
seid. & whanne þe boon is brou3t as it schulde be, þat þou mi3t knowe if his teef sittip euene as þei schulde do, & þan binde hise teef wiþ a strong<sup>1</sup> preed wexid<sup>1</sup> & bounden bitwixe his teef, & leie 8  
þervpon oon of þe consolidatiuis & binde him in þe same maner, þat þe boond be maad fast bihindeforþ in his necke. & þan it schal be turned azen to his forheed, & þou schalt binde him wiþ þi boond manyfoold, þat þe boon þat is to-broke mowe be holde in his propre place / And þe patient schal ete no metis but þingis þat he may 12  
soupe / For if he chewide, it wolde make þe boon falle out of his place azen, & in .xx. daies þis boon mai be restorid azen //

ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe þrote and of þe brest //

¶ ijo. co.  
The upper jaw-bone is immovable, for three reasons.

[<sup>3</sup> lf. 229]

The lower jaw-bone consists of 2 bones; joins with the upper jaw-bone by ligaments.

Nerves convey the motor phenomena from the brain and spine.

**T**He cheke-boon aboue meueþ not, & þat is for .iiij. causis: oon 16  
is þat þe cheke-boon bineþe is more li3t & more able þerfore, þe .ij. cause is þis: þe cheke-boon is ni3 noble lymes, & if þe cheke-boon aboue meuede, þe noble lymes mi3ten be enpeirid þerbi. þe .iiij. cause is þis: if þe cheke-boon aboue meuede, þere nolde be noon 20  
strong<sup>1</sup> coniunccioun bitwene hem / þerfore þe cheke-boon aboue is fast maad to þe boonys of þe heed, as it is aforseid in anothomiam.  
¶ The cheke-boon bineþe is maad of .ij. boonys ioyned<sup>3</sup> togidere in þe chyn. & þis boon is maad fast with þe cheke-boon aboue wiþ 24  
ligaturis þat ben stronge & recching<sup>1</sup> & wiþ lacertis, & maketh þe cheke-boon meue whanne a man wole, for summe þerof comeþ adoun fro þe boonys of þe heed, & ben ioyned wiþ partijs of nerues of þe heed, & of nuche, & closip togidere þe cheke-boon. [Summe 28  
comeþ<sup>4</sup>] bineþe aforzens þe brest, and ben medlid wiþ nerues of nuche & openeþ þe cheke-boon, & summe comeþ fro þe sidis, &

<sup>2</sup> Lanfranc divides the fourth book into two "doctrines," the one dealing with fractures, the other with dislocations. The scribe of the present translation omits this division and the first chapter of each doctrine. He also puts the chapter on dislocation of the jaw-bone, which was originally the 2nd chapter of the 2nd doctrine immediately after the chapter on fracture of the jaw-bone, still retaining the heading of the 3rd chapter of the first doctrine: "ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe þrote and of þe brest." The two tables of contents show the same order as the original.

<sup>4</sup> Summe comeþ, wanting. Lat. Add. 26106, fol. 96 bk.: "alii veniunt ab inferius versus pectus." The prints differ.



- meueþ þe cheke-boon round, whanne a man couwid.<sup>1</sup> & þis cheke-boon bineþe mai be brouzt of þe ioynct fro þe cheke-boon aboue in .ij. maners: ouþer it goiþ of þe ioynct bihindeward, & þan þe teeþ
- 4 þat ben in þe cheke-boon bineþe goiþ wiþinne þe teeþ of þe cheke-boon aboue. & þan he may not opene his mouþ, & it goiþ out of þe ioynct forward, & þan þe teeþ þat ben in þe cheke-boon bineþe goiþ forþere out þan þe teeþ aboue. & he mai not close his mouþ
- 8 togidere<sup>2</sup> / These signys ben certeyn whanne þe boon is out of his ioynct / It is greet nede for to helpe a man hastily in þis caas; for if þe <sup>3</sup>cheke-boon be out of ioincte longe, þere ben manie nerues & lacertis & arterijs & veines aboute þat place, & for þis cause it
- 12 wexiþ hard anoon. & þis place wole soone take enpostym for divers humours þat wolen falle þerto. & if þer falle an enpostym in þis place, þan, for þe brayn is so niȝ, þer comeþ a frenesie þerof & ofte tyme dieþ / & þerfore if he be hastili holpen, þe boon wole
- 16 liztly into þe ioinct azen. & þerfore þat ioinct haþ lizt meuyng / ffor eueri ioinct þat haþ hard meuyng, & he be out of þe ioinct, it wole be hard for to bringe yn azen / If it so be þat þe cheke-boon be out of ioinct hindeward, þan þou schalt take þe boon
- 20 first wiþ þi .ij. hondis, & lete a man holde his heed & drawe þe boon forþward.<sup>4</sup> & if it so be þat his mouþ be closid togidere, þan þou schalt opene his mouþ wiþ þin hond or with sum oþer instrument, & þan take faste þe boon & drawe it to his place azen. & in
- 24 þis maner þou schalt knowe whanne it is in his propre place azen, if his teeþ sitten euene, & if he may opene his mouþ / ¶ If þou miȝt not bringe þe boon to his propre place in þis maner, þan þou muste take a strong boond, & sette it vnder his chyn, þere þou
- 28 <sup>5</sup>settist þi fyngris, & anoþer man mote drawe þe boond strongly & euene, & wiþ a wagge þou muste opene his mouþ. In þis maner

The dislocation of the lower jaw is either backwards

or forwards.

Help must come soon, [3 lf. 229, bk.] or the place gets indurated, and an apostema may be formed.

If the dislocation is backwards, draw the bone forwards,

if necessary by means of a strong bandage.

[3 lf. 230]

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: in masticando.

<sup>2</sup> Gul. de Sal. Lib. III., Cap. 18. Sl. 277, fol. 42 b: "The tokenes of þe dislocation inward ben þat þe mouþ leueþ opene, & þat þe teeþ of þe neþere chawel goon tofore þe teeþ of þe vppere chawl. ¶ The tokenes of þe dislocacioun outward ben þat þe mouth is schut & in no manere may be openyd, & þe seeke may not chewe & þe teeþ drawe vp toward þe palett, & þer schewiþ in þe vttere party in þe place of þe dislocacion an opene outberyng out of mesure, & þe speche is bynomen hym."

<sup>4</sup> Gul. de Sal. Sl. 277, fol. 42 b: "The dislocacion knowe, wheþer it be to þe innere party or þe vttere, a wyse leche oweþ to putte his þumbes wiþinne þe mouþ of þe seeke, & festene hem vpon þe wange-teeþ of þe neþere iowe of þe seeke, & wiþ þe oþere four fyngeres he schal take þe iowe dislocate fro þe vttere, & þat tyme he schal haue a mynystre, which schal holde fast þe heuyd of þe seeke."



pou openynge his mouþ, & he drawing<sup>t</sup> wiþ þe boond as it<sup>t</sup> is afor-  
seid, al at<sup>t</sup> oonys wiþouten drede þe boon wole come into his ioinct<sup>t</sup>.<sup>1</sup>

If the disloca-  
tion is for-  
wards,  
let an assist-  
ant draw the  
bone back-  
wards,

and open the  
mouth by a  
wedge.

¶ If it<sup>t</sup> be out<sup>t</sup> of þe ioinct<sup>t</sup> forward, þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> sette a strong<sup>t</sup>  
boond vpon his chin, þat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> hile al þe chin, & lete a man stonde 4  
bihinde him & halde þe boond in hise hondis, & he schal sette his  
knees vpon his schuldris, & he schal drawe þe boon to him wel &  
euenly. & þou schalt<sup>t</sup> putte a wegge in his mouþ, & whanne he  
drawiþ þe boon þou schalt<sup>t</sup> opene his mouþ wiþ þe wegge al at<sup>t</sup> oon 8  
tyme, & in þis maner þe boon schal falle into his ioinct<sup>t</sup>. Whanne  
þe boon is ynne, þan binde it<sup>t</sup> faste wiþ a ligature & with enplastre,  
& lete him haue souping<sup>t</sup> metis, & he schal chewe no mete til þe  
place be al fast / ¶ If it<sup>t</sup> so be þat<sup>t</sup> þou were not<sup>t</sup> at<sup>t</sup> þe first<sup>t</sup> bigyn- 12

In case of  
apostema use  
ointments

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 230, bk.]

to remove the  
apostema and  
the fever,

and then  
reduce the  
dislocated  
bone.

nyng<sup>t</sup>, & þe place is enpostymed, & he haue þe feuere & akyng<sup>t</sup> of  
his heed, þan schaue his heed & anoynte it<sup>t</sup> wiþ oile of<sup>t</sup> rosis & a  
litol vinegre medlid þerwiþ. & þou schalt<sup>t</sup> <sup>2</sup>anoynte his heed with  
sum mollificatif<sup>t</sup>, or wiþ dokis grese or wiþ hennys. & þou schalt<sup>t</sup> 16  
worche as miche as þou miȝt<sup>t</sup> for to acesse þe enpostym, & for to  
cure þe feuere, & for to comferte his heed, þat<sup>t</sup> þe frenesie ne come  
not<sup>t</sup> to him / Whanne þe feuere & þe frenesie & þe enpostym be  
remeued awei, þan cure him as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid //

20

ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe prote and of þe brest //

¶ iij. co.

The cure is  
easy if no  
part of the  
broken bone  
is pressed in.

**T**He forke of<sup>t</sup> þe prote is clepid of<sup>t</sup> summen patena, & of<sup>t</sup> sum-  
men cathena.<sup>4</sup> Sumtyme it<sup>t</sup> is to-broke & nouþer part<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> þe  
boon ne is not<sup>t</sup> ypressid yn, & þan þe cure þerof<sup>t</sup> is liȝt<sup>t</sup> ynow. 24  
But<sup>t</sup> if<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> oon ende of<sup>t</sup> þe boon be pressid adoun vndir þat<sup>t</sup> oþer,  
þan it<sup>t</sup> is ful hard for to bringe it<sup>t</sup> yn aȝen. Whanne nouþer partie  
is pressid adoun, þan it<sup>t</sup> is noon oþer nede for to haue no medicyn  
but<sup>t</sup> stupis wet in white of eiren; & leie it<sup>t</sup> vpon þe brekyng<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> þe 28  
boon, & binde wel þe place wiþ ligaturis; & his arme of<sup>t</sup> þe same  
side mote be hongid to his necke, & in his arme-pitt<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> leie  
a bal of<sup>t</sup> lynnyn cloop. & þou muste binde his arme þat<sup>t</sup> he mowe not<sup>t</sup>  
meue his arm <sup>5</sup>toward þe forke of<sup>t</sup> þe brest, & in þis maner he mote 32

Apply band-  
ages and tie  
the arm on  
the injured  
side to the  
neck.

[<sup>5</sup> lf. 231]

<sup>1</sup> Add. 26106, fol. 97: ita quod tu aperiendo et minister trahendo vna hora locum suum intrat, quia sic sine dubio restaurabis.

<sup>3</sup> *Paul. Aegin.*, Book VI., 93, ed. Adams, vol. ii. p. 447. *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. 5, Tract 3, Cap. 4, ed. Ven. 1527, p. 365 b.

<sup>4</sup> *patena*, *cathena*, names for the *furcula*, as it seems peculiar to Lanfranc. The *furcula*, taken to be one bone, comprises the sternal bone and the clavicles. "Catena," chain, is synonymous with "clavicula;" and *patena*, med. Lat. = plate, is a proper denomination of the sternal bone.



be kept<sup>t</sup> til þe boon be al hool. ¶ If it so be þat<sup>t</sup> oon ende of þe boon be pressid adoun, þan a man mote drawe his oon arme, & anoþer man his oþere arme, & þou schalt<sup>t</sup> wiþ þin hondis drawe þe boon to his propre place. þan þou muste haue a medicyne consolidatif, & wete þerinne a linnen clooþ, & hile al þe brekyng<sup>t</sup> of þe boon þerwiþ, & leie þervpon faldellas<sup>1</sup> wiþ white of an ey, & þan binde him as it is aforseid, and his arme to his necke, & in þis maner he schal be kept til he be hool.

If one end of the bone is pressed in, replace it, and apply a medicine.

### ¶ Of brekyng of rigboonys /<sup>2</sup>

**R**igge boonys for her schortnes & for her strongnes ne ben not to-broke, but if it be wiþ greet smytyng<sup>t</sup>, & sumtyme þei ben brusid, & þat<sup>t</sup> makip greet akyng<sup>e</sup>. Also þer fallip manie perels of þe boonys of þe necke if þei ben hurt, lest nucha be hirt also, & þan it is perel of þe brayn as it is aforseid / If þou seest yuel signes in þat<sup>t</sup> caas, go awei þerfro. & if þou seest noon yuele signys, þan anointe þe place wiþ oile of rosis hoot & leie þervpon wolfe, and þanne <sup>3</sup>terbentine medlid wiþ a litil mastic, & þis medicyne þou schalt vse til þe place be al hool /

¶ iiiij. co / If the rig-bone is broken, there is danger that the spine be hurt.

Flee in case of evil symptoms, else apply an ointment. [3 lf. 231, bk.]

¶ The noumbre of a mannes ribbis is aforeseid in þe anothamie / A mannes ribbis ben to-broke sumtyme wiþ smytyng<sup>t</sup> or wiþ fallyng<sup>t</sup> / Also þei moun be plied inward & not to-broke. ¶ In þis maner þou schalt knowe wheþir a mannes rib be to-broke or no / Sette þi fyngrs vpon þe place & grope softli & presse a litil vp & doun, & if his rib be to-broke, þou schalt heere hym sownie,<sup>4</sup> & he schal haue couzinge & akinge in his side. ¶ It is ful hard for to restore a rib þat is to-broke, for sumtyme þat oon parti pliep inward, & þan it is hard for to bringe him into his propre place

One knows that a rib is broken by the sound which is heard on pressure.

28 aȝen / And summen seien þat þe pacient schulde ete metis to swelle him þat engendriþ wijnd, & wole make þe rib goon into his propre place aȝen. & summen seien þat me schulde sette a ventuse, & wiþ

Some men propose that the patient should take food which produces wind,

<sup>1</sup> *faldella*, med. Lat., diminutive of *falda*, thread.

<sup>2</sup> Lat. de fractura spondilium et costarum.

<sup>4</sup> Gul. de Sal. lib. III., Cap. 5. Sl. 277, fol. 36: "3if it happe þe rybbis to be broken in oo place or in two þat þou schalt wite by touchyng<sup>e</sup>, for þei þat of þristyng<sup>e</sup> down of þe hond vpon þe place or places, þou schalt heere a sown & with þat þe seeke schal suffre penaunce or lettyng<sup>e</sup> of breþ, & principally þe tyme of drawyng<sup>e</sup> of wynd." The sound, "crepitus," produced by pressure of the hand on the injured place, as a test whether a rib is fractured, is already mentioned in *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., 96, ed. Adams, vol. ii., p. 452.



others propose cupping.  
Both are wrong.

[<sup>1</sup> lf. 232]

.1.  
.2.  
Bleed the patient from the Basilic vein,

readjust the broken rib,

let the patient cough.

Apply a bandage.

[<sup>4</sup> lf. 232, bk.]

If there is strong fever, readjust the rib by operation.

þe drawing<sup>t</sup> þerof<sup>t</sup> þe rib wole rise vp azen into his propre place /  
But I suppose þis wole more make agreuance þan helpe þe patient /  
ffor þe .j. wole engendre an hoot<sup>t</sup> en<sup>1</sup>postyme / The .ij. it<sup>t</sup> wole  
drawe to þe place manie humours / If þou wolt<sup>t</sup> take þis cure, þou 4  
schalt<sup>t</sup> do in þis maner : / ffirst<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> lete him blood in þe side  
aforzens in þe veyne þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid basilica, & þan in þe same, & þan  
anoynte þin hond wiþ terbentine. & loke if þou miȝt<sup>t</sup> take vp þe rib  
þat<sup>t</sup> is pressid adoun. & þin oþer hond þou schalt<sup>t</sup> sette vpon þe 8  
place þat<sup>t</sup> is not<sup>t</sup> pressid adoun. & wiþ þin hond þat<sup>t</sup> is anoyntid  
arere vp his rib. & loke þat<sup>t</sup> þe .ij. endis of þe ribbis þat<sup>t</sup> is to-broke  
come euene togidere, & þan make þe patient to couȝe, for þis þe  
beste maner for to bringe him yn<sup>2</sup> / If þou dredist<sup>t</sup> nouȝt greet<sup>t</sup> 12  
replecioun of his bodi, þou miȝt<sup>t</sup> opene a ventuse whanne þe rib is  
ioyned. & þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> binde wiþ a boond, & vndir þe boond þou  
schalt<sup>t</sup> leie lynnet<sup>t</sup> or sum oþer neische þing<sup>t</sup>. & þou schalt<sup>t</sup> binde  
him in sich a maner þat<sup>t</sup> þe rib þat<sup>t</sup> is to-broke ne mowe not<sup>t</sup> remoue 16  
ne falle adoun azen. & þe patient schal vse liȝt<sup>t</sup> mete as pultes de  
caudarisio,<sup>3</sup> de amido, de tritico, wiþ penides, & he schal drinke  
swete wijn temperatli, & þou muste defende<sup>4</sup> him fro wrappe & fro  
crijnge, & fro alle þingis þat<sup>t</sup> wolen make a man to couȝe. ¶ If it<sup>t</sup> 20  
so be þat<sup>t</sup> þe akynge aceese not<sup>t</sup>, & þou ne miȝt<sup>t</sup> not<sup>t</sup> bringe his rib  
as he schulde be, & if he haȝ greet<sup>t</sup> cowȝynge & acces of þe feuere,<sup>5</sup>  
whanne þou hast<sup>t</sup> lete him blood, þan þou muste kutte þe skyn  
aforzens þe rib þat<sup>t</sup> is to-broke, & vnfile þe same rib of al his 24  
fleisch, & þan wiþ instrumentis & wiþ þin hond þou muste drawe  
vp þe rib, & bringe him in his place as he schulde be. & þan þou  
schalt<sup>t</sup> cure þe wounde as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid / // His dietynge schal be  
as of pluretiȝi til þe feuere & al þe passiouns ben goon awei // 28

### Of brekyng of þe helpers of þe rigboon.

¶ v. cº.  
Fracture of the arm bone near the joint is dangerous.

**A** Diutorium is to-broken ful ofte ouerþwert<sup>t</sup> wiþ breking<sup>t</sup> / þe  
nere þat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> be þe ioyned<sup>t</sup>, þe more perilous it<sup>t</sup> is, & þe worse  
for to cure / In þis place I wole telle þee in what<sup>t</sup> maner þou schalt<sup>t</sup> 32  
knowe a brekyng<sup>t</sup>, & in what<sup>t</sup> maner þou schalt<sup>t</sup> restore it<sup>t</sup> azen, þat<sup>t</sup>

<sup>2</sup> Gul. de Sal. Sl. 277, fol. 36: "make hym eft comȝe sadly, & vpon þe place þrist down or broken, þou schalt<sup>t</sup> putte a gret ventuse wiþout cuttynge."

<sup>3</sup> Sim. de Janua: "Caudarusium, Spelta, genus frumenti, quod quidam allicam dicunt, quidam Caudarusium."

<sup>5</sup> acces of þe feuere, Lat. si febris accideret,



- it mowe be an ensample to þee in þe breking,<sup>1</sup> if a mannes arme  
 & his leggis & his hiþe-boon ben broken / In þis maner þou schalt  
 knowe : / Lete a man holde his arme <sup>2</sup>wip .ij. hondis faste bi þe  
 4 schuldre, & he mot holde him in þat maner þat he mowe nott  
 meue him-silf; & þou schalt stonde tofore him, & take his arme  
 faste bi þe elbowe, & meue his arme hidir & þidir liztli til þou heere  
 sownynge of þe boon, & whanne þou knowist þe place þat it is  
 8 to-broke.<sup>3</sup> & þis maner asaiyng<sup>4</sup> is good whanne þe brekyng is so  
 priuy þat no partie of þe boon goiþ in no side out / Whanne þou  
 knowist where þe breking is, or þou bigynne ony þing for to worche  
 þeron, make redi alle þi necessarijs þat ben gode for þe bindyng.  
 12 ¶ First þou schalt make stupis þat ben euene, & wete hem in hoot  
 water in winter, & in coold water in somer, & þan wrynge out þi  
 stupis þerof & dizte oile of rosis & a defensif of bole, & ij. longe  
 boondis þat þei be .iiij. fyngris brood, & lynnen clooþ þat mowe go  
 16 aboute al his arme, & a strong<sup>4</sup> corde; & þe corde wole be þe better  
 if it be playn, & not round. & þou muste dizte smale 3erdis of  
 drie tree, þat be strong<sup>4</sup> & sotil. & whanne þou hast dizt alle þese  
 þingis redi, þan sette þe boon in his place as liztli — — —<sup>4</sup> with  
 20 þin hond wipouten greuaunce. & þan take <sup>5</sup>oold soft lynnen clooþ,  
 & wete it in oile of rosis, and wijnde it aboute his arme. & vpon  
 þis leie a clooþ wip medicyns consolidatif, þat schal be seid in þe  
 antidotarie for brekyng of boonys; & þerfore þese .ij. lynnen  
 24 cloþis moten be large for to hile al þe brekyng / And þou muste  
 haue cloutis in .ij. sidis of þe place þat is to-broke, & þervpon  
 þou muste leie faldellam in boþe sidis euene, & wet in gleire of  
 an ey. & alle þese þingis þou schalt binde wip þi boond, þat  
 28 schal be þe brede of .iiij. fyngris, & long<sup>4</sup> þat he mowe goon  
 aboute manifoold. & sewe þe foldyng of þe boond þat he mowe  
 not vndo / Vpon þis ligature þou schalt leie faldellam maad of  
 stupis, & he schal oonly be wet in water & leid vpon. & hervpon

Symptoms:

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 233]The sound  
heard on  
moving the  
arm.First prepare  
all that you  
require:

the dressing,

the oil,  
the bandages,a strong cord,  
and splints.Reduce the  
fracture,  
[<sup>5</sup> lf. 233, bk.]  
apply soft  
linen,two clouts  
and wadding,tie a bandage  
round the  
limb,

<sup>1</sup> MS. has a full-stop between *breking* and *if*. Lat.: ut sit tibi exemplum in ruptura brachii, crurium et coxarum.

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: et cum tactu locum fracture cognoueris manifeste. Gul. de Sal., Sl. 277, fol. 37: "When þe adiutorie, or þe boon fro þe elbowe to þe schuldre is broken, it schal be knowe to þe touchyng in þis: The leche schal drawe þe hurt place wip boþe his hondes, & putte þat oon hond vpon þe place hurt, & þat oþer wipinne. ¶ And haue he a mynystre, whiche schal bere vp togidere þe elbowe wip þe arm. And þanne þe leche, meuyng softely his handis, schal heere þe sown of þe broken boon, or he schal feeþe þe disseuyng of þe parties of þe broken boon."

<sup>4</sup> Some words are wanting. Lat.: quantumcumque potes leuius operando.



and splints  
secured by  
a cord,  
which shall  
be strained  
but moder-  
ately.

[3 lf. 234]

A tight ban-  
dage may  
cause spasm,  
and prove  
fatal.

**Nota.**  
Keep the limb  
so bandaged  
for 10 days;  
then look if  
the bone is  
adjusted,  
and bandage  
it again.

[5 lf. 234, bk.]

Sometimes  
one or both  
the bones of  
the fore-arm  
are broken,

or the bones  
of the fingers.

pou schalt leie þi splentis<sup>1</sup>; & wiþ a corde þat be brood, & not round, þei schulen be bounden þervpon. & þou schalt streyne middilly,<sup>2</sup> & not to faste / Herof þou muste be war, þat streynyng þat is in þis place & in oþere placis ne schulen not be so harde þat 4 þe place bicomme blak, ne þat he mowe fele his lyme / Ther ben summen þat streynen so faste a manys lyme, þat þe spirit of me<sup>3</sup>uyng, ne þe spirit of lijf mai not come þerto. & þan þei seep þat þe place is to-swolle, & askiþ of þe patient wher he haue miche akyng. 8 & þei supposen to do awei þe akyng wiþ þe greet binding, & in þis maner þe lyme wole rotie, & in þis maner þe patient mai falle into a feuer & þe spasme, & manye men dieþ þeron / But þou schalt worche in þis maner / Whanne þou seest þis caas, vnbinde þe lyme, 12 & as miche as þou miȝt do awei þe swellynge & þe akyng. Aboue þe brekyng towardis the schuldre leie a defensif of bole // If þer come noon akyng ne swellynge, þan þou schalt lete it sitte so boounde .x. daies in winter, & .vij. daies in somer / & þan vnbinde 16 it softly þat þe lyme ne meue not / & loke þat þe boon sitte wel; & þan binde it al togidere aȝen as þow didist first. Whanne þe boon is wel soudid, þan þou schalt take stupis & wete hem in good wijn hoot,<sup>4</sup> & leie þervpon. ¶ Whanne it is soudid, if þer leue 20 ony þing of hardnes in þe same place, þan do it awei aftir þe teching þat þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie /

Sumtyme þe boonys of a mannys arme ben to-broke <sup>5</sup>boþe, & sumtyme þat oþer. & whanne þei ben boþe broken, it is þe more 24 worse / If it so be þat þer be to-broke but oon boon, þan it is no nede for to do but astellas,<sup>6</sup> for þe boon þat is hool wole saue þe ligature wel ynow; / The boonys of a mannes fyngris ben sumtyme to-broke, þan þou schalt sette euene þe boon, & binde him wiþ 28 astelles þat ben wel maad þerfore. & þou þe fyngir ne be but a litil lyme, ȝitt þou muste haue good kunnyng & good witt for to digte it wel / Dietyng in alle brekyng of boonys schal be first sotil, & aftirward more greet, as it is aforseid //

32

### Of breking of þe boon of þe coxe.

vj<sup>o</sup>. c<sup>o</sup> /  
In case of  
fracture of  
the hip-bone  
or any bone  
of the leg,

**W**Hanne þe boon of þe coxe is to-broke or ony boon of þe foot, þan þou schalt worche in al maner þingis as it is aforseid in þe chapitre of adiutorie & of þe fyngris / But þis þou

<sup>1</sup> MS. *spletis*.

<sup>2</sup> *middilly*, *mediocriter*.

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: in bono vino calido.

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: non est tibi necessarium astellas ponere.



muste adde more *perto*, *pat* whanne *pou* hast brouȝt yn *pe* boon of  
*pe* leg<sup>t</sup>, *pan* *pou* muste make an instrument<sup>t</sup>, *pat* is clepid *albiolum* apply a splint  
formed to the  
shape of the  
leg.  
ouper coutelle; & it<sup>t</sup> schal be schape in *pe* maner of a cros.<sup>1</sup> & [<sup>2</sup> lf. 235]  
4 *peron* his leg<sup>t</sup> mote be sett<sup>t</sup>, so *pat* his leg<sup>t</sup> mowe <sup>2</sup>bowe to no side /  
Also it<sup>t</sup> is necessarie *pat* *pe* patient ligge also stille as he mai  
wipouten remeuyng<sup>t</sup>, til *pe* boon be fast // But *pou* muste be wel Take care  
that the leg  
does not get  
shortened.  
war herof<sup>t</sup> whanne *pat* a mannes leg<sup>t</sup> is to-broke, ouper his hipe,  
8 *pou* muste be war in *pe* soudyng<sup>t</sup>, *pat* oon leg<sup>t</sup> be not<sup>t</sup> schorter *pan*  
*pe* o<sup>per</sup> / But *pou* schalt<sup>t</sup> mesure hem algate bope lich long<sup>t</sup>, & in *pe*  
same mesure kepe hem /

Of *pe* cure whanne a man is smiten in *pe* rigbon  
12 or ribbis.

**I**T bifallip sumtyme *pat* a man is smyten or a man fallip, & ¶ vij. c<sup>o</sup> /  
*pan* tendre boonys as *pe* cheke-boon & ribbis, & [in] children Tender bones,  
especially  
those of chil-  
dren, become  
bent instead  
of breaking.  
16 boonys of her arme & of her leggis, for *pe* tendirnes of *pes*  
lymes, *pei* wolen folde & not breke / In *pis* maner *pou* schalt<sup>t</sup>  
bringe hem aȝen / In *pis* maner anoynte *pin* hond wip  
terbentyne, & take *pat* boon & presse it<sup>t</sup> as it<sup>t</sup> is forseid in *pe* Straighten  
them by pres-  
sure,  
brekyng<sup>t</sup> of a boon.<sup>3</sup> & if it<sup>t</sup> be a rib, *pan* *pou* schalt<sup>t</sup> presse  
20 him vpward, as it<sup>t</sup> is foreseid. & if it<sup>t</sup> be in *pe* arme ouper  
*pe* leg<sup>t</sup>, *pan* *pou* muste make ligaturis *perfore* & instrument<sup>t</sup> by bandaging  
the limb to  
a wooden  
splint,  
of tree, *pat* be euene, & *perto* his arme ouper his leg<sup>t</sup> schal be  
bounden & pressid, for to make him euene. & or *pou* do þus, *pou*  
24 schalt<sup>t</sup> make a <sup>4</sup>vomentacioun of camomille, malue, & bismalue, [<sup>4</sup> lf. 235, bk.]  
*fenigreci*, *seminis lini* soden in water; & *pan* anoynte him wip oile  
of lillie, or wip gandriss grese, or hen-grese, & *pan* presse his arme  
as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid. Also *pou* miȝt vse *pis* medicyn, *pat* is aproued  
28 ofte tyme / leie a plate of yuer<sup>5</sup> in *pat* side *pat* *pe* boon is aplied, & or lay a plate  
of ivory on  
the limb,

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: in albiolo seu coutella que sit ad modum cruris formata. The translator read "crucis."

*albiola*, (alueolus) *um*. "ventre, panier, benne, flancs d'un navire."—Dufr.

*coutella*. κοτύλη, anything hollow, the cup of a joint, especially of the hip-joint. It.: cotila. Tamm.

*Paul. Aegin.*, Book VI, Sect. 106, ed. Adams, vol. 2, p. 470, describes the way of arranging a fractured leg by means of "a canal either of wood or earthenware." Adams l. c. gives references from Hippocrates, Celsus and Galen, for the use of these machines.

<sup>3</sup> Lat.: Si maxilla fuerit, manum seu digitos in os pone, premens ad extra sicut diximus in fractura, manum aliam termentina uel pice illinitam suauiter ab extra preme et citius eleua.

<sup>5</sup> O.Fr. yvoyre.



by whose  
attraction  
it becomes  
straight.

þe vertu of þe yuer wole drawe þe boon as it schulde be, & bringe  
þe boon into his propre plite /

Of þe greuousnes of þe rigboon whanne he is out  
of ioyncte /

4

¶ iij<sup>o</sup>. c<sup>o</sup> /  
viiij

The liga-  
ments on the  
neck are  
weak,

and the bones  
are easily  
dislocated.

Dislocation  
of the 1st  
vertebra—  
decollation—

[2 lf. 236]  
causes death  
by want of  
breath.

If the 7th and  
8th vertebrae  
are out of  
joint, the  
ways of food  
and breath  
are stopped.

The bone  
must be  
replaced im-  
mediately  
after the  
accident.

**Nota**

Treatment:  
Press down  
the shoulders,  
and draw up  
the head.

The displace-  
ment may be  
inwards

[2 lf. 236, bk.]

or outwards.

**D**Islocacioun of þe rigboonys is a greuous sijknes. It is aforseid  
in anathomia how manie boonys ben in þe necke & in þe rigt.  
& it is aforseid in what maner / The firste boon in a mannes necke  
is bounden with manye feble ligaturis, & þe ligaturis þerof ben 8  
recching<sup>1</sup> & feble, þat þei ne schulde lette þe meuyng of þe heed /  
þe boonys þat ben in a mannes necke beþ more feble þan ony oþer  
rigboonys, & þerfore þei goiþ listly out of þe ioyncte, & it is ful  
greet drede þerof / If þe hizeste boon of þe necke be oute of þe 12  
ioynct, it is clepid decollacio, & it sleeþ a man anoon; for þat oþer  
boon þerof pressiþ yn & stoppiþ a man<sup>2</sup>nes breeþ anoon, & in þis  
maner it sleeþ a man anoon / And if þe ioynct þat is bitwixe þe  
vij. boon & þe .viiij. be out of ioyncte, þan it wole stoppe þe weie 16  
of his mete, and it wole lette þe weie of a mannes breeþ also / And  
if ony boon of þe rigboon þat is bineþe þe .viiij. boon be out of  
ioyncte, but if he be þe rapere holpen, he schal lese his meuyng  
for euermore<sup>3</sup> / And þerfore it is necessarie as faste þat a mannes 20  
rigboon is out of þe ioynct, þat it be brouzt yn azen anoon, &  
principali þe firste boon of þe necke, for disiunccioun of þat boon  
wole sle a man anoon, as it is forseid / If þou be in þe place, take  
þe patient bi þe heeris, & sette þi feet vpon his schuldris, & so þou 24  
schalt drawe vpward wiþ þin hondis, & presse adoun wiþ þi feet, &  
bringe þe boon into his ioynct azen / Whanne þe .vij. rigboon<sup>4</sup> is  
out of his ioynct fro þe .viiij. rigboon, itt mai ful litil tyme lenger  
abide. & if it so be þat þis boon be pressid swiþe ynward, it wole 28  
sle a man hastily, & it wole ful late be curid / If it so be þat it  
mai be curid, þer is noon oþer cure þeron, but presse adoun his  
schuldris<sup>5</sup> & drawe vp þe heed, as it is aforseid / If it so be þat  
ony of þese boonys be out of þe ioynct outward, þat falliþ ful 32

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: hec ligatura fuit magis aliis laxa.

<sup>3</sup> Gul. de Sal., cap. 19. Sl. 277, fol. 42 b.: "And of þe spondiles of þe  
brest, for lettyng brouzt in in þe lacertis & muscules kyndely & wilfully  
meuyng þe brest, þe lunge is lettid in his meuyng, & þer falliþ hasty rynd  
& litel, & etterlyche dep. Of þe dislocacion of þe oþere spondiles, þat ben 4,  
þer falleþ anoþor greuance in þe reynes & þe bladdre, & akþe in þoo  
membris, & peyne of pyssyng or lettyng of þe weyes of þe vryne, & aposteme  
in þe place, & feure, & dep."

<sup>4</sup> rig, in margin.



- seelde, þan sette þe boonys euene, & drawe his heed & presse adoun  
 hise schuldris / If it so be þat ony rigboon bineþe þe .viii. boon of  
 þe necke be out of ioyncte, if þe boon go ynward, it nile take no  
 4 cure til it sle him / And if it ne be not al out of þe ioyncte, but  
 it pressip nucha, alle þe lymes bineþe schulen lese her meuyng / If  
 it so be þat þe boon be out of þe ioyncte & go outward, it is in-  
 curable, for he schal be euermore gibbosis, *id est* broken-riggid. þis  
 8 is þe cure þerof, if it mai be curid / Arere vp þe boon & presse it<sup>1</sup>  
 als so miche as þou miȝt, wiþ þin hond, ouþer presse it yn with a  
 playn tree, & studie þou in þi witt as miche as þou miȝt for to  
 presse it in aȝen; & leie þervpon oon of þe consolidatiuis, & binde  
 12 it faste / If it so be þat þere leue ony hardnes after þe tyme þat  
 þe place is soudid, þan make an enplastre of mollificatiuis þerto, þat  
 þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie; & anoynte him wiþ oynementis,  
 þat þou schalt fynde <sup>2</sup>in þe same place in þe chapitre of molli-  
 16 ficatiuis /

An inward displacement below the 8th vertebra causes either death or loss of motion.

In case of outward displacement, the patient remains hump-backed.

Try to reduce the bone by manipulation.

If some hardness is left, apply a plaster and an ointment.

[<sup>2</sup> If. 237]

### Of þe schuldre out of his place.<sup>3</sup>

- A** Mannes schuldre mai go out of þe ioynct in .iiij. maners /  
 Oon maner is þis, whanne þe heed of þe boon of adiutorie,  
 20 þat is þe poynt of þe schuldre, fallip adoun vnder þe arme-pitt; &  
 sumtyme he goip of þe ioynct forþward, but þat fallip ful selden /  
 The .iiij.: he goip out of þe ioynct vpward; & bakward he ne mai  
 not out of þe ioynct, for þe schuldre boon holdip itt faste in.<sup>4</sup>  
 24 ¶ The .j. maner þou miȝt liztliche knowe bi touching & bi sizt, &  
 þou schalt fele þe boon in his arme-pitt, & þan þere wole be a greet  
 pitt aboue. ¶ If he be out of the ioynct forþward, þan his arme  
 wole sitte backward, & tofore þou schalt se a greet pitt / ¶ If he be  
 28 out of þe ioynct vpward, þat þou schalt knowe in þis maner: his  
 elbowe ne mai not be drawe along fro his body. & if þou wolt  
 drawe him along, þou schalt fynde an obstacle / The .j. maner if it  
 be a child, þan þou schalt take his arme wiþ þi lifthond, & sette þi  
 32 riȝthond vnder his <sup>5</sup>arme-pitt, & drawe his arme wiþ þi lifthond, &  
 presse þe boon into his ioynct wiþ þi riȝthond; & in þis maner þou  
 schalt bringe in þe boon of a child wel ynow. ¶ If it be a miche

<sup>ix</sup> ¶ .iiij. c° /

The head of the humerus is dislocated, 1. downwards into the armpit; 2. forwards; 3. upwards.

The signs are an outward depression,

and an inability to use the arm.

Treatment: 1. Reduction is effected by extension of [<sup>3</sup> If. 237, bk.] the arm and pressure on the shoulder.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *pressid*.

<sup>3</sup> Compare *Paul. Aegin.*, Book VI, Sect. 114, ed. Adams, vol. II, p. 485.

<sup>4</sup> Gul. de Sal., Sl. 277, fol. 43 b.: "For þe ofteste þe heued of þe adiutorie is dislocate in þe schuldre toward þe place þat is called titillicum to þe for-party, & to þe hynder party anentis þe spande-boon, it is dislocate in no maner."



Reduction  
in a grown-  
up man is  
effected by  
means of a  
wooden ball.

Another way  
of reduction.

2. The  
shoulder is  
drawn up-  
wards with  
[<sup>1</sup> If. 238]  
a towel, and  
the arm is  
drawn down-  
wards.

3. Reduction  
is effected in  
a similar way.

When the  
bone is  
reduced,

leave the arm  
bandaged  
through 10  
days.

[<sup>2</sup> If. 238, bk.]  
If you come  
some time  
after the ac-  
cident, the  
patient must  
take a bath  
before reduc-  
tion is tried.

man, lete him ligge adoun streiȝt, & take a round bal of tree, & folde him wiȝ a clooȝ, & leie it vnder his arme-pitt, & binde him pere faste, & take his hond & drawe it adounward, ouȝer lete anouȝer man drawe it adounward, & helpe ȝou wiȝ ȝin hond for to 4 bringe yn ȝe boon, so ȝat ȝou schalt presse, & ȝe man drawe al in oon tyme / If it ne mai not be doon in ȝis maner, ȝan ordeine a long perche, & make it fast in .ij. wallis of ȝe hous, ouȝer .ij. postis of ȝe hous; & in ȝe middil of ȝe perche make a pitt, & in ȝe same 8 pitt leie ȝe forseid bal, & ȝe hiznes of ȝis perche schal be hizer ȝan a man is long, & ȝan sette vnder his feet a stool. & loke ȝat ȝe same bal sitte vnder his arme, & lete a strong man holde doun his arme and his hond, & take awei ȝe stool vnder his feet, & in ȝis 12 maner ȝe boon wole come into his ioynct / ¶ If it be out of ȝe ioynct forȝward, ȝan take a strong towail, & leie him vnder his arme, & lete ȝe oon ende go forȝ bihinde his rigge, <sup>1</sup>& ȝat ouȝer ende forȝ bi his brest, & lete a strong man holde ȝe .ij. endis of ȝe 16 towail, & ȝan binde his arme wiȝ anouȝer boond aboue ȝe elbowe; & take it anouȝer strong man, & lete ȝese .ij. men holde & drawe al at oonys; ȝan ȝou schalt with ȝi .ij. hondis, whanne ȝei drawiȝ, presse ȝe boon into his ioynct / Whanne ȝe boon is in his ioynct, 20 ȝan ȝei schulen leeue her drawyng softly. ¶ In ȝe same maner, whanne he is oute of ioyncte vpward, he schal be bounden, & oon man schal drawe him abacward wiȝ ȝe towail, & ȝat ouȝer man schal drawe his arme adounward, & ȝou schalt helpe for to presse yn ȝe 24 boon wiȝ ȝin hondis. & whanne ȝe boon is in his ioynct, ȝan wete a pece of linnen clooȝ in oile of rosis, & ȝan ȝervpon leie a medicyne consolidatif, & ȝan leie ȝervpon faldellas wet in gleire of eiren, & binde him faste with boondis ȝat his arme ne mowe not 28 out of ȝe ioynct aȝen, & so he schal be bounden .x. daies. And if ȝer come ony enpostym or icching, ȝan ȝou muste vnbinde him aȝen, & do awei ȝe icching ouȝer ȝe enpostym, and binde it aȝen as it is forseid. ¶ If it so be ȝat <sup>2</sup>ȝou ne were not at ȝe firste 32 bigynnyng, ȝan ȝou muste make ȝe patient a baȝ of malue & bismalue, fenigrec, lynseed. & whanne he is wel bapid in ȝis baȝ, ȝan anoynte him wiȝ an oynement laxatif. & in ȝis maner he muste be bapid manie daies til ȝe place be wel moistid; & ȝan 36 bringe ȝe boon into his ioynct, as it is forseid. ¶ If it so be ȝat ȝou come at ȝe firste bigynnyng, whanne a boon is out of ȝe ioynct, ȝan ȝou schalt not baȝe ȝe lyme in hoot water in no maner.



¶ A mannes arme wole out of þe ioynct<sup>1</sup> liztlich at þe elbowe,<sup>1</sup> & liztly it wole be brouȝt into his ioynct<sup>2</sup> aȝen / But he mai be out of þe ioynct<sup>3</sup> in .ij. maners, as forþward & hindeward, & boþe haueþ diuers cure / In þis maner þou schalt do whanne he is out of þe ioynct<sup>4</sup> forþward: sette stupis in þe folding<sup>5</sup> of his arme,<sup>2</sup> & þan binde a boond þervpon, & lete a man drawe þat boond bakward — —,<sup>3</sup> & þan lete a strong<sup>4</sup> man holde adiutorium, lest his schuldre go out of þe ioynct<sup>5</sup>. & þan anoynte þin hond wiþ oile of rosis, & lete þe .ij. men drawe al at oon tyme, & þan presse yn þe boon into his ioynct<sup>6</sup> wiþ þi .ij. <sup>4</sup>hondis, & þan hange an heuy peis at his hond. & if þer leueþ ony greet þingi, lete it be til anoþer tyme. & þan anoynte þin hond & presse it in aȝen, & þan þou schalt binde him with boondis & faldellis, & oile of rosis & consolidatiuis, as it is aforseid / But of þis caas þou muste be war: but if his arme be brouȝt into þe ioynct<sup>7</sup> hastili, þere wole engendre in þe place an hoot enpostym, & þan aftirward it wole be ful hard to bringe it into his ioynct<sup>8</sup> aȝen.

Nota.

Dislocation of the elbow may be forwards or backwards. Treatment, of a dislocation forwards, of a dislocation backwards.

[<sup>4</sup> If. 239]

If the arm is not soon reduced, an apostema will be formed.

¶ Rasceta, þat is þe ioynct<sup>9</sup> of þe hand / as it is forseid in anathamia, is conteyned of manie boonys & of manie recchingeligaturis,<sup>5</sup> as it was necessarie for þe grete meuyng<sup>6</sup> of þe hond. þis place wole liztly out of þe ioynct<sup>7</sup>, & liztli it wole come yn aȝen. ¶ But if a mannes hond be out of þe ioyncte longe, þe place wole enpostym, & þan it wole be hard for to bringe it in aȝen. ¶ In þe firste bigynnyng<sup>8</sup> take his arme wiþ þi lifthond, & sette þe boon into þe ioynct<sup>9</sup> as it is aforeseid, & binde it in al maners as it is aforeseid in opere ioinctis. ¶ Also if a mannes fyngir be out of ioyncte, it is but lizt for to putte it in aȝen / In þe same maner þou schalt binde a mannes fyngir as it is aforeseid in opere placis / Ther ben

Raceta has many bones and ligaments.

The wrist-joint is frequently dislocated.

Dislocated fingers are easily reduced. [<sup>6</sup> If. 239, bk.]

<sup>1</sup> The Original says just the contrary: *difficile dislocatur, et ita difficile restauratur*. The translator further leaves out a passage similar to the following one, quoted from the Engl. translation of Gul. de Salic.: "*The dislocacioun or restorynge of þis place is ryȝt dredeful, for þe makynge of it. For whi, þer ben smale boones & harynge schapp of a rolle or polyne, to drawe with water of wellis, whiche sumtyme, ouþer wiþ difficulte, or in no manere ben restorid.*"

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: in curvatura vbi brachium plicari solebat.

<sup>3</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 98: "& fac quod minister trahat stupham seu bindam ad posteriora firmiter et suaviter: et tu manum quam errexeras, plica violenter: vt oppositum tangat pluries humerum: quoniam tunc sine dubio est reducta. Si vero fuerit ad posteriora, fac quod fortis minister teneat adiutorium. et. cet."

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: multis ossibus composita et ligamentis pluribus tamen laxis coniuncta.



Do not put  
the limb in  
hot water  
at the first  
beginning.

manie men þat whanne a mannys lyme is out of ioynt, þei wolen sette þe lyme in hoot water, & seien þat it wole þe better come in to his ioynt azen / But þou schalt wite þis, þat hoot watir in þe firste bigynnyng makip þe lyme recche, & febliþ it & drawip þerto 4 manye humours / & þerfore þou ne schalt do in þis maner, but þou schalt comforte þe lyme wip oile of rosis, & sette him into his ioynt anoon, & defende as miche as þou miȝt, þat þere come noon enpos-tym þerto / But if it so be, þat þou ne come not at þe firste 8 bigynnyng, & þe place bicomme hard, þan make him a fomentacioun wip a decoccioun of þingis þat makip moist & resolueþ as it is aforseid /

### Of the haunche out of his place.<sup>1</sup>

12

<sup>x</sup>  
¶ v. c.

The hip-joint is subject to four dislocations, arising from internal or external causes.

[2 lf. 240]

1. Internal causes.

When too much fluid gathers in the box of the haunch, the thigh-bone is easily dislocated.

The acetabulum is more or less concave, the concavity prevents dislocation.

2. External causes.

Symptoms of dislocation inwards,

[3 lf. 240, bk.]  
of dislocation forwards,

**A**L þe coniunccioun of þe haunche is tofore seid in þe chapitre of anathamia. And þis place mai go out of þe ioynt in .iiij. maners: as ynward & outward, forþward & bacward; & sumtyme it cometh of causis wipinneforþ, & sumtyme of causis without- 16 forþ / <sup>2</sup>Of causis wipinneforþ: as humours of longe tyme haue falle þerto, as it is aforseid in þe chapitre of dolour of ioyntis / Ther is in þis place a greet box, & conteneþ a greet place, þat berip al þe bodi, & it is a place þat takith miche moisture & greet superfluite 20 of humouris, & whanne þer fallip manie superfluitees to þat place, & þe pacient is not purgid þerof, & traueilip, þan humours rotip in þat place, & þe ligaturis recchip along, & in þis maner vertebrium goip out of his ioynt / And þis caas in diuers men hap diuers 24 causis / ffor summen haueþ a box in her haunch swiþe holowe, & þat wole not fullȝtliche out of þe ioynt / And summen ne haueþ not so holowe boxis, & þan if þe place be ful of yuele humours, þan þe boon wole liȝtliche out of þe ioynte, & it wole liȝtli into þe 28 ioynt azen, & þan it wole liȝtly out azen. ¶ Of causis wipoutforþ, as of wrastyng or of smityng or of sum oper þing þat makip vertebrium goon out of þe ioynt wip violence. ¶ This is þe signe whanne it is out of ioynte ynward: whanne þou myȝt fele þe 32 poynt of þe boon in his flank, & his feet <sup>3</sup>& his knee turned outward, & þe pacient schal not opene his leg ne his hipe // If it goip out of þe ioynt forþward, þan his leg wole wexe miche schorter, & he schal not bringe his hele to grounde, but oonly his toos. ¶ If 36

<sup>1</sup> Compare *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., Sect. 118, l. c., p. 498. *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. 5, Tract 1, Cap. 24.



it be out of þe ioynct backward, þan his hele wole wexe long, & his  
toos schorte, & he schal bringe no þing of his foot to grou[n]de,  
but his hele //

and back-  
wards.

- 4 Ther ben manie maners of diuers menys for to bringe boons  
into her ioynct azen, but among alle I holde þis maner þe beste for  
þis place: take a long schete þat be not brood, & do bitwixe þe  
patient leggis, & lete þat oon ende go bifore his brest, & þat oþer  
8 bihinde his rig, & make þe .ij. endis fast to a post, & þe patient  
schal ligge vpon a plain place, & þou schalt binde al his hipe aboue  
his knee, & þan þe leg softly adounward, & to alle þese boondis  
make faste a corde, & lete þe moost fastenyng be in þe hipe aboue  
12 þe knee, & þan lete oon strong man or ij. drawe þe corde euenlich  
& harde withoute ony pluching.<sup>1</sup> & þan þou schalt wiþ þin hondis  
putte þe boon into his ioyncte. & whanne þe <sup>2</sup>boon is ynne, þan  
bidde hem lete go þe corde softli azen, & leie hise feet euene togidere.  
16 for if hise feet wollen ligge euene togidere, it is a certein signe þat  
þe boon is in his ioynct. & if hise feet wolen not sitte euene in þe  
ioynct, it is a signe þat þe boon is not in his ioynct / whanne þe  
boon is in his ioynct, binde faste his hipe, & lete þe patient ligge  
20 stille til he be al restorid / In alle curis of dislocacioun þou hast  
pleiner teching.<sup>3</sup>

The best way  
of reduction.  
A towel put  
under the  
thigh is fixed  
to the wall  
(to effect  
counter-ex-  
tension),  
whilst exten-  
sion of the  
leg is made.

[1 ff. 241]

- ¶ Dislocacioun of þis place þat cometh of causis wiþinneforþ, it  
is ful hard for to bringe it in azen. & þou þe boon be brougt in  
24 azen, wiþ a litil cause it wole goon out azen. & þerfore þer is no  
cure þerof, but awoide his bodi, & make him cauterijs as it is afor-  
seid in þe chapitre of cauterijs.

There is no  
radical cure  
for a disloca-  
tion arising  
from internal  
causes.

- ¶ A mannys knee is sumtyme out of ioyncte, & sumtyme þe  
28 round boon þat is þervpon goiþ out of his place / Signys whanne  
a mannes knee is out of ioyncte ben open ynow. & if þe round  
boon be out of his place, þou miȝte listlich knowe it. ¶ In þis  
maner þou schalt bringe a mannes knee into his ioynct azen / Lete  
32 a strong man holde faste his hipe, and <sup>4</sup>an oþer man his leg. & þou  
schalt wiþ þin hondis presse faste þe boon into his propre place. &  
if þe place be enpostymed, first þou muste do awei þe enpostym, &  
þan bringe þe knee into his place azen. ¶ If þe round boon be out  
36 of his place, sette þe boon into his place, & þan binde faste wiþ  
boondis, & þan binde his leg faste vp to his hipe bi an hour, & þan

Sometimes  
occurs a  
Dislocation  
of the knee-  
joint, and a  
Dislocation  
of the Patella.  
Reduction  
is accom-  
plished by  
[\* ff. 241, bk.]  
pressing the  
boon into its  
place.

In the same  
way reduce a  
dislocated  
patella.

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: non ductu violenti nec tractu.

<sup>3</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 99: In omnibus aliis curam consequentibus est in precedentibus bene doctus.



vnbinde his leg<sup>t</sup> fro his hipe, & þan binde faste þe round boon þat<sup>t</sup> it ne moue not<sup>t</sup> fro his propre place, & in þat<sup>t</sup> maner lete it sitte, for it wole bicomē fast<sup>t</sup> anon.

Reduction of  
Dislocation  
of the Ankle-  
Joint.

¶ If<sup>t</sup> þe ioynct<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> a mannes foot<sup>t</sup> be out<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> ioyncte or his toos, 4  
þou schalt<sup>t</sup> do þe cure in þe same maner as it<sup>t</sup> is aforseid in þe hond  
& in þe fyngris.<sup>1</sup> ¶ þoruȝ þe help of<sup>t</sup> god wiþout<sup>t</sup> which is no þing<sup>t</sup>  
fulfillid, þe .iiij. tretis is fulfillid. ¶ Now I wole bigynne þe .v.  
tretis þat<sup>t</sup> schal be clepid þe antidotarie of<sup>t</sup> this book. // 8

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 242]

No man could  
enumerate all  
the medi-  
cines, only  
God knows  
them.

**I**N þe fifþe tretis clepid þe antidotarie of<sup>t</sup> þis book, I pinke to  
2 putte medicyns boþe symple & compound / þat<sup>t</sup> falliþ for  
cirurgie & beþ necessarie þerfore / But<sup>t</sup> I ne mai not<sup>t</sup> sette alle, for  
þer is no man þat<sup>t</sup> can telle alle þe noumbre of<sup>t</sup> medicyns but<sup>t</sup> oonli 12  
god / Neþeles I wole sette medicyns in þis antidotarie þat<sup>t</sup> I haue  
longe vsid, & I lernede hem of<sup>t</sup> wise doctouris & of<sup>t</sup> philosophoris,  
& alle þei ben aproued /

Here bigynneþ þe tretise of<sup>t</sup> repercussiuus // 16

¶ eo jo  
Repercus-  
sives are used  
for hot apos-  
temas, espe-  
cially if they  
are in a noble  
limb.

**R**Epercussiuus bifalliþ for hoot<sup>t</sup> apostymes, & principal whanne  
it<sup>t</sup> bigynneþ in a noble lyme: as in þe herte, ouþir in þe  
brayn, ouþir in þe heed, ouþir in þe lyuere, þe splen & þe  
stomac, reynes, ballokis, & in þe bladdre // It<sup>t</sup> schal alwei be þin 20  
entencioun for to putte awei greuous mater fro a noble lyme into  
anoþer place. ¶ Whanne þou wolt<sup>t</sup> worche wiþ repercussiuus, þou  
muste take hede to .x. condiciouns þat<sup>t</sup> ben sett<sup>t</sup> in þe iij. tretis in þe  
general chapitre of<sup>t</sup> enpostyms / ¶ Repercussif<sup>t</sup> is seid in .ij. maners: 24  
as large & streit<sup>3</sup> / large is seid: as eueri medicyne maad of<sup>t</sup> coold  
herbis for to aquenche hoot<sup>t</sup> 4causis. Streit<sup>t</sup> is seid, whanne it<sup>t</sup> putt<sup>t</sup>  
awei þe mater & is not<sup>t</sup> swiþe coold // Of<sup>t</sup> repercussiuus þere ben  
manie degrees of<sup>t</sup> cooldnes / Ther ben summe so coold, þat<sup>t</sup> a man 28  
mai not<sup>t</sup> fele his lyme, & þan it<sup>t</sup> is clepid stupefactiua<sup>5</sup> / & þis þou  
schalt<sup>t</sup> vse whanne þer is þing<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> greueþ more þan þe mater.  
¶ Whanne þou ne dredist<sup>t</sup> not<sup>t</sup> hoot<sup>t</sup> qualite oonli, but<sup>t</sup> þou dredist<sup>t</sup>  
þe mater, þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> vse medicyns þat<sup>t</sup> ben coold & drie, þat<sup>t</sup> 32  
þei mowe tempere þe complexioun of<sup>t</sup> þe lyme, & wiþ þe vertu of<sup>t</sup>  
stiptica þei wolen comforte þe lyme,<sup>6</sup> & þese ben propirli clepid  
repercussiuus / Whanne þou hast<sup>t</sup> entencioun oonly for to make

Repercus-  
sives are  
understood  
in a wider or  
stricter sense.  
[<sup>4</sup> lf. 242, bk.]

Some are  
very cold,  
and are called  
Stupefac-  
tiua.

Some are less  
cold but dry:

Stiptica.

<sup>1</sup> MS. repeats this sentence.

<sup>3</sup> large & streit. See p. 305, note 1.

<sup>5</sup> Vigon transl. *Traheron Interpr.*: "Stupefactiue. That, that hathe strengthe to astonie, and take awaye felynge."

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: et sua stipticitate uirtutem membri confortent.



- coold, þan it is no force þouȝ þi medicyn be not stiptica / But  
 whanne þou wolt make ony repercussiuus, it is necessarie þat þei  
 be coold & drie. ¶ Medicyns þat ben coold & repercussiuus, summe  
 4 ben simple & summe ben compound / Of simple medicyns, summe  
 ben of herbis, & summe ben of trees, & summe ben leeuës, &  
 summe ben rotis, & summe ben seedis, & summe ben flouris, &  
 summe ben greynes<sup>1</sup> of minerals, & summe ben watris, & summe  
 8 ben oilis. And summe þerof I wole sette in þese bokis þat ben  
<sup>2</sup>greetli in vss toward us / And þere ben medicyns coold & moist<sup>[2 lf. 243]</sup>  
 þat þou miȝt vse for to atempere þe complexioun of lymes þat ben  
 distemp[er]id in hete & drienes. ¶ Malua, capillus<sup>3</sup> veneris, psil-  
 12 lium, portulaca, atriplex. Mercurialis,<sup>4</sup> Rapa, cucurbita, Melones,  
 Citruli,<sup>5</sup> Semen malue, seminis iij<sup>or</sup>. frigidorum, Semper uiua, lactuca  
 ortulana<sup>6</sup> ¶ Iusquiamus, Mandragora, Papauere, argentum viuum,  
 f. & h. in iijj.<sup>7</sup> ¶ Oilis coold & moist: Oleum violacium, Oleum  
 16 nenupharinum,<sup>8</sup> Oleum de lilijs albis, Oleum mirtinum. Istis<sup>9</sup>  
 medicinis potest vti quum intendis infrigidare sine expulsiōe ut  
 dictum est // þese medicyns þou miȝtist vse whanne þou entendist  
 for to make coold wiþouten expulsiōe of þe mater as it is forseid.  
 20 ¶ Medicyns þat ben symple coold & drie, þat ben clepid verry  
 repercussiuus ben þese / Solatrum, crassula maior & minor,<sup>10</sup> virga  
 pastoris / vmbilicus veneris, cicorea, Endiua, Gramen, Epatica,<sup>11</sup>  
 Ipoquistidos, veruene, Semper uiua, Corigiola,<sup>12</sup> Sanguinaria, Edera,  
 24 Acetosa, Scariola, plantago maior & minor, Nenuphar. De granis

Repercussive  
 medicines are  
 either simple  
 or compound.  
 The simple  
 medicines.

Herbs.

Oilis.

Medicines  
 that are cold  
 and dry, or  
 Repercus-  
 sives in a  
 strict sense.

<sup>1</sup> The translator misunderstood the Lat. genera mineralium.

<sup>3</sup> MS. capillis.

<sup>4</sup> Add. 15,236, fol. 4 b.: "*Linochites, mercurialis, idem. G. mercuria, A. smeremourth.*" Compare *Alphita*, p. 116: "*linozostis g<sup>e</sup>. mercurie. a<sup>e</sup>. scandany.*"

<sup>5</sup> Phillips, "*Citrull*, a sort of Cucumber or Pumpkin of a Citron-Colour."

<sup>6</sup> Halle, *Table*, p. 57: "*Lactuca sativa, or Hortensis, þat is gardin letuce.*"

<sup>7</sup> frigidum et humidum in quarto gradu.

<sup>8</sup> *nenupharinum*, Arab. Pers. nūṭufar, nīnūfar (Littré). *Nymphæa alba*. Add. 15,236, fol. 5 b.: "*Nenufar .i. flos vngule, caballine aquatico A. water-lilye.*" Compare *Alphita*, p. 124; *Barth. Sinon.*, p. 31.

<sup>9</sup> MS. istius.

<sup>10</sup> Add. 15,236, lf. 11: "*Crassula maior G. crassegetine vel orpine. Crassula minor .G. terce de soris .A. stoncrop.*"

<sup>11</sup> Add. 15,236. Cf. 3 b.: "*Epatica .G. coper .A. liuerwort.*" Ibid. lf. 11: "*Epatica .G. epatik vel coper .A. liurenort.*"

<sup>12</sup> Add. 15,236, lf. 3 b.: "*Corigiola. Centinodia. lingua passerina. G. Coriogiola.*" Halle, *Table*, p. 29: "*Corrigiola.* So called of the Apothecaries, and of the Frenche men Corrigiole, is oure common Knottgrasse, called in Greke polygonon, in Latine Seminalis and Polygonum mas."



[<sup>2</sup> lf. 243, bk.] **seminibus, fructibus.** Ordeum, Silligo<sup>1</sup>; auena. <sup>2</sup>Spica, Lolium, ffabe, Mirtilli, Berberis, Sumac, Pira, Poma, Sorbe, mespila, Castanea, Glandes, Galle, Maiorana, Mora matura, vua acerba, Capreoli, vitis.<sup>3</sup> ¶ **De floribus folijs & corticibus** / Balaustie cortices, 4 Cortices mali granata, Cortices arborum stipticorum<sup>4</sup>; Rosa, Nenufar, fflos spine, ffolia pirorum, pomorum, sorborum, rubij, & spine. ¶ **ffolia** / Salicis, Populi, Tremuli, Papiri, Canne.<sup>5</sup> ¶ **De linis.** omnes sandali. ¶ **De mineralibus & lutis** / Saphirus, Bolus arme- 8 nicus, Marmor, Alabastrum,<sup>6</sup> Cathinia, Litargirum, munda<sup>7</sup> ferri, Ematistes, Corallus, antimonium. ¶ **De lutis.** Terra sigillata, Argilla, lutum<sup>8</sup> omne, cimolea,<sup>9</sup> Camfora, Cerusa. **De gummis.** Gumma pruni,<sup>10</sup> cerase, amigdale, Acacia, opium. **De olijs.** Oleum 12 rosarum, & eueri oile þat is maad of coold þingis & drie, of flouris, leeues, & ryndis þerof / Also watir of rosis, & water þat is maad of alle þingis þat ben coold & drie, and distillid<sup>11</sup> / If þou be sent after into a cuntre, þere ben noon apotecarijs, þan if þou canst 16 make þese medicyns þat ben forseid & medicyns þat schulen be seid heraftir, þan þou miȝt fulfille þi purpos<sup>12</sup> & do þi cure. þou miȝt make <sup>13</sup>of þese þingis: oynementis, epithima, cathaplasmata, emplastra, enbrocaciouns, pultes, encatismata. Of þese names manie 20 men takith oon for anoþer, & þerfore I wole telle þe diuersite of vnguentum. alle. ¶ **vnguentum** is maad of .iiij. 3 of oile & 3 ß. of wex in winter, & 3 j. in somer, & 3 j. of þingis þat þin oynement schal Epithima. serue þerfore.<sup>14</sup> and oynementis schulen be algatis colid. ¶ **Epithima** 24 is þis, whanne þingis ben sotilli poudrid & temperid wiþ water of roses, ouþer wiþ vinegre, ouþer iuys of ony herbe, so þat it be temperid in þe þiknes of hony & leid vpon þe place, & hilid wiþ Cataplasma. lynnenn clooþ, ouþer wiþ leþer, þis is clepid epithimum. ¶ **Cata-** 28 **plasma** is, whanne herbis ben grounde & soden ouþer raw, & al þe substaunce of þe herbe þerwiþ & medlid wiþ mele & grese, & it ne schal not be hard ne neische, but in þe meene, & it schal be leid

A physician is sometimes obliged to prepare himself his medicines.

[<sup>13</sup> lf. 244]

<sup>1</sup> Silligo, a kind of very white wheat.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Spata, Spleta. Lat.: Add. 26,106, fol. 109, "spaca"; ed. 1498, fol. 207, "spica." The preceding words show that spica is the correct reading.

<sup>3</sup> Capreoli vitis, the tendrils of vine.

<sup>4</sup> MS. stipticoris.

<sup>5</sup> MS. panne.

<sup>6</sup> med. Lat. alabastrum.

<sup>7</sup> Lat.: murga uel merda.

<sup>8</sup> MS. litum.

<sup>9</sup> cimolea, a kind of earth, so called after Cimolus, an island in the Cretan sea, where it is found.

<sup>10</sup> MS. Summa pruna.

<sup>11</sup> Lat.: omnis aqua ex rebus siccis et frigidis distillata.

<sup>12</sup> Lat.: de quo tuum poteris propositum adimplere.

<sup>14</sup> et 3 .i. pulueris rerum puluerizandarum, que ponuntur in unguento.



flasch hoot vpon þe lyme. ¶ **Emplastrum** is seide, whanne manie **Emplastrum.**  
 diuers þingis, as poudris and gummis & fatnessis, wex, talow, &  
 oile ben soden togidere til þei bicomme hard, & maad in gobetis &  
 4 kept. & þan it schal be maad abroad vpon leþir, & leid vpon þe  
 place þat þou wolt<sup>1</sup> haue it: as diaculon, apostolicon,<sup>2</sup> oxirocroce- [f. 244, bk.]  
 um,<sup>3</sup> & opere manie. ¶ **Pultes**<sup>4</sup> & cathaplasma ben al oon, but pro- **Pultes.**  
 pirli pultes ben clepid, whanne þer is mele, watir, & oile wiþouten  
 8 herbis, & it schal be clepid cataplasma, whanne herbis ben medlid **Cataplasma.**  
 þerwiþ. ¶ **Embroma**[tio] is seid, whanne a mannes lyme is putt in **Embroma.**  
 hoot watir, wiþouten ony decoccioun of herbis þeron, & þat hoot  
 watir schal be cast vpon þe lyme from an hiz, & so it schal be do  
 12 longe, & þis is clepid embrocure.<sup>5</sup> ¶ **Encatisma** is seid in .ij. **Encatisma.**  
 maners: sumtyme it is seid for a clisterie, & sumtyme for a par-  
 ticuler [þap],<sup>6</sup> anoon to þe nauele & non aboue þe nauel /

¶ **Medicyns** þat ben compound togidere: Whanne þou entendist<sup>2</sup> **2. Compound**  
 16 for to make a lyme coold, & not putte awei þe mater, þou schalt **Medicines.**  
 take iuys of herbis þat ben coold þre partis, olei rosis oon part,  
 of vinegre half a part, & medle hem togidere. If þat þou wolt  
 þat it worche more strongely, þan do þerto argillam rubeam / til it  
 20 be as picke as it were epithima, & leie it to þe place. & herof þou  
 must take kepe, þou schalt vse þingis þat ben able for a mannes  
 complexioun / In þis maner if þou leist coold þingis to a place, <sup>6</sup>&  
 ne hast not þi purpos þerof, þan þou schalt leeue þe coold medicyns,  
 24 & make medicyns þat ben competent to þe same complexioun / for  
 sum medicyne is for peter þat is not good for poul, for þe diuersite  
 of complexioun. & al þis teching þou miȝt fynde generalich in þe  
 tretis of enpostyms. / ffor if peter be of complexioun hoot & moist,  
 28 & poulis complexioun be coold & drie, oon repercussioun wole not  
 serue hem boþe in oon point. & for þis cause þou muste diuerse þi  
 medicyns; for þis is al dai preued bi experiment as þou miȝt se  
 ofte tyme, þat crassula maior is a good repercussif for coold mater,

<sup>2</sup> See p. 125, note 3.

<sup>3</sup> *oxirocroceum*. Lat. *oxiracroeum*. Matth. Sylv.: "oxirocroceum, i. emplastrum compositum ex aceto et croco."

<sup>4</sup> *pultes*, Lat. plur. of *puls*, *tis*. This plur. form used as sing.: Add. 10,440, fol. 23: "be þer soþen a þinne *pultes* or gruel of barley." Compare the plur. form *pultesses*, Gasc. Steel Glas 997 (Skeat, *Et. Dict.*). For *poultice*, see Ital. *pultaceo*.

<sup>5</sup> *embroche*, Traheron Vigo Interpret.: "Embroke commeth of embrocho, whyche signifyeth to raine. And it is an embrocation, when we drop downe liquour from a hyer place, vpon some parte of the bodye, and vpon the head." See p. 339, note 1.

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: *dicitur enim clistere, aliquando dicitur particularis balneatio*.

Choose the  
medicines  
[6 leaf 245]  
according to  
the patient's  
constitution.

Some medi-  
cine is good  
for Peter and  
bad for Paul.  
**Nota.**



& vmbilicus veneris is coold in þe same degre, & 3itt<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> is not<sup>t</sup> so good repercussif<sup>t</sup> for þe same mater /

A medicine if there is a hot discrasia.

.R̄.

R̄.

.R̄.

[2 lf. 245, bk.]

If after the use of repercussives, the place becomes livid, apply a cold resolving medicine.

An example how to use repercussives.

Cold matter must be removed with  
[3 lf. 246]  
hot and dry medicine.

This is a good medicyn repercussif<sup>t</sup> þere þat<sup>t</sup> þer is miche discracia hoot<sup>t</sup> & litil mater / R̄, sandali albi, spodij, acacie, ana .3. ij, 4 camphore .3. j., opij .3. f̄s, distempere hem wiþ þe iuys of a coold herbe, & oile of violet<sup>t</sup>, & a litil vinegre / **Item anoþer.** R̄, ossa sicca & combusta, cerusam,<sup>1</sup> amidum, ana .3. ij., tempere hem as it<sup>t</sup> is forseid / **Item anoþer** þat<sup>t</sup> is comoun þat<sup>t</sup> is recordid in manie 8 placis. R̄, boli armenici .3. j., olei ros. 3. iij., aceti .3. j., þat<sup>t</sup> is þat

2 defensif<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> is aforeseid in manie placis for to kepe a lyme fro corrupcion. ¶ Also enplastris & epithima, þat<sup>t</sup> ben forseid in doloribus iuncturarum of hoot<sup>t</sup> cause ben good. þerfore ioyne hem wiþ þese. 12

¶ Herof þou muste be war, þat<sup>t</sup> whanne þou leist<sup>t</sup> repercussiuus to a place, þere þat<sup>t</sup> þer is miche mater, & if þe place bicomme ledi, þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> contynue nomore wiþ pure coold þingis; but<sup>t</sup> do þerto iuys of coriandre grene & barli mele, for þis makiþ coold & resolueþ. 16

¶ If þer be no ledi colour but<sup>t</sup> þe mater is greet<sup>t</sup>, & nyle not<sup>t</sup> be doon awei wiþ repercussiuus, whanne þe flux of humours is acesid, þan biginne for to medle þerwiþ resolutiuus; 3itt<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> contynue wiþ repercussiuus þere þat<sup>t</sup> þer is greet<sup>t</sup> akyng / an ensauple 20 hercof / If þe akinge be in a mannes knee, þan þou schalt<sup>t</sup> first leie medicyns vpon þe knee, & þan aftirward þou schalt<sup>t</sup> not<sup>t</sup> leie it<sup>t</sup> riȝt<sup>t</sup> vpon his knee, but<sup>t</sup> a litil aboue his knee, þat<sup>t</sup> þe ende of þe medicyn mowe touche þe firste parti of þe akyng. 24

¶ Coold mater as it<sup>t</sup> is aforeseid, ne schal not<sup>t</sup> be putt<sup>t</sup> awei wiþ repercussiuus, but<sup>t</sup> wiþ medicyns þat<sup>t</sup> ben hoot<sup>t</sup> and 3drie in tempere, þat<sup>t</sup> þei mowe wiþ her heete chaunge þe coold complexioun, & wiþ her dreines comforte þe vertu of þe lyme, & defende þat<sup>t</sup> þer 28 come no more mater to þe lyme, & if þe mater be litil, putte it<sup>t</sup> awei, & if þou ne wolt<sup>t</sup> not<sup>t</sup> putte it<sup>t</sup> awei, defende þe place þat<sup>t</sup> þer falle nomore mater þerto<sup>4</sup> / And alle þese ben hote wiþ a maner bittirnes: as absinthium, squinantum, abrotanum, polium, sticados, 32 centaurea maior & minor,<sup>5</sup> aristologia longa & rotunda, mauribium,<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> MS. *ceresaris*. Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cerusa. flos plumbi id. G. blonc plome A. wyt lede.*"

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: "*materia ne ad membrum veniat prohibetur et etiam plerumque repellitur si sit pauca, sed etsi non omnino repellitur tamen locum ita deffendit, quod tanta non potest in ipso materia congregari.*"

<sup>5</sup> Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Centaurea. fol terre idem .G. centore .A. cristes laddir.*" ? In Britten and Holland's English Plant-names *Centaury* is at p. 96. *E. P. N.*, p. 37: "eorð-gealle." These names refer to *Centaurea minor*, see *Alphita*, p. 37. *Centaurea maior* = *narca* vel *gentiana*. *Ibid.*

<sup>6</sup> *mauribium*, Corp. Gl. M. 43: "*Marubium. bionryt vel hune.*" Wr.



- mirta, mastix, lupini, oleum de masticis, & de absinthio / Herof þou shalt take kepe: manie men seien, & it wole liztly be leeued of lewid men, & þat is yuel þing for to leie a repercussif to ony mater  
 4 for to driue it awei, but it is bettir to drawe out þe mater wiþ enplastris, & if þer comeþ out þerof miche quittance, þei seien þat a mannes bodi is wel purgid þerwiþ, & schal be longe þe holer þerfore / And if þe mater be doon awei wiþ repercussiuis & þe enpostym  
 8 be defendid, þan if þe same man be sijk aftirward, þan men wolen seie þat it was defaute in þe leche, for if þe enpostym hadde be maad maturatif<sup>1</sup> & þe quittance drawe out, þan þe man hadde be hool, & alle þese opiniouns ben false / And þou schalt wite þis cer-  
 12 teynli: if þou takist kepe of þe .x. consideraciouns þat ben forseid in enpostyms, & principali whanne his body is maad clene wiþ laxatiuis þat ben competent þerfore / It is bettir to putte awei þe mater wiþ comfortyng of þe lyme, þan lete þe mater conferme / for  
 16 if þou kepist wel þe condiciouns þat ben aforseid, the mater mai be putt awei, & þe man schal not be peirid //

Many men say, one ought not to remove bad matter by a repercussive, as suppuration purges the body;

Nota

[1 lf. 246, bk.]

but they are wrong,

for it is better to strengthen the limb by removing the matter, than to allow the matter to gather.

### Of þe maner of resolutiuis.

- 20 **W**Hanne oon strongt, or<sup>2</sup> manye feble of .x. causis lettþ repercussiuis, ouþir whanne þou hast a repercussif, & þou ne miȝt not putte awei þe mater, þan þou muste leie þerto resolutiuis. & as it is aforseid of repercussiuis, in þe same maner I seie of resolutiuis: whanne a man haþ akyng eouþir greet swell-  
 24 ynge, þou schalt leie þerto no resolutiuis, or þou haue maad him a competent purgacioun. ¶ fforwhi, as it is aforseid, enpostym ouþer greet akyng comeþ of causis wiþinneforþ, þan it mote<sup>4</sup> nedis come of repleccioun of þe bodi. & þan if þou leist þerto resolutiuis, þat wolde drawe to þe place more mater / for þer is no resolutif, þat ne it is hoot / & eueri þing þat is hoot, is attractif / What schal we do in þis caas? ¶ ffirst þou schalt lete him blood, ouþir make him a medicyn laxatif, ouþir boþe two, as þou seest þat it wole spede /  
 32 And þan þou schalt bigynne for to resolue wiþ medicyns resolutiuis þat been hoot & sotil<sup>5</sup> // This is þe difference bitwixe resolutiuis & maturatiuis: ¶ Resolutiuis haueþ tempere hete wiþ sotilnes & open-

¶ co ijo 3  
If you cannot use Repercussives, use resolvent medicines.

First give a purgacioun.

[4 lf. 247]

Every resolvent medicine is hot and "attractive," therefore use first blood-letting or purging.

Nota bene.

Wü. 136, 12 (XII. cent.), "*harhune*." Add. 15,236, lf. 5: *Marubium prasi-um idem. G. marole. A. horehune. vel horehound.*"

<sup>2</sup> MS. of.

<sup>3</sup> MS. omits.

<sup>5</sup> Some passages are omitted, in which Lanfranc quotes from his "*Chirurgia parua*."



Difference between resolving and maturing medicines.

[2 lf. 247, bk.]

Use the decoction, made to prepare the resolvent medicine, first as a wash.

Simple resolvent medicines.

Compound resolvent medicines.

A resolving oil.

R̄

ynge.<sup>1</sup> ¶ Maturatiuis haueþ *tempere* hete wiþ viscosite / þerfore it falliþ ofte tyme, þat whanne þou leist resolutiuis vpon miche mater & greet, it makip þe mater sotil & hoot, & þan þe kindely hete wiþinne is comfortid wiþ þe hete wiþoutforþ, & it bifalliþ ofte tyme, 4 þat medicyns resolutiuis in þis caas makip þe mater maturatif / Also if þou leist medicyn maturatif vpon litil mater & sotil it hetip þe mater, & þe natural hete wiþinne is comfortid þerwiþ, & so þe heete multipliþ, & in þis maner þe heete <sup>2</sup>mai be resolued. 8 ¶ The maner of resoluing: Make a decoccioun of herbis of whiche þow wolt make þi medicyn, & kepe þe watir þat þe herbis ben soden yn, & wiþ þe same watir þou schalt waische þe lyme, til it bicomme reed, & þan leie þervpon þe medicyn resolutif. ¶ Herof 12 þou muste be war, þat ofte tyme a medycyn resolutif resolueþ þe sotil mater, & þat þat is greet, bicommeþ hard, & þan þe more þat þou art aboute to resolue, þe more it wole bicomme hard / þerfore þou muste be bisi in þis caas & leie þerto mollificatiuis, & þan þou 16 schalt go to resolutiuis, & in þis maner þou schalt worche it til it be al resolued. ¶ Of medicyns resolutiuis, summe ben simple: as, camomilla, Mellilotum, paritaria, malua siluestris & alia,<sup>3</sup> volibilis,<sup>4</sup> fumus terre, caulis, anetum, vrtica, enula, borago, sambucus, kebu- 20 lus, valeriana, & alle herbis þat ben hoot in *tempere*,<sup>5</sup> wiþ sotilnes. ¶ De seminibus / Semina caulium, aneti, vrtice, malue. Semina diuretica: cantabrum,<sup>6</sup> omne,<sup>7</sup> farina ordeï, orobi, & fabe / Pinguede porci & anseri, anatis, galline, aquile. ¶ De gummis / <sup>8</sup>Mastix, 24 olibanum, opoponac, asa fetida, mirra, serapinum, armonicum, bdellium, galbanum, & alle maner sotil gummis: lapdanum, ysopus humida, terbentina, cera, swetyng of bestis, & buttir. ¶ Medicyns resolutif & compound of þe forseid, simple þou schalt fynde in þe 28 nexte chapitre here tofore / þis is an oile resoluinge / & makip hoot & accessip akyng / R̄, *florum camomille recencium, fenigreci seminis ana .ḡ ij., leie hem in xx .ḡ j. of oile of oliue in a glasen vessel, & lete it stonde to þe sunne .xl. daies in somer, & þan kepe it for 32*

<sup>1</sup> Lat. cum subtilitate aperitiua.

<sup>3</sup> The Prints read "siue alba." Add. 26,106, siue *alba* corrected to *alia*. The correct reading is either *alta* or *altea*. Add. 15,236, lf. 5: "*Malua viscus, bismalua, Altea idem. G. Wymauve A. mersmauve.*" *Alphita*, p. 110: "*Malva silvestris, malva viscus, altea . . . alta malva idem.*"

<sup>4</sup> MS. volibilis. *Alphita*, p. 192: "*Volubilis, corrigiola idem, arbores parvas et herbas ligat. gall. [corrigi]ole, angl. berebinde.*"

<sup>5</sup> Lat. temperate calida.

<sup>6</sup> *cantabrum*, bran. Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cantabrum i. grossum furfur tritici vel frumenti. G. la grose brene.*" <sup>7</sup> Lat.: omne amilum de ordeo.



- pin vss. If þou haddist nede herof & if it<sup>1</sup> were in winter, þan take þe flouris of camomille dried & fenigrec & oile, as it is aforseid, & sette þis glasen vessel in a caudroun ful of watir, & make fier
- 4 vndir, & loke þat þe water ne boile not, & so it schal stonde al a dai in hoot water / & whanne it is coold cole it, & kepe þe oile for pin vss / And in þis maner þou miȝt make oile of rosis, if þou hast nede, & oile of absinthium, & of rue, & of oþer mo þat þou hast
- 8 nede of // **Anoþer oile** þat is resolutif / R̃, olei antiqui .li. j., Another resolving oil. **R̃**  
 seminis aneti nouiter in vmbra siccati .ȝ. j., putte him in a viol  
 fourti daies to þe sunne, ouþer sette it in hoot water <sup>2</sup>as it is aforseid. [<sup>2</sup> lf. 248, bk.]
- ¶ Anoþer oile þat is resoluynȝ and makip hoot & accessip akyng, Oil of lilies.
- 12 & is good for to achaufe a mannys reynes & a wommans maris, & it is clepid *olium de lilio compositum* / R̃, olij antiqui .ȝ. xx., **R̃**  
*florum liliorum alborum*, & kutte awei þerof al þat is ȝelowe, cassilaginis,<sup>3</sup>  
 costi, masticis, carpobalsami ana .ȝ. i.,<sup>4</sup> cinamoni ana .ȝ. ſ., putte alle
- 16 þese in a glasen vessel, & lete hem stonde in þe schadowe al a moneþe, & þan do away þe lilie flouris of þe oile, & kepe þe oile for pin vss. ¶ Anoþer oile þat is clepid *olium mastice*, & is swiþe **Nota**  
 resolutif, & is good for febilnes of þe stomac, & it is good for
- 20 akyng of a mannes stomac / R̃, *olium oliuarum mediocriter maturarum* .li. ij., masticis .ȝ. vj., boile hem togidere in a double vessel, **R̃**  
 til þe mastix & þe oile be dissolued, & kepe it for pin vss. ¶ This þou muste knowe, þat whanne þou wolt make þat, þat schal be
- 24 *repercussif* & coold & comfortyng for þe lyme, þan þou schalt chese oile þat is not to ripe, as for to make *olium rosis*, *olium mirtinum*, & oþere mo. If þou wolt make oile þat schal be resoluynȝ, ouþer persyngȝ, þan þou schalt chese oile þat is ripe / And in þis maner **Nota**
- 28 þou schalt <sup>5</sup>knowe, wheþer þe oile be ripe or no. Oile þat is not [<sup>5</sup> lf. 249]  
 ripe, wole be grene, & þat is ripe wole be whit, & þat þat is in þe How to distinguish ripe and unripe olive-oil.  
 meene, wole be meene colour bitwixe þe two. ¶ Oynementis þat ben resolutif ben maad in þis maner: of iiij .ȝ. of<sup>6</sup> oile of camo-
- 32 mille ouþer of sum oþer oile & ȝ. j. of wex in somer, & ȝ. ſ. in winter, & ȝ. j. of poudre of seedis of aneti, caulium, flouris of camomille. ¶ *Ysopus humida* is a good oynement resolutif, & is ysopus humida. **R̃**  
 maad in þis maner: / **Take** of þe smal wolle þat is bitwixe þe
- 36 schepis leggis, & take þerof a good quantite, & take as miche water,

<sup>1</sup> if it, above line.<sup>3</sup> Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cassilago, Iusquiamus idem G. geliner A. henebel. vel heneban.*" The Lat. has *Cassio lignea*, see *Alphita*, p. 35.<sup>4</sup> *carpobalsamum*, "balsames blood." Wr. Wü., 199, 41 (X cent.).<sup>6</sup> MS. of twice.



A resolving  
plaster.

R̄

[<sup>1</sup> H. 249, bk.]

Iohannes  
Mesue

R̄

Another  
resolving  
plaster.

[<sup>2</sup> H. 250]

& lete þe wolle ligge in þe watir adai & anyzt, & þan boile hem a  
litol wip lent fier, & þan cole hem, & whanne þei ben coold, wrynge  
hem þoruȝ a cloop, & do þe water þerof into a leden vessel, & boile  
it wip lent fier, & algate meeue it wip a spatire til it bicomē picke 4  
as it were an oynement. ¶ Of enplastris þe beste þat is diaculon  
Rasis þat resoluē scrophulas & glandulas, & makip carbunculis ma-  
turatif & is swiþe comoun / R̄, olij antiqui de oliuis maturis vncias  
quinque, litargiri .ḡ j., & þou schalt poudre þe litarge in a mortar & 8  
do þerto <sup>1</sup>þin oile & medle hem togidere, & þan do hem in a vessel &  
boile hem togidere, & meeue hem algatis wip a spatire, & do þerto  
de muscillagine seminis lini, fenigreci, ana .ḡ ij, & muscillaginnem  
malue visci .ḡ j, & þan boile hem til þei bicomē picke, & make þerof 12  
gobētis & kepe hem to þin vss, & if þou wolt worche þerwip, take  
þerof as miche as þou wolt, & plane it vpon leþer or vpon linnen  
cloop, & leie vpon þe place. ¶ Diaculon Iohannis Mesue is better  
þan þis / & worchip more strongli. þat þou schalt finde in paruo 16  
compendio. ¶ Also anoþer plastre þat is resolutif / R̄, maluarum  
siluestrum, paritarie, flouris of camomille, Melliloti ana ℥. j.,  
boile hem in watir til þei be wel soden, & þan stampe hem, & take  
of þe same watir .iij. partis, & of sum oile þat is resolutif oon 20  
parti, seminis caulium, aneti partem ſ., furfuris, farine ordeī, ana  
partem j., boile hem alle togidere & make þerof as it were pultes,  
& þan do þerto of þe herbis þat ben soden as miche as of al þe  
remenaunt, & leie it vpon þe place þat þou wolt, sumdel hoot as 24  
it is aforseid, & seke medicyns resolutiuis <sup>2</sup>þat ben in paruo com-  
pendio, & do it to, & þan þou miȝt haue medicyns resolutiuis  
ynowe /

### Of þe tretis of þe foure maturatiuis.

28

co iijo <sup>3</sup>

If resolving  
and repercus-  
sive medi-  
cines have  
no effect,  
then bring  
the matter to  
maturation.

Maturing  
Simples:

**W**Hanne þou hast resolved mani daies ouþer leid þerto reper-  
cussiuis, & ne is nouzt worth, saue þe mater wole bicomē  
maturatif, þan if his bodi be avoidid as it is aforseid, þan [begynne] <sup>4</sup>  
for to leie þerto maturatiuis / Eueri medicyn þat is maturatif is 32  
hoot in tempere wip a maner viscosite þat wole not suffre þe vapour  
to goon out, but it holdip him wipinne til it be maturid; & ben  
þese: Malua viscus, branca vrcina, radix brionie, radix lappacii

<sup>3</sup> MS. om.

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: "Quando pluribus resoluisti diebus aut forte repercussisti, nec  
valet, sed materia desiderat maturari, tunc premissis evacuationibus neces-  
sariis vel possibilibus, incipe maturare."



- acuti,<sup>1</sup> baucie<sup>2</sup> Radix, farine frumenti, semen lini, fenigreci, ficus sicce, & alle þat ben forseid in þe nexte chapitre tofore, if þat þei beþ medlid herwiþ. ¶ This is a good maturatif compound of
- 4 manie þingis þat makip hoot mater maturatif. R̄, foliorum malue nigre, id est comoun malue pinguis seu ortolane, brance vrcine, radix brioni, radicis malue visci ana. ℞ .j., seþe hem alle in watir & stampe hem, & þan do þerto malua visci, & þan take of þe same
- 8 watir a pound <sup>3</sup>& freisch grese .ḡ ij., & sotil mele of whete .ḡ iij., [<sup>3</sup> lf. 250, bk.] & sotil mele of lynseed & of fenigrec ana .ḡ j. & ß., medle hem togidere & boile hem perfiztli, & make þerof cataplasma, & þan do þerto of þe forseid herbis & rootis wel grounde, & medle hem
- 12 togidere, & loke þat þei be not to picke / for it schal be algate þin entencioun, þat cataplasma, þat schal be resolutif or maturatif or mundificatif, ne schal not be hard; for if it be hard, it wole make akyng to þe lyme, & þan it wole anoie more þan profite. ¶ Item,
- 16 if þou dredist woodnes of mater, þan þou ne schalt do þerto no fenigrec; for it is swiþe hoot, & þerwiþ þe mater wole be as it were a feuere.<sup>4</sup> & þefore I counseile þee þat þou do no fenigrec þerto / If þou dredist, þat þe mater is swiþe hoot / if þer be wiþ þat
- 20 mater ony gretnes or ony coold mater, þan make of þe forseid cataplasma .ij. partis, fermenti de frumento<sup>5</sup> partem j., & medle hem togidere. & Isaac seiþ: þat þis is good for mater þat is medlid wiþ hoot cause & coold cause togidere. ¶ Also a good maturatif / Take
- 24 hony & butter ana, & medle hem with mele til þei be as picke as it were pultes. <sup>6</sup>¶ Item embrocaciouns in resoluciouns & maturacioun, & is good for akyng of woundis of concussioun in þe heed / concussioun is as miche to seie as smiten wiþ a staf / R̄, olij ḡ ij.,
- 28 cere albe ḡ j., cimini, rute, arthemesie ana. ḡ ß., absinthi, paritarie, brance vrcine, ana ḡ ij., grinde wel þe herbis & þe grese togidere in a morter, & þan do þerto poudre of comyn, & oile, & medle hem wel togidere. ¶ Also pultes þat wole make an enpostym
- 32 maturatif: R̄, foliorum malue, bismalue, paritorie, volubilis maioris, iusquiami ana ḡ ij., seþe hem in a litil watir, & þan presse hem & staumpe hem wel, & þan medle hem wiþ ḡ iij of þe same watir þat þei weren soden ynne, & medle þerwiþ ḡ j. of grese, þat it be cold,
- 36 & barli mele þat suffisip / In þis maner þou schalt make a coold

A compound  
maturating  
medicine.

R̄

Nota.  
Caution  
against  
Fennil, if  
there is any  
danger, that  
the matter  
may get  
inflamed.

Isaac.

R̄

[<sup>6</sup> lf. 251]

R̄

R̄

<sup>1</sup> MS. *lappa acuta*.

<sup>2</sup> *baucia*. *Alphita*, p. 21: "pastinaca, angl. widleskirwit."

<sup>4</sup> Lat.: et cito per illum inflammatur materia.

<sup>5</sup> MS. *fermento*.



- R̄ mater maturatif / R̄, cepe unum<sup>1</sup> album, item de capitibus allij, & sette hem vndir askis, & distempere hem wiþ þe .iiij. part of buttir, & do þerto mele of fenigrek, & of lynseed, & make þerof an enplastre. & do þerto .ij. zelkis of eiren soden hard, & 3 j. off<sup>4</sup> malui visci preparati, & 3 ij. of fermenti. ¶ Also a maturatif of greet mater & coold & hard. R̄, bdellij, serapini ana 3 j. & fs, & [2 lf. 251, bk.] dissolue hem in vinegre / <sup>2</sup>& stampe hem wel, & do þerto 3 j. of terbentyne, & dissolue hem to þe fier / But loke þat it ne boile 8 not, & do þerto oile of lilie 3 ij., & make it picke wiþ sutil mele of lupinis, & of fenigrec / Item 3 f. of olibani, & fenigrec maad to poudre sotili poudrid, & medle hem wiþ .li. f of hony; þis wole be a good maturatif for coold causis. ¶ Also vnguentum tetrafarm- 12 acum,<sup>3</sup> & it is clepid of Auicenne basilicon,<sup>4</sup> & þus manie men preisþ þis medicyn. Galen, Auicen, Serapion, Iohannes Mesue, & Haly þe abbot; & it makþ enpostyms maturatif, & it is good for woundis, & for vlcera þat ben bcome hard / R̄, cere, resine, picis, 16 cepi vaccini,<sup>5</sup> ana, & olij quod suffisþ / Summen in stide of cepum, þei putten buttir, & summen in winter þei doon þerto oon parti of bdellium, & summen taken oonli ceram, picem, & rasinam ana, & olium; & þis is basilicon minus. ¶ Also a good maturatif for 20 antracem / & is good for to make a wickid enpostym maturatif, as I haue aforseid in his place / R̄, ficus siccas bene pingues, numero .vj., vue passe<sup>6</sup> de corinthio 3 j., duas spicas allij mundatas, piperis grana .xij., salis nitri 3 .ij., stampe alle þese & do þerto oold oile 24 3 ij., aceti 7 3 j., fermenti acerimi as miche as is þe half of alle togidere. ¶ Also a maturatif for antracem / but if he be swiþe hard & malicious, an enplastre maad of hony is good þefore & of oile of violet. ¶ Also for to make antracem & carbunculum 28 maturatif / R̄, fermenti acris, lactis mulieris, mellis, vitellorum ouorum ana, medle hem togidere. If þou wolt worche more strongeli, do þerto galbanum dissolued as myche as þe haluendel of oon. & if þou wolt make it more strong, for to make it maturatif, 32 & for to make it breke, þan do þerto culueris dounge & of hennis ana, as miche as wole be .iiij. part of oon, as it is aforseid / baurac,

Basilicum maius.

Auicen.

Basilicum minus.

A maturing medicine for anthrax and malignant apostemas.

R̄

[7 lf. 252]

<sup>1</sup> MS. *vinum*. Add. 26,106, fol. 103 b.: "cepe unum album."<sup>3</sup> MS. *cetrafarozatum*.<sup>4</sup> Phillips: "*Basilicon*, a Royal Ointment or Plaister, otherwise called *Tetrapharmacon*, because it is made up of four Ingredients, viz., Pitch, Rosin, Wax, and Oil."<sup>5</sup> Lat.: *sepi vaccini*.<sup>6</sup> *vue passe*, dried grapes, i. e. raisins.



vj. part<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> oon & ß.; þese .iiij. maturatiuis suffisiþ þee / ¶ Also þis is a rule þat<sup>t</sup> is ful profitable for þee / whanne þou wolt<sup>t</sup> leie ony maturatif<sup>t</sup> to a place : first<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> make embrocam<sup>1</sup> to þe lyme  
 4 wip a decoccioun of<sup>t</sup> herbis maturatiuis, soden in watir, & wip þat<sup>t</sup> hoot<sup>t</sup> watir þou schalt<sup>t</sup> baþe þe lyme til þe lyme bicomē reed, & þan leie þeron a plastre of<sup>t</sup> maturatiuis þat<sup>t</sup> ben forseid oon þerof<sup>t</sup>, for þou hast<sup>t</sup> sufficiently ynowe, & loke þat<sup>t</sup> þe enplastre be not to hard, <sup>2& [2 lf. 232, bk.]</sup>  
 8 as hoot<sup>t</sup> as he mai suffre it<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> leie it<sup>t</sup> þerto / ¶ Thou hast<sup>t</sup> herd sufficiently of<sup>t</sup> maturatiuis, ynow it<sup>t</sup> is nede to speke of<sup>t</sup> mundificatiuis. For whanne an hard matir is maad maturatif<sup>t</sup>, it<sup>t</sup> is nede for to leie þerto mundificatiuis as it<sup>t</sup> is forseid in þe worching of<sup>t</sup>  
 12 enpostyms /

### ¶ Of þe tretis of mundificatiuis /

**M**undificatum is as miche to seie as clensyng<sup>t</sup>, & doiþ awei <sup>A mundificative medicine,</sup> hore. & eueri þing<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> doiþ awei hore in woundis & super-  
 16 fluite, may be seid a mundificatif<sup>t</sup> / A mundificatif<sup>t</sup> may be seid in .ij. maners / As a medicyn þat<sup>t</sup> is taken bi þe mouþ, ouþer þat<sup>t</sup> is putt<sup>t</sup> in bineþe wip a clisterie, ouþer wip a pessarie<sup>3</sup> for to make clene a mannes lymes wipinne. & of<sup>t</sup> þis kinde ben sirupis maad of<sup>t</sup> <sup>may either be taken inwardly or applied by a clyster or pessary.</sup>  
 20 seedis þat<sup>t</sup> makip clene a mannes lymes, & weies of<sup>t</sup> þe vrine / And þer ben summe medicyns þat<sup>t</sup> makip clene a mannes blood as cassia fistula, manna,<sup>4</sup> tamarindi; & al medicyns laxatiuis mowen be clepid mundificatiuis, & herof is not<sup>t</sup> entencioun in þis caas /  
 24 ¶ Anopir. I wole speke of<sup>t</sup> medicyns mundificatif<sup>t</sup> in cirurgie.<sup>5</sup> & þat<sup>t</sup> is propirli seid a medicyn, þat<sup>t</sup> doiþ awei greet<sup>t</sup> superfluite ouþer gret<sup>t</sup> greuance <sup>6</sup>of<sup>t</sup> quittance, ouþer remeueþ<sup>7</sup> awei harde crustis <sup>[6 lf. 233]</sup> in woundis, ouþir in vlceribus, & makip clene woundis & vlcera of<sup>t</sup>  
 28 þat<sup>t</sup> superfluite / ffor as it<sup>t</sup> is seid in anoþer place : In eueri wounde þat<sup>t</sup> is holow, þat<sup>t</sup> is as miche to seie as whanne it<sup>t</sup> hap<sup>t</sup> lost<sup>t</sup> substaunce of<sup>t</sup> fleisch þeron, þan bi skille<sup>8</sup> þer schulde be engendrid þeron .ij. superfluites, þat<sup>t</sup> oon schal be greet<sup>t</sup>, & þat<sup>t</sup> oþer schal be  
 32 sotil. & þese wollen lette þe souding<sup>t</sup> of<sup>t</sup> a wounde, & þei wolen

<sup>1</sup> Lat. : prius locum embrocas. Matth. Sylv. : "*Embroca* id est infusio quam nos dicimus fomentum & embrocatio id est infusio sed quando ab alto infunditur." See p. 331, note 5.

<sup>3</sup> Traheron, Vigo. Interpret. : "*Pessarie*. Pessus is woll tossed, and made rounde after the fassyon of a fynger wherewith medicines are receyued and conueyed into the matrice." <sup>4</sup> MS. *manei*.

<sup>5</sup> Lat. : Alio modo loquimur de medicina mundificatiua in cyrurgia.

<sup>7</sup> MS. *remeued*.

<sup>8</sup> Lat. *necessario*.



lette þat þe fleisch mai not wexe. ¶ þan medicyn mundificatif remeueþ greet superfluite. Of drynge medicyns, we wolen speke in þe chapitre next / This maner medicyn schal go bifore regeneracioun & consolidacioun, of whiche we wolliþ speke hereafter; 4 þouȝ aggregatiua or conglutinatiua come sumtyme for to soude wiþouten þat, þat þis medicyns ne goiþ not tofore, as whanne woundis ben sewid & ben maad hool wiþouten regeneracioun of quittance. þis medicyn makip clene, & drieþ sumwhat, as water & hony 8 whanne vlcera virulenta beþ waischen þerwiþ, ouþir woundis in which agendriþ miche quittance; & sumtyme it is more strong, as whanne þer beþ medlid þerwiþ poudris corosiuis þat han litil <sup>1</sup>vertu of corosiuis, & helpiþ for to make clene, & whanne corosiuis ben 12 seid for to take away yuel fleisch þat ne mai not be taken awei with medicyns /

If a wound is fresh and not complicated with any contusion, apply only a consolidative medicine.

In any other case apply first a maturating and then a "mundificative" medicine.

Therefore I wole sette medicyns bi rule, & first I wole speke of medicyns þat ben simple / ffor as me seiþ .x. siþis rehersed liketh a 16 man.<sup>2</sup> ¶ Thou schalt wite þis þat woundis þat ben freisch, þer it is no nede for to engendre quittance whanne þer is noon concussioun, neiþer of nerues, ne of boon, ne prickynge, ne þer is noon akyng þerwiþ / þan it is no nede for to leie þerto mundificatiuis, but oonli 20 consolidatiuis / But whanne a wou[n]de is chaungid wiþ þe eir or enpostymed, or greet akyng, þan þou muste leie þerto maturatiuis; & whanne þe akyng & þe opere accidentis ben awei, þan þou schalt bigynne for to leie þerto mundificatiuis as it is aforseid in his 24 chapitre / This is a coold mundificatif for to make clene woundis þat ben freisch in which is good quittance. R̄, mellis rosati colati .ḡ. iij., farine subtileissime ordeī .ḡ. j., & do þerto a litil water, & seþe hem softli þat þei ne brenne not, & algate þou schalt <sup>3</sup>meue it 28 wiþ a spatule, & þan make it abrood vpon a clooth, & leie it vpon þe wounde / This makip clene & comfortiþ / If it so be þat a wounde be in nerues placis, þan it is good for to do þerto a litil ter bentyn waischen, whanne it is doon adoun fro þe fier / for ter- 32 bentyn schal not boile, whanne itt schal be putt into enplastris, for it wole lese his worching in þe boilyng. ¶ Anopir mundificatif þat makip clene duram matrem whanne a man is hurt in þe heed, & whanne dura mater is bicome blac / R̄, mellis rosati 36 colati ḡ. j., olij ḡ. ḡ., medle hem togidere. ¶ Anoper mundificatif

R̄

[<sup>3</sup> ff. 254]

Nota

R̄

<sup>2</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 104: "et quum medicine simplices raro ponuntur ad mundificandum, ideo ponam medicamina composita per ordinem, denumerando medicinas simplices, non curando, quoniam decies repetita placebunt."



- þat makip woundis maturatif. þat ben to-swolle & ben not to bren-  
 nyngt hoot, but sumwhat toward cooldnes / R̄, mellis rosati colati R̄  
 .li. ſ., farine fenigreci .ḡ ij., farine ordeī .ḡ j. ¶ **Anoþer mundifi-**  
 4 **catif for vlcera þat bep newe in enpostyms** / Take ʒelkis of eiren R̄  
 rawe, & medle þerwiþ whete mele as miche as wole suffise; þis wole  
 make clene & do aweī þe akyngē, & make þe place coold / ¶ **Also**  
**anoþer mundificatif þat wole make maturatif þerwiþ, & is good**  
 8 **whanne a man wole** <sup>1</sup>kutte an enpostym tofore his tyme. & it is <sup>[1 lf. 254, bk.]</sup>  
 a propre medicyn for to make clene antrasem & carbunculo & alle  
 maner pustulis þat ben venymous aftir þe tyme þat þei ben opened,  
 & it is good for to make clene, vlcera þat ben oold / R̄ mellis albi R̄  
 12 boni .li. ſ., farine subtilissime tritici .ḡ iij, medle hem togidere in  
 a panne. & whanne þei ben wel medlid, þan do þerto iuys of  
 apium .ḡ vij., & þan medle hem wel togidere vpon lent fier, & boile  
 hem til þei bicomē as it were pultes. & þan do hem adoun of þe  
 16 fier & stire hem wel, & kepe hem for þin vss / If it so be þat þou  
 dredist of a cancre or of a festre in vlceribus þat ben oold, & if  
 þou wolt make a mundificatif þerfore, þan in þe stide of apium do  
 absinthium, & it wole be good. ¶ **Anoþer mundificatif in vlceribus**  
 20 **þat ben rotid, & whanne þer engendriþ þervpon greet rotyngt** / R̄, R̄  
 mellis li .j., farine siliginis .ḡ iiij., farine fenigreci, orobi, lupinorum,  
 mirre, ana ḡ j., succi absinthij li .j., medle hem alle togidere, &  
 poudre þingis þat schulen be poudrid, & boile hem sotilli til þei be  
 24 perfiʒtli boild; & whanne þou doist hem adoun of þe fier, þan do  
 þerto of terbentyn .ḡ iiij., <sup>2</sup>& medle hem wel togidere / Alle þese <sup>[2 lf. 255]</sup>  
 mundificatiuis schulen be maad abroad vpon a clooþ of lynnē, &  
 leid vpon vlcus for to make it clene aftir þe tyme þat þei bep  
 28 waische, as it is aforseid in þe chapitre de vlceribus / ¶ **A poudre**  
**þat is mundificatif of crustis & greet fleisch þat is engendrid in**  
 oold vlceribus, & wiþoute greet violence of fretyngt / R̄, succi affo- R̄  
 dillorum .ḡ vj., calcis viue .ḡ ij., auripigmenti .ḡ j., medle hem  
 32 togidere, & sette hem in þe sunne in þe moneþe of august, & on  
 nyʒtis do it out of þe eir, & in þis maner þou schalt do til it be  
 drie, & make herof gobetis, & þan drie hem in þe schadowe. &  
 þou schalt kepe hem in a vessel of tree in a place þat be not to  
 36 drie, ne to moist. & whanne þou hast nede þerto, grinde oon þerof,  
 & leie it vpon þe place. ¶ **Also a good mundificatif for vlcera is**  
 vnguentum viride, þat is maad of oon part of vert de grece, & .ij. <sup>vngm</sup>  
 partis of hony, medlid wel togidere. ¶ **Also a good oynement for** <sup>viride</sup>  
 40 **to make clene, vlcera þat ben hori, & festri, & polipum, & wickid**



vlcera, & is clepid vnguentum veneris, ouþer vnguentum apostolorum. & it' is good for to remeue awei fleisch in vlceris / <sup>1</sup>R̄, cere albe, rasine albe, armoniaci ana .3. xiiij., bdellij, astrologie, olibani gummosi ana .3. vj., galbani, mirre ana .3. iiij., litargiri .3. viij., 4 opoponac, floris eris ana. 3. iiij.; þe gummys schulen be maad neische in vinegre, & dissolued wiþ fier þat' be lent', & þan do þerto wex dissolued wiþ lī. ij. of' oile in somer, & iiij. in winter. & whanne þei ben molten, do þerto þi poudris, & make þerof' an oynement. 8 ¶ Anoþer oynement' clensip wel nerues & drawip out' þe quittance, & it' is clepid mundificatium rasina<sup>2</sup> / R̄, rasine, mellis, terbentyn ana .lī. β., mirre, sarcocolle, farine fenigreci, seminis lini ana 3 j., dissolue þe rosyn, hony & wex togidere, & þan do þerto þi poudris, 12 & make þerof' pultes. ¶ Also we moten vse medicyns þat' ben more strong', & ben clepid medicine cauterizantes, for to make clene vlcera þat' ben yuel in neruous place. & þe teching' herof' þou schalt' fynde in þe chapitre de medicinis facientibus opus cauterij. 16

Mundifica-  
tium de  
rasina.

### Of medicyns regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis.

Restorative  
Medicines

[<sup>3</sup> lf. 256]

are differ-  
ently named  
by different  
authors.

Auicenn.

Auicenn.

**I**T þinkip bi þe maner of' speche þat' þe medicyns þat' ben seid in þis chapitre ben al oon, but' þer is miche difference bitwixe / ffor <sup>3</sup>of' summen alle þei ben clepid consolidatiuis. 20 But' aggregatiue & consolidatiue ben al oon / And regeneratiue, & incarnatiue, & facientes carnem nasci, ben oon to seie; & þer is greet' difference bitwixe hem þat' ben forseid & þese / And sigillatiuis, & cicatrizatiuis, & consolidatiuis ben al oon; nepeles 24 alle þese names ben not' propirli take of' alle auctouris / But' oon herof' is taken for anoþer ofte tyme / But' for to seie þe soþe, a medicyn þat' is clepid aggregatum or conglutinatum, & A. in diuers placis taketh diuersli þese names of' medicyns: & I suppose þat' it' 28 were for defaute of' men þat' translatid þe science / But' for to seie þe soþe, aggregatiua or consolidatiua is a drie medicyne, & hap gummosite in him; & whanne it' is leid to þe lyme, it' wole resolute wiþ his drienes. It' driep vp superfluite of' moistnes þat' is bitwixe 32 þe lippis of' a wounde, wiþ a litil ligature or sewing' it' soudip togidere.<sup>4</sup> & A. clepip þis incarnatiuam, & summen clepen it' consolidatiuam, & ben þese / Sanguis draconis, calx, thus masculinum

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: mundificatium de rasina.

<sup>4</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 105: "superfluam siccat humiditatem que inter duo vulneris labia, per medicum ligatura sola vel sutura conducta, reperitur."



folia pirorum, pomorum, porri, lilij cortices, palme,<sup>1</sup> arnaglossa, Consolidative  
caulis, folia cipressi, folia vitis <sup>2</sup>albe, nux recens, folia acetose, [2 lf. 256, bk.]  
pulis molendini, ordeum vstum, flos sorbe, lac acetosum, & opere Simples.

4 manie þat ben vnknowen for us / Sumtyme men maden grete Compound  
woundis & leiden þervpon manie herbis, & weren hool in þe same Consolida-  
dai; & þei camen for to take of þe same herbis, & ne miȝten noon tives.  
fynde þat wolde do so more / **A good medicyn for þis entencioun :**

8 R̄, frankencense partem vnam, sanguis draconis partes duas, calcis R̄  
viue partes tres, & make herof poudre; & leie ynow vpon þe .ij.  
lippis of þe wounde þat is sewid togidere, as it is aforseid in þe  
chapitre of woundis. ¶ Anoper poudre þat is good for þis enten-

12 cioun; but in placis þat is myche fleisch aweie, it is nede for to R̄  
leie þerto þingis to regendre fleisch, þat we wollip speke þerof soone  
heraftir. R̄, olibani lucidi, aloes, sanguis draconis ana, make þerof R̄  
poudre. ¶ Anoper comoun for to streyne blood, & for to soude

16 woundis: R̄, sarcocolle partes duas, sanguis draconis, balaustie ana R̄  
partem vnum,<sup>3</sup> olibani lucidi partem ſ, & make herof poudre.

¶ Medicyns forto regendre fleisch haueþ propriete forto conpile Medicines  
blood, þat comeþ to þe place wiþ tempere drienes, & makip þerof which pro-  
20 fleisch, & makip clene superfluite þat wexip þeron. & þis is in mote the  
diuers maner / ffor whi, if a lyme be woundid in þat maner þat it regeneration  
be nede for to regendre fleisch þeron, & þe place is drie, & þer is of flesh.  
miche quittance in þe wounde, þan it is nede þat þou haue swiþe [4 lf. 257]

24 drijng medicyns. ¶ If þat he haue litil quittance & his bodi be Simple  
moist, — — alle þese techingis þou hast had tofore.<sup>5</sup> ¶ Medicyns incarnative  
þat ben lizt þat þou schalt vse þere, þat þer is litil quittance yn mild medi-  
moist bodies: R̄, thus minutum, mastix, farina ordeï, fenigreci. cines, R̄

28 And þese beþ sumwhat more drier: aristologie, yreos, & orobum, strong medi-  
aloes, mirra, pix greca, farina fabarum; & more strong þat þou cines.  
schalt vse in bodies: astrologia, yreos, farina lupinorum, dragantum  
adustum, vitriolum adustum; for if it be brent it wole be þe lasse Nota

32 bityng, & his drienes ne schal not be alaskid. ¶ For .vij. causis Substances  
diuers þingis ben brent: Summe ben brent, for sum vertu in hem are burnt for  
schulde wexe / And summe þat þe malice þerof schulde goon awei: medical use  
as mirabolani, þat haueþ vertu of laxatif, & virtutem stipticam, for for several  
36 whanne it is brent his vertu laxatif is maad lasse; & his vertu þat reasons.  
is clepid stiptica, is neuer þe lasse, but it is þe more. In þe same .1.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *pullme*.<sup>3</sup> *sic*.<sup>5</sup> Lat. : si vero pauca fuerit sanies, & membrum & corpus fuerint humida, medicina tunc indiges minus sicca, sicut superius habuisti.



- [1 lf. 257, bk.] maner <sup>1</sup> vitriolum lesiþ his scharpnes, & his drienes is not lost /
- .2. The .ij. is þis, þat his greet substaunce mowe be maad sutil, as
- .3. cancri *id est* crabbis þat ben brent / The .iiij. cause is þis, þat it mowe
- .4. gadere scharpnes, as stoonys, oistris, & schellis of eiren, þat ben 4  
brent þat me mai make lyme of hem / The .iiij. is, þat it mowe be  
aparailid for to be grounden, as seta sericum<sup>2</sup> / & among alle  
medicyns þat ben for þe herte þat mowe be grounde, ben þe beste  
as gold & siluir<sup>3</sup> / In þis maner þou schalt diþte hem for to grinde / 8  
Seþe hem in sulfur in leed, þat þei mowe þe bettir be grounde /
- .5. The .v. cause is þis, þat þe wickidnes þerof mowe be take awei :  
as of scoriþious þat ben brent, þat we mowe vse hem in medicyns,
- .6. þat ben for þe stoon. The .vj. cause is þis, þat his vertu mowe be 12  
maad þe more, as squillis whanne þei ben brent, her vertu wole be  
þe more / The .vij. cause is þis, þat his vertu mowe be take fro
- .7. him : as psillium, whanne it is brent / his vertu wole be þe lasse //  
In what maner þou schalt go fro medicyn to medicyn, þou hast it 16
- [4 lf. 258] pleynerli ynow; in þe first tretis, <sup>4</sup>boþe simple medicyns & also  
compound / þe whiche þou miþt vse as þou seest best to done / If  
þou wolt regendre fleisch in a deep put þat vlcus is, take poudre  
of thuris, whanne vlcus is<sup>5</sup> maad clene, & fille ful þe hole þerof, for 20  
it wole engendre fleisch wel. ¶ In þes vertues, & it is moost  
competent to consolidatif medicyns.<sup>6</sup> & his gummosite þat is clepid  
thus masculinum ouþer olibanum, & þat is best for medicyns þat is  
conglutinatif, þat ben forseid in þe bigynnyng of þis chapitre. & 24  
þe poudre of him, whanne it is maad smal & falliþ adoun of a  
sarce, is clepid minutum thuris, & þat is best to regendre fleisch.
- Bi þis maner distinccioun þou schalt gadere þe difference of þre  
medicyns þat ben in þis chapitre, & of summen þei ben clepid alle 28  
[consolidatiues]. ¶ The .j. þerof þat is seid conglutinatif, þat  
makþ þe lippis of a wounde soude togidere / The .ij. it driþ &  
makþ clene, & helpþ blood for to turne into fleisch / The .iiij. it  
driþ wiþ vertu þat is clepid stiptica, þat makþ hard fleisch to 32  
arise in þe stide of skyn. ¶ This is a good medicyn for to regendre  
fleisch, þat is clepid litargirum nutritum, þat is norischid <sup>7</sup>as it is

The best  
incarnative  
medicine  
is thus.

One uses its  
bark,  
its gum;

it is further  
used as a  
powder,  
**Minutum**  
**thuris**

Three kinds  
of consoli-  
dating medi-  
cines.

.1.  
Conglutina-  
tives,

.2.  
Incarnatives,

.3.  
remedies pro-  
ducing cica-  
trization.

[7 lf. 258, bk.]


<sup>2</sup> Lat.: sicut seta aut sericum.

<sup>3</sup> Add. 26,106, fol. 105, bk.: quod inter medicinas cordiales fit, quod assatur ut teri possit, et aurum & argentum, que decoquantur cum sulphure . . .

<sup>5</sup> is, above line.

<sup>6</sup> Lat.: Et nota quod de thure tria sunt, sive cortex, & illud est siccius omnibus, & convenit plus in consolidatiuis medicinis facientibus pellem & cicatrizantibus, quas ita habebis.



- aforseid in þe chapitre de vlceribus. ¶ **Anoper poudre þat engen-** An incarna-  
tive powder  
and ointment.  
**driþ fleisch** / Take thuris minute, masticis, fenigreci ana, fiat  
pulis. þis poudre regendriþ fleisch wel & drawiþ, & nyle not  
4 suffre þat vlcus schal stynke, but it mak iþ for to haue a good  
sauour. ¶ **Also an oynement þat is good for to regendre fleisch** /  
R̄, litargiri nutriti ʒ .ij, puluis thuris, sarcocolle, galbani, colofonie,<sup>1</sup>  
ana ʒ .j, medle hem alle togidere, & make þerof an oynement. R̄  
  
R̄  
8 ¶ **Anoper poudre**, R̄, radicem malui visci, þat summen clepen<sup>2</sup>  
sanaticlam,<sup>3</sup> & sumen clepiþ it vngaria; & waische it & drie it in a  
furneis in sich maner þat þou ne brenne it not. & þan grinde it &  
make þerof poudre, & leie þerof a good quantite in vlceribus þat  
12 ben holow / for off his owne propriete it engendriþ fleisch, boþe  
bi him-silf & also whanne it is medlid wiþ opere þingis / **Also**  
take of þe forseid poudre ʒ .j, of thus þat be smal ʒ ʒ, vernicis,<sup>4</sup>  
aloes, sarcocolle, masticis, fenigreci ana ʒ .ij, medle hem wiþ þe  
16 þingis aforseid, & þou miȝt make þerof an oynement wiþ oile &  
wex; & do ʒ .j. of þe poudre in ʒ .iiij. of oile, & ʒ ʒ. of wex. R̄  
<sup>5</sup>And þis þou schalt knowe, þat þere þou puttist poudris, þou [<sup>5</sup> H. 259]  
schalt putte none oynementis for to regendre fleisch / But whanne  
20 poudre ne mai not come þerto to þe botme þerof, þan þou muste  
leie þeron oynementis, for þe moisture of þe oile mak iþ þe poudre  
peerse to þe botme. ¶ **Also þis oynement is good, for it drawiþ**  
**out quittance** / R̄, olij li. ʒ, resine ʒ .j, cere ʒ ʒ, minute thuris,  
24 fenigreci ana ʒ ʒ, make herof an oynement & cole it. ¶ **Also**  
**anoper oynement þat is good for þis entencioun.** R̄, consolide R̄  
maioris & minoris, cinoglosse, pilocelle,<sup>6</sup> plantaginis maioris & mi-  
noris, ana. ℥ .j, vermes terrestres longos, qui dicuntur lumbrici,  
28 li. ʒ; kutte alle þes smale,<sup>7</sup> & leie hem in li. j & ʒ. of oile of oliue,  
& lete hem ligge þere .viij. daies, & þan boile hem a litil & þan cole  
hem, & do þerto schepis talow maad clene id est molten & colid,  
picis naualis li. ʒ, picis grece ʒ .iiij, armoniaci, galbanum, opoponaci,  
32 terbentine, masticis communis minuti, ana ʒ ʒ. In þis maner

<sup>1</sup> colofonie, see *Alphita*, p. 42.<sup>2</sup> clepen, above line.<sup>3</sup> sanaticla. See Wr. Wül., 554, 8: "Saniculum, i. sanicle, i. wude-  
merch." *Minsheu* quotes the following proverb: "Celuy qui sanicle a. de  
Mire affaire il n'a. Et qui a du bugle & du sanicle, fait au chirurgien la  
nique. He that hath Sanicle, respects not the Poticarie, and he that hath  
Sanicle and Cumfrie, makes a iest of the Surgeon."<sup>4</sup> Halle, *Table*, p. 134: "Out of the Iuniper tree sweateth certeine teares,  
in the spring tyme chiefly and therefore called *Vernix*, quasi Vernus ros."<sup>6</sup> Lat. pilosella. See Wr. Wül., p. 556, 18.<sup>7</sup> MS. þesmale.



R<sup>7</sup> þou schalt make hem: Take armoniaci, galbanum, opoponaci, & [1 lf. 259, bk.] dissolue hem in vinegre, & aftirward dis<sup>l</sup>solue hem in caziola.<sup>2</sup> & whanne þei ben dissolued, do þerto oile, wex & pich, & þan do þerto alle þe oþere þat ben maad to poudre, & þan cole hem & kepe 4 hem for þin vss. ¶ If þou leist þis oynement in þe botme of a wounde, it wole drawe out þe quittance & aswage þe akyng, & it wole make clene & regendre fleisch in vlcera. ¶ This þou muste knowe, þat þou; I sette proporcioun of poudris, & oile, & wex, 8 neþeles þou schalt proporcioun þi þingis more or lasse as þou seest þat þou hast nede þerto. ¶ If a wounde haue miche quittance, & be in a drie place, þan þou schalt do þerto þe more poudre, & þe lasse oile & wex / If it so be þat a wounde be in a moist place, 12 þan þou schalt do þerto þe lasse of þe poudre, & more of þe oile & of þe wex, as it is aforseid. ¶ Medicina consolidatiua, cicatrizatiua, & sigillatiua ben al oon; & þat ben medicyns þat drieþ þe moisture of a wounde, & makiþ a rynde aboue vpon þe fleisch, & makiþ a 16 strong<sup>r</sup> keueryng<sup>r</sup> for<sup>3</sup> to defende þe fleisch fro harm / And A. seiþ, þat in vlcera þat is holow, þat þere <sup>4</sup>ne schal neuere be no skyn engendrid þeron, for þe skyn in a man is engendrid of þe spermis of þe fadir & of þe modir / And alle þe partijs of a man þat ben 20 engendrid oonli of sperme, & þei be kutt awai, þei schulen neuere wexe aȝen / And alle þese þingis in a man ben engendrid oonli of sperme, as a mannes skyn, & boonys & senewis; & þerfor & þer be ony gobet kutt awai of þese, þei ne mowe neuere be regendrid 24 aȝen, as .A. seiþ, & it is soop / But in þis caas medicynes mowe helpe for to engendre hard fleisch aboue, & schal be in þe place of skyn, vpon which place nyle neuer wexe here afterward<sup>5</sup> / ¶ Simple medicyns þat ben in þis caas makyn<sup>r</sup> skyn vpon a soor þat is 28 clene / **Cortices** arboris, pini, cortices thuris, centaurea combusta, ossa combusta, abrotanum combustum, balaustie, galle, cipressi, psidie, cucurma, rubea maioris combusta, lumbrici terrestres adusti, cathinia argenti & auri, alumen sissum, folia fici, stercus canis 32 comedentis ossa siccaturum,<sup>6</sup> aristologia longa & rotunda combuste, es [3 lf. 260, bk.] vstum lauatum, & ius medicina<sup>7</sup> / <sup>8</sup>Sumtyme we medlide medicyns

The physician has to use his own discretion as to the doses.

Remedies which produce cicatrization.

Auicenn

[4 lf. 260]

Skin which has been destroyed cannot be reproduced.

Auicenn

It may be replaced by a hard substance.

Simple medicines.

<sup>2</sup> Matth. Sylv.: "*Cazola* est quoddam vas." See Ital. *cazzuola*. *Tomm. Dict.*

<sup>3</sup> MS. *fro*.

<sup>5</sup> Lat.: "*medicina ista namque adiuuat, vt nascatur caro calosa dura, que est loco cutis, super quam non nascitur pilus.*"

<sup>6</sup> MS. *sucatum*.

<sup>7</sup> Lat.: "*et omnis (abbr. oīs) medicina, que fit in duabus actiuis propter temperamentum.*"



- conglutinas wip a fewe corrosiuis, þat schulen be seid in þe nexte chapitre here aftir / But for to medle medicyns in þis maner, þer mote be miche kunnyng for to proporcioune hem, & summe þerof
- 4 þou muste haue bi experience, & summe of þe knowing of þe mannes complexioun, boþe of his bodi & also of his lyme / Of þe forseid simple medicyns þou miȝt vse hem in powdre, & if þou wolt þou miȝt make oynementis of hem, as it is aforseid / But þe oile
- 8 þat þou wolt make þese oynementis wip, schal algate be stipticum, as oleum rosaceum & mirtinum. ¶ A good composicioun þat þou schalt vse in somer in woundis & in vlceribus þat ben hote, & in euery place þere þe skyn is aweie in a mannes bodi, of riding, eipir
- 12 of pustulis, or of fier, or off hoot watir, & it is clepid vnguentum Rasis, þat is maad in þis maner: R̄, olij ro. ʒ iiij, cere ʒ iʒ, in þese regions þat ben hoot &<sup>1</sup> in somer ʒ .ij, & aftir þe region þou schalt do þerto dyuers quantite of wex, ceruse ʒ .j, camphore ʒ .j,
- 16 þe whitis of ij. eggis. þou schalt make it in þis maner / first þou schalt grinde .ij. almaun<sup>2</sup>dis blaunchid & stampid in a mortar, & þan do out þe almaundis þat ben to-broke of þe mortar, & make clene þe mortar; & þan leie þeron camphore, & grinde it smal; &
- 20 þan do þerto ceruse, & grinde it smal; & þan do þerto oile, & grinde hem wel togidere wip þe pestel. & whanne it is almoost coold, þan do þerto .ij. whitis of eiren, & meue hem wip a sclise longe, for þe more þat þei ben stirid togidere þe bettir it wole be /
- 24 Summen doon þerto ceruse wip þe forseid quantite of oile & wex, and camphore & whitis of eiren ʒ .v, litargiri ʒ .iiij. & þis is a good consolidatif, but it makip coold. & if þou wolt do þerto litarge, do more or lasse as þou seest þat it is to done // ¶ This is a
- 28 **good poudre for þis entencioun** / R̄, aloes, balaustiarum, cathinie argenti, eris vsti triti,<sup>3</sup> & lauati partes equales; make herof sutil poudre, & herof leie vpon þe place þere þou wolt haue þe skyn. ¶ **Anoper poudre þat is more strong þan þis** / R̄, aloes,
- 32 cucurmie, vermium terrestrium combustorum, balaustiarum, mirre, gallarum. ¶ **A good oynement** / R̄, fecem argenti ʒ .xxx, merdam ferri, cymolie ana ʒ .vij & iʒ, cathinie argenti, ceruse, litargiri, plumbi vsti ana ʒ .v, argille rubie ʒ .x; medle hem alle
- 36 wip oile of ro., & make an oynement, & it is clepid vnguentum de palma. ¶ **Also anoper þat G. made, þat wole soude vlcera þat ben oold & yuel for to hele** / R̄, adipis porci antiqui sine sale id est freisch swynys grese molten, & colid þoru; a cloop / olij li. j & iʒ,

Compound medicines.

An ointment to be used in hot countries and in summer.

vng<sup>m</sup> Rasis

R̄

Direction how to make it.

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 261]

Two powders.

R̄

R̄

R̄

[<sup>4</sup> lf. 261, bk.]

Consolidating ointment prescribed by Galien.

R̄

<sup>1</sup> MS. om. &.<sup>3</sup> MS. certis.



litargiri li. fß, calamenti<sup>1</sup> ʒ .iiij; make it in þis maner: grinde  
 Rʒ litargirum & calamentum in a morter, & do þerto a litil & a litil of  
 oile & grese, molten togidere / ¶ Also: Rʒ, spatulam id est quæ fit de  
 palma viridi, & þe middil þerof<sup>t</sup> aboue kutt<sup>t</sup> smal to gobetis, & do it<sup>t</sup> 4  
 in þi medicyn, & wiþ þe half<sup>t</sup> of þe opere medicyns medle þis  
 medicyn; þis is good for to regendre & soude togidere. ¶ Anopir  
 medicyn þat is good for to regendre fleisch & make clene &  
 soude, & is clepid medicamen Iohannis Mesue, þat is maad in 8  
 þis maner / Rʒ, pistatiue & resine,<sup>2</sup> panni albi vetusti ʒ .j, opopo-  
 nacum ʒ .ij, vini, mellis, olij ro. vel mirtini ʒ .x, litargiri, aloes,  
 sarcocolle, mirre, ana ʒ .fß, make herof<sup>t</sup> an oynement<sup>t</sup>; þis wole  
 [3 lf. 262] regendre & hele woundis þat<sup>t</sup> ben <sup>3</sup>wickid & yuel for to hele, & þis 12  
 medicyn is as good as þat<sup>t</sup>, þat<sup>t</sup> is sett<sup>t</sup> in þe chapitre de vlceribus  
 virulentis; þis makip clene, & drieþ & regendriþ fleisch, þerfore  
 ioyne þat<sup>t</sup> & þis togidere. ¶ Also an oynement þat Maister  
 Rʒ william someris<sup>4</sup> made / Rʒ, rasinam albam & liquefactam in vino 16  
 Ointment of  
 resin.  
 acerimo, & cole þe wijn & þe rosyn togidere into coold watir, &  
 anoynte þin hondis, & tempere it<sup>t</sup> wel in þin hondis, & kepe it<sup>t</sup>, &  
 if it<sup>t</sup> be in somer do þerto half<sup>t</sup> so miche of whit<sup>t</sup> wax; make þis  
 abroad vpon a lynnen cloof, & leie it<sup>t</sup> vpon þe wounde, & þis wole 20  
 drie wel. ¶ Item: Rʒ, olij ro. ʒ .iiij, rasine ʒ .ij, cere ʒ .j, nucis  
 Rʒ cipseissi, cucurmie ana ʒ .j, make herof<sup>t</sup> a gobet<sup>t</sup> & kepe it<sup>t</sup>; þis  
 is more worþ þan apostolicon Nicholai. ¶ The maner of worching<sup>t</sup>  
 of þese medicyns, þat<sup>t</sup> of summen ben clepid consolidatiuis, schal 24  
 be do in þis maner / The firste dai þat<sup>t</sup> a wounde is maad, & þou  
 hast<sup>t</sup> brouzt<sup>t</sup> þe lippis of þe wounde togidere with sewinge ouþir wiþ  
 sum oper maner, þan leie þerto of þe firste medicyn, þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid  
 conglutinatif<sup>t</sup>, vpon þe place þat<sup>t</sup> is sewid, & leie þerof<sup>t</sup> ynow<sup>3</sup>; & 28  
 [3 lf. 262, bk.] þan þervpon leie a lynnen cloof <sup>5</sup>wet<sup>t</sup> in whitis of eiren, & þan leie  
 þerto defensiu<sup>is</sup> & opere necessarijs til þe lippis of þe wounde be  
 soudid togidere faste. ¶ The .ij. medicyn, þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid regenera-  
 tium, þat<sup>t</sup> schal be leid in vlceribus & in depe woundis, for to 32  
 regendre fleisch. ¶ At þe laste þou schalt<sup>t</sup> leie consolidatiuis, or þe  
 fleisch wexe to hiþe; & but<sup>t</sup> if<sup>t</sup> þou do þus, þou muste leie corosiuis  
 for to frete awei þat<sup>t</sup> fleisch þat<sup>t</sup> is woxe to hiþe, & þat<sup>t</sup> is double  
 traueile & also vnkunnyng<sup>t</sup> of þe leche. ¶ Thou muste knowe wel 36

<sup>1</sup> *calamentum*, a mistake for *calcantum*. Phillips: "Calcanth a Chymical word, being the same as Vitriol."

<sup>2</sup> Lat.: rasure vel pistature.

<sup>4</sup> I cannot find a physician of this name. Perhaps it is *Gulielmo Corvi*, author of the *Tractica*, who was a friend of Lanfranc. *Hæser* I, p. 710.



where & whanne þou schalt vse þese medicyns, & in þis maner þou schalt folowe þe riȝt rule of medicyns, & þan þi medicyns wolip worche as þei schulde /

4 ¶ Of medicyns cauteratiuis & corrosiuis /

**C**Orrosiuis & cauterizatiuis we vsip in cirurgie in manie causis, Simple caustics.  
 & of corosiuis summe ben feble, & summe ben strong, & summe beþ more stronger / These ben feble, hermodactilis, aristologia, brionia, gencina,<sup>1</sup> vitriolum adustum, & þese haueþ moost vertu in moist bodies. ¶ More strong ben þes: vitriolum not combustum, tapsia, pees milui,<sup>2</sup> apium rampnum,<sup>4</sup> cortex viticelle<sup>5</sup> / And Strong caustics. [3 lf. 263]  
 þese ben more strong: flos eris, viride eris, es vstum, arsenicum,  
 12 sulphur. ¶ Also þese ben more strong: calx viua maad of stoonis, & of schellis of eiren & oistris, & strong lye, & arsenicum sublimatum, & watir maad of þese þingis; & of þese medicyns þou miȝt make medicyns boþe simple & compound, whiche þou miȝt vse  
 16 whanne þou wolt take awei deed fleisch, more strong & lasse strong as þou seest þat it is nede þerto. ¶ Of medicyns þat ben compound I wole telle þee a fewe, for of simple medicyns þou miȝt compound manie. Compound caustics. ¶ A poudre þat wiþouten ony greuance & 20 liȝtli fretip awei deed fleisch / Rȝ, viride eris, hermodactulorum, aristologia rotunda, make þerof poudre & kepe it in a drie place, & whanne þou wolt do awei deed fleisch / Take lynet eiper linnen cloop, & wete it with þi spotil & leie it in þe poudre, & turne it vp  
 24 & doun, & leie it vpon þe place. ¶ Thou schalt attende superfluite of fleisch<sup>6</sup> in .ij. maners / In oon maner superfluite of fleisch as of clene fleisch þat wexip tofore aboue a wounde, & þis is clepid superfluite of good fleisch / In an oþer maner we clepip superfluite of 28 fleisch þat is medlid wiþ quittance, & is liquide, & þis comeþ in defaute of þe leche, whanne he leiþ regeneratiuis to a wounde ouþir to ony þing til it be perfitli clene, so þat þe newe fleisch & þe quittance wexip forþwiþ / In þe firste cause is noon nede of oþer  
 32 medicyn, but a simple corosif<sup>8</sup> þat fretip wiþouten violence awei þe fleisch þat is woxen to hiȝ aboue þe wounde. ¶ In þe .ij. cause it is necessarie for to haue a medicyn corosif & clensynge as it is

<sup>1</sup> Lat.: gentiana.

<sup>2</sup> MS. vulpi. Pes milui "crow-foot."

<sup>4</sup> Alphita, p. 11: "Apium ranarum siue apium rampnum crescit in pratis . . ." See rampinus. uncus.—Dufr.

<sup>5</sup> Wr. Wül., 138, 28: "Viticella, wiþwinde."

<sup>6</sup> fleisch in margin.

<sup>8</sup> MS. corosip.

Innocent excrescences.

[7 lf. 263, bk.]

Malignant excrescences.

Each requires its own treatment.



A corrosive  
powder of  
caustic lime  
and arsenic.

R̄

aforseid in þe chapitre off<sup>t</sup> mundificatiuis. ¶ Anopir good poudre  
þat<sup>t</sup> remeueþ awei superfluite of fleisch & rotid fleisch & crus-  
tons<sup>1</sup> / R̄, calcis viue 3. ij., arsenici 3. ij., succi affodillorum radicis  
3. vj., medle hem togidere & make þerof gobetis & kepe hem & 4  
drie hem in schadowe & kepe hem in a drie place, for in a moist  
place it<sup>t</sup> wole rotie anoon. & whanne þou hast<sup>t</sup> nede for to vse ony  
herof, þan make þerof poudre & leie it<sup>t</sup> vpon þe place. ¶ Also an  
oynement<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid vnguentum viride & is a lizt<sup>t</sup> corrosif, & 8  
makip<sup>2</sup> superfluite of rotid fleisch & is maad in þis maner. R̄,  
mellis partes .ij., viride eris partem vnam, & medle hem togidere.

vng<sup>m</sup> viride

[<sup>2</sup> lf. 264]

R̄

An ointment  
to cleanse  
ulcers.

R̄

¶ Also anoper vnguentum viride þat<sup>t</sup> makip<sup>3</sup> clene & regendriþ  
good fleisch in vlceribus þat<sup>t</sup> ben olde, & fretip awei wickid 12  
fleisch wipouten violence / R̄, celidoyne radicis, alleluya,<sup>3</sup> folia  
centrum<sup>4</sup> galli, leuistici agrestis, scabiose, ana ʒ. j., grynde wel alle  
þese herbis togidere wip<sup>4</sup> .li. j. of schepis talowe & .li. j. of oile,  
medle hem togidere, & lete hem ligge .x. daies & rotie, & þan do 16  
hem to seþing<sup>t</sup> on þe fier til þe herbis falle to þe botme, & þan cole  
hem, & do þerto wex, terbentyne, ana 3. ij., colofonie 3. j., masticis,  
olibani, ana 3. ʒ., viridis eris 3. j. þat<sup>t</sup> schal be do in in þe ende of  
þe boilyng<sup>t</sup>, & medle hem wel togidere, & make þerof an oynement<sup>t</sup>. 20

An ointment  
to be applied

R̄

on fistulous  
and cancer-  
ous sores.

¶ If þou wolt<sup>t</sup> make a stronger medicyn for to slee a festre &  
a cancre / R̄, vitri albi combusti, sulphuris viui, viridis eris, galle,  
attramenti, vitriole viridis, ana 3 ʒ., auripigmenti foliati 3. ij.,  
make herof poudre, & distempere hem wip strong<sup>t</sup> vinegre & lacte 24  
anabulle<sup>5</sup> til it<sup>t</sup> be as picke as it<sup>t</sup> were hony, & sette it<sup>t</sup> to þe sunne  
in somer, & lete it<sup>t</sup> drie. & if it<sup>t</sup> be in wintir þou miȝt<sup>t</sup> drie it<sup>t</sup> wip  
lent<sup>t</sup> fier, and whanne it<sup>t</sup> is drie poudre it<sup>t</sup> aȝen, & tempere wip þe  
forseid licour, & þan drie it<sup>t</sup> aȝen, & þus þou schalt<sup>t</sup> do .iiij. siþis ouþir 28

[<sup>6</sup> lf. 264, bk.]

A corrosive  
powder.

R̄

.iiij. & þan make poudre þerof & kepe it<sup>t</sup> in a drie place. ¶ Anoper  
poudre þat<sup>t</sup> driep<sup>6</sup> a cancre & a festre, & remeueþ superfluite of  
fleisch / R̄, radices brionie 3. v., tapcie, laureole, esule, ana 3. ij.,  
cielaminis, yreos, aristolochie, longe & rotunde, hermodactulorum, 32  
affodillorum radicis 3. j., & herbarum celidonie, leuistice agrestis,  
buglosse, summitates oliuarum, & mirte ana 3. j., tempere þe herbis  
& þe rotis in vinegre bi .iiij. daies, & þan seþe hem & cole hem, &  
take þat<sup>t</sup> licour þat<sup>t</sup> comeþ þerof, & seþe it<sup>t</sup> & caste þeron quik lyme 36

<sup>1</sup> crustons, O.Fr. crouston.

<sup>3</sup> Sin. Bart., p. 10: "Alleluia. i. nodesour."

<sup>4</sup> Alphita, p. 38: "Centrum galli gallitricum . . . nux muscata." Wild Sage, Cancerweed.

<sup>5</sup> Matth. Sylv.: "Anabulla est species titimalli." Compare Alphita, p. 9.



- poudrid sotilli li. j., & medle hem wel togidere, & at þe laste do þerto auripigmenti ʒ. iij., & medle hem wel togidere, & make þerof gobetis & kepe hem in a drie place, & whanne þou hast nede þerto, 4 grynde oon þerof, & leie þe poudre þerof vpon þe place þat þou wolt haue frete. ¶ **Anopir poudre of þe same kynde.** Rʒ, arsenici rubri & citrini, calcis viue, aluminis<sup>1</sup> de pluma, gallarum nouarum ana, grynde hem with vinegre<sup>2</sup> & medle hem & drie hem, & kepe hem [2 lf. 265] Rʒ
- 8 as it is aforseid / ¶ A stronge medicyn þat is as stronge as oni fier, & vnquenta ruptoria þat mortifieþ quyk fleisch & etip it, & oon herof is riztt stronge & is a poudre maad bi sublimacioun. Rʒ, limature ferri, vitrioli viridis, alumen iamini, antymonij ana ʒ. ij. salis armoniaci, Rʒ
- 12 arsenici citrini, sulphuris viui<sup>3</sup> extincti cum saliuā, & tempere hem wip vinegre, oupir wip watir, oupir wip stronge lye, & þe lie wole be þe bettir if it be maad wip bene scelis, & þan drie it & putte it in alutel<sup>4</sup> & sublime it / This is þe maner of sublimacioun / loke þou Nota  
The process of sublimation.
- 16 haue a stronge vessel maad of glas þat it mowe dure in þe fier, oupir a vessel of erpe wel glasid wipinne, & loke þat þe couerle þerof & þe bodi be wel closyng, & do þerin þi poudre, & lute it wip good lute, & sette it in a furneis & make lizt fier half adai, & þan
- 20 do out thi fier, & whanne it is coold opene it, & þat, þat leueþ in þe botme of þe vessel caste it out, & þat, þat cleueþ faste to þe couerle aboue, take it & kepe it, & if þou wolt worche þerwip þou muste worche ful quentliche, for it wole<sup>5</sup> brenne as strongli as fier, [5 lf. 265, bk.]
- 24 & wole make impressioun in depnes þan fier. þis poudre wole cor- rumpe & brenne þe place þat it is leid vpon, & þe same doip realgar sublimed, & if þow wolt ouercome þe wickidnes of it, make poudre of it & distempere it wip þe iuys of lactuce & plaunteyn til it be
- 28 in pickenesse of hony, & þan drie it, & þus þou schalt do manye tymes / & in þis maner þou schalt take awei greet malice, & it wole worche neuer þe worse. ¶ Also an oynement ruptorie for to breke fleisch þat is hool & maketh blak & brenneþ it, & wole make it
- 32 falle awei, & þan þer wole leue þere vlcus. Manie men vsip þis in diuers maner, for to opene an enpostym, & for to do awei superfluite of fleisch. Rʒ, **quik lyme** as miche as þou wolt, & resolue it in Rʒ

<sup>1</sup> Halle Table, p. 9. *Alumen de pluma* = *Alumen Liquidum*.

<sup>2</sup> a caret is placed here and this added later, but does not follow on:—

filos eris ana ʒ j fʒ

calcis viue G ʒ

argenti viu. ʒ j. [in margin.]

<sup>4</sup> Castelli: "*Aludel* vel *Alutel* vocatur *Vitrum sublimatorium*." Arab. al-outhal (*Devic. Dict.*). A vessel used in sublimation.

Nota bene.  
Escharotics,  
medicines as  
strong as fire.

A corrosive  
sublimate.

Nota  
The process  
of sublima-  
tion.

A burning  
ointment  
made of  
quick-lime.



strong<sup>t</sup> lie þat<sup>t</sup> is aforseid, and make þerof<sup>t</sup> þe maner of<sup>t</sup> an oyne-  
ment<sup>t</sup>, & whanne it<sup>t</sup> is maad, al freisch leie it<sup>t</sup> þerto, for þe more  
freisch þat<sup>t</sup> it<sup>t</sup> is þe bettir it<sup>t</sup> is / In þis maner þou schalt<sup>t</sup> make þe  
lie / ffile a vessel ful of askis of bene scelis, & þe .iiij. part<sup>t</sup> of quik 4  
[<sup>1</sup> If. 266] lyme, & poudre hem alle togidere & leie hem in <sup>1</sup>a vessel & presse  
hem þat<sup>t</sup> þei bicom e fast togidere, & make a put<sup>t</sup> in þe middil aboue,  
in þe same put<sup>t</sup> caste hoot watir seping<sup>t</sup>, & þis vessel schal be  
holowe þat<sup>t</sup> þe lie mowe passe þoru<sup>3</sup>. & vndir þis vessel sette anopir 8  
vessel for to resseyue þe lie. ¶ Also anopir good ruptorie / R<sup>7</sup>,  
calcis viue, partem vnam, arsenici, partem ð., poudre hem & medle  
hem wiþ sope & hony, & summen doiþ þerto li .ð. of tartre / Also  
mel anacardi is swiþe strong<sup>t</sup> for to make vlcera. & if it be do to 12  
opere medicyns it<sup>t</sup> worchip þe more strongli / In þis maner þou  
schalt<sup>t</sup> do / whanne þou ne miȝt fynde mel anacardi, þan grinde  
anacardos greet<sup>t</sup> & leie hem in vinegre adai & anyȝt, & þan boile  
hem wel, & þan presse out<sup>t</sup> þe licour þerof<sup>t</sup>, & þat<sup>t</sup>, þat<sup>t</sup> goiþ out<sup>t</sup> 16  
þerof<sup>t</sup> is a medicyn þat<sup>t</sup> wole make vlcera. / Oupir take anacardos &  
seþe hem in hoot tenacis þat<sup>t</sup> smiþis vsen, & streyne hem, & þer  
wole distille þerof<sup>t</sup> hony. ¶ Also take þe wombis of cantarides &  
grinde hem wiþ leueyne & leie hem in what place þou wolt<sup>t</sup> & it<sup>t</sup> 20  
wole make vlcera / But herof<sup>t</sup> þou muste be war þat<sup>t</sup> in what place  
þou settist<sup>t</sup> cantarides þer <sup>2</sup>wole come greet<sup>t</sup> brennyng of vrine, &  
sumtyme it<sup>t</sup> makip so greet<sup>t</sup> brennyng<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> a mannes vrine is stoppid  
þerwiþ. & þe cure þerof<sup>t</sup> is þis / Seþe malue, paritorie, violet, watir- 24  
cressen in watir, & lete þe patient sitte þeron anoon to þe nauele, &  
herwiþ þe akyng<sup>t</sup> schal be taken awei, & also he schal make vrine  
liztlich / & herof<sup>t</sup> þou schalt<sup>t</sup> take hede, þat<sup>t</sup> in what place of  
a mannes bodi þou makist<sup>t</sup> a cauterie, anoon þeraftir þou schalt<sup>t</sup> leie 28  
a mitigatif<sup>t</sup> þat<sup>t</sup> schal make þe cruste falle awei þat<sup>t</sup> was brent<sup>t</sup>, & þou  
ne schalt<sup>t</sup> in no maner take awei þe cruste wiþ violence, but þou  
schalt<sup>t</sup> leie þerto a mitigatif<sup>t</sup>, & lete þe cruste falle awei liztli.  
¶ Medicyns þat<sup>t</sup> wolen make þe cruste falle awei, & do awei þe 32  
aking<sup>t</sup>, ben þese: ȝelkis of eiren wiþ oile of rosis, þat<sup>t</sup> is þe beste  
of alle medicyns / Also, take þe leeu es & grinde wiþ grese, ouþer  
wiþ buttir & leie þervpon / Also grese ouþir buttir is good þer- 36  
fore. ¶ Also pultes maad of mele, oile & watir, ben good þer-  
fore & aceessip wel þe akyng<sup>t</sup> & makip þe crustis falle. ¶ Also  
[<sup>3</sup> If. 267] wiþ þe cauterie of an hoot iren þou miȝt <sup>3</sup>do awei deed fleisch,  
ouþir wiþ oon of þe medicyns þat<sup>t</sup> ben forseid. ¶ Also if þou wolt<sup>t</sup>

R<sup>7</sup>  
A caustic  
ointment  
made of  
quick-lime  
and arsenic.

Cantarides.

[<sup>2</sup> If. 266, bk.]  
The applica-  
tion of can-  
tharides  
excites  
strangury.  
dubium  
Treatment.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *do awei*, twice, the second one marked for erasure.



vse medicyns for to make cauterijs, þou muste take kepe of þis  
 caas / In feble men & in a lital cause þou muste vse feble medicyns,  
 & þou muste be war þat þou brenne no nerue ne no greet veyne ne  
 4 noon arterie wip þi cauterie, ne wip þi medicyns þat makip cauterijs.  
 ¶ Also in a strong<sup>1</sup> man & in a boistous man, þou miȝt worche at  
 oonys þat þou muste worche at manye tymes in a feble man / ffor  
 in euery medicyns þat a leche doiþ he schal take kepe of the  
 8 strenkþe & of þe vertu of þe pacient //

Nerves and  
 great blood-  
 vessels  
 must not be  
 cauterized.

Use caustics  
 according to  
 the patient's  
 strength.

### Of mollificatif medicyns or softenyng.

**W**E vsip þese medicyns þat ben .iiij. in eueri cause.<sup>1</sup> Oon cause  
 is þis, whanne þe mater þat þou wolt resolue is swiþe hard,  
 12 for þan oonli wip resolutiuis as it is aforseid þe sotil mater wole  
 resolue, & þat opir part wole bicomme hard, & þan þou muste make  
 mollificatiuis. ¶ The .ij. cause is þis, whanne ony lyme is to-broke  
 oupir out of þe ioynete, þouȝ it be broȝt<sup>2</sup> yn aȝen, þe place wole be  
 16 hard, & þe patient mai not meue þerwip, þan þou muste do<sup>3</sup> þerto  
 mollificatiuis til þe lyme be bettere as it is aforseid. ¶ The .iiij.  
 cause is þis, whanne ony lyme þat haþ ben out of ioynct longe  
 tyme, þan þou muste make þingis forto make þe place moist aȝen,  
 20 þat þe boon mowe come into his ioynt aȝen. ¶ The .iiij. cause is,  
 whanne a lyme is corrupt & is yuel ioyned, & makip al þe lyme foul,  
 as whanne a boon is to-broken & is not ioyned, þan þou muste breke  
 þe boon aȝen, & bringe it into his propre place as it schulde be /  
 24 In alle þese causis we mote vse medicyns þat ben mollificatiuis, as  
 ben þese : camomille, mellilotum, fenigreci, semen lini, & almaner  
 fatnes, & marowe, & manie gummis, & euery medicyn þat is hoot  
 & moist wole make a lyme mollificatif / **A good composicioun for**  
 28 **þe firste cause** / Take oold oile .iiij. partis, wex partem .j., & make  
 þerof an oynement, and anoynte þerwip a lyme þat þou wolt resolue  
 þe mater þat is þeron / ffor it wole make þe mater mollificatif, &  
 make þe poris<sup>4</sup> open to resolucioun // **Anoper þat is more strong<sup>1</sup>** /  
 32 R̄, radices malua visci ȝ .j., & kutte it to smale gobetis, & putte  
 hem in a mortar wip ȝ .iiij. of oile of lillie. & þou schalt sett þis  
 vessel of glas in hoot boilyng watir, & þere it schal stonde til þe  
 iuys of þe herbe be consumed. Wip þis oile þou schalt anoynte þe  
 36 place, & leie þervpon lanam succidam id est wolle vnwaischen. & þis

.1.  
 Emollients  
 are used  
 if other medi-  
 cines prove  
 insufficient,  
 to relieve ten-  
 sion ensuing

.2.  
 the fracture  
 [2 lf. 267, bk.]

.3.  
 or dislocation  
 of a limb,

.4.  
 and if re-  
 breaking  
 becomes  
 necessary.

An ointment  
 of oil and  
 wax.

R̄

[4 lf. 268]

A stronger  
 emollient.

R̄

<sup>1</sup> Lat. : Mollificatiuis vtimur medicinis in quatuor casibus.

<sup>3</sup> do, above line.



Directions  
for fomenta-  
tion.

[<sup>2</sup> ff. 268, bk.]

An ointment  
to be applied  
on consump-  
tive people.

[<sup>3</sup> ff. 269]

vngm  
Rasis

God has  
helped me  
throughout  
my work,  
and this book  
has been  
finished in  
1296.

pou schalt wite, þat whanne þou wolt make þese oynementis, first  
pou shalt make a fomentacioun wiþ hoot watir til þe place bicomē  
reed. & if þe place be swithe hard, þan take a stoon þat is clepid  
lapis molaris, & make him hoot in þe fier, oupir a greet gobet of 4  
iren, & do it in strong vinegre. & þe place of a mannes lyme þat  
is hard, holde ouer þe fume þat comē out of þe vinegre, & þan  
anoynte him aftirward / þis is þe maner for to make a lyme mollifi-  
catif, & þer ben .iiij. maners.<sup>1</sup> þe .j. maner is þis : pou schalt make 8  
a decoccioun of flouris of camomille, mellilote, fenigrec, semen lini,  
& rootis of malua visci, soden in water. & pou schalt <sup>2</sup>make a  
fomentacioun to þe lyme in þis watir longe tyme, & frote þe lyme  
softli. & þan anoynte þe lyme wiþ oon of þese oynementis / R̄, 12  
auxungie porci antique sine sale ̄ .iiij., pinguedinis anseris, anatis &  
galline ana ̄ .j., melte hem alle togidere & cole hem, & do þerto  
̄ .j. of wex. þis wole make mollificatif, & restore moistnes. & if  
pou wolt make it for to be good for drienes of a mannes brest, & 16  
good for men þat ben etik, do þerto ̄ .j. of clene dragaganti, & þan  
it wole be a good oynement restoratif. ¶ Anopir oynement.  
R̄, adipis porci antique sine sale ̄ .iiij., fecis olij de semine lini,  
bdellij ana ̄ .ij., storacis, calamite, galbani, oppopanacis, armoniaci, 20  
ana ̄ .j. putte þe gummys in wijn for to tempere, & whanne þei  
ben temperid, putte hem in a mortar, & stampe hem wel, melte þe  
remenaunt, & do hem togidere, & medle hem togidere. ¶ Also an  
oynement mollificatif & comfortip / R̄, auxungie porci ̄ .iiij., 24  
pinguedinis anseris, anatis, galline, ana ̄ .j. olis communis antiqui  
̄ .iiij. farine fenigreci, seminis lini, ana ̄ .j., bdellij, oppo-  
ponacis, masticis, thuris ̄ .i., tempere þe gummis <sup>3</sup>in wijn, & þan aftirward  
medle hem wiþ grese, wex, & oile, & melte hem alle togidere & cole 28  
hem. & of þese þingis þat schulen be grounde make poudre þerof,  
& medle it þerwiþ & kepe it for þin vss. & whanne þou hast maad  
a stuwe as it is aforseid oupir a fomentacioun, þan anoynte him bi þe  
fier, & þis is clepid vnguentum Rasis. & I it haue ofte preued euer- 32  
more goddis grace goinge tofore wiþout which grace is no þing ful-  
endid ne no sjuknes do awei / But eueri good ende & eueri good  
dede al it comē of þe miȝt of god / And þe help of god I bad in  
þe firste bigynnyng of þe book / ffor of goddis grace I am þat I am, 36  
& goddis grace was neuere voide in me / And þe ende of þis book  
was fulfillid þe noumbre of ȝeeris from goddis beyngt .M.CC. nona-  
gesimo sexto. & god of his swete grace ne wernede me not to make

<sup>1</sup> Lat. : modus autem mollificandi membra in 2º, 3º & 4º casu est unus.



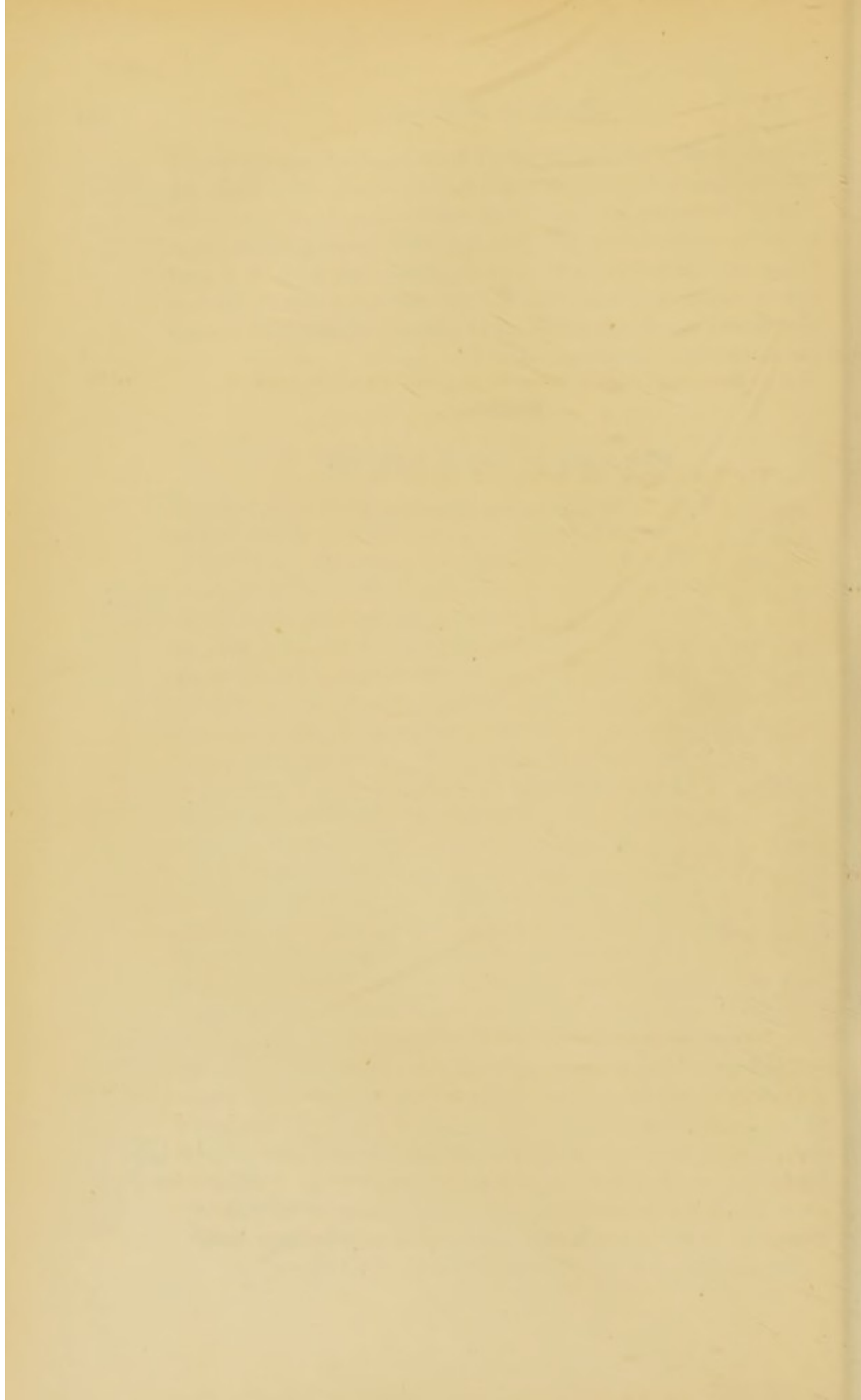
an ende of þis book. & ful ofte I haue bede goddis grace þerto /  
 wherfore god haþ grauntid, & god for his blessid name blesse þis God may  
bless this  
 book & alle werkis þat ben wrouȝt in his name / <sup>1</sup>And god for his [1 lf. 269, bk.]  
 4 miche grace lete hem wel worche þat takip þis werk on honde, & book and  
those who  
use it.  
 bringe errouris out of her herte, & bringe hem & us to a good  
 ende / To þe worschip of his blessid name & profit of his ser-  
 uauntis, & me to forȝeuenes of my synnes, god it graunte et imperat  
 8 per omnia secula seculorum AmeN.

Explicit.

Here endip þe book of lankfrank.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>2</sup> In red ink, but nearly erased.







Here bigynneþ a table of þe chapitris of þe book of  
lankfrank //

[leaf 270]

The firste book conteyneþ .xv. chapitris /

- 4 The .i. c°. is maad of alle vniuersal woundis & vleers [p. 31]  
 The .ij. c°. is of woundis maad in þe fleisch / [p. 33]  
 The .iiij. c°. is of woundis maad in senewis / [p. 39]  
 The .iiij. c°. is of woundis maad in boonys / [p. 47]  
 8 The .v. c°. is of woundis maad with strokis or kuttinge / [p. 50]  
 The .vj. c°. is of woundis with postyms, & yuel discrasiam / [p. 54]  
 The .vij. c°. of woundis maad of arauyschyng hound, or opir  
 venymous beest / [p. 59]  
 12 The .viij. c°. is of curis of woundis which folowip brekyng of  
 boonys / [p. 62]  
 The .ix. c°. is of flux of blood of woundis / [p. 64]  
 The .x. c°. is of dietyng of woundid men / [p. 72]  
 16 The .xj. c°. is of vlceris / [p. 77]  
 The .xij. c°. is of fistulis / [p. 89]  
 The .xiiij. c°. is of cancris / [p. 92]  
 The .xiiij. c°. is of causis & lettyngis of sowdyng of woundis &  
 20 vlceris / [p. 97]  
 The .xv. c°. is of spasmus aboue comynge on woundis // [p. 99]

The .ij. book conteyneþ vndir o summe .x. c°.

- The .i. c°. is of woundis of þe heed, & his anothamia / [p. 106]  
 24 The .ij. c°. of curis of woundis in þe face & of membris þat ben [leaf 270, bk.]  
 conteyned in hem / [p. 141]  
 The .iiij. c°. is of woundis in þe necke, and of anothamia [p. 145]  
 The .iiij. c°. is of woundis of þe splet boonys of þe arme & of þe  
 28 hondis, & anothami / [p. 155]  
 The .v. c°. is of woundis in thoracis & membris conteyned in  
 hem / [p. 161]



The .vj. c°. is of curis of woundis of þe spine ouþir spondilium.

[p. 166]

The .vij. c°. is of woundis of þe stomac & entrailis & wombe, & anothamia /

[p. 167] 4

The .viij. c°. is of woundis of þe lyuere, splen, reynes, & þe bladdre & anothamie /

[p. 171]

The .ix. c°. is of woundis of þe 3erde and placis aboute it

[p. 173]

The .x. c°. is of woundis of þe haunche & grynde & feet, & anothamie /

[p. 176]

The .iiij. book conteyneþ .viij. chapitris /

The .i. c°. is of makyng of fair heer /

[p. 178]

The .ij. c°. is of lesynge of heer, or calow3nes or allopucie

[p. 180] 12

The .iiij. c° is of smale puschis and scalis and crustis /

[p. 188]

[leaf 271] The .iiij. c°. is of clooþ and fraclis, & gowte roset & 3olowisch /

[p. 189]

The .v. c°. is of smirtyng, scabbe, & icche /

[p. 191] 16

The .vj. c°. is of þe morphu & impetigine /

[p. 193]

The .vij. c°. is of lepre & of domys of lepre /

[p. 196]

The .viij. c°. is of smelnes of membris & leene /

[p. 199]

The .iiij bok þe ij doctrinis, þat is of enpostyms, & conteyneþ 20 .xviij. chapitris.

The .i. c°. is of generacioun of humours and her kyndis /

[p. 201]

The .ij. c°. is of enpostyms & of sermouns þerof /

[p. 204]

The .iiij. c°. is of enpostyms in þe heed, & of gaderynge in þe 24 hedis of children /

[p. 214]

The .iiij. c°. is of enpostyms of rotis of þe eeris

[p. 216]

The .v. c°. is of enpostyms of þe necke, and of þe þrote /

[p. 217]

The .vj. c°. is of enpostym subtilico /

[p. 222] 28

The .vij. c°. is of enpostym of þe helpers aboute þe spondilia /

[p. 223]

The .viij. c°. folowþ of þe same tofore /

[p. 224]

The .ix. c°. of enpostym appering in þe moup of þe stomak /

[p. 226] 32

The .x. c°. is of an enpostym in i[n]guine .i.<sup>1</sup> grindis.

[p. 226]

The .xj. c°. is of enpostyme of þe haunche &

¶ of þe core / [p. 227] 36

The .xij. c°. is of enpostym of þe 3erde & ballok /

[p. 228]

[leaf 271, bk.] The .xiiij. c°. is of scrophulis & glandulis /

[p. 229]



- The .xiiij. c°. is of þe cure of þe cancre non vlcera<sup>t</sup> / [p. 231]  
 The .xv. c°. is of Boos / [p. 232]  
 The .xvj. c°. is of akyng<sup>t</sup> of ioynctis. [p. 233]  
 4 The .xvij. c°. is of akyng<sup>e</sup> of haunchis / [p. 238]  
 The .xviij. c°. is of dieting<sup>t</sup> of men þatt han ache in ioynctis / [p. 240]  
 The .iiij. boke and the .iiij. doctri<sup>n</sup>, and conteyneþ xix.  
 8 chapitris //  
 The .i. c°. is of egrenes of y3en / [p. 240]  
 The .ii. c°. is of egrenes of eeris / [p. 254]  
 The .iiij. is of disese of þe nose / [p. 258]  
 12 The .iiij. c°. is of disese of þe mouþ / [p. 260]  
 The .v. c°. is of disese of þe brest<sup>t</sup>, and off<sup>t</sup> swellyng<sup>t</sup> and greetnes /  
<sup>1</sup>and coagulation off<sup>t</sup> milke.<sup>1</sup> [p. 265]  
 The .vj. c°. is of ruptorie of þe siphac, and releuyng<sup>e</sup> a3en / [p. 268]  
 16 The .vij. c°. is of hernia of þe ballokis / [p. 269]  
 The .viij. c°. is of þe stoon in þe bladdre / [p. 273]  
 The .ix. c°. is of an yuel þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid hermofrodito<sup>2</sup>  
 20 The .x. c°. is of watri dropesies. [p. 281]  
 The .xj. c°. is of cancer & vlcers in þe 3erde / [p. 287]  
 The .xij. c°. is of emoroidis & fistula in ano. [p. 289]  
 The .xiiij. c°. is of cancrene & mormals / [p. 293]  
 24 The .xiiij. c°. is of vngribus and stykyng<sup>e</sup> in handis and feet. [leaf 272] [p. 295]  
 ¶ Elephancia / [p. 295]  
 The .xv. c°. is of wertis in handis & feet / [p. 296]  
 The .xvj. c°. is of blood letyng<sup>t</sup> / [p. 298]  
 28 The .xvij. is of kutting<sup>t</sup> & bleding<sup>t</sup>, & water lechis [p. 303]  
 The .xviij. is of cauterie large & of streite / [p. 305]  
 The .iiij. book schal be algebra, & conteyneþ ij. doctrines /  
 The firste doctrine of þe .iiij. book conteyneþ .viij. chapitris //  
 32 The .i. c°. is of brekyng<sup>t</sup> of boonis, or o. word ¶ for al / [p. 312]  
 The .ij. c°. is of breking<sup>t</sup> of þe face / [p. 314]  
 The .iiij. c°. is of brekyng<sup>t</sup> of þe forkid boon of þe brest / [p. 316]  
 36 The .iiij. c°. is of brekyng<sup>t</sup> of boonys off<sup>t</sup> þe spaudis // [p. 317]  
 The .v. c°. is of brekyng<sup>e</sup> of þe adiutorie / [p. 318]

<sup>1-1</sup> added in different hand.

<sup>2</sup> This chapter is omitted; see note 8 on p. 281.



The .vj. c°. is of brekyng<sup>t</sup> of boonys þat<sup>t</sup> is clepid coxe // [p. 320]  
 The .vii. c°. is of brusing<sup>t</sup> or brekyng<sup>t</sup> of tendir boonys wiþ þe  
 .viij. chapitre / [p. 321 & 322]

The secunde doctrine of þe fourþe book, & conteyneþ .v. 4  
 chapitris //

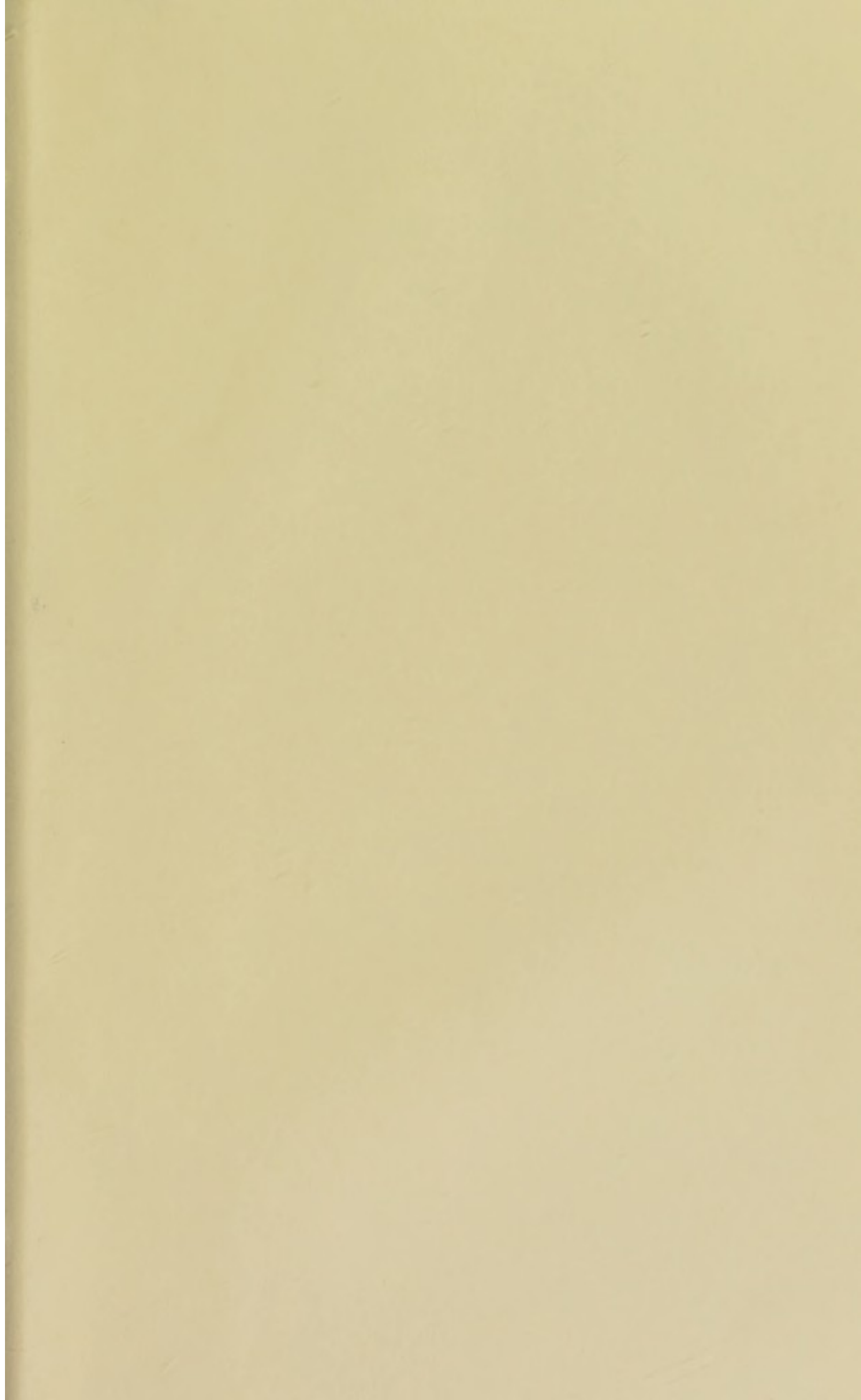
[leaf 272, bk.] The first<sup>t</sup> c°. is of failyng<sup>t</sup> of place, word for al /  
 The .ij. c°. is of failyng<sup>t</sup> of place of þe chekeboon /  
 Tho .iiij. c°. is of lacking<sup>t</sup> of place of þe spaude /<sup>1</sup> 8  
 The .iiij. c°. is of goyng<sup>t</sup> out of þe ioynet<sup>t</sup> of þe schuldre / [p. 323]  
 The .v. c°. is of þe coniunccioun of þe goyng<sup>t</sup> out of þe haunche /  
 [p. 326]

The antidotarie is þe .v. book, and conteyneþ seuene 12  
 chapitris //

The .i. c°. is of repercussiuis & þe maner þerof / [p. 328]  
 The .ij. c°. is of þe maner of resolutif<sup>t</sup> medicins / [p. 333]  
 The .iiij. c°. is of þe .iiij. maturatiuis & þe maner þerof / [p. 336] 16  
 The .iiij. c°. is of mundificatiuis & þe maner þerof // [p. 339]  
 The .v. c°. is of regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis // [p. 342]  
 The .vj. c°. is of corrosiuis & cauterisatiuis // [p. 349]  
 The .vij. c°. is of mollificatiuis or softenyng<sup>t</sup> medicyns // [p. 353] 20

<sup>1</sup> These three chapters are left out.







✓





Riley Dunn & Wilson Ltd  
EXPERT CONSERVATORS & BOOKBINDERS



